



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 475.2 .H168 1  
Hale, William Gardner,  
Latin grammar /

Stanford University Libraries



3 6105 04926 6443

GRAMMAR  
HALE AND BUCK

DEPARTMENT OF  
EDUCATION.  
RECEIVED

SEP 3 1907

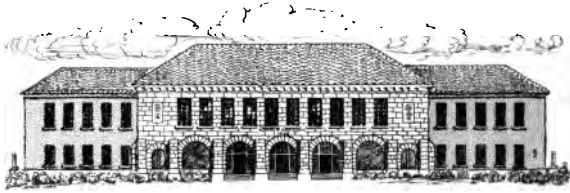
LELAND STANFORD  
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.

DEPARTMENT OF  
EDUCATION.  
RECEIVED

SEP 3 1907

LEWIS AND STANFORD  
JUNIOR UNIVERSITY.





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY

TEXTBOOK  
COLLECTION



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES



A  
LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

WILLIAM GARDNER HALE

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

CARL DARLING BUCK

PROFESSOR OF COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON  
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS  
*The Athenæum Press*  
1903

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL

---

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY

WILLIAM GARDNER HALE AND CARL DARLING BUCK

---

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

113548 .  
C

## PREFACE

THIS grammar aims to be a working text-book, primarily adapted to the needs of high school students.

The part which deals with Sounds, Inflection, and Word-Formation was written by the junior author, who is also mainly responsible for matters of orthography, hidden quantity, etc., throughout the book; the part which deals with Syntax, Word-Order, Versification, the Calendar, etc., and the suggestions with regard to Pronunciation in 35-40, were written by the senior author; but both parts have been worked over carefully and in detail by both authors.

In the Phonology, Inflection, and Word-Formation, the authors have been conservative in the introduction of matters of comparative grammar. In general they have aimed to give only such historical explanations as are certain and reasonably simple, and deal with the relations between existing Latin forms, not with the relations between a Latin form and one of another language. For example, the statement that original final *i* became *e* (44, 3) would not be made, if it were useful only in understanding the relation between Latin *ante* and Greek *ἀντι*, but is introduced because, aside from the existence of the original form in *anti-cipō*, it explains why the Nominative-Accusative Singular Neuter of an *i*-stem (e.g. *mare*) ends in *e*.

While, then, only a limited amount of historical grammar has been included, pains have been taken to frame whatever statements are made as to the relations of forms in the light of our knowledge of the actual historical development, so that, while not always expressed or arranged in the way one would adopt in a strictly historical grammar, they may serve as a sound foundation for possible further study, instead of fostering wrong conceptions which must be overcome later.

Questions of pronunciation, hidden quantity, orthography, etc., have received careful and independent study, though space does not permit the presentation of the arguments in favor of the views adopted. Departures from the usual practice in such matters may cause some temporary difficulty to the teacher; but this cannot justify the authors in perpetuating what they believe to be errors.

No attempt is made to treat early Latin fully, but some of its most striking peculiarities are mentioned.

In the Syntax, the probable relationships of the constructions treated are indicated by the arrangement. Where this is not of itself sufficient, and the origin of the construction is easy to understand, a brief explanation is added, as of the Subjunctive in Generalizing Clauses in the Second Person Singular

Indefinite (504, 2, a). Where the explanation is more difficult, or would demand too much space (as of the origin of the Subjunctive of Actuality, or of the Historical Infinitive), nothing is said. This last statement applies in general to the constructions of composite origin (illustrated in 315, 3).

In the treatment of the verb, subordinate clauses have been put with the independent constructions to which they stand related; for their essential nature is thus best understood, while the demand made upon the memory is reduced. Where contrasting constructions with another mood exist, cross-references are given.

The constructions dealt with have been treated in as brief and simple a manner as is consistent with the actual facts of usage; but it has not been thought that mere omission necessarily makes the student's work easier. Indeed, the *addition* of categories will at a number of points be found to make for simplicity. Thus the new category Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety (512) at once illumines such an example as *quid tē invitē, why should I urge you?* Cic. Cat. 1, 9, 24, which formerly had to be forced under the Subjunctive of Deliberation, though there is no shade of deliberation in it. In the same way, the clear recognition (571) of a use of the Present Indicative with powers corresponding to those of a number of constructions in other moods or tenses will lighten the difficulties of any thoughtful teacher or student. Thus the Present Indicative after *antequam*, which Cicero uses in the Orations more than twice as frequently as the Subjunctive, the Present Indicative in a clearly future condition with *sī*, as in Cic. Cat. 2, 5, 11, and the Present Indicative in questions like *quid agō*, Aen. 4, 534, now become intelligible; and the student will not have to warp his grammatical conscience with the old explanation that, in all these cases, the act is practically "now going on."

The field covered is the syntax actually found in high school Latin, with the addition of a comparatively small number of constructions, which were necessary for the general skeleton of the treatment. Our Latin grammars, even the shorter ones, have included much that does not occur at all in high school Latin, and much (as, e.g., the *id genus idiom*) that is either rare or non-occurrent in the Latin ordinarily read in colleges. On the other hand, much in the way of special idiom that does occur in the ordinary college Latin has been omitted from our grammars. It has seemed best to the present authors to reserve all such constructions for a Supplement,<sup>1</sup> to follow this book. This Supplement will be at the service of the teacher, whether teaching in school or in college. The college teacher may choose to put it into the hands of his students, or may merely use it as a book of reference. In any case, however, students who are familiar with the constructions and

<sup>1</sup> The Supplement will also contain explanations of the origin of all constructions which need special explanation, discussions of the more difficult distinctions, and of certain constructions which present peculiar difficulty in the high school Latin, together with fuller illustrations, both from this Latin and from that which is read in colleges. In addition, it will contain further notes on pronunciation, word-order, and versification.

principles explained in the present book will have no difficulty in making their way through college Latin.

Citations are given for all the examples taken from actual Latin, and no change is made in any of them except the occasional omission of parts not bearing upon the construction under treatment. The subject is often omitted where it has nothing to do with the construction to be illustrated. Wherever the Latin read in the high school affords a short and satisfactory example, that example has been used; and the proportion of such examples will be found to be unprecedentedly large. Other examples have here and there been chosen as simpler, or as affording parallels in a series (e.g., in **362**), or as matching better in the exposition of allied or contrasting constructions (as in **355**, **356**, **582**, 3). But the works thus necessarily drawn upon outside of the high school Latin are in many instances represented by only a single example each.

Latin usage was of course a matter of constant growth and change. The ordinary division into early, Augustan, and post-Augustan usage is unserviceable. After Cicero, the most rapid changes take place in Sallust (who forms an especial turning-point), Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Livy, — all belonging to the Augustan period. The division here made is into early Latin, Ciceronian Latin,<sup>1</sup> and later Latin (see Table of Authors Cited, p. xi); but it must be remembered that Lucretius and Catullus, who belong to the Ciceronian age, are occasional innovators. — Where the phrase “poetic Latin” or the word “poetry” is used, it is intended to cover Plautus and Terence as well as the later poets.

The authors have allowed themselves the use of certain comparatively new forms of grammatical terminology, classification, or statement, which they believe to be helpful, as well as scientifically sound. Among these are the following: the subdivisions Volitive Subjunctive, Anticipatory Subjunctive, Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety, Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty; the solution of the Subjunctive with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, *antequam*, and *priusquam* as Anticipatory; the distinctions and phrases Act Anticipated and Prepared for, Anticipated and Forestalled, Anticipated and Deprecated; the phrases Determinative Clause, Volitive Substantive Clause, Optative Substantive Clause, etc., *cum*-Clause of Situation, Concession for the Sake of Argument, etc.; the statement that each tense of the Subjunctive has the force of the Indicative tense of the same name, and, in addition, each has a future force, etc. Many of these appear in the earlier publications of the senior author. Others were devised for purposes of his class-room. All of them have found acceptance in one or another of various grammars, grammatical writings, and text-editions of authors, in various countries. That they have been taken up

<sup>1</sup> The statements with regard to Ciceronian Latin are based upon the orations and the philosophical works, for which alone complete lexicons exist. Occasional exceptions or additions will doubtless require to be made when the rhetorical works and the letters are taken into account.

so readily into usage is a matter of much satisfaction, since it seems to show that other workers also have found them to be both intelligible and needful.

It is hoped that the arrangement and form of exposition found in the book, together with the division of case-uses and mood-uses into families, and the accompanying synopses, will lead the student to conceive of Latin syntax as a living and organic whole, not as a series of mechanical pigeon-holes.

The views upon the relation of *ictus* to accent advocated in §45, 2 have been tested by the senior editor in many years of teaching at Harvard, Cornell, and Chicago, and have been found to render the reading of Latin verse both easier and more interesting.

To specify all the obligations of the authors to the literature upon the subjects treated would be impossible. Needless to say, they have availed themselves fully of Brugmann and Delbrück's *Comparative Grammar*, of the *Latin Grammars* of Lindsay, Sommer, Stolz and Schmalz, of Neue's *Formenlehre* with its unrivalled statistical information, of the treatises of Madvig, Holtze, Draeger, Kühner, Roby, Antoine, Riemann, Riemann and Goelzer, of the Schmalz-Landgraf revision of the *Syntax* of Reisig, of articles in the various journals, etc., as well as of the school-grammars most widely used in this country and elsewhere.

For proof-reading and suggestions, they are much indebted to Mr. E. M. Washburn, of the South Side Academy, Chicago; Mr. C. E. Dixon and Mr. W. F. Tibbetts, of the Erasmus Hall High School, Brooklyn, N.Y.; Professors F. F. Abbott, G. L. Hendrickson, F. B. Tarbell, and G. J. Laing, of the University of Chicago; Professor Willard K. Clement, of Evanston, Ill.; Professor J. C. Rolfe, of the University of Pennsylvania; and Professor F. W. Shipley, of Washington University, St. Louis. Professor Hempl of Michigan read the sections on Phonology in manuscript, and made some important suggestions. In particular, thanks are due to Mr. R. A. von Minckwitz, of the DeWitt Clinton High School, New York City, for many helpful suggestions; to Professor G. E. Barber, of the University of Nebraska, for searching and valuable criticisms; to Professor D. Thomson, of the University of Washington, Seattle, for large collections of examples made by him for the purpose; and to Professor A. T. Walker, of the University of Kansas, for proof-reading and suggestions, and also examples collected by him when Instructor in the University of Chicago for an Outline of the Uses of the Latin Moods and Tenses projected by the senior author, some of which examples have been used in the present grammar. And finally, the authors wish to record their especial indebtedness to Mr. C. H. Beeson, Fellow in the University of Chicago, formerly of the Peoria High School, whose assistance has been generously and freely given at points and in ways too numerous to state in detail.

W. G. H.  
C. D. B.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I

### PHONOLOGY

	PAGE
THE ALPHABET, PHONETIC EXPLANATIONS, THE LATIN SOUNDS . . . . .	1
SYLLABLES . . . . .	5
QUANTITY . . . . .	7
ACCENT . . . . .	15
SLURRING . . . . .	16
SUGGESTIONS WITH REGARD TO PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	17
PHONETIC CHANGES . . . . .	18
ORTHOGRAPHY . . . . .	26

## PART II

### INFLECTION

GENDER . . . . .	27
NUMBER . . . . .	29
CASE . . . . .	29
DECLENSION OF NOUNS . . . . .	30
FIRST DECLENSION . . . . .	31
SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .	33
THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	36
FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	48
FIFTH DECLENSION . . . . .	50
DEFECTIVE AND VARIABLE NOUNS . . . . .	50
DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	
ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . . . . .	53
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	55
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	58
FORMATION OF ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	61
COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	63
NUMERALS: FORMS AND INFLECTION . . . . .	64
DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS . . . . .	67
PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES . . . . .	73

	PAGE
CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND ADVERBS . . . . .	74
STEMS OF THE VERB . . . . .	75
TYPES OF CONJUGATION . . . . .	76
PRINCIPAL PARTS . . . . .	77
PERSONAL ENDINGS . . . . .	78
CONJUGATION OF <i>Sum</i> . . . . .	79
THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	82
DEPONENTS AND SEMI-DEPONENTS . . . . .	93
PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION . . . . .	94
PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION . . . . .	95
FORMATION OF THE STEMS . . . . .	98
ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE VARIOUS TYPES OF VERBS . . . . .	107
IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	112
DEFECTIVE VERBS . . . . .	118
IMPERSONAL VERBS . . . . .	120

### PART III

#### WORD-FORMATION

DERIVATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS . . . . .	121
COMPOSITION . . . . .	129

### PART IV

#### SYNTAX

##### INTRODUCTORY:

THE PARTS OF SPEECH; THE SENTENCE; CLAUSES AND PHRASES	132
DEPENDENCE AND SEMI-DEPENDENCE . . . . .	134
CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES AND CLAUSES . . . . .	135
SUBJECT AND PREDICATE; PREDICATE NOUN, ADJECTIVE, OR PRONOUN . . . . .	135
QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS; ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS; RHETORI- CAL QUESTIONS . . . . .	136
SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES; ADVERBIAL CLAUSES . . . . .	138
THE PARTS OF SPEECH IN DETAIL: NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, CONJUNCTIONS, INTERJECTIONS	139
THE EXPRESSION OF IDEAS THROUGH CASES, MOODS, AND TENSES:	
GENERAL PRINCIPLES . . . . .	170
AGREEMENT . . . . .	171

# Table of Contents

ix

	PAGE
REMAINING USES OF THE CASES:	
USES OF THE NOMINATIVE . . . . .	179
USES OF THE GENITIVE . . . . .	180
USES OF THE DATIVE . . . . .	189
USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE . . . . .	200
USES OF THE VOCATIVE . . . . .	210
USES OF THE ABLATIVE . . . . .	211
PLACE-CONSTRUCTIONS WITH NAMES OF TOWNS, <i>domus</i> , <i>rūs</i> , ETC. . . . .	235
SUMMARY OF CASE-USES WITH PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	238
GENERAL FORCES OF THE MOODS AND TENSES . . . . .	239
GENERAL USES OF THE NEGATIVES <i>nē</i> AND <i>nōn</i> . . . . .	241
TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE . . . . .	243
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	244
TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE . . . . .	245
TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE . . . . .	245
TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE . . . . .	246
USUAL COMBINATIONS OF TENSES ("Sequence") . . . . .	247
LESS USUAL COMBINATIONS ("Exceptions to the Sequence") . . . . .	249
(RARE) MECHANICAL HARMONY OF SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES . . . . .	250
ALTERNATIVE TENSE-USAGES . . . . .	250
SPECIAL FORCES GAINED BY VARIOUS TENSES . . . . .	252
USES OF THE IMPERATIVE . . . . .	256
USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	257
THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	259
THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	265
THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	268
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF OBLIGATION OR PROPRIETY . . . . .	270
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF NATURAL LIKELIHOOD . . . . .	271
THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	272
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF IDEAL CERTAINTY . . . . .	273
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ACTUALITY IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	276
THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONDITIONS . . . . .	283, 304
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PROVISIO . . . . .	283
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF REQUEST OR ENTREATY . . . . .	283
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONSENT OR INDIFFERENCE . . . . .	284
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . . . .	285
THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION . . . . .	290
THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION . . . . .	290
THE (LATER) SUBJUNCTIVE WITH <i>quamquam</i> . . . . .	291
THE SUBJUNCTIVE GENERALIZING STATEMENT OF FACT IN THE SECOND PERSON SINGULAR INDEFINITE . . . . .	291

*Table of Contents*

	PAGE
USES OF THE INDICATIVE . . . . .	292
SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS . . . . .	304
USES OF THE INFINITIVE . . . . .	314
USES OF THE PARTICIPLE . . . . .	323
USES OF THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND . . . . .	329
USES OF THE SUPINE . . . . .	333
WORD-ORDER . . . . .	334
FIGURES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	340
FIGURES OF RHETORIC . . . . .	342

## PART V

**VERSIFICATION**

RHYTHM; ICTUS; THE FOOT; THE VERSE . . . . .	344
THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC PENTAMETER . . . . .	345
RELATION OF ICTUS TO WORD-ACCENT . . . . .	348
PRONUNCIATIONS TO BE NOTICED . . . . .	350

## PART VI

**APPENDIX**

THE ROMAN CALENDAR . . . . .	353
ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES . . . . .	356
ROMAN NAMES . . . . .	358
HIDDEN QUANTITY . . . . .	359
CATALOGUE OF VERBS . . . . .	361

AUTHORS CITED

EARLY LATIN	LATER LATIN
Plautus, 254-184 Ennius, 239-169 Terence, 185?-159 Cato, 234-149	Sallust, 86-34. Nepos, 99?-24? Virgil, 70-19 Horace, 65-8 Livy, 59 B.C.-17 A.D. Ovid, 43 B.C.-18? A.D. Persius, 34 A.D.-62 A.D. Seneca, 4? B.C.-65 A.D. Pliny the Elder, 23 A.D.-79 A.D. Quintilian, 35?-95 Martial, 40?-102 Pliny the Younger, 62-113? Tacitus, 55?-120? Juvenal, 60?-140?
CICERONIAN LATIN	
Varro, 116-27 Lucretius, 96?-55 Catullus, 87-54? Caesar, 100-44 Cicero, 106-43	

For Caesar, Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, and also for Plautus and Terence, the name of the work alone is given, the name of the author not being cited. The works of these authors drawn upon, with the abbreviations, are as follows:

Plautus: Amph. = Amphitruō, As. = Asināria, Aul. = Aululāria, Bacch. = Bacchides, Capt. = Captivī, Cist. = Cistellāria, Epid. = Epidicus, Men. = Menaechmī, Merc. = Mercātor, Mil. Gl. = Miles Glōriōsus, Pers. = Persa, Poen. = Poenulus, Pseud. = Pseudolus, Rud. = Rudēns, Stich. = Stichus, Trin. = Trinummus.

Terence: Ad. = Adelphoe, And. = Andria, Eun. = Eunūchus, Hec. = Hecyra, Heaut. = Heautontimoroumenos, Ph. = Phormiō.

Caesar: B. C. = dē Bellō Civili, B. G. = dē Bellō Gallicō.

Virgil: Aen. = Aenēis, Ecl. = Eclogae, Georg. = Geōrgica.

Horace: A. P. = Ars Poētica, Carm. = Carmina, Ep. = Epistolae, Epod. = Epodi, Sat. = Satirae.

Remaining abbreviations are for the works of Cicero. The examples are mostly from the Orations against Catiline (Cat.), for Archias (Arch.), and for Pompey's Command (Pomp.). A few are from the Oration for Milo (Mil.). The remainder are scattering. The abbreviations for them will explain themselves, except that Am. = Laelius dē Amicitia, Sen. = Catō Maior dē Senectūte, Senat. = Ōratiō post Reditum in Senatū Habita, Fam. = Epistolae ad Familiārēs, and Att. = Epistolae ad Atticum.



# LATIN GRAMMAR

## PART I

### PHONOLOGY

#### THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that Latin has no *w* and no *j*.

*α*. *K* occurs only in a few words, e.g. *Kalendae*, usually abbreviated to *Kal*. *C*, which comes from a form of the Greek letter Gamma, retains its original value of *g* in the abbreviations *C.* for *Gāius* and *Cn.* for *Gnaeus*. *Y* and *z* are used, in Cicero's time and later, in the transcription of words borrowed from the Greek.

NOTE. The Latin alphabet appears in our English alphabet, with certain changes that have arisen in the course of time, either in the forms of the letters (our small letters are the results of such changes, for the Romans regularly used only capitals), or in the evolution of new characters which did not exist or were not recognized as distinct letters by the Romans. Thus *V* was used for both vowel and consonant, as in *CVM* and *VIR*, and similarly *I* in *IN* and *IAM*. *U* was simply the rounded form of *V*, while *J* is a late variety of *I*. The distinction of the letters *v* and *u* is of such convenience as to be commonly retained. On the other hand, since the consonantal value of *i* is restricted to an easily defined position (11), there is less advantage in distinguishing it to the eye, and the use of *j* may well be discarded.

#### THE LATIN SOUNDS

##### Phonetic Explanations

2. **Vowels and Consonants.** Vowels, such as *a*, *e*, *o*, etc., furnish the body of the syllable and bear its stress, while consonants, such as *t*, *p*, *g*, *x*, etc., are accessory. Thus in the word *top* the weight of the syllable, as it were, is in the *o*.

English *y* and *w* (as in *yet*, *wet*), Latin consonantal *i* and *v*, are consonants. But in their formation they are so closely allied to the *i* and *u*

vowels (as in *pin*, *pull*), differing from them mainly in being uttered more rapidly, that they are sometimes called *Semivowels*.

3. Vowels are distinguished in various ways, among others as *open* and *close*. The *a* in *father* is open, the tongue lying flat and the breath passing out without any obstruction; whereas *i* (in *pin*) and *u* (in *pull*) are close vowels, the tongue being raised close to the roof of the mouth, leaving but a narrow space for the breath. Intermediate are the sounds of *e* in *let* and *o* in *hot*. *Open* and *close* are relative terms, an infinite number of degrees being possible. The long *i* and *u* in *machine*, *rule* are still closer than the short *i* and *u* in *pin*, *pull*. So too the long *e* and *o* of *they*, *no* are closer than the short *e* and *o* of *let*, *hot*.

4. *Nasalized* vowels are such as are heard in the "nasal twang" which is so common in careless pronunciation.

5. *Diphthongs*. Diphthongs are combinations of two vowels pronounced in the same breath-impulse, as *ai* in *aisle*, *oi* in *coin*. The stress is on the first vowel, the second being much less distinct.

6. Consonants are divided, according to the *general nature of the sound*, into:

1. *Liquids*, as *l* and *r*.
2. *Nasals*, as *n*, *m*, and *ng* (in *singing*).
3. *Fricatives* or *Spirants*, as *f*, *s*, *z*, *th* in *thin* or *then*, etc. Of these, *s* and *z* are also called *Sibilants*.
4. *Mutes* or *Stops*, as *p*, *t*, *b*, etc.
5. *Aspirates* or *Aspirated Mutes*. These are mutes closely followed by an additional breath-element, as in compounds like *boat-house*, *loop-hole*, etc., except that in these the mute and aspirate are in different syllables. The sounds of English *th*, *ph* in *thin*, *physic* are not aspirates, but *fricatives*.

7. Consonants are divided, according to the *position of the organs in play*, into:

1. *Labials*, as *p*, *b*, *f*, *m*.
2. *Dentals*, as *t*, *d*, *n*.
3. *Gutturals* or *Palatals*, as *k*, *g*, *ng* (in *singing*).

8. Consonants are divided, according as they are produced *with* or *without vibration of the vocal chords*, into:

1. *Voiced Consonants* or *Sonants*, as *b*, *d*, *g*, *z*, *l*, *r*, *n*, *m*.
2. *Voiceless Consonants* or *Surds*, as *p*, *t*, *k*, *s*, *f*.



## VOWELS

## 9. The vowels are pronounced as follows :

a as in the first syllable of <i>aha</i> .	ō about as in <i>no</i> .
ā as in <i>father</i> .	i as in <i>pin</i> .
e as in <i>let</i> .	ī as in <i>machine</i> .
ē about as in <i>they</i> .	u as in <i>pull</i> .
o about as in <i>obey</i> .	ū as in <i>rude</i> .

y like French u or German ü (with the tongue in position to pronounce i as in *machine*, and lips in position to pronounce u as in *rule*).

a. True short *a* and short *o* do not exist in English in accented syllables. Latin short *a* was like the long *a* in *father*, but more quickly uttered. Short *o* approached our short *o* in *hot*, but was made with the lips well rounded and well forward. In the pronunciation of many (though not of all) English-speaking people, it is heard in unaccented positions, as in *obey* and *democrat*. In attempting to reproduce this quality in an accented syllable one must avoid the natural English tendency to lengthen the vowel, which would lead us into the serious error of pronouncing Latin *post* like English *post*.

b. The English long vowels in such words as *they* and *no* are not strictly pure vowels, for they have a slight "vanishing" sound at the end, giving them the character of diphthongs, which may be roughly indicated by *ēi* and *ōu*. The Latin *ē* and *ō* were pure vowels like the corresponding German or French vowels (German *See*, *Sohn*; French *été*, *chose*).

c. The Latin long vowels differed from the short not only in the length of time taken for utterance, but also (except in the case of *a*, *ā*) in quality, the long vowels being closer (see §) than the short. This is also true of the English vowels.

## DIPHTHONGS

## 10. The diphthongs are pronounced as follows :

ae like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> .	eu as <i>é(h)-oo</i> , smoothly pronounced
au like <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> .	in the same breath-impulse.
oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>coin</i> .	ui as <i>oé-ee</i> , smoothly pronounced in
ei like <i>ei</i> in <i>deign</i> .	the same breath-impulse.

a. The pronunciation of *ae*, *oe*, and *au* as monophthongs (*ae* as open *ē*, *oe* as close *ē*, *au* as open *ō*) was current in vulgar speech from an early date, but in cultivated speech the diphthongal pronunciation lasted well into imperial times. An earlier form of *ae* was *ai*, as was *oi* of *oe*. Most cases of original *oi* passed through *oe* to the monophthong *ū*, as *oīnos*, — *oenus*, — *ūnus*.

b. The original diphthong *eu*, once very common, was merged in prehistoric times with *ou*, and this *ou*, still existing in early Latin, passed on to *ū*. So original \**deuō*<sup>1</sup> early Latin *deuō*, later *dūō*. Hence it is that *eu* is of somewhat rare occurrence in Latin, being confined to some interjections like *heu*, some Greek words like *Eurus*, *south-east wind*, and a few words in which the *eu* was of recent origin, as *seu*, *neū*, *ceū* (beside the fuller forms *sive*, etc.). Neuter was trisyllabic throughout early and classical Latin. In *neutiquam* the first syllable was short, as if the spelling were *n'utiquam*.

<sup>1</sup> The asterisk (\*) indicates an assumed form, that is, one which is not actually found, but is reconstructed, either after parallel forms which *are* found, or from our knowledge of the related forms of other languages. Some of the assumed forms given in this grammar are reconstructed only as regards the particular point under discussion, other matters which would only divert the attention being ignored. So, for example, in §9, 12, *binī* is said to come from \**bīs-nī*, although the fully reconstructed form would be \**duīs-nōi*.

c. *Bi* is frequent in early inscriptions, representing an original *ei* (and also *ai* and *oi* in non-initial syllables; see 42, 3; 44, 4), but this *ei* became *i*, e.g. early *deicō*, *inceidō*, *servei*, later *dicō*, *incidō*, *servi*. In classical Latin *ei* occurs as a diphthong only in the interjection *hei* and a few words in which it was of recent origin, e.g. *dein*, *deinde* from *dē-inde*. In most words *ei* forms two distinct syllables, as in *de-i-ficus*.

d. The diphthong *ui* occurred at first only in the interjection *hui* (so in German only in the exclamations *hui*, *pfui*). But it arose later in the pronominal forms *huic*, *cui*, and *huius*, *cuius*, coming from earlier *hoic*, *quoi*, and *hoius*, *quoius*, which were still in use in the time of Cicero. In all other words *ui* forms two distinct syllables, as *fu-it*, *habu-it*, etc. And even *huic* and *cui* are dissyllables in post-Augustan poetry.

## CONSONANTS

11. Most consonants are pronounced as in English, but the following points are to be noted:

*c* always has the *k* sound as in *cat*, never the *s* sound as in *centre*.

*g* as in *get*, never as in *gem*.

*t* as in *tin*, never as in *nation*.

*s* as in *hiss*, never voiced (*z*) as in *his*.

*bs* (e.g. in *urbs*, etc.) like *ps* in *cups*, not *bx* as in *tubs*.

*bt* (e.g. in *ob-tineō*) as *pt*.

*x* always *ks* as in *extra*, never *gz* as in *example*.

*n* before *c*, *g*, *qu* has the sound of *ng* in *singing*. Before *s* it lost its consonantal value, the preceding vowel being lengthened and nasalized. So *cōnsul*, pronounced *cōsul* with nasalized *ō* (4).

*r* "rolled" or "trilled" as in French.

*z* (in words borrowed from the Greek) as in *zero*.

*i* consonantal as *y* in *yet*.

*i* is consonantal when standing at the beginning of a word and followed by a vowel, and also in the interior of a word between vowels. So, for example, *iungō*, pronounced *yungō*, *biugis*, pronounced *biyugis*, *maius*, pronounced *maiys* (29, 2, a), etc.

But in a number of words borrowed from the Greek, mostly proper nouns, an initial *i* before vowels represents the vowel, e.g. *iambus*. In *Gāius* *i* is a vowel (*Gā-i-us*).

*v* as *w* in *wet*.

The letter *u* has the same value as *v* in the combinations *qu* and *ngu* and in the words *suāvis*, *suādeō*, *suēscō*. Compare English *quarter*, *anguish*, *persuade*.

*ch*, *ph*, *th* are pronounced like *k*, *p*, *t*, but with an added breath-element, — not as in *church* or *chagrin*, *physic*, *thin*. See 6, 5.

These sounds were introduced in the first century B.C. to represent, in borrowed words, the Greek aspirates, which had previously been represented by the simple mutes (e.g. *teātrum*, later *theātrum*). They came to be used also in a few genuine Latin words, as *pulcher*.

Double letters represent real double consonants, each being pronounced with a distinct articulation and in different syllables, as in *book-case*, *hoop-pole*, *well-laid*, etc. So *sic-cus*, *ap-pel-lō*.

NOTE. Although in general *h* was pronounced by careful speakers as in English, yet in certain combinations it seems to have been wholly silent, as it probably was everywhere in the popular speech. It never prevents slurring (34), the shortening of vowels before other vowels (21), or rhotacism (47), and often admits contraction (45). It is sometimes a mere sign of hiatus, that is, it is used to make clear to the eye that two vowels are to be pronounced in two syllables rather than as a diphthong. So, for example, in *ahēnus*, a not uncommon spelling of *aēnus*. Moreover, the Romans were often in doubt as to the proper spelling, such variations as *harēna* — *arēna*, *herus* — *erus*, etc., being frequent; and in the case of some words the approved spelling, which we follow, is not the historically correct one, for example, in *ānser*, *goose*, which, according to the related forms in other languages, should be *hānser*.

### CLASSIFICATION OF THE LATIN SOUNDS

12. The following scheme gives a classification of the simple Latin sounds. See the phonetic explanations (2-8). The sounds borrowed from Greek are inclosed in parentheses.

Vowels	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & \text{ā} & \\ & \text{e} & \text{o} \\ & \text{ē} & \text{ō} \\ \text{i} & & \text{u} \\ \text{ī} & (\text{y}) & \text{ū} \end{array} \right\}$			Voiced
Breathing	h			Voiceless
Semivowels	i consonant	v		Voiced
Liquids	r, l			Voiced
Nasals	n	ñ	m	Voiced
Fricatives	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} & s & f \\ & (z) & \\ \text{c, k, q} & t & p \\ (\text{ch}) & (\text{th}) & (\text{ph}) \end{array} \right\}$			Voiceless Voiced Voiceless
Mutes or Stops	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} \text{g} & \text{d} & \text{b} \\ \text{Guttural} & \text{Dental} & \text{Labial} \end{array} \right\}$			Voiceless aspirate Voiced

NOTE. Since *x* represents not a simple sound, but two sounds (*k* + *s*), it is not included in the classification.

### SYLLABLES

13. A syllable is a sound or succession of sounds uttered with a single breath-impulse.

14. Every Latin word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. The division of syllables is as follows :

1. A single consonant goes with the following vowel, as in **bo-nus, a-git, fe-rō.**

2. In the case of two or more consonants the division falls before the last consonant, except that the combinations mute + liquid, and **qu** or **gu**, go with the following vowel.<sup>1</sup> Thus :

1) **ter-men, in-ter, sic-cus, fac-tus, op-timus, prīs-cus, magis-ter, sānc-tus,**  
but,

2) **pa-tris, ala-cris, tene-brae, cas-tra, se-quer, lin-gua.**

NOTE. In a sound-group like **tr** (and **qu, gu**), the combination of the two elements is naturally so close that they were regularly pronounced in the same syllable. But the poets often made use of a division **pat-ris**, etc. (29, 3, a).

An aspirated mute, though spelled with two letters, is of course a single consonant (**pul-cher**), while **x** has the sound of two consonants (e.g. **axis**, pronounced *ak-sis*, but best written **a-xis**).

a. A syllable ending in a vowel is called *open*, while one ending in a consonant is called *closed*. Thus, the first syllable of **bo-nus** is open, that of **sic-cus** closed.

b. In the case of a closed syllable, the consonant which ends it may conveniently be called an *obstructed* consonant, since its clear and full pronunciation is made more difficult through the fact that it comes immediately before another consonant.

15. 1. In the *writing* of compounds it is convenient to divide the syllables in accordance with the etymology, as **ad-est, ad-igō**, etc. ; and it is quite possible that they were so pronounced in the studied utterance of purists. But in ordinary speech and in verse the two elements were blended, and so treated in accordance with the general system of syllabification. For example, **ad-est** and **ad-hibēō** were pronounced **a-dest, a-dhibēō**. But if a mute and a liquid came *through composition* to stand together, they were always pronounced in separate syllables, e.g. always **ab-rumpō**, never **a-brumpō** like **tene-brae**.

2. Between words in connected discourse, at least in ordinary speech and in verse, the division of syllables is the same as within a single word. That is, before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**, a final consonant goes with the following word, as happens in English in some common phrases, such as *at all*, pronounced *a-tall*. So, for example, **id est, ad haec** were pronounced **i-dest, a-dhaec**.

<sup>1</sup> It is often stated that such combinations of consonants as can be pronounced at the beginning of words (in either Latin or Greek) were not separated, the pronunciation being, for example, **fa-ctus, ca-stra, sān-ctus**, etc. But the actual division in inscriptions and manuscripts is against this; nor is the teaching of the Roman grammarians or the evidence of the Romance languages really in favor of it.

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

16. According to the length of time taken in their pronunciation, vowels are said to be *long* or *short*. Long vowels are indicated thus : *ā*, *i*, *ē*, etc. Vowels without any mark are short.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 1. If we regard the length of time taken in the pronunciation of a single short vowel as the unit, sometimes called a *mora*, we may assume that a long vowel contained two of these units or *morae*, that is, that it took twice as long. But it must be remembered that in a dead language we cannot know the exact relation in time, and that in spoken languages there are often more than two variations in quantity. So in English there are at least three, e.g. in *met*, *mate*, and *made*. In Latin it is quite possible that where vowels were lengthened before certain groups of consonants the resulting quantity was not the same as that of the original long vowels, but something between the usual short and long. This would account for the fact that the evidence is sometimes conflicting. But the matter is beyond our knowledge, and we can take account only of the two varieties. The fact that Latin verse is based on distinctions of quantity shows that the difference between long and short vowels must have been very marked,—fully as much so as between the English extremes of *met* and *made*.

NOTE 2. In most cases the quantity of a vowel is shown by its value in poetry. But where the syllable is long without regard to the quantity of the vowel (as in *dictus*, etc.; see 29, 3), that is, in the cases of what is known as “hidden quantity,” we are dependent on other kinds of evidence. Such are:

- 1) Statements of the Roman grammarians.
- 2) Spelling in inscriptions, in which long vowels are frequently marked as such.
- 3) Greek transcriptions.
- 4) Etymology.
- 5) Treatment in compounds, long vowels not being subject to the same changes as short; e.g. *adāctus* beside *āctus*, but *adfectus* beside *factus*. See 41, 42.
- 6) The inherited forms of the Romance languages, which have preserved the differences in quality which went hand in hand with differences in quantity (9, c); e.g. Italian *detto* from *dictus*, but *scritto* from *scriptus*.

Often there are several kinds of evidence combined, e.g. in *lētus*, in which the *ē* is shown by 1), 2), 3), and 6). But all the evidence must be used with caution, and in a few cases it is so meagre or conflicting that our designation of the quantity represents only what is the more probable of the two possibilities.

17. The quantity of the vowel in any given word must be learned by experience in the same way as its quality. From the outset in learning forms, the student should be as careful to note whether, for example, the vowel is short *e* or long *e*, as to note whether it is *e* or *i*. Since the quantity of vowels is always marked in the grammar and in the texts first read, there is no difficulty in doing this.

At the same time, there are certain general processes of lengthening or shortening, from which there results a uniform quantity for certain conditions; and, also, some general groupings of the facts, which, though purely mechanical, will be of assistance to the memory. Statements covering these are given in the following sections.

<sup>1</sup> In a few instances a special sign for the short vowel has been used; thus, *ā̄*, *ī̄*. Vowels are sometimes marked as common; thus, *mihī̄*. But this only means that forms belonging to two different periods were used by the poets. In this grammar such words are commonly given in the form of the usual prose pronunciation, as *mihī*.

### Quantity of Vowels in Syllables not Final

18. Vowels are always long before *ns*, *nf*, *nx*, and *nct*, as in *cōsul*, *infrā*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctus*.

NOTE. In these combinations the nasal was only faintly sounded, or, in the case of *ns*, wholly lost as a consonantal element, the preceding vowel being itself nasalized. But the total time taken in the pronunciation of the syllable remained the same, the nasalization of the vowel being accompanied by lengthening.

a. There was a tendency in certain circles to lengthen the vowel before *r* + consonant. This pronunciation was regarded in general as improper, but in some words it became the recognized one. This is certainly true of *fōrma*, *ōrdō*, *ōrdior*, *ōrñō*, and probably of *Mārcus*, *Mārcius*, *Mārs*, *Lārs*, *quārtus*.

b. Somewhat similarly before *gn*. Aside from *rēgnum*, *stāgnum*, and *sēgnis*, in which the vowel is long by origin, a pronunciation with lengthened vowel existed in the case of *dīgnus*, *sīgnum*, *īgnis*, and in words like *prīvīgnus*; but even in these it did not become established. We therefore write *dīgnus*, *sīgnum*, etc., as well as *māgnus*, *īgnōscō*, etc., for which there is no evidence whatever of a long vowel.<sup>1</sup>

c. For the quantity before *x* and *ct*, just as before many other groups of consonants, there is no uniformity; each case must be judged by itself. Just as the vowel is long by origin in *lēx* (Gen. *lēgis*), but short in *nex* (Gen. *necis*), so some Perfects, as *rēxī*, *tēxī*, etc. (173, *C, d*), have a long vowel parallel to that in *lēgī*, but others the short vowel, as *spexī*, *coxi*, etc. Similarly *lēctus*, *rēctus*, *tēctus*, etc., with a long vowel as in *lēgī*, *rēxī*, *tēxī*, but other Participles with a short vowel, as *dictus*, *factus*. See 180.

19. Vowels are long when they result from contraction, or represent diphthongs. Thus *nūl* from *nihil*, *exīstimō* from *\*ex-aestimō*.

20. Vowels are regularly short (in *all* syllables) before *nt* and *nd*. Thus *amantis*, *amandus*, *amant*, beside *amāmus*.

a. But in certain words, in which the combination of a long vowel with a following *nt* or *nd* arose after the shortening process had already taken place, the length is retained. So *cōntiō* (from *coventiō*), *prēndō* (from *pre-hendō*), *vēndō* (*vēnum-dō*), *nūntius*, *nūndinae*, *quīntus*, *īndecim*.

2. Vowels are short before *ss*, except in the contracted Perfect forms, like *amāsse* beside *amāvisse*, etc., and in the short forms of *edō*, *eat*, as *ēs*, *ēst*, *ēsse*, etc. So *fissus*, *fossus*, *sessum*, etc.

NOTE. This is because an original *ss*, when preceded by a long vowel, became *s*. See 49, 6.

<sup>1</sup> A full discussion of this matter is impossible here, but a word of justification for the departure here made from the previous practice of our grammars and lexicons is perhaps desirable. Take, for example, the word *signum*. In inscriptions it is written a few times with the tall *i* or *ei*, which point to a pronunciation with long vowel. On the other hand, the inherited forms of the Romance languages and the borrowed forms in the Germanic and Celtic languages point to a pronunciation with short vowel. In this and some other words, then, both pronunciations existed, probably in different strata of society. But there is no evidence to show that the pronunciation with long vowel was considered preferable for any of these words. So, since for the majority of words with *gn*, such as *magnus*, *ignōscō*, etc., there is no evidence whatever for the long vowel, the advantage of uniformity (barring, of course, the cases of original length, as *rēgnum*) may be allowed to tip the scales in favor of *signum* with the short vowel. In writing *signum*, *magnus*, etc., the authors are in agreement with the most recent practice of several other scholars, though many still mark the vowel long. Some, indeed, write "*signum* and *signum*," etc., but this is not possible for a school grammar.

It may be added that some scholars question whether the lengthening of a vowel before *nx* and *nct* was universal, but there is no sufficient reason for doubting this.

**21.** A vowel is regularly short before another vowel, and also when only the weak sound *h* intervenes; e.g. *pīus* (originally with long *i*), *de-hīscō* beside *dē-dūcō*, etc.<sup>1</sup> But there are some exceptions, as in:

1. Forms of *fiō*, except when *i* is followed by *er*; e.g. *fiō*, *fiunt*, *fiēbam*, etc., but *fiērī*, *fierem*, etc.
2. Pronominal Genitives like *ūnius*, *illius*, *tōtius*.
3. Genitives and Datives of the Fifth Declension in *-ēī*, when a vowel precedes; e.g. *diēī*, but *fideī*.
4. Old Genitives of the First Declension in *-āī*, as *aulāī*.
5. Some Greek words, as *āēr*, *Aenēās*, etc.
6. *Dīus* (for *divus*), sometimes *Diāna*, *ōhe*, *ōheu*.
7. Early Latin *fūit*, *plūit*, etc., but usually *fuīt*, *pluīt*.

NOTE. For the Pronominal Genitives the pronunciation *ūnius*, etc., was the one recognized by the Romans as correct, and we should follow this. But there was a tendency in common speech to shorten the vowel, and forms like *ūnius*, *illius*, *tōtius* are not uncommon in poetry of all periods. This is especially frequent in the case of *alterius*, since *alterius* could not be used in dactylic poetry; so, always, *utriusque*.

**22.** In the Root-Syllable the quantity of the vowel is generally the same for all forms derived from the same root; e.g. *scrībō*, *scrība*, *scriptor*, etc. But some roots appear in two different forms, which may differ in the quantity of the vowel, as they do sometimes in its quality. See 46.

NOTE. For Perfects and Perfect Passive Participles with vowel quantity different from that of the Present, see 173, *C, c, d*; 180. Derivatives with variation in vowel quantity, such as *sēdēs* (*sedēs*), *tēgula* (*tegō*), etc., are comparatively rare and may be learned in each individual case.

**23.** 1. The Stem-Vowel of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations is long (*ā, ē, ī*), while that of the Third is short (*e, i, u*). Thus, *amāre*, *monēre*, *audire*, but *tegere*, *tegitur*, *teguntur*.

a. But in *dō*, *give*, the stem-vowel is short *a* except in the Second Person of the Present Indicative, *dās*, and Imperative *dā*; e.g. *damus*, *dabam*, etc.

2. In the formation of Derivatives from Noun or Verb-stems, *a* is long, representing the stem of Nouns of the First Declension or Verbs of the First Conjugation; e.g. *Rōmānus*, *arātrum*. *E, o, u* are also usually long; e.g. *fidēlis*, *egēnus*, *patrōnus*, *vinōsus*, *tribūnus*, *lānūgō* (but *o* and usually *u* are short before *l*; e.g. *filīolus*, *rīvulus*, etc.). *I* is oftenest short, representing original short *i*, or a weakened *e* or *o* (42, 2, 5); e.g. *cīvitās*, *bonitās*, *dominus*; but long *i* is also frequent; e.g. *sedīle*, *rēgīna*.

3. In the stem of Nouns of the Third Declension *-on-* is always long; e.g. Gen. *sermōnis*; *-or-* is short in Neuters, e.g. *corporis*, but in Masculines

<sup>1</sup> Observe the similar shortening of a diphthong, e.g. *pre-hendō* for *prae-hendō*; likewise, though without change in spelling, *prae-eunte* (Aen. 5, 186).

and Feminines it is long except in the Nom.-Voc. Sing.; e.g. **amor**, **amōris**. Exceptions are **arbor**, *tree*, F., Gen. **arboris**; **lepus**, *hare*, M., Gen. **leporis**.

4. Verbs in **-scō**, except **discō**, **poscō**, and **compescō** have a long vowel before the suffix; e.g. **crēscō**, **pāscō**, **adolēscō**, etc. See 168. F, note; 212, 2.

24. In Compounds the quantity of vowels generally remains the same as in the separate parts. Thus **cadō**, **incidō**; **cēdō**, **abscedō**.

But note the following variations in the form of certain prefixes:

1. **Dis** becomes **dī** before a voiced consonant; e.g. **dī-dō**, **dī-moveō**, **dī-iūdicō**. In forms like **dī-scribō**, although an **s** is dropped, the vowel is not lengthened. See 51, 7.
2. **Prō** has a short vowel before another vowel or **h**, and before **f** followed by a vowel, except in **prō-ferō** and **prō-ficiō**. So **pro-avus**, **pro-inde**, **pro-hibeō**, **pro-fugiō**, **pro-fundō**, etc. But before vowels **prōd-** is commonly used; e.g. **prōd-eō**, **prōd-esse**, **prōd-igō**.

- a. The form with the short vowel appears also in **pro-cella**, **pro-nepōs**, **pro-pāgō** (usually), and, in some other less obvious compounds, as **pro-cul**, **pro-pe**, **pro-bus**.

NOTE. Although before a vowel or **h** the short vowel may be the result of the regular shortening (21), in the other cases **pro** represents an inherited variety of **prō** (Greek has regularly the short vowel). In early Latin the demarcation in the use of the two forms was less fixed than later, and even in classical poetry there are occasional departures from the normal usage; e.g. **pro-cūrō** beside the usual **prō-cūrō**, and, *vice versa*, **prō-fundō** beside the usual **pro-fundō**.

Observe that **ā**, **ē**, and **dē** (except in such forms as **de-hiscō**; see 21) always remain long; also that **re** is always short (for **red** before vowels and **h**, see 51, 15).

3. **Ne**, not **nē**, is the form of the negative prefix in **ne-fandus**, **ne-fās**, **ne-queō**, **ne-sciō**, **ne-scius**.

## Quantity of Vowels in Final Syllables<sup>1</sup> (including Monosyllables)

### I. Words ending in a Consonant

25. Unless the final consonant is **s**, the vowel is short. Exceptions are:

1. Some (not all) monosyllables in **-l**, **-r**, **-n**, and **-c**, namely **sōl**, **sāl**, **nīl**, **pār** (with its compounds), **vēr**, **Lār**, **fūr**, **cūr**, **ēn**, **nōn**, **quīn**, **sīn**, **dīc**, **duc**, **sic**; also the Adverbs of Place **hīc**, **hūc**, **illīc**, etc. (For the Nominatives **hoc** and **hic**, see 30, 2.)

<sup>1</sup> These statements do not cover all early Latin forms or words borrowed from the Greek, which often retain original quantities. Thus **āēr**, **crātēr**, **Trōes**, **Simois**, **Cýmothoē**.



2. The contracted forms of the -ivī Perfect, e.g. *audīt*.

NOTE. For words ending in more than one consonant no general statement can be made, except that the vowel is always long before -ns and -nx (18), short before -nt (20, 1).

26. This prevalence of the short vowel is mainly due to the fact that every originally long vowel was regularly shortened before final *m*, *t*, *nt* (for *nt*, see also 20), and, except in monosyllables, before final *l* and *r*.<sup>1</sup> Examples of this shortening are seen as follows :

1. In verb-forms with the personal endings -*m*, -*t*, and -*nt*, wherever these are added to a tense-stem or mood-stem ending in a long vowel. The long vowel shows itself in the Second Singular and First and Second Plural. So :

- a) Present Indicative of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations ; e.g. *amat*, *amant*, beside *amās*, *amāmus*, *amātis* ; *monet*, *monent*, beside *monēs*, etc. ; *audit* beside *audīs*, etc.
- b) Imperfect Indicative of all Conjugations ; e.g. *amābam*, *amābat*, *amābant*, beside *amābās*, etc.
- c) Future Indicative of the Third and Fourth Conjugations ; e.g. *tegam*, *teget*, *tegent*, beside *tegēs*, etc.
- d) Past Perfect Indicative of all Conjugations ; e.g. *amāveram*, *amāverat*, *amāverant*, beside *amāverās*, etc.
- e) All tenses of the Subjunctive in all Conjugations ; e.g. *tegam*, *tegat*, *tegant*, beside *tegās*, etc. ; *tegerem*, *tegeret*, *tegerent*, beside *tegerēs*, etc. ; *tēxerim*, *tēxerit*, *tēxerint*, beside *tēxerimus* ; *tēxissem*, *tēxisset*, *tēxisissent*, beside *tēxisseās*, etc.

2. In all Passive forms ending in -*r* ; e.g. *tegor* from \**tegō-r* (i.e. Act. *tegō* + *r*) ; Imperf. *tegēbar* beside *tegēbāris* ; Fut. *tegar* from \**tegā-r* (as Act. *tegām* from \**tegā-m*) ; Pres. Subj. *tegar* beside *tegāris* ; Imperf. Subj. *tegerer* beside *tegerēris* ; Imperat. *tegitur*, *teguntor* from \**tegitō-r*, \**teguntō-r* ; and so in the other Conjugations.

3. In many Nom.-Voc. Sing. forms ending in -*r* or -*l* (also Accusatives in the case of Neuters) ; e.g. *amor* beside Gen. *amōris*, *animal* beside *animālis*, *calcar* beside *calcāris* ; likewise *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*, from original *patēr*, etc.

4. In the Accusative Singular of the First and Fifth Declensions, which ended originally in -*ā-m* and -*ē-m*.

5. In the Genitive Plural of all Declensions, which ended originally in -*ōm*. This first became -*om*, then -*um* (44, 1).

NOTE. But before *t* and *r* the long vowel was still retained in early Latin, and is sometimes found even in later poetry ; e.g. *arāt*, *vidēt*, *erāt*, *peterēt*, *ferār*, *amōr*, *patēr*. See under Versification, 652, 2.

27. Before final *s* the quantity varies.1. Final *as* is long ; e.g. *sellās*, *amās*.

Exceptions *anas*, *duck*, Gen. *anatis* ; *as*, *copper*, Gen. *assis*.

2. Final *es* is usually long ; e.g. *rēgēs*, *fīdēs*, *monēs*.

But final *es* is short :

- a) In the Nom.-Voc. Sing. of most dental stems which show a short vowel in the other cases, as *dīves*, Gen. *dīvitis* ; *mīles*, Gen. *mīlitis* ; *seges*, Gen. *segetis*, etc. But note *pēs*, *abiēs*, *ariēs*, *pariēs* (Gen. *pedis*, *abietis*, etc.).

<sup>1</sup> Note also that final *d* cannot occur after a long vowel, since in this position it was lost in early Latin (48). Of the other consonants which occur as finals, only *n* is frequent, and this, in large part, in Neuter *n*-Stems like *nōmen*, where the short vowel is in accordance with the origin of the formation.

*b*) In *es*, *thou art or be* (but *ēs*, *eat*, from *edō*), and *penes*, *with*.

NOTE. Original short *-es* became *-is* (44, 2). Of the examples of existing short *-es* nearly all represent earlier *-ess*, traces of which are found in early Latin (30, 3). For example, *es* is from *ess*, *miles* from *mīless* (\**mīlet-s*).

3. Final *os* is long ; e.g. *hortōs*, *fīōs*.

Exceptions : *os*, *bone* (but *ōs*, *mouth*), *compos*, *impos*.

4. Final *is* is oftenest short ; e.g. *regis*, *tegis*.

But final *is* is long :

*a*) In Plural Case-endings ; e.g. Dat.-Abl. *sellis*, *hortis*, *nōbīs*, Acc. *finīs*.

*b*) In the Second Person Singular of verb-forms where the First Plural is *-imus*, namely in :

Pres. Indic. Act. of the Fourth Conjugation, e.g. *audīs*.

Pres. Indic. Act. of some Irregular Verbs, e.g. *īs*, *fīs* ; also *vīs*, *māvīs*, etc.

Pres. Subj. Act. of some Irregular Verbs, e.g. *sis*, *velīs*, *nōlīs*.

Perf. Subj. Act., e.g. *amāverīs*, *tegerīs* (but sometimes short *-is* ; *vice versa* in the Fut. Perf. Indic. sometimes *-is* beside the regular *-is*. See 164, 6).

*c*) In *vīs*, *force*, *Quirīs*, *Samnīs* (Gen. *-ītis*) ; often *sanguīs*, rarely *pulvīs*.

5. Final *us* is usually short ; e.g. *hortus*, *genus*, *rēgibus*, *tegimus*.

But final *us* is long :

*a*) In the Gen. Sing. and the Nom. and Acc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension, as *tribūs*.

*b*) In the Nom.-Voc. Sing. of Nouns of the Third Declension which have long *u* in the other cases, as *virtūs*, *tellūs*, *iūs*, etc. (Gen. *virtūtis*, *tellūris*, *iūris*).

## II. Words ending in a Vowel

28. 1. Final *a* is oftenest short, namely in the Nom. Sing. of the First Declension and the Nom.-Acc. Plur. of all Neuters ; e.g. *sella*, *dōna*, *genera*.

But final *a* is long :

*a*) In the Abl. Sing. of the First Declension, as *sellā*.

*b*) In the Imperative of the First Conjugation, as *amā*.

*c*) In most uninflected words (except *ita*, *quia*), e.g. *iūxtā*, *trīgintā*, and Adverbs like *contrā*, *extrā*, *postēā*, which are Ablatives in origin.

2. Final *e* is usually short ; e.g. *horte, tege, tegere*.

But final *e* is long :

- a) In the Abl. Sing. of the Fifth Declension, e.g. *diē*.
- b) In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation, e.g. *monē* (but often short in *ave, cave, vale*, and, in early Latin, in many other Imperatives ; see note).
- c) In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions (126, 1), e.g. *rēctē, altē* (but always short in *bene, male*).
- d) In all monosyllables except those used as enclitics (*-que, -ne*, etc. ; see 33, 1), namely *ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē*.

3. Final *i* is long, except in *nisi, quasi*, and, in the usual prose pronunciations, in *mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi*. But the older forms *mihī, etc.*, with final long *i*, are used in poetry side by side with *mihi*, etc.

4. Final *o* is long, except in *ego, modo, cito, duo, cedo* (*give*). But in several other words it is sometimes short in poetry, e.g. *homo, volo, scio*. (From Ovid on, the short vowel becomes more and more frequent in the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, in Verb-forms, and in many other words, such as *ergo, octo, immo*, etc.)

5. Final *u* is long.

NOTE. The short final *o* and *i* in all the examples given, and likewise the short *e* in *bene* and *male*, represent originally long vowels or diphthongs, e.g. *modo* from \**modō* like *primō, bene* from \**benē* like *altē* (126, 1), *quasi, nisi* from *quasei, nisei* (so written on early inscriptions ; cf. *ai*, early *sei*). The change was due to a process known as iambic shortening. In words of two syllables the first of which was short, there was a marked tendency to shorten the final syllable if long, that is, to change the word-rhythm from *—* to *—*. This was not a mere matter of poetic usage, but a characteristic of common speech. In isolated forms, such as those mentioned, the tendency had full sway, and the short vowel is prevalent from the earliest period. In *mihi*, etc., the form with the short vowel became established, but the poets continued to use also the old form *mihī*, etc., at all periods. For other classes of words, early poetry, reflecting popular speech, shows many examples of the same process ; e.g. Gen. Sing. *domi, viri* ; Dat. Sing. *malō* ; Nom. Sing. *homo* ; Imperat. *ama, puta, mone, cave, abi, redi* ; First Sing. *volo* ; Second Sing. *vides* ; *viden* (for *vidēn*, from *vidēs-ne*), *rogan*, etc. But here the tendency to uniformity between words of the same class restored the normal type with the long vowel in the cultivated speech. Still, the short vowel remains in *puta*, meaning *for instance* (originally an Imperative of *putō*), in *viden*, *see?* and usually in *ave, cave* used as Interjections, sometimes also in *homo, volo*, etc. Such forms in final short *o* gain ground again from Ovid on (see above). The short *a* of the Nom. Sing. of the First Declension and of Neuter Plurals was once long, but here the short vowel, though probably arising in iambic forms, extended to all words, and but few traces of the long *a* are found even in early Latin.

#### QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

29. 1. Syllables are short or long, according to the length of time taken in pronouncing them.

2. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; for example, the first syllables of *māter*, *audiō*.

*a.* The first syllables of words like *maius*, *cuius*, *eius*, *Troia*, etc., are long because they really contain diphthongs. For example, *maius*, sometimes spelled *maius*, is pronounced *mai-ius*, much like our *my use*, with the accent on *my*. These words are often written *māius*, *cūius*, *ēius*, etc., but should not be, since the vowel itself is short.

3. A syllable is also long, even when the vowel is short, provided it ends in a consonant. The time taken in pronouncing the consonant, being added to that taken in pronouncing the vowel, makes the syllable long.<sup>1</sup>

That is, following the system of syllabification laid down in 14, 2, a syllable is long if its vowel is followed by two or more consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid (or *qu*). So the first syllable is :

1) Long in *por-ta*, *sic-cus*, *fac-tus*, *axis* (*ak-sis*).

2) Short in *bo-nus*, *pa-tris*, *se-quor*, *a-dhibeō* (14, 2, note ; 15, 1).

*a.* In words like *patris* the poets often use a syllabic division *pat-ris*, *teneb-rae*, etc. (14, 2, note), which makes the first syllable long.<sup>1</sup>

*b.* The poets, following Greek usage, treat *z* as a double consonant.

4. The same is true of final syllables. If a word ends in a single consonant its last syllable is long before a word beginning with a consonant, but short before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, since in this case the final consonant is carried over to the next word. See 15, 2.

30. In a few words we meet with a long syllable even where a short vowel is followed by only one consonant in the normal spelling, namely in compounds of *iaciō* (*adiciō*, *coniciō*, etc.), in *hoc*, and very often in *hic*.

1. In compounds of *iaciō* the regular spelling is *adiciō*, *disiciō*, etc. (not *adi-ciō*, etc.), and this represents the usual prose pronunciation. Yet in poetry the first syllable is nearly always long. This is explained by the older forms *adi-ciō*, etc., in which the first syllable was, of course, long. The poets made use of these earlier forms, which were more convenient for the metre, — or, at least, retained the old division of syllables, pronouncing *ad-iciō*, etc. Similarly, for *reiciō* the poets made use of the older form *rei-ciō*, in which the first syllable was long for the same reason as in *eius*, etc. (i.e. *rei-ye-ciō*, like *ei-yus*; see 29, 2, *a*) or at least retained the older form of the first syllable, pronouncing then *rei-iciō*. In the same way the first syllable is long in both *coniciō* and the less common *coiciō*.

<sup>1</sup> The quantity of the vowel is not affected. Calling the vowel "long by position" often misleads the beginner into such an error as pronouncing *est*, *is*, with a long *e*.

2. In final syllables which once ended in two consonants, these consonants were sometimes preserved in pronunciation before vowels, though not shown by the spelling. So the Nom. Sing. Neut. *hoc* stands for *hocc*, that is \* *hod* (like *quod*) + *c(e)*, and was usually so pronounced before vowels, though rarely so written. Hence it is nearly always a long syllable, for example, *hoc dōnum* and *hoc-c erat*. The Nom. Sing. Masc. *hic* (earlier *hē-c*) has a short vowel, and in earlier poetry is always a short syllable before a word beginning with a vowel. But a form *hicc* arose under the influence of *hocc*, and in the classical poets the word is oftener a long syllable than a short one.

3. In early Latin there are other similar cases, e.g. *es(s)*, *thou art*, *mīles(s)*, *ter(r)*, etc.

### ACCENT

31. The Latin accent was, like the English, one of stress. Its position is as follows :

1. In words of two syllables the accent is upon the first ; e.g. *māgis*, *tégō*.

2. In words of more than two syllables it is upon the next to the last (the *penult*) if this is long, otherwise on the next preceding that (the *antepenult*) ; e.g. *a-mī-cus*, *ma-gīs-ter*, but *bēl-li-cus*, *tē-ne-brae* (29, 3).

3. Compounds are accented in the same way ; e.g. *ād-ferō* not *ad-fērō*, *cōnficit* not *cōnfícit*. But in non-prepositional compounds of *faciō* such as *calefaciō*, *tepefaciō*, etc., which were written separately in the earliest period, the accent is always on the verb, e.g. *calefácit* not *caléfácit*.

NOTE. The system of accent here described was preceded in the earliest period of the language, before the beginnings of literature, by a different system, according to which all words had a stress accent upon the first syllable. A relic of this is seen in the early Latin accentuation of words of four syllables of which the first three are short, e.g. *fācilius*. Some important phonetic changes are traced to this *earlier accentual system*.

32. There are, however, a few exceptions to these statements.

1. When a final syllable following a long penult is lost, the accent remains on what has now become the final syllable. So *illíc* from *illíce*, *tantón* from *tantóne*, *addūc* from *addúce*, Perfect *audít* from *audívít*, etc. ; also adjectives in *-ās*, Gen. *-ātis*, denoting one's native place, as *nostrás* (from *nostrátis*), *Arpīnás*, *Capēnás*, etc.

2. The Genitive and Vocative in *-ī* of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* are accented on the penult even when short, e.g. *Vergíli*, *ingéní*.

NOTE. According to statements of the grammarians of the fourth and fifth centuries A.D., words ending with the enclitics *-que*, *-ve*, *-ne*, *-ce* were always accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic, even when this was short, e.g. *bonáque*, *limináque*, etc. Since the vast majority of inflected forms end in a long syllable, so that the accent would necessarily fall on the syllable preceding the enclitic (e.g. Abl. Sing. *bonáque*, *bonóque*, Acc. Sing. *bonámque*, etc.), one can readily see how the few forms ending in a short vowel might come to be accented in the same position. But in early Latin such forms were accented in accordance with the usual system, and there is some reason for believing that

in the Augustan period, too, the accent was still *bónaque*, *límínaque*, etc. It seems best, therefore, to accent such words in accordance with the general system, that is, *bónaque*, not *bonáque*; similarly *fítaque* (in both meanings).

33. In Latin there existed *sentence* accent, as in English, some words being emphasized by stress, others being pronounced lightly.

1. Certain words which were always unemphatic were pronounced and written as a part of the preceding word. Such words are known as *enclitic particles*, or simply *enclitics*. The commonest of these are *-que*, *-ne*, *-ve*, *-ce*, *-pte*, *-met*, *-dum*.

2. Besides these, Relative and Indefinite Pronouns, Personal and Determinative Pronouns when not emphatic, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and parts of the verb "to be" were pronounced with little or no stress.

#### SLURRING

34. 1. When a final vowel is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h*, it is slurred or *run into* the vowel of the following word (as in "await alike the inevitable hour"), without, however, changing the quantity of the latter.

NOTE. It is frequently said that the final vowel was dropped in such a case. We know, however, that it was not wholly lost. One should pronounce it very lightly, quickly passing to the following word. Thus *bon<sup>a</sup> et*, *bon<sup>a</sup>(h)aec*.

2. The same is true of a word ending in *m*, final *m* losing its consonantal value before a word beginning with a vowel or *h*. The preceding vowel was nasalized, and the lips approached each other in a sort of *w*-sound, which did not interfere with the slurring of the vowels, e.g. *bonum addit*, pronounced *bon<sup>nw</sup>addit*; *bonum hoc*, pronounced *bon<sup>nw</sup>(h)oc*; *bonam addit*, pronounced *bon<sup>nw</sup>addit*.

NOTE. Such pronunciation need occasion no difficulty in practice. If one tries, in the case of *-um*, simply to touch lightly upon the *u* in passing to the following vowel, the nasalization and the glide *w* will be produced unconsciously. The same habit can then be easily transferred to combinations with other vowels.

3. Owing to their unemphatic or enclitic use the words *es*, *are*, and *est*, *is*, *lose their vowel* when preceded by a word ending in a vowel, just as in English *you're*, *he's*, *she's*. And this, in contrast to the processes mentioned in 1 and 2, is sometimes indicated in the writing. So *bonas* for *bona es*, *bonast* for *bona est*, and also *bonust* for *bonum est* (*bonum* being pronounced without the final *m*; see 2).

NOTE. Instead of *bonust*, which is the only contracted spelling for *bonum est* known on inscriptions, and which is frequent enough in MSS., our text-books, if they use

the contracted spelling at all, write *bonumst*, which is a later spelling introduced to distinguish this from another *bonust*, an early Latin form for *bonus est* (i.e. really from *bonu est*, a final *s* in early Latin being lost under certain conditions). The spelling *bonumst* invites a wrong pronunciation and misleads one as to the way in which the form originated. If the *m* had been fully sounded, the vowel of *est* would have remained, since it is never lost after consonants. Such a form as *idst* for *id est*, like English *it's*, is unknown in Latin.

#### SUGGESTIONS WITH REGARD TO PRONUNCIATION

**35.** A correct pronunciation is, of course, by no means the most important thing in the study of Latin, but, if attained, it will lend much attractiveness to the reading of the literature. The three striking differences (**36**, **37**, **38**) between Roman pronunciation and the pronunciation of English should therefore be constantly kept in mind.

**36.** The difference in time between a short vowel and a long vowel was as great in Roman speech as in the *extremes* of short and long in our speech (e.g. *met* and *made*), and was *steadily observed*. Thus the *ā* in the termination *-ānus* (e.g. *Rōmānus*) took, roughly speaking, twice as long to pronounce as the short *a* in *anus*, *old woman* (*-ānus* = *āānus*).<sup>1</sup>

**37.** The pronunciation of an obstructed consonant (**14**, 2, *δ*) was much fuller and clearer in Roman speech than it ordinarily is in English, — so full and clear, indeed, that it took about *as much time as a short vowel*. For example, in *ān-nus*, *pēc-tus*, or *lā-te*, the obstructed *n*, *c*, or *s* at the end of the first syllable takes as much time to utter as the *a*, the *e*, or the *i*. In an English word like *protected*, on the other hand, so little time is spent upon the *c* in ordinary speech that the syllable which it ends belongs to the short class rather than to the long class.

**38.** The Romans habitually slurred a vowel (**34**, 1 and 2) at the end of a word before an initial vowel or *h*, unless there was some special reason for pausing. In English we occasionally do this, especially with such words as *to* or *the* (e.g. *I desire to advance the all-important interests of*, etc.), but habitually we do not.

**39.** There are certain very common combinations of quantities with accent, which, though they occur in English in

<sup>1</sup> Instead of trying to remember that, in his book, a given vowel in a given word *had a mark over it*, or did not, the student should rather, in learning each new word, *pronounce* all the long vowels distinctly long, and the short vowels distinctly short (or so *think* the pronunciation to himself), and thus fix the word in mind *as sounding* so and so. When, later, he has occasion to write the word, he should ask himself, not "How did it look in the book?" but "How do I pronounce it?"

A student who possesses the gift of visual memory should of course avail himself of it. But, even in his case, the picture of the printed word which he carries in mind should be translated at once into a memory of sound.

*groups* of words, do not occur in any single word, and are therefore strange to us. These accordingly require special practice and care at the beginning. The most important are as follows :

- 1) The combination  $\cup$ —, as in *déae*, *déō*, *ámā*, *mónē*, *ténē*, *iúbēs*, *tórō*. Compare English *at home* and *tō home* in "I said *at home*, not *tō home*." The difficulty here is in making the first syllable really short, and in keeping *all accent off* the second syllable, while at the same time tranquilly giving it its full length. This is the hardest Latin combination for modern speakers.
- 2) The combination  $\cup \cup$ —, as in *Latiō*, *rapidī*. Compare English *Merry Mount* (with the last word lengthened, but not accented).
- 3) The combination —  $\cup$  or —  $\cup$ —, as in *rēgīna*, *rēgīnā*. Compare English *whole pallful*, with full length, but no accent, on *whole*, and full length, *with* accent, on *pail*.
- 4) The combination (much like the preceding)  $\cup$ — $\cup$ , or  $\cup$ — $\cup$ —, as in *amābāmus*, *tenēbātur*, *trahēbātur*. Compare English *a whole pallful*, with the *a* short, and the rest as above.
- 5) The combination —  $\cup \cup \cup$ , or —  $\cup \cup$ —, as in *dīvidimus*, *iūdiā*, *impériō*, *ōcéanō*. This may be reproduced in the English *no silliness*, pronounced with a long *no*, not accented, and with a short and accented first syllable in *silliness*.

40. The student should regard the marking of long vowels in writing Latin simply as a form of spelling, to represent *differences of sound*. Long *i* and short *i*, for example, are as different in Latin as *i* in *fit* and *ee* in *feet* in English.

## PHONETIC CHANGES<sup>1</sup>

### Weakening of Vowels in Medial Syllables

41. The vowels of medial syllables are subject to certain modifications which do not appear in initial syllables. This is most apparent in the variation of the root-syllable, observable between compounds and

<sup>1</sup> Only such changes are mentioned as are fairly obvious, and involve the relations of existing Latin forms. There are many other changes, a treatment of which is needful and possible only in connection with the forms of other languages.

Changes in the quantity of vowels have been mentioned already (18-21, 26, 28, note); also some changes of original diphthongs (10, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*).



the simple words from which they are derived, as *faciō*, but *per-ficiō*. But the change is not confined to such cases.

NOTE 1. These changes came about at a time when the older accentual system (31, note) prevailed, according to which all but initial syllables were unaccented. The slighting of the vowels of unaccented syllables is common to languages with a strong stress accent, and nowhere more so than in English, where the result of the weakening is usually an obscure vowel much like *u* in *but*. Note, for example, the pronunciation of *drayman*, *ploughman* as compared with that of *man*, or the identical sound given to the *a*, *e*, and *o* of *currant*, *patient*, *patriot* (but *patriotic*). In Latin the weakening takes the form of replacing the more open vowel by one less open. So *a* is changed to *e*, and *e* frequently to *i*; similarly *ai* (*æ*), through *ei*, to *i*. Sometimes, owing to the character of the surrounding sounds, the change is to *u*; similarly *au* (through *ou*) to *ū*. Long vowels are never affected. Contrast *ad-actus* from *actus* with *ad-fectus* from *factus*.

NOTE 2. In many compounds the feeling for the connection with the single word is so strong that the latter appears without change. So *circum-agō*, *lead around*, *ad-legō*, *elect to*, etc. Sometimes both weakened and unchanged forms are found: thus from *necō* the compound *ē-nicō* is found in early Latin, but the usual form is *ē-necō*; *cōn-secrō*, from *sacrō*, remains the usual form, but *cōn-sacrō* is also found. This retention or revival of the form of the simplex in compounds is known as *Recomposition*, and is seen in our pronunciation of *man* in *iceman*, as contrasted to that given to it in *drayman*, or in the pronunciation *fore-head* beside *for'ed*, *Saturday* beside *Saturd'y* (like *Mond'y*), etc.; also in *housewife* beside *hussy*, which is in origin the same word. In uncompounded words there are other influences which sometimes prevent the usual changes.

#### 42. The principal changes are as follows:

1. *a* becomes *i* before a single consonant except *r*, and before *ng*; it becomes *e* before *r* and before two consonants, and *u* before *l* + consonant.<sup>1</sup>

<i>agō</i>	<i>ad-igō</i>	<i>cadō</i>	Perf. <i>cecidī</i>
<i>faciō</i>	<i>per-ficiō</i>	<i>capiō</i>	<i>ac-cipiō</i>
<i>tangō</i>	<i>at-tingō</i>	<i>frangō</i>	<i>cōn-fringō</i>
<i>pariō</i>	Perf. <i>peperi</i>	<i>fallō</i>	Perf. <i>fefelli</i>
<i>factus</i>	<i>per-fectus</i>	<i>captus</i>	<i>ac-ceptus</i>
<i>saltō</i>	<i>in-sultō</i>	<i>calcō</i>	<i>in-culcō</i>

NOTE. Recombosition (41, note 2) is seen in *circum-agō*, *com-parō*, etc. In Noun-Stems ending in *a* + consonant, the *a* of the Nom. Sing. remains unchanged in the other cases; e.g. *Caesar*, *Caesar*, Gen. *Caesaris*.

2. *e*, unless preceded by *i*, becomes *i* before a single consonant except *r*.

<i>teneō</i>	<i>at-tineō</i>	<i>regō</i>	<i>cor-rigō</i>
<i>sedeō</i>	<i>ad-sideō</i>	<i>premō</i>	<i>com-primō</i>
<i>miles</i>	Gen. <i>militis</i>	(but <i>pariēs</i>	Gen. <i>parietis</i> )

NOTE. Recombosition is seen in *ad-legō*, *circum-sedeō*, etc. In forms like *segetis* (Gen. of *seges*) as compared with *militis*, the retention of the *e* is due to the assimilating influence of the *e* of the first syllable.

<sup>1</sup> This statement combines the final results of several different changes which took place at successive periods.

3. *ae* becomes *ī*, and *au* becomes *ū*.

quaerō	in-quirō	claudō	in-clūdō
caedō	Perf. cecidī	causa	ac-cūsō

NOTE. But oftener Recomposition takes place, as *ad-haereō*, *ex-audiō*, etc.

4. *av* and *ov* become *u*.

lavō	ē-luō	novus	dēnuō (*dē-novō)
------	-------	-------	------------------

5. *o* becomes *i* (or *e* if preceded by *i*) before a single consonant except *l*; it becomes *u* before two consonants and, unless preceded by a vowel, before *l*. Examples:

ilicō	from *in(s)locō	leguntur	from *legontor
bonitās	" *bono-tās (bonus)	porculus	" *porco-los (porcus)
societās	" *socio-tās (socius)		but filiolus (filius)

NOTE. But the change to *i* is rare except before suffixes, as in *bonitās*. In the root-syllable of compounds *o* nearly always remains unchanged, e.g. *ab-rogō*, *con-locō*, *ad-moneō*, etc. For the change to *u*, see also 44, 1.

6. (Note to 1, 2, and 5.) When the vowel of the medial syllable, whether *a*, *e*, or *o*, is followed by a labial (*p*, *b*, *f*, or *m*), it is sometimes changed to *u* instead of to *i*, — but not always, and the reasons for the difference are not clear, except that the quality of the vowels of the surrounding syllables was a factor. In some of these words the *u* remained unchanged, but in most it was eventually supplanted by *i*. Examples are: *oc-cupō* (from the root *cap-* of *capiō*) as compared with *anti-cipō*; *au-cupis*, Gen. of *auceps*, compared with *principis* from *princeps*; *con-tubernālis* (*taberna*); *possumus*, *volumus* compared with *agimus*, *teginus*; *mancupium* and *mancipium*; *maxumus* and *maximus*, *proxumus* and *proximus*, etc. The same variation is seen when the original vowel was *u* or *i*, e.g. *cornu-fex* and *corni-fex* (*cornu-*), *pontu-fex* and *ponti-fex* (*ponti-*), and in some cases of original *u* even in initial syllables, e.g. *lubet* and *libet*, *clupeum* and *clipeum*.

### Syncope of Vowels

43. 1. Short vowels are sometimes lost in medial and final syllables. So, for example, *surgō* beside the older *sur-rigō*, *pergō* from \**per-rigō*; *reppulī*, *rettulī*, from the reduplicated Perfects \**re-tetulī*, \**re-pepulī*; *valdē* beside *validus*; *caldus*, *soldus*, beside *calidus*, *solidus*; in final syllables *nec*, *ac*, beside *neque*, *atque* (cf. also words having enclitic *-c*, *-n*, beside *-ce*, *-ne*); Nom. Sing. of *i*-Stems *pars*, *mōns*, etc., from original Nom. \**partis*, \**montis*, Neut. *animal* from *animāle*, \**animālī*.

NOTE. Like the weakening of vowels, this process began under the old accentual system (31, note), as shown by *rettuli* from \**rē-tetuli*, etc. Where double forms like *calidus* and *caldus* exist, the shorter forms are those of the rapid utterance of everyday speech, and were often used by the poets. A similar relation, as regards use, exists between *periculum* and *periculum*, *saeculum* and *saeculum*, etc. But in these the shorter forms represent a retention of, or in part a reversion to, the original formation; the vowel before *l* is a secondary development.

2. Syncope is especially common in syllables containing *ro* and *ri*, and, if the *r* is not already preceded by a vowel, an *e* is developed before it. So regularly in the Nominative Singular of stems in *-ro-* and *-ri-*, as *puer* from \**pueros*, *ager* from \**agros*, *imber* from \**imbris*, *ācer* from \**ācris*. Similarly *sacerdōs* from \**sacri-dōs*, *agellus* (\**ager-los*) from \**agro-lo-s*, etc. The successive stages of development are, for example, \**agros*, \**agrs*, \**agers*, \**agerr* (49, 11), *ager* (49, 13).

### Change of Vowels in Final Syllables

44. 1. Change of *o* to *u*. Before final consonants an original *o* became *u*; e.g. *hortus*, *hortum*, *illud*, *legunt*, from \**hortos*, \**hortom*, \**illod*, \**legont*, the stem-vowel in all such cases being *o*.

A similar change took place in medial syllables before two consonants or *l* (42, 5); and even in initial syllables *o* became *u* when followed by *l* + consonant or by *nc*, *ngu*, *mb*; e.g. *multa* from *molta*, *hunc* from *honc*, etc. In all three classes of words this change took place in the third century B.C., and examples of the original *o* are found only in the earliest inscriptions; e.g. *praefectos*, *opos*, *cōsentient*, *pōcolom*, *molta*, *honc*.

But if the *o* was preceded by *v* or *u*, it was retained for nearly two centuries longer, so that *vivos*, *exiguos*, *servos*, *equos*, *relinquunt*, *sequuntur*, *volit*, *volgus* are the proper forms not only for Plautus and Terence, but also for Cicero. And when the change to *u* finally came, the product of *quo* and *guo* was at first *cu*, *gu*, not *qu*, *gu*, which were introduced later; *cum* for earlier *quom* remained.

The forms of the different periods may be illustrated as follows:

Earliest Inscriptions . . .	<i>hortos</i>	<i>servos</i>	<i>equos</i>	<i>relinquunt</i>
Plautus, Cicero . . . .	<i>hortus</i>	"	"	"
Augustan Period . . .	"	<i>servus</i>	<i>ecus</i>	<i>relin cunt</i>
Later Imperial Period .	"	"	<i>equus</i>	<i>relinquunt</i>

2. Before final *s* or *t* an original *e* became *i*; e.g. in Verb forms like *legis*, *legit* from earlier \**leges*, \**leget* (with the "thematic vowel" *e*), or Gen. Sing. *patris*, etc., from \**patr-es* (the original Genitive ending of consonant-stems being *-es* or *-os*).

3. An original final *i*, if it was not dropped (43, 1), became *e*; e.g. ante from \**anti* (cf. *anti-cipō*), or Nom. Sing. Neut. *mare*, *sedile*, etc., from \**mari*, \**sedili* (i-Stems).

4. In final syllables original *oi* (which in initial syllables became *oe*, *ū*; see 10, a) and *ai* (*ae*) became first *ei*, then *i*. So Nom. Plur. *horti*, Dat.-Abl. Plur. *hortis*, *sellis*, from early Latin *hortei*, *horteis*, *selleis*, these from earlier \**hortoi*, \**hortois*, \**sellais*.

### Contraction of Vowels

45. Two like vowels unite to form the corresponding long vowel, as *nīl* from *nihil*, *bīmus* from \**bi-himus* (*hiems*), *cōpia* from \**co-opia*, *currūm* from *curruum* (Gen. Plur.). For the contraction of two unlike vowels



e.g. *rēctus*, *rēxī* (*regō*), *coctus*, *coxī* (*coquō*), *ūnctus*, *ūnxī* (*unguō*), *vectus*, *vexī* (*vehō*). And as *v* between vowels sometimes stands for original *gu*,<sup>1</sup> we find *ct* and *x* in interchange with *v*; e.g. Nom. Sing. *nix*, Gen. *nivis* (from *\*niguis*; cf. *ninguit*), *vīxī*, *vīctus* (*vīvō*); similarly *frūctus* (*fruor*), *flūxī* (*fluō*), etc.

3. A guttural mute is lost between *l* or *r* and a following *t*, *s*, *m*, or *n*; e.g. *fultus*, *fulsī* (*fulciō*), *tortus*, *torsī*, *tormentum* (*torqueō*), *urna* (*urceus*).

4. A dental mute is assimilated to a following *s*, and the resulting *ss* becomes *s* if standing after a long syllable, or before another consonant, or if final; e.g. *messuī* from *\*met-suī* (*metō*), *clausī*, earlier *claussī* from *\*claud-sī* (*claudō*), *aspiciō* (*ad-spiciō*), *mīles*, earlier *mīless* (30, 3) from *\*mīlet-s*.

5. When a final dental of a root comes to stand before a suffix beginning with a dental, the result is *ss*, which, after a long syllable, is reduced to *s*. So *sessum* from *\*sed-tum* (*sedeō*), *fissus* from *\*fid-tos* (*findō*), *clausus*, earlier *claussus* from *\*claud-tos* (*claudō*), etc. But if the second dental is followed by *r*, the result is *str*; e.g. *rōstrum* from *\*rōd-trom* (*rōdō*).

6. Original *ss*, as well as the *ss* arising under the rules just given, was reduced to *s* when preceded by a long syllable. So *hausī* from *haus-sī* (*hauriō* from *\*hausiō*, 47), as *clausī* from *claus-sī* (4), *clausus* from *claussus* (5). *Ll* sometimes suffers a similar reduction, as in *mīlia* from *mīllia*, *paulum* from *pauillum*.

a. The *ss* remains in the contracted Perfect forms, like *amāsse* beside *amāvisse*, and in the short forms of *edō*, *eat*, as *ēsse*, *ēssētur*.

7. A *p* is sometimes inserted between *m* and a following *t* or *s*; e.g. *ēemptus* (*emō*), *sūmpsī* (*sūmō*), *hiemps* beside *hiems*.

8. Dental and labial mutes are assimilated to a following guttural, and dentals to labials. So *ac-cidō* from *\*ad-cadō*, *siccus* from *\*sit-cos* (*sitis*), *oc-cidō* from *\*ob-cadō*, *ap-pāreō* from *ad-pāreō*, etc.

9. A nasal is assimilated to the class of the following mute; e.g. *im-putō* (*in-putō*), *eundem* (*eum-dem*), *prīnceps* with guttural *n* (*prīmus*).

10. Labial and dental mutes when followed by a nasal become nasals, and, if the preceding syllable is long, *mm* becomes *m*. So:

<i>summus</i> , from <i>*sup-mos</i> ( <i>super</i> )	<i>somnus</i> , from <i>*sop-nos</i> ( <i>sopor</i> )
<i>mamma</i> “ <i>*mad-mā</i> ( <i>madeō</i> )	<i>rāmus</i> “ <i>*rād-mos</i> ( <i>rādix</i> )

<sup>1</sup> The sound-group *gu*, parallel in character and origin with *qu*, was retained only after *n*, as in *unguō*, etc. Otherwise, when followed by a vowel, it lost the *g*, appearing then as *v*, which, in case the preceding vowel was *u*, was itself lost. Hence *ninguit*, *nix*, but *nivis*; *frūctus*, but *fruor* (from *\*frūvor*, *\*frūguor*), etc.

11. *dl, ld, nl, ln, rl, ls* become *ll*, and *rs* becomes *rr*. So:

<i>sella</i> , from * <i>sed-lā</i> ( <i>sedēō</i> )	<i>sallō</i> , from * <i>saldō</i> (English <i>salt</i> )
<i>corōlla</i> " * <i>corōn-lā</i> ( <i>corōna</i> )	<i>collis</i> " * <i>colnis</i>
<i>agellus</i> " * <i>ager-los</i>	<i>velle</i> " * <i>vel-se</i> (cf. <i>es-se</i> )
<i>ferre</i> from * <i>fer-se</i>	

12. An *s*, or group of consonants ending in *s*, is dropped before voiced consonants, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened. So:

<i>bīnī</i> , from * <i>bis-nī</i> ( <i>bis</i> )	<i>lūna</i> , from * <i>louc-snā</i> ( <i>lūcēō</i> )
<i>prīmus</i> " * <i>prīs-mos</i> (cf. <i>prīs-cus</i> )	<i>pīlum</i> " * <i>pīns-lom</i> ( <i>pīnsō</i> )
<i>idem</i> (Nom. Sing. Masc.), from * <i>is-dem</i>	<i>sēvirī</i> " * <i>secs-virī</i> ( <i>sex</i> )

13. *Finals*. Double consonants at the end of a word are simplified. So *os*, *bone*, from \**oss* (Gen. *ossis*); *miles* from *mīless*, \**mīlets* (4); *mel* from \**mell*, \**meld* (Gen. *mellis*; see 11); *far* from \**farr*, \**fars* (Gen. *farris*; see 11); *ager* from \**agerr*, \**agers* (11, 43, 2). Note also *cor* from *cord* (Gen. *cordis*) and *lac* from *lact* (Gen. *lactis*).

*a*. In Nom.-Acc. *hoc* from *hocc*, \**hod-c* (8), the double consonant was retained, in pronunciation, before a vowel; in early Latin also *mīless*, etc. See 30, 2, 3.

### Assimilation in Compounds

50. When assimilation takes place in compounds, the changes are nearly all such as have just been mentioned. But assimilation is often absent, owing to the influence of the separate form of the word which is the first member of the compound. This is the same principle of Recomposition that often prevents the regular vowel changes in the second member of compounds (41, note 2).

Thus the Nom.-Acc. Sing. Neut. of *quisquam* is regularly *quicquam* (rarely *quidquam*), but that of *quisque* is regularly *quidque* (rarely *quicque*); while from *quisquis* both *quidquid* and *quicquid* were in common use, and from *quispiam* both *quippiam* and *quidpiam*.

The greatest variation is seen in the so-called prepositional compounds, that is, compounds with adverbial prefixes, most of which occur separately as Prepositions. For certain combinations assimilation predominates from the earliest period; in others only the unassimilated form is in use until a late period. So, for example, spellings like *accipiō*, *attineō* are more common at all periods than *adcipiō*, *adtimeō*, and, though the latter forms are sometimes found in imperial times, it is doubtful if the recomposition affected anything but the spelling. On the other hand, spellings like *adferō*, *adsignō*, *conlocō*, etc., prevailed to the almost total exclusion of *afferō*, *assignō*, *collocō* until several centuries after Christ, so that we must believe that *ad* and *con* were actually so pronounced in such words. Yet here again there are special cases. For example, the spelling *collēgium*, exclusively employed down to the time of Augustus, gives way to *collēgium* in the Augustan period, though *conlocō* and other similar forms continue to prevail until a much later period.

51. The following are the forms of the adverbial prefixes according to the normal spelling. For the sake of convenience, the few variations not coming under the head of assimilation are also mentioned.

1. **Ab** remains unchanged before *d, g, l, n, r,* and *s,* is replaced by *abs* before *t* and *c,* by *as* before *p,* by *au* before *f,* by *ā* before *m,* and before *f* in *ā-fui*. Examples: *ab-dō, ab-gregō, ab-luō, ab-nuō, ab-rumpō, ab-solvō, abs-tineō, abs-condō, as-portō, au-ferō, ā-mittō.*

2. **Ad** is assimilated before *t, c,* and *p,* as *at-tineō, ac-cipio, ap-pareō.* (But before *p* in verbs other than *appellō, appāreō, apparō,* the spelling with *d* is very frequent, as *ad-probō,* etc.) The *ad* remains unchanged before *b* (*ad-bibō, m* (*ad-mittō*), *q* (*ad-quiēscō*), *g* (*ad-gredior*, but *ag-gerō* frequently), *f* (*ad-ferō*), *s* (*ad-signō*), *n* (*ad-numerō*). Before *l* it usually remains unchanged, as *ad-luō, ad-legō,* etc., but in *al-ligō* (*-āre*) and *al-lātus* the assimilated form is preferable. Before *r* it usually remains unchanged, as *ad-rogō,* etc., but is assimilated in *ar-ripiō* and *ar-rigō.* Before *gn, sc, sp,* and *st,* it is assimilated (*ag-gn, as-sc, as-sp, as-st*), and one of the two like consonants is dropped, as *agnōscō, ascribō, aspicio, astō,* etc. But in many words the unassimilated form is also frequent, in some even preferable. So *agnātus* and *adgnātus, agnōscō* and *adgnōscō; ascendō* and *adscendō, ascribō* and *adscribō, asciscō* and *adsciscō; aspirō* and *ad-aspirō, aspicio* and (less commonly) *adspicio,* but regular *aspergō, aspernor; astō* and *adstō,* but usually *adstipulor, adstringō* and *adstruō.*

3. **Amb** (older *ambi*), seen in *amb-igō, amb-ūrō,* etc., becomes *am* before a consonant, as *am-plector, am-putō.*

4. **Ante** appears as *anti* (its original form) in *anti-cipō, anti-stes,* and sometimes in *anti-stō.*

5. **Circum** becomes *circu* in *circu-eō* beside *circum-eō.*

6. **Cum** appears as *con* before *t, d, c, q, g, s, f,* and *v;* as *com* before *p, b,* and *m.* Before *l* the unassimilated form is preferable except in *col-ligō* and its compounds, e.g. *con-locō, con-loquim, con-lāpus,* etc. But before *r* the assimilated form is preferable, as *cor-rumpō, cor-ripiō,* etc. Before vowels, *h,* and *gn* the form is *co,* as *co-alēscō, co-haereō, co-gnōscō* (from *gnōscō*, the older form of *nōscō*). Before *n* the form is *cō,* as *cō-niveō, cō-nectō.* *Comb-ūrō* is probably formed after the analogy of *amb-ūrō.* Before consonantal *i* the proper form is *con,* as *con-iungō, con-iūrō,* etc.; so *con-iciō* from *con-iciō,* but also *co-iciō* (30, 1), like *co-alēscō.*

7. **Dis** remains unchanged before *t, c, q, p,* and *s* (but when this is followed by a consonant, one *s* is dropped), becomes *dif* before *f, di* before voiced consonants, and *dir* before vowels. Examples: *dis-tendō, dis-clūdō, dis-quirō, dis-pōnō, dis-solvō, di-scribō, dif-ferō, di-dō, di-gerō, di-moveō, di-numerō, di-luō, di-rigō, di-vulgō, di-iudicō, dir-imō.* But *dis* sometimes appears in place of *di,* as in *dis-rumpō* beside *di-rumpō,* and regularly in *disiciō.*

8. **Ex** remains unchanged before *t, c, q, p,* and *s,* but becomes *ē* before voiced consonants. Examples: *ex-tendō, ex-clūdō, ex-quirō, ex-pendō, ex-scribō, ē-dicō, ē-gerō, ē-bibō, ē-mittō, ē-ligō, ē-numerō, ē-rumpō, ē-vocō, ē-iūrō.* Before *f* a form *ec* was used, which became *ef,* as in *ef-ferō, ef-ficiō* (earlier *ec-ferō, ec-ficiō*).

9. **In** remains unchanged before *t, d, c, q, g, n, f, v.* Before *p, b, m* it becomes *im,* as *im-perō, im-bibō, im-mittō* though the spelling *in-perō,* etc., is also found. Before *gn* the *n* is lost, as *ignōscō.* Before *l* and *r,* *in* remains unchanged until a very late period, as *in-lūstris, in-lātus, in-rumpō, in-rogō,* etc. A form *ind,* representing an early *indu* (cf. *induperator, indi-gena*), is seen in *ind-igeō* (*egeō*), *ind-ipiscor* (*apiscor*), and *ind-uō* (cf. *exuō*).

10. **Inter** remains unchanged except in *intel-legō.*

11. **Ob** is assimilated before *c, p,* and *f,* as *oc-cidō, op-pōnō, of-ferō.* It appears as *o* in *o-mittō,* as *om* in *om-mūtēscō* beside *ob-mūtēscō,* and as *os* (from *obs*) in *os-tendō.* Elsewhere it is retained.

12. **Per** remains unchanged except that it is sometimes assimilated to a following *l.* So *pel-legō* and *pel-liciō,* preferable to *per-legō, per-liciō,* but *per-lūceō* preferable to *pel-lūceō,* and always *per-luō, per-lūstrō, per-lātus.*

13. **Por,** a form related to *prō,* and seen in *por-tendō, por-riciō, por-rigō,* is assimilated in *pol-luō, pol-liceor, pos-sideō.* For *prō, pro, prōd,* see 24, 2.

14. **Sub** is treated for the most part like *ob,* but before some words beginning with *t* or *c* it appears as *sus* (from *subs*). So *sus-tineō, sus-tuiō,* beside *sub-trahō; sus-cēnseō, sus-cipio,* beside *sus-cumbō, suc-cidō.* *Sub-spicio* becomes *suspicio,* but *sub-scribō* is more usual than *suscribō.* Before *r,* *sub* remains unchanged, except in *sur-ripiō* and *sur-rēxi,* Perf. of *surgō; e.g. sub-rogō, sub-ruō, sub-rideō,* etc. *Sum-mittō, sum-moveō* are preferable to *sub-mittō, sub-moveō,* which are examples of late recomposition.

15. **Re** appears as *red* before vowels and *h,* as *red-hibeō, redeō, red-igō,* etc.; also in *red-dō,* and in early Latin *red-dūcō* (usually *re-dūcō*).

16. **Trāns** becomes *trā* before *d, n,* and *v,* as *trādō, trā-dūcō, trānō, trāvehō,* etc.; also *trāficiō.* But *trāns-dūcō,* etc., are also found.

## ORTHOGRAPHY

**52.** The spelling of many Latin words varied in different periods, or even in the same period. Our traditional orthography is that of the first century A.D., and we retain this as the normal spelling for school grammars, and for school editions even of authors like Cicero, the spelling of whose time was somewhat different. Some of the more important classes of variations are as follows :

1. The earlier forms of *servus*, *equus*, *vult*, etc., were *servos*, *equos*, *ecus*, *volt*, etc. See 44, 1.

2. For a long time the spelling varied between *u* and *i* in *maxumus*, *maximus*, *optumus*, *optimus*, *lubet*, *libet*, etc., but the spelling with *i* finally became the normal one. See 42, 6.

3. The reduction of *ss* to *s* and *ll* to *l* has been mentioned (49, 6). The spelling with one *s* or *l* is occasionally found before the Augustan period, and becomes universal in the first century. We should write *causa*, *clausus*, *mīlia*, *paulum*, — not *caussa*, *claussus*, *mīllia*, *paullum*.

4. Where *ī* stands for an original diphthong (10, *c* ; 42, 3 ; 44, 4) *ei* is the common spelling down through the time of Cicero ; e.g. *deicō* (*dīcō*), Nom. Plur. *servei* (*servī*), etc.

5. Owing to the reduction of *n* before *s* (11), the *n* is frequently omitted in inscriptions. In the Numeral Adverbs and in the Ordinals like *vīcēsimus* the omission is frequent in manuscripts also, and we often find *totiēs* beside *totiēns*, *deciēs* beside *deciēns*, *vīcēsimus* beside *vīcēsimus*, etc. But the full forms are to be preferred.

6. There was much uncertainty at all periods in the use of initial *h* ; for example, *harēna*, *haruspex*, *haedus*, *holus*, beside the incorrect *arēna*, *aruspex*, *aedus*, *olus*, and *erus*, *umerus*, *ūmidus*, beside the incorrect *herus*, *humerus*, *hūmidus*. See 11, note.

7. For variation in the spelling of compounds, see 50, 51.



## PART II

### INFLECTION

**53.** The **Parts of Speech** are the same as in English, except that there is no Article.

Definitions of the Parts of Speech are given under Syntax in **221**.

**54.** Nouns, Adjectives (including Participles), Pronouns, and Verbs are capable of **Inflection**, or change of form expressing the varied relations of the word to the other parts of the sentence. In the case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns such inflection is called **Declension**; in the case of Verbs, it is called **Conjugation**.

#### DECLENSION

**55.** Declension comprises the variations in Gender, Number, and Case.

#### GENDER

**56.** The Genders are three, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

*a.* **Natural Gender** is simply the distinction of sex, the names of males being Masculine, those of females being Feminine, and those of things without sex being Neuter.

*b.* **Grammatical Gender** is a distinction of form as manifested either by the Noun itself, by an Adjective agreeing with it, or by a Pronoun agreeing with or referring to it.

#### The Relation of Gender to Signification

**57.** Grammatical gender, which is commonly meant by the term Gender as applied in grammar, has a marked connection with natural gender, but is by no means identical with

it.<sup>1</sup> In Latin the grammatical gender of names of persons and of most animals follows the natural gender, but the names of inanimate objects are as often Masculine or Feminine as Neuter. For these the gender is determined simply by the *form*, — of the Noun itself, or if, as is often the case, the form of the Noun is not sufficiently characteristic of gender, by the form of an Adjective agreeing with it, or a Pronoun agreeing with or referring to it. What the forms characteristic of gender are will be shown under the separate Declensions, and, moreover, the gender of all Nouns will be marked.

58. Certain general statements may, however, be made which will help in remembering the gender of many words.

1. All Names of *Months* and *Winds*, and most names of *Rivers*, are Masculine. Examples :

*Aprilis, April; Eurus, the southeast wind; Tiberis, the Tiber.*

2. Most names of *Trees, Plants, Cities, Countries, and Islands* are Feminine. Examples :

*figus, fig tree; crocus, crocus; Corinthus, Corinth; Aegyptus, Egypt; Cyprus, Cyprus.*

3. *Indeclinable Nouns, Substantive Clauses, Infinitives used substantively, and quoted expressions*, are Neuter.

*nihil, nothing; totum hoc philosophāri, all this philosophizing; istuc taceō, that "I'll be still" of yours.*

a. With reference to statements 1 and 2, observe the gender of the corresponding general words: *mēnsis, month, M.* (the names of the months are really Adjectives), *ventus, wind, M., fluvius, amnis, river, M.,* — but *arbor, tree, F., planta, plant, F., urbs, city, F., terra, country, F., insula, island, F.*

b. Many words belonging to the classes mentioned under 2 are not Feminine. Forms with distinctly Neuter endings, as *Latium, Leuctra* (Plur.), *Reāte*, are Neuter; also many names of plants in *-er*, Gen. *-eris*, as *piper, pepper*. Names of cities and countries in *-i* (Plur.), as *Delphī*, are Masculine. But Feminines greatly predominate, since they include not only the forms with distinctly Feminine endings, but also most of the numerous forms in *-us*, Gen. *-i*.

<sup>1</sup> In English, where almost the only surviving sign of grammatical gender is that of the Pronouns *he, she, it*, this agrees with natural gender; for the feeling of sex-distinction (or, in the case of *it*, lack of or indifference to sex-distinction) is always associated with these words, — even when used metaphorically of inanimate objects (as *she* of a ship).

The view that *all* grammatical gender, for example as seen in Latin, is nothing but metaphorical sex-distinction, is losing ground.

59. 1. Certain words are of common gender, that is, they are Masculine or Feminine according to the sex referred to, as *civis*, *citizen* (male or female), *bōs*, *ox* or *cow*.

2. Certain names of animals have a fixed gender without regard to the sex referred to, as *vulpēs*, *fox*, always Feminine, *ānser*, *goose* and *gander*, always Masculine.

### NUMBER

60. There are, as in English, two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural.

### THE CASES

61. There are six Cases :

- Nominative** : the case of the subject ;
- Genitive** : “ *of* case ;
- Dative** : “ *to* or *for* case ;
- Accusative** : “ case of the direct object, etc. ;
- Vocative** : “ case of address ;
- Ablative** : “ *from*, *with*, or *in* case.

The meanings given are only for purposes of identification, the uses of the cases being treated in detail under the head of Syntax.

*a.* All but the Nominative and Vocative are called **Oblique Cases**.

*b.* There were originally two other cases, the **Locative** and the **Instrumental** (or Sociative). They are, for the most part, merged with the Ablative. But the Locative is still preserved in many names of places and adverbial expressions.

62. 1. The Cases are distinguished by different endings, known as Case-Endings. These are not the same for all Declensions, and in Pronouns some few endings are used which are unknown in the declension of Nouns and Adjectives.

**NOTE.** In reality the difference between corresponding case-forms of the various Declensions is largely one of *Stem*, that is, the base to which the endings are added. This is evident, for example, in the Nominatives -us, -is, -ēs, in which the ending proper is the same, namely, *s*. Yet sometimes the ending, too, is different, for example in the Dative and Ablative Plural, where the -is of the First and Second Declensions has no connection with the -ibus of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth. Very often, in the case of stems ending in a vowel, the line between the stem and the ending proper is not apparent on the surface, owing to contraction and to other phonetic changes affecting either the

stem or the ending ; so that, for practical purposes, we apply the term Case-Endings to *certain variable parts*, which, in the case of vowel-stems, include both the final vowel of the stem and the ending proper. In the case of consonant-stems, the variable terminations are also the true case-endings.

2. The Nominative and Accusative are alike in all Neuters, both in the Singular and in the Plural.<sup>1</sup>

3. The Nominative and Vocative are always alike in the Plural, and also, except in Masculines and Feminines of the Second Declension, in the Singular.<sup>1</sup>

4. The Dative and Ablative are always alike in the Plural.<sup>1</sup>

## NOUNS

63. In the declension of Nouns there are five distinct types, distinguished by different *Stems*. These are known as the Five Declensions. The form of the Genitive Singular is chosen as a convenient characteristic of each. Thus :

		<i>Stem ends in :</i>	<i>Gen. Sing. ends in :</i>
DECLENSION	I	ā	ae
"	II	o	i
"	III	i or a consonant	is
"	IV	u	ūs
"	V	ē	ēi

64. The scheme of the normal endings is as follows :

DECLENSION I		DECLENSION II	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> a	ae	us, er ; N. um	ī ; N. a
<i>Gen.</i> ae	ārum	ī	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ae	īs	ō	īs
<i>Acc.</i> am	ās	um	ōs ; N. a
<i>Voc.</i> a	ae	e, er ; N. um	ī ; N. a
<i>Abl.</i> ā	īs	ō	īs

<sup>1</sup> Hence we speak of the Nom.-Acc. Sing. Neut. as a single form ; likewise of the Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut., the Nom.-Voc. Sing. or Plur., or the Dat.-Abl. Plur.

## DECLENSION III

SINGULAR		
	<i>Consonant-Stems</i>	<i>i-Stems</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	s, — <sup>1</sup> ; N. —	is, ěs, er; N. e, — <sup>1</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>		is
<i>Dat.</i>		i
<i>Acc.</i>	em; N. —	em, im; N. e, —
<i>Voc.</i>	s, —; N. —	is, ěs, er; N. e, —
<i>Abl.</i>	e	e, i

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	N. a	M., F. ěs	N. ia
<i>Gen.</i>	um		ium
<i>Dat.</i>		ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	ēs; N. a		is (ēs) <sup>2</sup> ; N. ia
<i>Voc.</i>	N. a	M., F. ěs	N. ia
<i>Abl.</i>		ibus	

NOTE. The endings given in the middle column are those which are always the same for both Consonant-Stems and i-Stems.

## DECLENSION IV

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	us; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Gen.</i>	ūs	uum
<i>Dat.</i>	uī, ū; N. ū	ibus, ubus
<i>Acc.</i>	um; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Voc.</i>	us; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Abl.</i>	ū	ibus, ubus

## DECLENSION V

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ēī, eī	ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	ēī, eī	ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	em	ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	ēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ē	ēbus

## FIRST DECLENSION

*ā-Stems*

65. The Nominative Singular ends in short *a*, which stands for original *-ā*. Example of Declension :

<sup>1</sup> A dash indicates that the ending or, in the case of a vowel-stem, both ending and stem-vowel are lacking. But the Nom.-Voc. Sing. in *-er* from *o*-Stems or *i*-Stems, though likewise lacking both ending and stem-vowel (70, 87), is, for greater convenience, given as *-er*.

<sup>2</sup> Here, and in general in examples of inflection, forms inclosed in ( ) are variants which are less common in the best period.

**sella, seat, F.**  
(stem **sellā-**)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>sella, a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellae, (the) seats</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>sellae, of a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellārum, of (the) seats</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sellae, to or for a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellis, to or for (the) seats</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sellam, a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellās, (the) seats</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>sella, (O) seat</b>	<b>sellae, (O) seats</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>sellā, from, with, or in a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellis, from, with, or in (the) seats</b>

### Remarks on the Case-Forms

66. 1. An old form of the Genitive Singular in **-ās** is preserved in **familiās**, used in such phrases as **pater familiās**, *head of the household*, etc.

2. A Genitive form in **-āi** is found in poetry, as **aulāi**, *of the court*.

3. A Genitive Plural in **-um** beside that in **-ārum** is found in compounds of **-cola**, *dwelling in*, and **-gena**, *descendant of*; also in **amphora**, *a liquid measure*, **drachma**, *a Greek coin*, and in many proper names of Greek origin, as **Aeneadae**, **Lapithae**, etc. So **agricolum**, **Troiugenum**, **amphorum**, **Aeneadum**, etc.

NOTE. This is not a contraction of **-ārum**. The compounds of **-cola** and **-gena**, being Masculines, fell under the influence of the Second Declension, in which **-um** is an old ending. All the other words mentioned are of Greek origin, and in these the **-um** corresponds to the Greek ending.

4. For the Dative and Ablative Plural of **filia**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, the forms **filiābus** and **deābus** are frequently used to avoid confusion with the corresponding cases of **filius**, *son*, and **deus**, *god*. So in the phrases **filiis et filiābus**, **diis deābusque**. In other words **-ābus** is rare.

5. There is a Locative Singular form which is identical with the Genitive, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. In the Plural the form is the same as the Dative and Ablative, as **Athēnis**, *at Athens*.

6. The Ablative Singular once ended in **-ād**, which is preserved in early inscriptions, e.g. **sententiād**.

7. The Dative and Ablative Plural once ended in **-ais**, which first became **-eis** (still preserved in the spelling of the Ciceronian period, e.g. **viéis**), then **-is**.

### Gender

67. Words of the First Declension are Feminine, except a few referring to male persons, as **nauta**, *sailor*, **agricola**, *farmer*; also **Hadria**, *the Adriatic*.

## Greek Nouns

68. Greek nouns of the First Declension often retain their proper Greek forms in some cases of the singular. The resulting mixture of Greek and Latin declension may be seen in the following examples :

<i>Nom.</i>	Aenēās	Anchīsēs	Andromachē, -a
<i>Gen.</i>	Aenēae	Anchīsae	Andromachēs, -ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Aenēae	Anchīsae	Andromachae
<i>Acc.</i>	Aenēān, -am	Anchīsēn, -am	Andromachēn, -am
<i>Voc.</i>	Aenēā	Anchīsē, -ā, -a	Andromachē, -a
<i>Abl.</i>	Aenēā	Anchīsē, -ā	Andromachē, -ā

NOTE. Many proper names of the Greek First Declension are inflected in Latin according to the Third Declension, as *Aeschinēs*, *Miltiadēs*. Ablatives like *Anchisē* are formed according to the Fifth Declension.

## SECOND DECLENSION

## o-Stems

69. The Nominative Singular ends in **-us**, or, in the case of Neuters, in **-um**. These endings were originally **-os**, **-om** (44, 1). Examples of Declension :

	<b>hortus, garden, M.</b> (stem <b>horto-</b> )		<b>dōnum, gift, N.</b> (stem <b>dōno-</b> )	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	hortus	hortī	dōnum	dōna
<i>Gen.</i>	hortī	hortōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hortum	hortōs	dōnum	dōna
<i>Voc.</i>	horte	hortī	dōnum	dōna
<i>Abl.</i>	hortō	hortīs	dōnō	dōnīs

70. Most stems in **-ro-**, in the Nominative Singular, drop **o** and **s** of the original ending and insert an **e** before the **r**, if the latter is not already preceded by a vowel. See 43, 2. Examples :

	<b>puer, boy, M.</b> (stem <b>puero-</b> )	<b>ager, field, M.</b> (stem <b>agro-</b> )	<b>vir, man, M.</b> (stem <b>viro-</b> )
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	agrum	virum
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	ager	vir
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	agrō	virō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puerī	agrī	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

a. A few stems in **-ro-** are declined like *hortus*. So *erūs, master, numerus, number, umerus, shoulder, uterus, womb, hesperus, evening star, taurus, bull*.

b. The words like *puer*, in which the stem is **-ero-**, are : *gener, son-in-law, socer, father-in-law, adulter, adulterer, Liber, god of wine, liberi, children, vesper, evening, signi-fer, standard-bearer, armi-ger, armor-bearer*, and other compounds of **-fer** and **-ger**.

### Remarks on the Case-Forms

71. 1. Stems in **-vo-**, **-quo-**, **-uo-** retained **o** in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.* until the end of the Ciceronian period ; e.g. *Nom. servos, equos, mortuos* (Adjective), *Acc. servom, equom, mortuom*, *Nom.-Acc. Neut. aevom*. The forms of the Augustan period are *servus, servum*, etc., — but *ecus, ecum*, the forms *equus, equum* being still later. See 44, 1.

2. Proper Names in **-ius** form their Genitive Singular in **-ī** (not **-iī**) and also their Vocative Singular in **-ī** (not **-ie**). The accent is on the penult, even when it is short. So *Vergilius, Servius, Tullius, Gāius* have *Gen.* and *Voc. Sing. Vergīlī, Servī, Tullī, Gāī*.

NOTE. In such Proper Names, in contrast to the other nouns in **-ius, -ium** (see 3), the **i** of the Genitive is *not* generally replaced by **-iī**, though the latter is occasionally found.

3. Other nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** also form the Genitive Singular in **-ī**, which, however, begins to be replaced by **-iī** in the Augustan period. Such forms as *imperium, ingenium, negōtium* have *Gen. impērī, ingēnī,*



*negōtī* in Virgil and Horace, as well as in the earlier poets, but nearly always *imperīi*, *ingenīi*, *negōtīi* in Propertius, Ovid, and later poets. *Filius*, *son*, has Gen. Sing. *filī* and also Voc. Sing. *filī*.

4. A Genitive Plural in *-um* is found :

- a) Usually in words denoting coins or measures, such as *nummus*, *coin*, *sestertius*, *sesterce*, *modius*, *measure*, *iūgerum*, *acre*; e.g. *nummum*, *of coins*, etc.
- b) Frequently in *deus*, *god*, *socius*, *ally*, *liberī*, *children*, and *faber* in the phrase *praefectus fabrum*, *chief engineer*.
- c) Occasionally, in poetry, in *vir*, *man*, and some other words.

5. *Deus*, *god*, has Voc. Sing. *deus*, Nom. Plur. *dī*, Gen. Plur. *deum* beside *deōrum*, Dat.-Abl. Plur. *dīs*.

NOTE. The forms *dī* and *dīs* were sometimes spelled *dīi*, *dīis*, but were regularly pronounced as one syllable. The forms *deī*, *deīs* represent a dissyllabic pronunciation, which, however, is rare before Ovid.

6. The Locative Singular form is identical with the Genitive ; e.g. *humī*, *on the ground*, *domī*, *at home*, *Corinthī*, *at Corinth*. In the Plural the form is the same as the Dative and Ablative ; e.g. *Delphis*, *at Delphi*.

7. The Ablative Singular once ended in *-ōd*, which is preserved in early inscriptions ; e.g. *prēivātōd*.

8. The Nom. Plur. and Dat.-Abl. Plur. ended originally in *-oi* and *-ois*, which first became *-ei*, *-eis* (still preserved in the spelling of the Ciceronian period ; e.g. *servei*, *serveis*), then *-ī*, *-is*.

### Gender

72. Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir* are mostly Masculine ; those in *-um* are Neuter.

a. Feminine are :

- 1) Most names of Cities, Countries, and Islands, as *Corinthus*, *Aegyptus*, *Rhodus*, etc.
- 2) Most names of Trees and Plants, as *fāgus*, *beech*, *figus*, *fig tree*.
- 3) Some Greek Feminines, as *dialectus*, *dialect*, *diphthongus*, *diphthong*.
- 4) Also the following : *alvus*, *belly*, *carbasus*, *flax*, *colus*, *distaff*, *humus*, *ground*, *vannus*, *winnowing-fan*.

b. Neuters are: *vīrus*, *poison*, *pelagus*, *sea*, *vulgus*, *crowd*, *rabble* (sometimes *M.*), in which the Accusative has the same form as the Nominative. These words have no Plural, except that for *pelagus*, which is a Greek word, a Nom.-Acc. Plur. *pelagē* is sometimes found.

NOTE. In reality these words are Heteroclites (107), the Nom.-Acc. form belonging to the Neuters of the Third Declension like *corpus*, *genus*, etc. (85).

## Greek Nouns

**73.** Greek Nouns of the Second Declension usually follow the Latin declension. But the Nominative and Accusative Singular often end in *-os, -on*, especially in proper names in poetry. Thus *Tenedos*, Acc. *Tenedon* (also *-us, -um*), Nom.-Acc. *Īlion* (also *Īlium*).

*a. Androgeōs* has Gen. Sing. *-eō* and *-ēī*, Acc. Sing. *-eō* and *-eōn*. *Panthūs* has Voc. Sing. *Panthū*.

## THIRD DECLENSION

**74.** The Third Declension comprises :

*A.* Consonant-Stems, with various subdivisions, according to the nature of the final consonant.

*B.* *i*-Stems.

*C.* Mixed Stems, of which the Singular is declined like that of Consonant-Stems of the Mute Class, and the Plural like that of *i*-Stems.<sup>1</sup>

*D.* Some Irregular Nouns, including Stems in *-ū* and *-ov*.

**75.** Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems originally followed two totally distinct types of declension, which have been partially confused in Latin, so that many of the forms are identical in both classes. But the distinction is wholly or partially preserved in several of the cases, — most

<sup>1</sup> There are other, less common, forms of mixture between Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems, which are more conveniently treated as individual varieties of one or the other of these types. Words like *mūs*, Gen. Plur. *mūrium*, are cited under *a*-Stems. The few forms like *canis*, Gen. Plur. *canum*, which show a combination just the opposite of that seen in the Mixed Stems, are mentioned under *i*-Stems. Nouns in *-ēs*, Gen. Sing. *-is*, are classed under *i*-Stems, although the *-ēs* itself is probably not formed from an *i*-Stem (it perhaps originated in certain *a*-Stems, existing beside *i*-Stems formed from the same root, and was then extended to other *i*-Stems). Certain *i*-Stems, like *imber*, Gen. *imbris*, and the Neuters in *-al*, Gen. *-ālis*, *-ar*, Gen. *-āris*, which have lost the *i* by regular phonetic change, have come to resemble some Consonant-Stems in the Nominative Singular; but they are classed where they belong, under *i*-Stems.

Many of the words classed under Mixed Stems are also, in origin, *i*-Stems which have lost the *i* in the Nom. Sing.; e.g. *pars* from *\*parti-s* (cf. the Adverb *partim*), *gēns* from *\*genti-s*, and many others which contain the once common suffix *-ti-*. But it is not practicable to separate these from others which are properly Mute-Stems that have been drawn into this type, and from still others in which the variation between Mute-Stem and *i*-Stem is inherited from the parent speech.

Under Mixed Stems, then, are included *not* all forms of mixture between Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems, but only that particular and widespread type in which the Singular is like that of Mute-Stems.

clearly in the Genitive Plural. See the scheme of endings given in 64, and contrast the declension of *rēx* (76) with that of *turris* (87):

a. In Masculine and Feminine i-Stems the original endings of the Acc. and Abl. Sing., namely *-im* and *-ī*, were at an early period supplanted in most words (for exceptions, see below, under i-Stems) by *-em* and *-e*, the endings of Consonant-Stems; but in the Acc. Plur. the original *-is* was not superseded until after the Augustan period, though *-ēs* was also used as early as Cicero's time. Neuter i-Stems nearly always retain *-ī* in the Abl. Sing.; the Nom.-Acc. Sing. ended originally in *-i*, but this is regularly changed to *-e* (44, 3), or dropped (43, 1).

NOTE. Most of those forms which in Latin are identical in both types belonged originally to only one type. So the ending of the Gen. Sing. *-is* (from *-es*) belonged properly only to Consonant-Stems, but in prehistoric times replaced the ending of the i-Stems, which otherwise would have been *-is* in Latin; and the *-ēs* of the Nom. Plur. Masc. and Fem. belonged only to i-Stems, the ending of Consonant-Stems being properly *-es*, which would have become *-is*. So, too, the *-ibus* of the Dat. and Abl. Plur., found in all Stems, belongs properly only to the i-Stems. The *-i* of the Dat. Sing. may belong to either i-Stems or Consonant-Stems, or both.

#### A. CONSONANT-STEMS

##### MUTE-STEMS

#### 76. Examples:

	<i>rēx</i> , king, M.	<i>prīnceps</i> , chief, M.	<i>pēs</i> , foot, M.
SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>pēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>pedis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>prīncipī</i>	<i>pedī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>pedem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>pēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>pede</i>
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>	<i>pedum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>

	mīles, soldier, M.		caput, head, N.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	militis	militum	capitis	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	militi	militibus	capiti	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	militem	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Voc.</i>	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	militē	militibus	capite	capitibus

### Changes in the Stem<sup>1</sup>

77. 1. In the Nom.-Voc. Sing. Masc. and Fem., the ending *s* combines with a final guttural of a Stem to form *x*, with a dental to form *s*, and with a labial to form *ps* or *bs* (*pronounced ps*); e.g. *vōx*, *voice* (\**vōc-s*), *rēx*, *king* (\**rēg-s*); *mīles*, *soldier* (\**mīlet-s*), *pēs*, *foot* (\**pēd-s*); *prīnceps*, *chief* (*prīncep-s*), *trabs*, *beam* (*trab-s*). The final consonant has been lost in the Neuters *cor*, *heart* (Gen. *cordis*), and *lac*, *milk* (Gen. *lactis*).

2. The vowel of the stem generally remains unchanged in all the cases; e.g. *dux*, *leader*, Gen. *ducis*; *lūx*, *light*, Gen. *lūcis*; *custōs*, *guard*, Gen. *custōdis*; *virtūs*, *manliness*, Gen. *virtūtis*; *lapis*, *stone*, Gen. *lapidis*, etc. But :

3. An interchange of *ē* in the Nom.-Voc. Sing. with *e* in the other cases is seen in *pēs* and its compounds, also in *abiēs*, *fir*, *ariēs*, *ram*, *pariēs*, *wall*; e.g. Gen. *pedis*, *abietis*, etc.

4. In words of more than one syllable in which the vowel of the Nom.-Voc. Sing. is short *e*, this is regularly weakened to *i* in the other cases (42, 2). So *auspex*, *soothsayer*, Gen. *auspiciis*; *prīnceps*, *chief*, Gen. *prīncipis*; *mīles*, *soldier*, Gen. *mīlitis*; *obses*, *hostage*, Gen. *obsidis*, etc. Such forms are very numerous, but there are some exceptions, as *seges*, *crop*, Gen. *segetis* (so *teges*, *praepes*, *interpres*, *indiges*).

5. In *auceps*, *fowler*, Gen. *aucupis*, the weakening results in *u* (42, 6). In early Latin also *manceps*, *contractor*, Gen. *mancupis*. An interchange of *u* and *i* is seen in *caput*, *head*, Gen. *capitis*.

6. *Supellēx*, *furniture*, has Gen. *supellēctilis*, etc.

78. Gender. Neuter are only : *cor*, *heart*, *lac*, *milk*, *caput*, *head*. Masculine are : nouns in *-es*, Gen. *-itis*; *-eps*, Gen. *-ipis*; most in *-ex*, Gen. *-icis*.

<sup>1</sup> These remarks apply also to nouns of the Mixed Type, which are declined as Mute-Stems in the Singular (90), and to Adjective Mute-Stems (117).

Feminine are : nouns in *-tūs*, Gen. *-tūtis* ; *-tās*, Gen. *-tātis* ; most of the commonest nouns in *-x* (except those in *-ex*, *-icis* ; see above) ; but *grex*, *rēx*, M., *dux*, *coniux* or *coniūnx*, M. or F.

NOTE. Other classes vary too much between Masculine and Feminine to be brought under any general statement.

## LIQUID STEMS

## 79. Examples :

*Masculines (and Feminines)*

**victor, victor, M.      pater, father, M.      cōsul, consul, M.**

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	victor	pater	cōsul
<i>Gen.</i>	victōris	patris	cōsulis
<i>Dat.</i>	victōrī	patrī	cōsulī
<i>Acc.</i>	victōrem	patrem	cōsulem
<i>Voc.</i>	victor	pater	cōsul
<i>Abl.</i>	victōre	patre	cōsule

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	cōsulēs
<i>Gen.</i>	victōrum	patrum	cōsulum
<i>Dat.</i>	victōribus	patribus	cōsulibus
<i>Acc.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	cōsulēs
<i>Voc.</i>	victōrēs	patrēs	cōsulēs
<i>Abl.</i>	victōribus	patribus	cōsulibus

*Neuters*

**ebur, ivory**

**tūber, swelling**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ebur	ebora	tūber	tūbera
<i>Gen.</i>	eboris	eborum	tūberis	tūberum
<i>Dat.</i>	eborī	eboribus	tūberī	tūberibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ebur	ebora	tūber	tūbera
<i>Voc.</i>	ebur	ebora	tūber	tūbera
<i>Abl.</i>	ebore	eboribus	tūbere	tūberibus

stem or the ending ; so that, for practical purposes, we apply the term Case-Endings to *certain variable parts*, which, in the case of vowel-stems, include both the final vowel of the stem and the ending proper. In the case of consonant-stems, the variable terminations are also the true case-endings.

2. The Nominative and Accusative are alike in all Neuters, both in the Singular and in the Plural.<sup>1</sup>

3. The Nominative and Vocative are always alike in the Plural, and also, except in Masculines and Feminines of the Second Declension, in the Singular.<sup>1</sup>

4. The Dative and Ablative are always alike in the Plural.<sup>1</sup>

### NOUNS

63. In the declension of Nouns there are five distinct types, distinguished by different *Stems*. These are known as the Five Declensions. The form of the Genitive Singular is chosen as a convenient characteristic of each. Thus :

		<i>Stem ends in :</i>	<i>Gen. Sing. ends in :</i>
DECLENSION	I	ā	ae
	“ II	o	ī
	“ III	i or a consonant	is
	“ IV	u	ūs
	“ V	ē	ēī

64. The scheme of the normal endings is as follows :

	DECLENSION I		DECLENSION II	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	a	ae	us, er ; N. um	ī ; N. a
<i>Gen.</i>	ae	ārum	ī	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ae	īs	ō	īs
<i>Acc.</i>	am	ās	um	ōs ; N. a
<i>Voc.</i>	a	ae	e, er ; N. um	ī ; N. a
<i>Abl.</i>	ā	īs	ō	īs

<sup>1</sup> Hence we speak of the Nom.-Acc. Sing. Neut. as a single form ; likewise of the *Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut.*, the *Nom.-Voc. Sing.* or *Plur.*, or the *Dat.-Abl. Plur.*

## DECLENSION III

SINGULAR			
<i>Consonant-Stems</i>		<i>i-Stems</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	s, — <sup>1</sup> ; N. —		is, ĕs, er; N. e, — <sup>1</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>		is	
<i>Dat.</i>		i	
<i>Acc.</i>	em; N. —		em, im; N. e, —
<i>Voc.</i>	s, —; N. —		is, ĕs, er; N. e, —
<i>Abl.</i>	e		e, i

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	N. a	M., F. ĕs	N. ia
<i>Gen.</i>	um		ium
<i>Dat.</i>		ibus	
<i>Acc.</i>	ĕs; N. a		is (ĕs) <sup>2</sup> ; N. ia
<i>Voc.</i>	N. a	M., F. ĕs	N. ia
<i>Abl.</i>		ibus	

NOTE. The endings given in the middle column are those which are always the same for both Consonant-Stems and i-Stems.

## DECLENSION IV

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	us; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Gen.</i>	ūs	uum
<i>Dat.</i>	uī, ū; N. ū	ibus, ubus
<i>Acc.</i>	um; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Voc.</i>	us; N. ū	ūs; N. ua
<i>Abl.</i>	ū	ibus, ubus

## DECLENSION V

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	ĕs	ĕs
<i>Gen.</i>	ĕī, eī	ĕrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ĕī, eī	ĕbus
<i>Acc.</i>	em	ĕs
<i>Voc.</i>	ĕs	ĕs
<i>Abl.</i>	ĕ	ĕbus

## FIRST DECLENSION

*a-Stems*

65. The Nominative Singular ends in short *a*, which stands for original *-ā*. Example of Declension :

<sup>1</sup> A dash indicates that the ending or, in the case of a vowel-stem, both ending and stem-vowel are lacking. But the Nom.-Voc. Sing. in *-er* from *o*-Stems or *i*-Stems, though likewise lacking both ending and stem-vowel (70, 87), is, for greater convenience, given as *-er*.

<sup>2</sup> Here, and in general in examples of inflection, forms inclosed in ( ) are variants which are less common in the best period.

**sella, seat, F.**  
(stem **sellā-**)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>sella, a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellae, (the) seats</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>sellae, of a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellārum, of (the) seats</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sellae, to or for a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellīs, to or for (the) seats</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sellam, a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellās, (the) seats</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>sella, (O) seat</b>	<b>sellae, (O) seats</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>sellā, from, with, or in a (the) seat</b>	<b>sellīs, from, with, or in (the) seats</b>

### Remarks on the Case-Forms

**66.** 1. An old form of the Genitive Singular in **-ās** is preserved in **familiās**, used in such phrases as **pater familiās**, *head of the household*, etc.

2. A Genitive form in **-āi** is found in poetry, as **aulāi**, *of the court*.

3. A Genitive Plural in **-um** beside that in **-ārum** is found in compounds of **-cola**, *dwelling in*, and **-gena**, *descendant of*; also in **amphora**, *a liquid measure*, **drachma**, *a Greek coin*, and in many proper names of Greek origin, as **Aeneadae**, **Lapithae**, etc. So **agricolum**, **Troiugenum**, **amphorum**, **Aeneadum**, etc.

NOTE. This is not a contraction of **-ārum**. The compounds of **-cola** and **-gena**, being Masculines, fell under the influence of the Second Declension, in which **-um** is an old ending. All the other words mentioned are of Greek origin, and in these the **-um** corresponds to the Greek ending.

4. For the Dative and Ablative Plural of **filiā**, *daughter*, and **dea**, *goddess*, the forms **filiābus** and **deābus** are frequently used to avoid confusion with the corresponding cases of **filius**, *son*, and **deus**, *god*. So in the phrases **filiīs et filiābus**, **diīs deābusque**. In other words **-ābus** is rare.

5. There is a Locative Singular form which is identical with the Genitive, as **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. In the Plural the form is the same as the Dative and Ablative, as **Athēnīs**, *at Athens*.

6. The Ablative Singular once ended in **-ād**, which is preserved in early inscriptions, e.g. **sententiād**.

7. The Dative and Ablative Plural once ended in **-ais**, which first became **-eis** (still preserved in the spelling of the Ciceronian period, e.g. **vieis**), then **-is**.

### Gender

**67.** Words of the First Declension are Feminine, except a few referring to male persons, as **nauta**, *sailor*, **agricola**, *farmer*; also **Hadria**, *the Adriatic*.



## Greek Nouns

68. Greek nouns of the First Declension often retain their proper Greek forms in some cases of the singular. The resulting mixture of Greek and Latin declension may be seen in the following examples :

<i>Nom.</i>	Aenēās	Anchisēs	Andromachē, -a
<i>Gen.</i>	Aenēae	Anchisae	Andromachēs, -ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Aenēae	Anchisae	Andromachae
<i>Acc.</i>	Aenēān, -am	Anchisēn, -am	Andromachēn, -am
<i>Voc.</i>	Aenēā	Anchisē, -ā, -a	Andromachē, -a
<i>Abl.</i>	Aenēā	Anchisē, -ā	Andromachē, -ā

NOTE. Many proper names of the Greek First Declension are inflected in Latin according to the Third Declension, as *Aeschinēs*, *Miltiadēs*. Ablatives like *Anchisē* are formed according to the Fifth Declension.

## SECOND DECLENSION

## o-Stems

69. The Nominative Singular ends in *-us*, or, in the case of Neuters, in *-um*. These endings were originally *-os*, *-om* (44, 1). Examples of Declension :

	<i>hortus</i> , <i>garden</i> , M. (stem <i>horto-</i> )		<i>dōnum</i> , <i>gift</i> , N. (stem <i>dōno-</i> )	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hortus</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>dōnum</i>	<i>dōna</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>hortōrum</i>	<i>dōnī</i>	<i>dōnōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>dōnō</i>	<i>dōnīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hortum</i>	<i>hortōs</i>	<i>dōnum</i>	<i>dōna</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>horte</i>	<i>hortī</i>	<i>dōnum</i>	<i>dōna</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hortō</i>	<i>hortīs</i>	<i>dōnō</i>	<i>dōnīs</i>

70. Most stems in *-ro-*, in the Nominative Singular, drop *o* and *s* of the original ending and insert an *e* before the *r*, if the latter is not already preceded by a vowel. See 43, 2. Examples :

	puer, boy, M. (stem puero-)	ager, field, M. (stem agro-)	vir, man, M. (stem viro-)
	SINGULAR		
Nom.	puer	ager	vir
Gen.	puerī	agrī	virī
Dat.	puerō	agrō	virō
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum
Voc.	puer	ager	vir
Abl.	puerō	agrō	virō
	PLURAL		
Nom.	puerī	agrī	virī
Gen.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
Dat.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
Acc.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
Voc.	puerī	agrī	virī
Abl.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

a. A few stems in -ro- are declined like *hortus*. So *erus*, *master*, *numerus*, *number*, *umerus*, *shoulder*, *uterus*, *womb*, *hesperus*, *evening star*, *taurus*, *bull*.

b. The words like *puer*, in which the stem is -ero-, are : *gener*, *son-in-law*, *socer*, *father-in-law*, *adulter*, *adulterer*, *Liber*, *god of wine*, *liberī*, *children*, *vesper*, *evening*, *signi-fer*, *standard-bearer*, *armi-ger*, *armor-bearer*, and other compounds of -fer and -ger.

### Remarks on the Case-Forms

71. 1. Stems in -vo-, -quo-, -uo- retained o in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. until the end of the Ciceronian period ; e.g. Nom. *servos*, *equos*, *mortuos* (Adjective), Acc. *servom*, *equom*, *mortuom*, Nom.-Acc. Neut. *aevom*. The forms of the Augustan period are *servus*, *servum*, etc., — but *ecus*, *ecum*, the forms *equus*, *equum* being still later. See 44, 1.

2. Proper Names in -ius form their Genitive Singular in -ī (not -iī) and also their Vocative Singular in -ī (not -ie). The accent is on the penult, even when it is short. So *Vergilius*, *Servius*, *Tullius*, *Gāius* have Gen. and Voc. Sing. *Vergīlī*, *Servī*, *Tullī*, *Gāī*.

NOTE. In such Proper Names, in contrast to the other nouns in -ius, -ium (see 3), the ī of the Genitive is *not* generally replaced by -iī, though the latter is occasionally found.

3. Other nouns in -ius and -ium also form the Genitive Singular in -ī, which, however, begins to be replaced by -iī in the Augustan period. Such forms as *imperium*, *ingenium*, *negōtium* have Gen. *impērī*, *ingénī*,

*negōtī* in Virgil and Horace, as well as in the earlier poets, but nearly always *imperīi*, *ingenīi*, *negōtīi* in Propertius, Ovid, and later poets. *Filius*, *son*, has Gen. Sing. *filī* and also Voc. Sing. *filī*.

4. A Genitive Plural in *-um* is found :

- a) Usually in words denoting coins or measures, such as *nummus*, *coin*, *sestertius*, *sesterce*, *modius*, *measure*, *iūgerum*, *acre*; e.g. *nummum*, *of coins*, etc.
- b) Frequently in *deus*, *god*, *socius*, *ally*, *liberī*, *children*, and *faber* in the phrase *praefectus fabrum*, *chief engineer*.
- c) Occasionally, in poetry, in *vir*, *man*, and some other words.

5. *Deus*, *god*, has Voc. Sing. *deus*, Nom. Plur. *dī*, Gen. Plur. *deum* beside *deōrum*, Dat.-Abl. Plur. *dīs*.

NOTE. The forms *dī* and *dīs* were sometimes spelled *dīi*, *dīis*, but were regularly pronounced as one syllable. The forms *deī*, *deīs* represent a dissyllabic pronunciation, which, however, is rare before Ovid.

6. The Locative Singular form is identical with the Genitive ; e.g. *humī*, *on the ground*, *domī*, *at home*, *Corinthī*, *at Corinth*. In the Plural the form is the same as the Dative and Ablative ; e.g. *Delphis*, *at Delphi*.

7. The Ablative Singular once ended in *-ōd*, which is preserved in early inscriptions; e.g. *preivātōd*.

8. The Nom. Plur. and Dat.-Abl. Plur. ended originally in *-oi* and *-ois*, which first became *-ei*, *-eis* (still preserved in the spelling of the Ciceronian period; e.g. *servei*, *serveis*), then *-ī*, *-is*.

### Gender

72. Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir* are mostly Masculine ; those in *-um* are Neuter.

a. Feminine are :

- 1) Most names of Cities, Countries, and Islands, as *Corinthus*, *Aegyptus*, *Rhodus*, etc.
- 2) Most names of Trees and Plants, as *fāgus*, *beech*, *figus*, *fig tree*.
- 3) Some Greek Feminines, as *dialectus*, *dialect*, *diphthongus*, *diphthong*.
- 4) Also the following : *alvus*, *belly*, *carbasus*, *flax*, *colus*, *distaff*, *humus*, *ground*, *vannus*, *winnowing-fan*.

b. Neuters are: *vīrus*, *poison*, *pelagus*, *sea*, *vulgus*, *crowd*, *rabble* (sometimes *M.*), in which the Accusative has the same form as the Nominative. These words have no Plural, except that for *pelagus*, which is a Greek word, a Nom.-Acc. Plur. *pelagē* is sometimes found.

NOTE. In reality these words are Heteroclites (107), the Nom.-Acc. form belonging to the Neuters of the Third Declension like *corpus*, *genus*, etc. (85).

## Greek Nouns

**73.** Greek Nouns of the Second Declension usually follow the Latin declension. But the Nominative and Accusative Singular often end in *-os, -on*, especially in proper names in poetry. Thus *Tenedos*, Acc. *Tenedon* (also *-us, -um*), Nom.-Acc. *Īlion* (also *Īlium*).

*a. Androgeōs* has Gen. Sing. *-eō* and *-eī*, Acc. Sing. *-eō* and *-eōn*. *Panthūs* has Voc. Sing. *Panthū*.

## THIRD DECLENSION

**74.** The Third Declension comprises :

*A.* Consonant-Stems, with various subdivisions, according to the nature of the final consonant.

*B.* *i*-Stems.

*C.* Mixed Stems, of which the Singular is declined like that of Consonant-Stems of the Mute Class, and the Plural like that of *i*-Stems.<sup>1</sup>

*D.* Some Irregular Nouns, including Stems in *-ū* and *-ov*.

**75.** Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems originally followed two totally distinct types of declension, which have been partially confused in Latin, so that many of the forms are identical in both classes. But the distinction is wholly or partially preserved in several of the cases, — most

<sup>1</sup> There are other, less common, forms of mixture between Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems, which are more conveniently treated as individual varieties of one or the other of these types. Words like *mūs*, Gen. Plur. *mūrium*, are cited under *s*-Stems. The few forms like *canis*, Gen. Plur. *canum*, which show a combination just the opposite of that seen in the Mixed Stems, are mentioned under *i*-Stems. Nouns in *-ēs*, Gen. Sing. *-is*, are classed under *i*-Stems, although the *-ēs* itself is probably not formed from an *i*-Stem (it perhaps originated in certain *s*-Stems, existing beside *i*-Stems formed from the same root, and was then extended to other *i*-Stems). Certain *i*-Stems, like *imber*, Gen. *imbris*, and the Neuters in *-al*, Gen. *-ālis*, *-ar*, Gen. *-āris*, which have lost the *i* by regular phonetic change, have come to resemble some Consonant-Stems in the Nominative Singular; but they are classed where they belong, under *i*-Stems.

Many of the words classed under Mixed Stems are also, in origin, *i*-Stems which have lost the *i* in the Nom. Sing.; e.g. *pars* from *\*parti-s* (cf. the Adverb *partim*), *gēs* from *\*genti-s*, and many others which contain the once common suffix *-ti-*. But it is not practicable to separate these from others which are properly Mute-Stems that have been drawn into this type, and from still others in which the variation between Mute-Stem and *i*-Stem is inherited from the parent speech.

Under Mixed Stems, then, are included *not* all forms of mixture between Consonant-Stems and *i*-Stems, but only that particular and widespread type in which the Singular is *like that of Mute-Stems*.

clearly in the Genitive Plural. See the scheme of endings given in 64, and contrast the declension of *rēx* (76) with that of *turris* (87).

a. In Masculine and Feminine i-Stems the original endings of the Acc. and Abl. Sing., namely *-im* and *-i*, were at an early period supplanted in most words (for exceptions, see below, under i-Stems) by *-em* and *-e*, the endings of Consonant-Stems; but in the Acc. Plur. the original *-is* was not superseded until after the Augustan period, though *-ēs* was also used as early as Cicero's time. Neuter i-Stems nearly always retain *-i* in the Abl. Sing.; the Nom.-Acc. Sing. ended originally in *-i*, but this is regularly changed to *-e* (44, 3), or dropped (43, 1).

NOTE. Most of those forms which in Latin are identical in both types belonged originally to only one type. So the ending of the Gen. Sing. *-is* (from *-es*) belonged properly only to Consonant-Stems, but in prehistoric times replaced the ending of the i-Stems, which otherwise would have been *-is* in Latin; and the *-ēs* of the Nom. Plur. Masc. and Fem. belonged only to i-Stems, the ending of Consonant-Stems being properly *-es*, which would have become *-is*. So, too, the *-ibus* of the Dat. and Abl. Plur., found in all Stems, belongs properly only to the i-Stems. The *-i* of the Dat. Sing. may belong to either i-Stems or Consonant-Stems, or both.

#### A. CONSONANT-STEMS

##### MUTE-STEMS

#### 76. Examples :

	<i>rēx</i> , king, M.	<i>prīnceps</i> , chief, M.	<i>pēs</i> , foot, M.
	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>pēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>pedis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>prīncipī</i>	<i>pedī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>pedem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>pēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>pede</i>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rēgum</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>	<i>pedum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>	<i>pedēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>	<i>pedibus</i>

	<b>mīles, soldier, M.</b>		<b>caput, head, N.</b>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Gen.</i>	militis	militum	capitis	capitum
<i>Dat.</i>	militi	militibus	capiti	capitibus
<i>Acc.</i>	militem	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Voc.</i>	mīles	militēs	caput	capita
<i>Abl.</i>	militē	militibus	capite	capitibus

### Changes in the Stem <sup>1</sup>

77. 1. In the Nom.-Voc. Sing. Masc. and Fem., the ending *s* combines with a final guttural of a Stem to form *x*, with a dental to form *s*, and with a labial to form *ps* or *bs* (*pronounced ps*); e.g. *vōx*, *voice* (\**vōc-s*), *rēx*, *king* (\**rēg-s*); *mīles*, *soldier* (\**mīlet-s*), *pēs*, *foot* (\**pēd-s*); *prīnceps*, *chief* (*prīncep-s*), *trabs*, *beam* (*trab-s*). The final consonant has been lost in the Neuters *cor*, *heart* (Gen. *cordis*), and *lac*, *milk* (Gen. *lactis*).

2. The vowel of the stem generally remains unchanged in all the cases; e.g. *dux*, *leader*, Gen. *ducis*; *lūx*, *light*, Gen. *lūcis*; *custōs*, *guard*, Gen. *custōdis*; *virtūs*, *manliness*, Gen. *virtūtis*; *lapis*, *stone*, Gen. *lapidis*, etc. But:

3. An interchange of *ē* in the Nom.-Voc. Sing. with *e* in the other cases is seen in *pēs* and its compounds, also in *abiēs*, *fir*, *ariēs*, *ram*, *pariēs*, *wall*; e.g. Gen. *pedis*, *abietis*, etc.

4. In words of more than one syllable in which the vowel of the Nom.-Voc. Sing. is short *e*, this is regularly weakened to *i* in the other cases (42, 2). So *auspex*, *soothsayer*, Gen. *auspici*; *prīnceps*, *chief*, Gen. *prīncipis*; *mīles*, *soldier*, Gen. *mīlitis*; *obses*, *hostage*, Gen. *obsidis*, etc. Such forms are very numerous, but there are some exceptions, as *seges*, *crop*, Gen. *segetis* (so *teges*, *praepes*, *interpres*, *indiges*).

5. In *auceps*, *fowler*, Gen. *aucupis*, the weakening results in *u* (42, 6). In early Latin also *manceps*, *contractor*, Gen. *mancupis*. An interchange of *u* and *i* is seen in *caput*, *head*, Gen. *capitis*.

6. *Supellēx*, *furniture*, has Gen. *supellēctilis*, etc.

78. Gender. Neuter are only: *cor*, *heart*, *lac*, *milk*, *caput*, *head*. Masculine are: nouns in *-es*, Gen. *-itis*; *-eps*, Gen. *-ipis*; most in *-ex*, Gen. *-icis*.

<sup>1</sup> These remarks apply also to nouns of the Mixed Type, which are declined as Mute-Stems in the Singular (90), and to Adjective Mute-Stems (117).

Feminine are : nouns in *-tūs*, Gen. *-tūtis* ; *-tās*, Gen. *-tātis* ; most of the commonest nouns in *-x* (except those in *-ex*, *-icis* ; see above) ; but *grex*, *rēx*, M., *dux*, *coniux* or *coniūnx*, M. or F.

NOTE. Other classes vary too much between Masculine and Feminine to be brought under any general statement.

## LIQUID STEMS

## 79. Examples :

*Masculines (and Feminines)*

**victor**, *victor*, M.      **pater**, *father*, M.      **cōsul**, *consul*, M.

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>victor</b>	<b>pater</b>	<b>cōsul</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>victōris</b>	<b>patriis</b>	<b>cōsulis</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>victōrī</b>	<b>patri</b>	<b>cōsulī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>victōrem</b>	<b>patrem</b>	<b>cōsulem</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>victor</b>	<b>pater</b>	<b>cōsul</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>victōre</b>	<b>patre</b>	<b>cōsule</b>

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>victōrēs</b>	<b>patrēs</b>	<b>cōsulēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>victōrum</b>	<b>patrum</b>	<b>cōsulum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>victōribus</b>	<b>patribus</b>	<b>cōsulibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>victōrēs</b>	<b>patrēs</b>	<b>cōsulēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>victōrēs</b>	<b>patrēs</b>	<b>cōsulēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>victōribus</b>	<b>patribus</b>	<b>cōsulibus</b>

*Neuters*

**ebur**, *ivory*

**tūber**, *swelling*

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ebur</b>	<b>ebora</b>	<b>tūber</b>	<b>tūbera</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eboris</b>	<b>eborum</b>	<b>tūberis</b>	<b>tūberum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eborī</b>	<b>eboribus</b>	<b>tūberī</b>	<b>tūberibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ebur</b>	<b>ebora</b>	<b>tūber</b>	<b>tūbera</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>ebur</b>	<b>ebora</b>	<b>tūber</b>	<b>tūbera</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ebore</b>	<b>eboribus</b>	<b>tūbere</b>	<b>tūberibus</b>

## Remarks

80. 1. The type represented by *victor* is the most common, comprising the nouns of agency in *-tor*, and many abstracts in *-or*, as *amor*, *love*. The stem is *-tōr* or *-ōr* throughout, except in the Nom.-Voc. Sing., where the vowel has been shortened before the final *r* (26, 3).

2. Like *pater* are inflected *māter*, *mother*, *frāter*, *brother*, *accipiter*, *hawk*, and a few proper names.

3. Other Masculines are declined like *cōsul* in that the stem remains unchanged throughout. So, for example, *vigil*, *watchman*, Gen. *vigilis*; *sōl*, *sun*, Gen. *sōlis*; *ānser*, *goose*, Gen. *ānseris*; *augur*, *augur*, Gen. *auguris*; *Caesar*, *Caesar*, Gen. *Caesaris*.

4. *Honor*, *honor*, Gen. *honōris*, and *arbor*, *tree*, Gen. *arboris*, were originally *s*-Stems, and the old Nominatives *honōs* and *arbōs* (like *flōs*, 85) are frequently found.

NOTE. Many others of the words classed here as *r*-Stems were originally *s*-Stems, some of them showing traces of *s* in early Latin. This is true of the whole class of abstracts in *-or*, *-ōris* mentioned under 1, and of several Neuters, as *rōbur* (old Latin *rōbus*; cf. *rōbustus*), *fulgur*, *aequor*, etc. So also *mulier*, *woman*, *F.*, and *vōmer*, *ploughshare*, *M.*, beside which is found *vōmis* (like *cinis*, 85). See 86, note.

5. Other Neuters declined like *ebur* are *rōbur*, *oak*, *femur*, *thigh*, *iecur*, *liver*. But *femur* has also *feminis*, *feminī*, etc., formed from an *n*-Stem; and *iecur* (*iocur* in the Augustan period) has Gen. *iocineris* beside *iecoris*.

6. Other Neuters declined like *tūber* are *ūber*, *teat*, *cadāver*, *dead body*, *cicer*, *pea*, *piper*, *pepper*, and several names of plants and trees. *Iter*, *way*, has Gen. *itineris*, etc. (cf. *iocineris*, 5).

7. There are also Neuters in *-ar*, Gen. *-aris*; *-or*, Gen. *-oris*; and *-ur*, Gen. *-uris*; e.g. *nectar*, *nectar*, *aequor*, *sea*, *fulgur*, *lightning*, *Tībur*, *Tivoli*, etc.; also *vēr*, *spring*, Gen. *vēris*; *far*, *spelt*, Gen. *farris* (stem *farr-* from \**fars-*); *sāl*, *salt*, Gen. *salis*; *mel*, *honey*, Gen. *mellis* (stem *mell-* from \**meld-*); *fel*, *gall*, Gen. *fellis* (stem *fell-* from \**feld-*).

81. Gender. Liquid Stems are nearly all Masculine or Neuter.

Masculine are: nouns in *-tor*, Gen. *-tōris*; *-or*, Gen. *-ōris*, except, of course, *soror*, *sister*, *F.*, and *uxor*, *wife*, *F.*; *-er*, Gen. *-ris*, except *māter*, *mother*, *F.*; *-l*, except the Neuters *sāl*, *mel*, *fel*.

Neuter are: nouns in *-ur*, Gen. *-oris*; *-or*, Gen. *-oris*, except *arbor*, *tree*, *F.*

Masculines and Neuters are included in nouns in *-er*, Gen. *-eris* (but *mulier*, *woman*, *F.*); *-ar*, Gen. *-aris*; *-ur*, Gen. *-uris*.



## NASAL STEMS

## 82. Examples :

**sermō**, *speech*, M.      **virgō**, *virgin*, F.      **nōmen**, *name*, N.

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	sermō	virgō	nōmen
<i>Gen.</i>	sermōnis	virginis	nōminis
<i>Dat.</i>	sermōnī	virginī	nōminī
<i>Acc.</i>	sermōnem	virginem	nōmen
<i>Voc.</i>	sermō	virgō	nōmen
<i>Abl.</i>	sermōne	virgine	nōmine

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	sermōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
<i>Gen.</i>	sermōnum	virginum	nōminum
<i>Dat.</i>	sermōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	sermōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
<i>Voc.</i>	sermōnēs	virginēs	nōmina
<i>Abl.</i>	sermōnibus	virginibus	nōminibus

## Remarks

83. 1. Like **sermō** is declined the large class of nouns in **-iō**, as **regiō**, *direction*, Gen. **regiōnis**; **actiō**, *action*, Gen. **actiōnis**, etc.

2. Like **virgō** are declined all nouns in **-gō** or **-dō** (except **praedō**, *robber*, **harpagō**, *grappling-hook*, **ligō**, *mattock*, which are declined like **sermō**); also **homō**, *man*, **nēmō**, *no one*, **turbō**, *whirlwind*, **Apollō**, *Apollo*.

3. There are some Masculines in **-en**, Gen. **-inis**, Acc. **-inem**, as **flāmen**, *priest*, **pecten**, *comb*, **oscen**, *divining bird* (sometimes F.), and names of players on musical instruments, as **tībicen**, *flute player*, etc.

4. There is one stem in **-m**, namely **hiem(p)s**, *winter*, F., Gen. **hiemis**.

5. In **carō**, *flesh*, F., the stem appears as **carn-** (not **carōn-** or **carin-**) in all cases but the Nom.-Voc. Singular; e.g. Gen. Sing. **carnis**, Nom. Plur. **carnēs**. Cf. **pater**, Gen. **patris**, etc. Another peculiar form is **sanguis**, *blood*, M., Gen. **sanguinis**, etc.

NOTE. Beside **sanguis**, which is properly an i-Stem form, there is also a Nom. **sanguis** (from \***sanguin-s**), which is frequently used by the poets. The Neuter **sanguen** is an early Latin form.

84. Gender. Masculine are all nouns in **-ō**, Gen. **-ōnis** (not **-iō**, Gen. **-iōnis**).

Feminine are all nouns in **-ō**, Gen. **-inis**, except **cardō**, **margō**, **ōrdō**, **homō**, **nēmō**, **turbō**, **Apollō**, which are Masculine; also most in **-iō** (abstracts and collectives), though there are many Masculines, denoting material objects, as **pugiō**, **dagger**.

Neuter are all nouns in **-en**, except those mentioned under 83, 3.

### s-STEMS

#### 85. Examples :

##### *Masculines (and Feminines)*

	<b>cinis, ashes, M.</b>		<b>flōs, flower, M.</b>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	cinis	cinerēs	flōs	flōrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cineris	cinerum	flōris	flōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cinerī	cineribus	flōrī	flōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	cinerem	cinerēs	flōrem	flōrēs
<i>Voc.</i>	cinis	cinerēs	flōs	flōrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cinere	cineribus	flōre	flōribus

##### *Neuters*

	<b>genus, race</b>		<b>corpus, body</b>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	genus	genera	corpus	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	generis	generum	corporis	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	generī	generibus	corporī	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	genus	genera	corpus	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	genus	genera	corpus	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	genere	generibus	corpore	corporibus

### Remarks

86. 1. Most s-Stems are Neuters, declined like **genus** or **corpus**. Other Neuters are : **iūs**, *right*, Gen. **iūris** (so **rūs**, *country*, **crūs**, *leg*, **tūs**, *incense*, **pūs**, *pus*) ; **aes**, *bronze*, Gen. **aeris** ; **ōs**, *mouth*, Gen. **ōris** ; **os**, *bone*, Gen. **ossis** (Nom. Plur. **ossa**, Gen. Plur. **ossium**) ; **vās**, *vessel*, Gen. **vāsis**.

2. Masculines like **cinis** are **pulvis**, *dust*, and **cucumis**, *cucumber* (but Acc. and Abl. Sing. **cucumim**, **cucumī**, after i-Stem) ; like **flōs** are **rōs**, *dew*, **mōs**, *custom*, **lepōs**, *charm*. Other Masculines are : **mās**, *male*,

Gen. *maris*, *mūs*, *mouse*, Gen. *mūris*, *as*, *copper*, Gen. *assis*, all with Gen. Plur. in *-ium*; *lepus*, *hare*, Gen. *leporis*.

3. Femīnines are very rare. Examples are *Venus*, *Venus*, Gen. *Veneris*; *tellūs*, *earth*, Gen. *tellūris*; *Cerēs*, *Ceres*, Gen. *Cereris*.

NOTE. In all cases but the Nom.-Voc. Sing. (and Acc. Sing. Neut.) the *s*, as standing between vowels, regularly becomes *r* (47). In many original *s*-Stems even this final *s* became *r*, under the influence of the other cases, so that such Stems became wholly identical with *r*-Stems, and have been classed as such (e.g. *honor*, sometimes *honōs*; see 80, 4). Of the once numerous forms in *-ōs*, Gen. *-ōris*, only the monosyllables (and *lepōs*) always retain the *-s*.

### B. I-STEMS

87. The Nominative Singular of Masculines and Femīnines ends regularly in *-is*; but there are also many nouns ending in *-ēs*; and a few in *-er*, from stems in *-ri-*, e.g. *imber* from *imbris*, like *ager* from *\*agros* (see 43, 2). The Nominative and Accusative Singular of Neuters ended originally in *-i*, but this has either been changed to *-e* (44, 3), or, in the case of most stems in *-āli-* or *-āri-*, dropped (43, 1). Examples:

#### Masculines and Feminines

	<i>turris</i> , <i>tower</i> , F.	<i>finis</i> , <i>end</i> , M., F.	<i>caedēs</i> , <i>slaughter</i> , F.	<i>imber</i> , <i>shower</i> , M.
SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>imber</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>imbris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turrī</i>	<i>finī</i>	<i>caedī</i>	<i>imbrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turrim</i> (-em)	<i>finem</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>imbrem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turris</i>	<i>finis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>imber</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turrī</i> or <i>-e</i>	<i>finē</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>imbre</i> or <i>-ī</i>
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>finēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>imbrēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>turrium</i>	<i>finium</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>imbrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>finibus</i>	<i>caeditus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>turrīs</i> (-ēs)	<i>finīs</i> (-ēs)	<i>caedīs</i> (-ēs)	<i>imbrīs</i> (-ēs)
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>turrēs</i>	<i>finēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>imbrēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>turribus</i>	<i>finibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>imbribus</i>

## Neuters

	<b>sedile, seat</b>	<b>animal, animal</b>	<b>exemplar, pattern</b>
	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	sedile	animal	exemplar
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilis	animālis	exemplāris
<i>Dat.</i>	sedili	animālī	exemplārī
<i>Acc.</i>	sedile	animal	exemplar
<i>Voc.</i>	sedile	animal	exemplar
<i>Abl.</i>	sedili	animālī	exemplārī
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	sedilia	animālia	exemplaria
<i>Gen.</i>	sedilium	animālīum	exemplārīum
<i>Dat.</i>	sedilibus	animālībus	exemplārībus
<i>Acc.</i>	sedilia	animālia	exemplaria
<i>Voc.</i>	sedilia	animālia	exemplaria
<i>Abl.</i>	sedilibus	animālībus	exemplārībus

## Remarks

88. 1. The Accusative Singular always or usually has **-im** in :

<i>būris, plough-beam</i>	<i>puppis, stern</i>	<i>sitis, thirst</i>
<i>febris, fever</i>	<i>restis, rope</i>	<i>turris, tower</i>
<i>pelvis, basin</i>	<i>secūris, axe</i>	<i>tussis, cough</i>

and names of *rivers* and *cities*, like *Tiberis, the Tiber, Neāpolis, Naples* ; occasionally in several others.

2. The Ablative Singular has the form **-ī** :

- a) In all Neuters except *rēte, net*, and some names of places, like *Praeneste, Praeneste*. *Mare, sea*, sometimes has Abl. *mare* in poetry.
- b) Always or usually in *secūris, sitis, tussis, bipennis, battle-axe, canālis, conduit*, and names of *rivers, cities, and months*.
- c) Often in the following, which also have **e** :

<i>amnis, river</i>	<i>febris, fever</i>	<i>pelvis, basin</i>
<i>avis, bird</i>	<i>fūstis, club</i>	<i>puppis, stern</i>
<i>cīvis, citizen</i>	<i>ignis, fire</i>	<i>sēmentis, sowing</i>
<i>classis, fleet</i>	<i>imber, shower</i>	<i>strigilis, scraper</i>
<i>clāvis, key</i>	<i>nāvis, ship</i>	<i>turris, tower</i>

- d) Occasionally in *finis, end* (in adverbial phrases ; see 407, 4), *collis, hill, orbis, circle, unguis, nail*, and a few others.

3. The Acc. Plur. Masc. and Fem. has earlier *-is*, later *-ēs*. See 76, a. The *-is* also occurs sometimes in the Nominative, as *aedis*.

4. The Genitive Plural ends in *-ium*, but *-um* is the regular form for *canis*, *dog*, *iuvēnis*, *youth*, *volucris*, *bird*, and for *senex*, *old man* (Nom. Sing. formed from a stem *senec-*; Gen. Sing. *seniēs*); *-um* is also found beside *-ium* in *sēdēa*, *seat*, *mēnsis*, *month*, and, rarely, in *vātēs*, *bard*.

5. The Ablative Singular of *famēs*, *hunger*, is *famē*, following the Fifth Declension; *tabē* also occurs once, from *tabēs*, *wasting*.

**89. Gender.** Masculine are nouns in *-er*, except *linter*, *skiff*, F.

Feminine are nouns in *-ēs* (but *verrēs*, *boar*, M., *vātēs*, *bard*, M., F.); also the majority of those in *-is* (but those in *-nis*, and nearly thirty others, are Masculine).

Neuter are nouns in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

### C. MIXED STEMS

**90.** The Singular agrees with that of Mute-Stems, the Plural with that of i-Stems. Examples:

	<i>nox</i> , <i>night</i> , F.	<i>urbs</i> , <i>city</i> , F.	<i>gēns</i> , <i>race</i> , F.
	SINGULAR		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>gēns</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>noctis</i>	<i>urbis</i>	<i>gentis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nocti</i>	<i>urbi</i>	<i>genti</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>noctem</i>	<i>urbem</i>	<i>gentem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>gēns</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nocte</i>	<i>urbe</i>	<i>gente</i>
	PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>noctēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>gentēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>noctium</i>	<i>urbium</i>	<i>gentium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>gentibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>noctis (-ēs)</i>	<i>urbis (-ēs)</i>	<i>gentis (-ēs)</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>noctēs</i>	<i>urbēs</i>	<i>gentēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>noctibus</i>	<i>urbibus</i>	<i>gentibus</i>

### Remarks

**91. 1.** To this type belong:

a) Nouns in *-ns*, *-rs*, *-rx*, *lx*, as *mōns* (Gen. Plur. *montium*), *glāns* (*glandium*), *pars* (*partium*), *arx* (*arcium*), *falx* (*falcium*), etc.; also *dōs*,

*lis*, *fraus* (also *-um*), *nox*, *nix* (Gen. *nivis*; see 49, 2), *faucēs*. But *cliēns*, *client*, and *parēns*, *parent*, have Gen. Plur. *-um* and *-ium*.

*b*) Monosyllables in *-ps*, *-bs*, as *stirps* (*stirpium*), *plēbs* (*plēbium*), etc. But always *opum*, *of resources*, from \**ops*, Gen. *opis*.

*c*) Nouns in *-ās*, *-īs*, *-tās*, as *Arpīnās* (*-ium*), *penātēs* (*-ium*), *optimātēs* (*-ium* and *-um*), *Quirītēs* (*-ium*) *Samnītēs* (*-ium*), *civītās* (*-ium* and *-um*).

NOTE. *Mās*, *mūs*, and *as*, with Gen. Plur. in *-ium*, are classed under *s*-Stems (86, 2).

2. **Gender.** Nouns of this type are Feminine, except that there are several Masculines in *-ns*, Gen. *-ntis*, as *dēns*, *fōns*, *mōns*, *pōns*.

#### D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

92. The declension of the following nouns differs from any of the usual types:

	<i>vīs</i> , <i>force</i> , F.	<i>sūs</i> , <i>swine</i> , M., F.	<i>bōs</i> , <i>ox</i> , <i>cow</i> , M., F.	<i>Iuppiter</i> , <i>Jupiter</i> , M.
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>sūs</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	( <i>vis</i> )	<i>suis</i>	<i>bovis</i>	<i>Iovis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	( <i>vī</i> )	<i>suī</i>	<i>bovī</i>	<i>Iovī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>vīm</i>	<i>suem</i>	<i>bovem</i>	<i>Iovem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>sūs</i>	<i>bōs</i>	<i>Iuppiter</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>sue</i>	<i>bove</i>	<i>Iove</i>
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>virium</i>	<i>suum</i>	<i>boum</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>suibus</i> ( <i>sūbus</i> , <i>subus</i> )	<i>būbus</i> ( <i>bōbus</i> )	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>virīs</i> ( <i>-ēs</i> )	<i>suēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>virēs</i>	<i>suēs</i>	<i>bovēs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>viribus</i>	<i>suibus</i> ( <i>sūbus</i> , <i>subus</i> )	<i>būbus</i> ( <i>bōbus</i> )	

*a.* Like *sūs* is declined *grūs*, *crane*, M., F. (Dat.-Abl. Plur. *gruibus*).

*b.* Other peculiar forms have been mentioned as varieties of the regular types, e.g. *carō*, Gen. *carnis* (83, 5); *iter*, Gen. *itineris* (80, 6); *senex*, Gen. *senis* (88, 4), etc.

NOTE. *Vīs* is an old *s*-Stem (with *vīs*, Nom. Plur. *virēs*, compare *mūs*, *mūrēs*), but the Dat., Acc., and Abl. Sing. are formed from a stem *vi-*. *Sūs* and *grūs* are relics of a *ū*-Declension. *Bōs* is from a stem *bov-* (*bōs* from \**bō(u)-s*). *Iuppiter*, earlier *Iūpiter*, comes from a Vocative form \**Iou* (once \**diēu*) + *piter* (from *pater*, *father*, by the regular weakening, 42, 1).

### The Locative Singular of the Third Declension

93. The Locative Singular is identical with the Ablative Singular in *-e*, as *Carthāgine, at Carthage*. But there are also forms in *-ī*, as *Carthāginī, rūri, in the country* (beside *rūre*).

### Gender in the Third Declension

94. The following is a summary of such of the important types as are fairly uniform in gender. For more detailed statements, with exceptions, see under the several classes.

1. Masculine : nouns in *-tor* (Gen. *-tōris*), *-or* (Gen. *-ōris*), *-er* (Gen. *-ris*), *-ō* (Gen. *-ōnis*), *-es* (Gen. *-itis*), *-eps* (Gen. *-ipis*), *-ex* (Gen. *-icis*).

Examples : *dator, amor, pater, sermō, miles, princeps, auspex*.

2. Feminine : nouns in *-tās* (Gen. *-tātis*), *-tūs* (Gen. *-tūtis*), *-ēs* (Gen. *-is*), *-gō* or *-dō* (Gen. *-inis*), *-rs* (Gen. *-rtis*) ; and the majority of those in *-iō* (Gen. *-iōnis*) and *-is* (Gen. *-is*).

Examples : *cīvitās, virtūs, caedēs, virgō, grandō, pars ; regiō, turris*.

3. Neuter : nouns in *-en, -us, -e, -al* (Gen. *-ālis*), *-ar* (Gen. *-āris*), *-ur* (Gen. *-oris*), *-or* (Gen. *-oris*).

Examples : *nōmen, genus, sedīle, animal, exemplar, ebur, aequor*.

### Greek Nouns

95. Greek Nouns of the Third Declension often retain their Greek forms in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular, the Nominative and Accusative Plural, and sometimes in the Genitive Singular. The Latin endings are nearly always used in the other cases ; also, usually, in the Genitive Singular and frequently in the Accusative Singular. Examples of Declension :

**lampas, torch, F.**    **Sōcratēs, Socrates**    **hērōs, hero, M.**

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	lampas	Sōcratēs	hērōs
<i>Gen.</i>	lampados, -is	Sōcratis, -ī	hērōis
<i>Dat.</i>	lampadī	Sōcratī	hērōi
<i>Acc.</i>	lampada, -em	Sōcratem, -ēn	hērōa, -em
<i>Voc.</i>	lampas	Sōcrates, -ē	hērōs
<i>Abl.</i>	lampade	Sōcrate	hērōe

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	lampadēs	hērōēs
<i>Gen.</i>	lampadum	hērōum
<i>Dat.</i>	lampadibus	hērōibus
<i>Acc.</i>	lampadās	hērōās
<i>Voc.</i>	lampadēs	hērōēs
<i>Abl.</i>	lampadibus	hērōibus

*a.* Proper names in **-eus** usually follow the Latin Second Declension (often with synizesis ; 658), except in the Vocative, which ends in **-ēu**.

But note also Acc. *Orphea*, *īlionēa*, Dat. *Orphēi*, etc. *Perseus* appears also as *Persēs*, Acc. *Persem*, etc. *Achillēs* sometimes has forms of **-eus**, as Gen. *Achilleī*.

*b.* Names like *Dīdō* are regularly declined in **-ō, -ōnis**, etc. But there is also a Gen. in **-ūs**, as *Mantūs*, and Acc. in **-ō**, as *Dīdō*.

*c.* For names in **-is, -idis**, observe Acc. *Paridem*, *Tyndarida*, *Parim*, *Parin*, Voc. *Daphni*. Cf. *Darēs*, Acc. *Darēta* and *Darēn*.

*d.* For names in **-ys**, observe Acc. *Capyn*, *Halym*, Voc. *Tiphy*, Abl. *Capye*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

**96.** The Nominative Singular ends in **-us**, or, in the case of Neuters, in **-ū**. Examples of Declension :

**fructus, fruit, M.**    **tribus, tribe, F.**    **cornū, horn, N.**  
(stem fructu-)    (stem tribu-)    (stem cornu-)

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	fructus	tribus	cornū
<i>Gen.</i>	fructūs	tribūs	cornūs
<i>Dat.</i>	fructuī, -ī	tribuī, -ī	cornū
<i>Acc.</i>	fructum	tribum	cornū
<i>Voc.</i>	fructus	tribus	cornū
<i>Abl.</i>	fructū	tribū	cornū



## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	fructūs	tribūs	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	fructuum	tribuum	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	fructibus	tribubus	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fructūs	tribūs	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	fructūs	tribūs	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	fructibus	tribubus	cornibus

## Remarks on the Case-Forms

97. 1. The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *-ubus* as follows :

- Always in *arcus*, *tribus*, *quercus*.
- Frequently in *artus*, *lacus*, *partus*, *verū*.
- Occasionally in *genū*, *tonitrū*, and a few others.

2. The Dative Singular in *-ū* is regular in Neuters, and, except in early Latin, is frequent in Masculines and Feminines.

3. The Genitive Plural sometimes ends in *-um*, as *passum*, formed after *nummum*, etc., of the Second Declension (71, 4, a).

4. In early Latin is found a Genitive Singular in *-uis*, as *fructuis*, *quaestuis* ; on inscriptions also *-uos*, as *senātuos*.

5. Some nouns show an intermixture of forms of the Second Declension, as *senātus*, *senate*, Gen. *senāti* beside *senātūs*, and especially *domus*, *house*, the inflection of which is as follows :

domus	domūs
domūs (domī)	domōrum, domuū
domui (domō)	domibus
domum	domōs, domūs
domus	domūs
domō (domū)	domibus
Loc. Sing. domī, at home.	

## Gender

98. Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *-us* are mostly Masculine, those in *-ū* Neuter.

a. But the following in *-us* are Feminine :

<i>acus</i> , needle	<i>porticus</i> , porch
<i>anus</i> , old woman	<i>Quinquātrūs</i> (Plur.),
<i>domus</i> , house	name of a festival
<i>Idūs</i> (Plur.), <i>Ides</i>	<i>socrus</i> , mother-in-law
<i>nurus</i> , daughter-in-law	<i>tribus</i> , tribe

## FIFTH DECLENSION

99. The Nominative Singular ends in *-ēs*. Examples of Declension :

	<i>diēs, day, M. (stem diē-)</i>		<i>rēs, thing, F. (stem rē-)</i>	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

## Remarks on the Case-Forms

100. 1. In the Genitive and Dative Singular we find *-ēī* after a vowel, but *-eī* after a consonant, as *diēī, faciēī*, but *reī, fideī*. But this distinction does not hold in early Latin, where we find, for example, *rēī*, *reī*, and oftener monosyllabic *rei*.

2. A form of the Genitive and Dative Singular in *-ē* is found, as *diē, aciē*.

3. The Genitive Singular of *plēbēs, people*, is often *plēbī* in the phrases *tribūnus plēbī* and *plēbī scītum*. Similarly, *dīī* for *diēī*.

4. The only words which have a complete Plural are *diēs* and *rēs*, but several others are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

## Gender

101. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except *diēs, day*, and *merīdiēs, midday*. And *diēs* is usually Feminine when meaning an appointed time, or time in general.

## DEFECTIVE AND VARIABLE NOUNS

102. Nouns may lack one Number or one or more Cases ; they may follow partly one Declension, partly another ; or they may vary in Gender.

## Nouns used only in the Singular

103. Some words are of such a meaning as to be used *commonly only* in the singular. Such are :

1. Proper Names.
2. Abstracts, like *cāritās*, *affection*.
3. Collectives, like *vulgus*, *the rabble*.
4. Words denoting Material, as *aes*, *bronze*.

NOTE. But some of these are used in the Plural in a peculiar sense, as *Caesarēs*, *the Caesars*, *cāritātēs*, *kinds of affection*, *aera*, *bronzes*, *arms of bronze*, *wages*.

### Nouns used only in the Plural

104. Nouns used only in the Plural include :

1. Some names of places, as *Athēnae*, *Athens*.
2. Most names of festivals, as *Bacchānālia*, *festival of Bacchus*.
3. Many names of objects naturally Plural in signification, as *arma*, *arms*, *spolia*,<sup>1</sup> *spoils*, *viscera*, *entrails*.

4. Many others, for some of which English prefers the Singular.

The most important are :

<i>angustiae</i> , <i>defile</i> , <i>difficulty</i> ( <i>straits</i> )	<i>insidiae</i> , <i>ambush</i>
<i>cibāria</i> , <i>food</i> ( <i>rations</i> )	<i>liberī</i> , <i>children</i>
<i>dēliciae</i> , <i>pleasure</i>	<i>minae</i> , <i>threats</i>
<i>divitiae</i> , <i>wealth</i> ( <i>riches</i> )	<i>moenia</i> , <i>walls</i>
<i>epulae</i> , <sup>2</sup> <i>banquet</i> ( <i>viands</i> )	<i>nūndinae</i> , <i>market-day</i>
<i>facētia</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>wit</i> ( <i>witticisms</i> )	<i>nūptiae</i> , <i>wedding</i> ( <i>nuptials</i> )
<i>forēs</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>door</i>	<i>reliquiae</i> , <i>remainder</i> ( <i>remains</i> )
<i>hiberna</i> , <i>winter quarters</i>	<i>tenebrae</i> , <i>darkness</i>
<i>indūtiae</i> , <i>truce</i>	<i>verbera</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>scourging</i> ( <i>lashes</i> )

### Different Meaning in Singular and Plural

105. Many nouns are used in both the Singular and the Plural, but with a difference of meaning. The most important instances are :

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>aedēs</i> , <i>temple</i>	<i>aedēs</i> , <i>house</i>
<i>auxilium</i> , <i>help</i>	<i>auxilia</i> , <i>auxiliaries</i>
<i>carcer</i> , <i>prison</i>	<i>carcerēs</i> , <i>barriers</i>
<i>castrum</i> , <i>fort</i>	<i>castra</i> , <i>camp</i>
<i>cēra</i> , <i>wax</i>	<i>cērae</i> , <i>wax tablets</i>
<i>comitium</i> , <i>place of assembly</i>	<i>comitia</i> , <i>assembly</i>
<i>cōpia</i> , <i>plenty</i>	<i>cōpiae</i> , <i>troops</i>

<sup>1</sup> Occasionally Singular in poetry.

<sup>2</sup> Also *epulum*, *public banquet*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>facultās, possibility</i>	<i>facultātēs, resources, goods</i>
<i>finis, end, border</i>	<i>finēs, borders, territory</i>
<i>fortūna, fortune</i>	<i>fortūnae, possessions</i>
<i>impedimentum, hindrance</i>	<i>impedimenta, baggage</i>
<i>littera, letter (of the alphabet)</i>	<i>litterae, letter, epistle</i>
<i>opera, work</i>	<i>operae, workmen</i>
<i>pars, portion</i>	<i>partēs, rôle</i>
<i>rōstrum, beak</i>	<i>rōstra, platform for speakers</i>
<i>vigilia, watch</i>	<i>vigiliae, pickets</i>

### Nouns Defective in Case-Forms

106. Nouns may lack one or more of the Case-Forms.

1. Many u-Stems are used only in the Ablative Singular, as *nātū*, *by birth*, *iussū*, *by order*; similarly *pondō*, *by weight*, *sponte*, *of free will* (Gen. *spontis* rare). Of *forte*, *by chance*, the Nom. *fors* also occurs.

2. Several Neuters are used only in the Nom.-Acc. Sing., as *fās*, *right*, *nihil*, *nīl*, *nothing*, *īnstar*, *likeness*, *opus*, *need*, etc.

3. *Nēmō*, *no one*, has a Dat. *nēmīni* and an Acc. *nēmīnem*, but the Gen. and Abl. are supplied by *nūllius* and *nūllō*, from *nūllus*.

4. The Nominative Singular is lacking for *dapīs*, *feast*, *frūgis*, *fruit*, *opīs*, *help* (lacks also Dat.), *vīcis*, *change* (lacks also Dat.), *precī* (Dat.), *prayer* (lacks also Gen.), etc.

5. The Genitive Plural is lacking in many nouns, as *pāx*, *lūx*, etc.

NOTE. An enumeration of all the examples of Defective Nouns is unnecessary. It is sometimes a mere accident that a certain case-form is not found.

### Nouns Variable in Declension

107. Some nouns show forms belonging to two different Declensions or to two classes of the same Declension. Such are known as *Heteroclites* ("differently declined").

1. Some examples have been given already, as *domus* (97, 5), which varies between the Second and Fourth Declensions; *vīrus*, etc., of the Second, but having the Nom.-Acc. Sing. of the Third (72, 5, note); *famēs*, of the Third, but having the Abl. Sing. *famē* of the Fifth (88, 5); *femur*, an r-Stem in the Nom. and Acc. Sing., but forming its other cases from an n-Stem (80, 5).

NOTE. From the historical point of view all words of the Third Declension are *Heteroclites*, since their case-forms belong partly to i-Stems and partly to Consonant-Stems.

2. Other illustrations are: *vās*, *vessel*, with Singular of the Third Declension (Gen. *vāsis*, etc.), and Plural of the Second (*vāsa*, *vāsōrum*, etc.); *iūgerum*, *acre*, with Singular of the Second Declension (Gen. *iūgerī*, etc.), and Plural of the Third (*iūgera*, *iūgerum*, *iūgeribus*); *requiēs*, *rest*, of the Third (Gen. *requiētis*, etc.), but having also an Acc. Sing. *requiem* of the Fifth; *māteria*, *material*, of the First, but having also a Nom. Sing. *māteriēs* and an Acc. Sing. *māteriem* of the Fifth, and similarly many others.

### Nouns Variable in Gender

108. Nouns may have forms of different Genders. Such are known as Heterogeneous Nouns.

1. Some nouns of the Second Declension have both Masculine and Neuter forms, as *clipeus*, M., and *clipeum*, N., *shield*.

2. Many nouns have different genders in the Singular and Plural, as *locus*, M., *place*, Plur. *loca*, N., *places* (*locī*, M., *passages in authors*); *iocus*, *jest*, M., Plur. often *ioca*, N.; *frēnum*, *bit*, N., Plur. often *frēnī*, M.

## ADJECTIVES

109. There are two types of Adjectival Declension, the one being based on the First and Second Declensions of Nouns, the other on the Third.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

110. The Masculine is declined like *hortus*, *puer*, or *ager* (69, 70), the Feminine like *sella* (65), the Neuter like *dōnum* (69). Examples :

*bonus*, *good*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

a. The Gen. and Voc. Sing. Masc. and Neut. of adjectives in *-ius* end in *-iī* and *-iē*, not in *-ī*, as in Nouns ; e.g. Gen. Sing. *rēgiī*, Voc. Sing. *rēgiē*, from *rēgius*, *royal*.

111.	liber, free			ruber, red		
SINGULAR						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	liber	libera	liberum	ruber	rubra	rubrum
Gen.	liberī	liberae	liberī	rubrī	rubrae	rubrī
Dat.	liberō	liberae	liberō	rubrō	rubrae	rubrō
Acc.	liberum	liberam	liberum	rubrum	rubram	rubrum
Voc.	liber	libera	liberum	ruber	rubra	rubrum
Abl.	liberō	liberā	liberō	rubrō	rubrā	rubrō
PLURAL						
Nom.	liberī	liberae	libera	rubrī	rubrae	rubra
Gen.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum	rubrōrum	rubrārum	rubrōrum
Dat.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	rubrīs	rubrīs	rubrīs
Acc.	liberōs	liberās	libera	rubrōs	rubrās	rubra
Voc.	liberī	liberae	libera	rubrī	rubrae	rubra
Abl.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs	rubrīs	rubrīs	rubrīs

a. The adjectives which are declined like *liber* (not like *ruber*) are : *asper, rough* ; *lacer, torn* ; *prosper, prosperous* ; *tener, tender* ; compounds of *-fer* and *-ger*, like *āliger, winged* ; sometimes *dexter, right*.

b. Some adjective *-ro*-Stems form the Nom. Sing. Masc. in *-rus* instead of *-er*, as is also the case with some Nouns (70, a). Such are : *ferus, wild*, *properus, quick*, *praeposterus, absurd*, and usually *inferus, under*, and *superus, upper* ; further, all those in which the *r* is preceded by a long vowel, as *sincērus, sincere*, *austērus, austere*, etc.

c. The declension of *satur, full*, is parallel to that of *liber*, namely, *satur, satura, saturum*, etc.

#### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

112. Several adjectives show in the Genitive and Dative Singular the Pronominal endings *-ius* and *-ī*. In other respects they are declined like *bonus*, or like *liber* or *ruber*. Examples of the Singular :

	tōtus, whole			uter, which of two		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i>	tōtūs	tōtūs	tōtūs	utrūs	utrūs	utrūs
<i>Dat.</i>	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i>	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i>	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	utrō	utrā	utrō

NOTE. In the Genitive ending -ūs the ī is sometimes shortened in poetry, especially in *alterius* and, always, in *utriusque*. See 21, note.

a. The adjectives declined in this way are :

<i>alius, other</i>	<i>sōlus, alone</i>	<i>alter, the other</i>
<i>āllus, any</i>	<i>tōtus, whole</i>	<i>uter, which (of two)</i>
<i>nūllus, none</i>	<i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>neuter, neither</i>

b. The Nom.-Acc. Sing. Neut. of *alius* is *aliud* ; the Genitive Singular is usually supplied by *alterius*.

NOTE. Early and rare forms are *alis* and *alid*, for *alius* and *aliud* ; also Dat. Sing. *alī* for *aliī*, and Gen. Sing. *alūs* and *aliī*.

c. The Dat. Sing. Fem. of *alter* is sometimes *alterae*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

113. Adjectives of the Third Declension are conveniently classified according to the number of endings in the Nominative Singular, namely, *one*, *two*, or *three*.

### ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

#### 114.

#### ācer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Voc.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

a. All adjectives of this type are from stems in -ri-, the Nom. Sing. Masc. becoming -er, as in Nouns like *imber* (87). But *some* stems in -ri-, as *fūnebris*, *muliebris*, *inlūstris*, etc., have the Nom. Sing. Masc. in -ris, and so belong in the next class.

## ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

115. *gravis, heavy*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>grave</i>	<i>gravēs</i>	<i>gravia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>gravium</i>	<i>gravium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>gravī</i>	<i>gravī</i>	<i>gravibus</i>	<i>gravibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>gravem</i>	<i>grave</i>	<i>gravīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>gravia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>grave</i>	<i>gravēs</i>	<i>gravia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>gravī</i>	<i>gravī</i>	<i>gravibus</i>	<i>gravibus</i>

a. All adjectives of this type are i-Stems.

## Comparatives

116. *melior, better*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>meliorēs</i>	<i>meliora</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>melioris</i>	<i>melioris</i>	<i>meliorum</i>	<i>meliorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>meliorī</i>	<i>meliorī</i>	<i>melioribus</i>	<i>melioribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>melio rem</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>meliorēs (-īs)</i>	<i>meliora</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>melior</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>meliorēs</i>	<i>meliora</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>meliore</i>	<i>meliore</i>	<i>melioribus</i>	<i>melioribus</i>

a. The Comparatives are properly s-Stems, the s being preserved only in the Nom.-Acc. Sing. Neut. Compare *honor* (*honōs*), *honōris* (80, 4).

b. *Plūs, more*, in the Singular used only as a Neuter, has Gen. Plur. *plūrium*, but Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut. *plūra* (but *complūria* beside *complūra*).

## ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

(Including Present Participles)

117. *duplex, double*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duplicis</i>	<i>duplicis</i>	<i>duplicium</i>	<i>duplicium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duplicem</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicīs (-ēs)</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplex</i>	<i>duplicēs</i>	<i>duplicia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicī</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>	<i>duplicibus</i>



*amāns, loving*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Gen.</i>	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
<i>Dat.</i>	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
<i>Acc.</i>	amantem	amāns	amantis (-ēs)	amantia
<i>Voc.</i>	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
<i>Abl.</i>	amante (-ī)	amante (-ī)	amantibus	amantibus

*vetus, old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Voc.</i>	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

a. These Adjectives are Consonant-Stems in origin, but, with the exception of *vetus* and a few others, they have taken on the characteristic i-Stem forms in the Plural, and for the most part in the Ablative Singular. For details, see 118.

b. Of the various classes of Consonant-Stems the Mute-Stems are the most frequent. The union of the mute with the s of the Nom. Sing., and the changes in the stem between the Nom. Sing. and the other cases are in accordance with the statements given above for Nouns (77). So *duplex, double*, Gen. *duplicis*; *particeps, sharing*, Gen. *participis*; *dives, rich*, Gen. *divitis*. Peculiar are the compounds of *caput*, as *anceps, two-headed*, Gen. *ancipitis*; *praeceps, headlong*, Gen. *praecipitis*.

There are also a few stems in -l, -r, and -s, as *vigil, watchful*, Gen. *vigilis*; *memor, mindful*, Gen. *memoris*; *pūbēs, grown up*, Gen. *pūberis*; *vetus, old*, etc.

## Remarks on the Case-Forms

118. 1. Adjectives of the Third Declension have the i-Stem forms of the Ablative Singular, Genitive Plural, and Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter, namely, -ī, -ium, -ia. But Comparatives have the Consonant-Stem forms, namely, -e, -um, -a. Present Participles have -ium and -ia, but the Ablative Singular in -e, unless used in an Adjective sense, when they usually have -ī; e.g. *eō praesente, in his presence*, but *praesentī tempore, at the present time*.

## a. Exceptions :

- 1) Adjectives of Two or Three Endings. A Gen. Plur. in **-um** is regular in *celer*, *swift*, *volucris*, *flying*, occasional in *caelestis*, *heavenly*, *agrestis*, *rustic*, but rare elsewhere.
- 2) Adjectives of One Ending. An Abl. Sing. in **-e** and a Gen. Plur. in **-um** are regular in the following (Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut. wanting in most):

* <i>caeles</i> , <i>heavenly</i> , Gen. <i>caelitis</i>	<i>pūbēs</i> , <i>grown up</i>
<i>compos</i> , <i>master of</i>	<i>impūbēs</i> , <i>under age</i>
<i>particeps</i> , <i>sharing</i>	<i>sōspes</i> , <i>safe</i>
<i>pauper</i> , <i>poor</i>	<i>superstes</i> , <i>remaining</i>
<i>princeps</i> , <i>chief</i>	<i>dives</i> , <i>rich</i> (but <i>dītia</i> )
	<i>vetus</i> , <i>old</i> (also <i>vetera</i> )

A Gen. Plur. in **-um** is also regular in *inops*; *needy*, *memor*, *mindful*, *vigil*, *watchful*, and in compounds of *pēs*, *foot*, such as *bipēs*, *quadrupēs*.

- 3) In other Adjectives of One or Two Endings an Abl. Sing. in **-e** is occasionally found, chiefly in poetry; e.g. *grave*, *duplice*.
- 4) Comparatives. An Ablative in **-i** is rare. For *plūs* see 116, *b*.
- 5) Present Participles. A Gen. Plur. in **-um** is found in poetry.

2. Adjectives used substantively retain their usual forms, as Abl. *nātālī*, *birthday*. But when they are used as proper names the Ablative generally ends in **-e**, as *Iuvenāle*, *Quirīnāle*.

3. Participles used substantively retain their usual forms, as in *ā sapiente*, *by a wise man*.

4. The Acc. Plur. Masc. and Fem. had the regular i-Stem form **-īs**, and this was in general more persistently retained than in Nouns, although forms in **-ēs** are also found in the Augustan period. But the words which had the Gen. Plur. in **-um** had the Consonant-Stem form of the Acc. Plur., namely, **-ēs**, from the outset.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES<sup>1</sup>

119. There are three Degrees of Comparison, as in English, namely, the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior**, the Superlative by adding **-issimus**, to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel, if it has one. The Declension of

<sup>1</sup> The Comparison of Adjectives is a matter belonging more properly to Word-Formation than to Inflection, but is conveniently treated in connection with the Declension of Adjectives.

Comparatives has been given (116). Superlatives are declined as Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Participles used as Adjectives are compared in the same manner. Examples of Comparison :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>clārus, clear</i>	<i>clārīor, clearer</i>	<i>clārissimus, clearest</i>
<i>gravis, heavy</i>	<i>gravīor, heavier</i>	<i>gravissimus, heaviest</i>
<i>audāx, bold</i>	<i>audācīor, bolder</i>	<i>audācissimus, boldest</i>
<i>amāns, loving</i>	<i>amantīor, more loving</i>	<i>amantissimus, most loving</i>

120. 1. Adjectives in -er form the Superlative in -errimus, as if by adding -rimus to the -er. Examples :

<i>asper, rough</i>	<i>asperior</i>	<i>asperimus</i>
<i>celer, swift</i>	<i>celerior</i>	<i>celerimus</i>
<i>acer, sharp</i>	<i>acrior</i>	<i>acerrimus</i>

a. So also *vetus*, Superlative *veterrimus*. The old Comparative *veterior* is replaced by *vetustior*, formed from *vetustus*. *Mātūrus, ripe*, has once a Superlative *mātūrrimus*, but usually *mātūrrissimus*.

2. Certain adjectives in -ilis form the Superlative in -illimus, as if by adding -limus to the stem of the Positive minus its final vowel. Examples :

<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracilior</i>	<i>gracillimus</i>
<i>humilis, lowly</i>	<i>humilior</i>	<i>humillimus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>

a. So also *difficilis, dissimilis*. Other adjectives in -ilis are compared in the usual manner, as *nōbilis, nōbilior, nōbilissimus*. But many of them lack the Superlative.

NOTE. The stems of the Superlatives in -illimus and -errimus come from \* -il-simo-, \* -er-simo- (cf. -is-simo-), the s being assimilated to the preceding l or r (49, 11).

3. Adjective compounds in -volus, -dīcus, -ficus have Comparatives and Superlatives which belong properly to compounds in -volēns, -dīcēns, -fīcēns, of which, except in the case of -fīcēns, examples occur in early Latin ; e.g. *benevolēns, maledīcēns*. Examples :

<i>benevolus, benevolent</i>	<i>benevolentior</i>	<i>benevolentissimus</i>
<i>maledicus, slanderous</i>	<i>maledicentior</i>	<i>maledicentissimus</i>
<i>magnificus, eminent</i>	<i>magnificentior</i>	<i>magnificentissimus</i>

4. There are a few Superlatives in -mus, -imus, -timus, and -ēmus, which are cited in 122, 123. So *sum-mus* (\**sup-mos*; see 49, 10), *min-imus*, *op-timus*, *supr-ēmus*.

121. Many adjectives form the Comparative and Superlative by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*, to the Positive. This is true of most adjectives in which the vowel of the stem is itself preceded by another vowel, and of many others. Examples :

dubius, <i>doubtful</i>	Comp. <b>magis</b> dubius	Superl. <b>maximē</b> dubius
idōneus, <i>suitable</i>	Comp. <b>magis</b> idōneus	Superl. <b>maximē</b> idōneus

NOTE. Some adjectives are compared by means of **magis** and **maximē**, as well as by the usual method ; e.g. *ēlegāns*, *select*, Comp. *ēlegantior* or *magis ēlegāns*, Superl. *ēlegantissimus* or *maximē ēlegāns*.

#### Peculiar or Defective Comparison

122. Several adjectives show two or three different stems in the three Degrees, or different forms of the same stem. Compare English *good*, *better*, *best*. Such are :

bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
malus, <i>bad</i>	peior, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maior, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
multus, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minor, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, <i>smallest</i>
nēquam (indecl.), <i>worthless</i>	nēquior	nēquissimus
frūgī (indecl.), <i>thrifty</i>	frūgālior	frūgālissimus
iuvenis, <i>young</i>	iūnior [minor nātū]	[minimus nātū]
senex, <i>old</i>	senior [maior nātū]	[maximus nātū]

123. In the case of some adjectives the Positive is wholly lacking, or is rare except in certain expressions. But the stem of the Positive often appears in adverbial or prepositional forms. Such are :

cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>	citerior, <i>on this side</i>	citimus, <i>nearest</i>
uls, ultrā, <i>beyond</i>	ulterior, <i>farther</i>	ultimus, <i>farthest</i>
in, intrā, <i>within</i>	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>innermost</i>
exterus (nātiōnēs exterae, <i>foreign nations</i> )	exterior, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus, } <i>outermost</i>
		{ extimus, }
prope, <i>near</i>	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest</i>
prae, prō, <i>before</i>	prior, <i>former</i>	primus, <i>first</i>
dē, <i>down</i>	dēterior, <i>worse</i>	dēterrimus, <i>worst</i>

—	<i>potior, preferable</i>	<i>potissimus, strongest</i>
—	<i>ocior, swifter</i>	<i>ocissimus, swiftest</i>
<i>inferus, below</i>	<i>inferior, lower</i>	{ <i>infirmus,</i> } <i>lowest</i> <i>imus,</i> }
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior, higher</i>	{ <i>suprēmus,</i> } <i>highest</i> <i>summus,</i> }
<i>posterus, following</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	{ <i>postrēmus, last</i> <i>postumus, late-born</i>

*a.* The Comparative is wanting for *novus, new, sacer, sacred, pius, pious* (Superl. *piissimus*), and rare for *fidus, faithful, falsus, false*, and others.

*b.* The Superlative is wanting for *iuvenis, young*, and *senex, old* (but see 122), and for some others, including many adjectives in *-ilis, -bilis*.

## ADVERBS

### (PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS)

**124.** Although Adverbs are not themselves capable of inflection, they are most conveniently treated at this point, because many of them are regularly formed from Nouns and Adjectives, and with endings which are identical with the Case-endings.

NOTE. It is believed that *all* Adverbs are, in their ultimate origin, nothing but stereotyped Case-forms. Some of them show endings which appear as Case-endings in related languages, but have become obsolete as such in Latin. Still others, especially among Adverbs formed from Pronominal Stems, show endings which even in the parent speech were used only in Adverbs, not as real Case-endings.

**125.** Prepositions and Conjunctions are Adverbs in origin, and some of them, which show the common adverbial formations, are cited among the examples of such formations. But many of them, including most of the commonest Prepositions, do not admit of any analysis or classification as regards *form*. They are, therefore, treated only as regards their *uses*, i.e. under the head of Syntax.

**126.** The common Adverbial endings are :

1. *-ē (-e)*, as in *altē, highly*, from *altus* ; *cārē, dearly*, from *cārus* ; *malē, badly*, from *malus* ; *bene, well*, from *bonus*. This is the usual ending of Adverbs formed from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. For *ferē* and *fermē, nearly*, the Adjective forms are lacking.

NOTE. This ending appears on early inscriptions as *-ēd*, which was once an Ablative ending of *o*-Stems existing beside that in *-ōd*, but has become obsolete in Latin, except in Adverbs. For the short *e* in *male* and *bene*, see 28, note.

2. **-ter, -iter**, as in *audācter*, *boldly*, from *audāx*; *graviter*, *heavily*, from *gravis*; *hūmāniter*, *humanely*, from *hūmānus*. This is the usual ending of Adverbs formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension, but is not confined to these.

NOTE. This ending is probably the same as that seen in such Adverbs and Prepositions as *inter*, *subter*, etc., from which it was extended, but with a loss of its distinctly local force (a transition which might readily take place in such a word as *circiter*, *about*).

3. **-ō (-o)**, as in *tūtō*, *safely*, from *tūtus*; *primō*, *at first*, from *primus*; *cito*, *quickly*, from *citus*; *modo*, *only*, from *modus*. So also the Pronominal Adverbs *eō*, *quō*, etc.; cf. also *retrō*, and, in composition only, *contrō*.

NOTE. This is the Ablative ending, originally *-ōd*. For the short *o* in *modo* and *cito*, see 28, note.

4. **-ā**, as in *dextrā*, *on the right*, from *dexter*; *aliā*, *otherwise*, from *alius*; *rēctā*, *straightway*, from *rēctus*; and other Adverbs of place. So also the Pronominal Adverbs *eā*, *quā*, *hāc*, *postea*, *posthāc*, etc., and Prepositions like *extrā*.

NOTE. This appears on early inscriptions as *-ād*, and is the Ablative ending of the Feminine (originally, perhaps, *eā viā*, etc.).

5. **-tim (-sim)**, as in *fūrtim*, *secretly*, from *fūr*; *privātim*, *privately*, from *privātus*; *cursim*, *quickly*, etc.

NOTE. These adverbs originated in forms like *partim*, *partly*, from *pars*, in which *-tim* represents the Acc. Sing. of a stem in *-ti-*.

6. **-um**, as in *multum*, *much*, from *multus*; *postrēmum*, *finally*, from *postrēmus*; *vērū*, *but*, from *vērū*; *cēterum*, *for the rest*, from *\*cēterus*. So also the Pronominal Adverbs *tum*, *dum*, *cum*, and the Preposition *circum*.

NOTE. This is the ending of the Acc. Sing. Neut. of *o*-Stems. The same Case is seen in the adverbs in *-ius* from Comparatives (see 128, note), and in a few forms in *-e* from *i*-Stems, as *facile*, *easily*, from *facilis*; also in the Conjunction *quod*. The Acc. Plur. Neut. is seen in the Conjunction *quā*.

7. **-am**, as in *clam*, *secretly*, *palam*, *openly*, *cōram*, *openly*. So the Pronominal Adverbs *tam*, *iam*, *quam*, etc.

NOTE. This is the ending of the Acc. Sing. Fem. The Acc. Plur. Fem. is seen in *aliās*, *at other times*, and *forās*, *out of doors*.

8. **-tus**, as in *funditus*, *from the bottom*, from *fundus*; *intus*, *from within*.

NOTE. This is an old suffix *-tos*, used also in related languages to denote source.

127. Other endings, used chiefly with Pronominal Stems, and mostly of obscure origin, are :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. -nde, as in inde, <i>thence</i> , unde, <i>whence</i> .        | 6. -im, -inc, as in illum, <i>illinc</i> , <i>thence</i> , hinc, <i>hence</i> .        |
| 2. -dem, as in tandem, <i>at last</i> , pridem, <i>long ago</i> . | 7. -ic, as in hic, <i>here</i> , illic, <i>there</i> . These are Locatives in -i-c(e). |
| 3. -dam, as in quondam, <i>once</i> .                             | 8. -bi (-bī), as in ibi, <i>there</i> , ubi, <i>where</i> .                            |
| 4. -dum, as in dudum, <i>a while ago</i> .                        | 9. -per, as in semper, <i>always</i> , nuper, <i>lately</i> .                          |
| 5. -dō, as in quandō, <i>when</i> .                               |  |

### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

128. In Comparison the Adverb follows the formation of the Adjective, except that the Comparative ends in -ius, and the Superlative in -issimē. Examples :

altē, <i>highly</i>	altius, <i>more highly</i>	altissimē, <i>most highly</i>
audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē
ācritēr, <i>fiercely</i>	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
tūtō, <i>safely</i>	tūtius	tūtissimē

NOTE. The Comparative Adverb is simply the Acc. Sing. Neut. of the Comparative Adjective, used adverbially; the Superlative is formed from the Superlative Adjective with the regular adverbial ending -ē. Adverbs are also compared by prefixing *magis* and *maximē*.

### Special Peculiarities

129. The following show two or three different stems in the three Degrees (like the corresponding Adjectives; see 122), or are otherwise peculiar or defective.

bene, <i>well</i>	melius, <i>better</i>	optimē, <i>best</i>
male, <i>ill</i>	peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimē, <i>worst</i>
magnopere, } <i>greatly</i> ,	magis, <i>more</i>	maximē, <i>most</i>
multum, } <i>much</i>		
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs, <i>more</i>	plūrimum, <i>most</i>
parum, <i>little</i>	minus, <i>less</i>	minimē, <i>least</i>
satis, <i>enough</i>	satius, <i>better</i>	—
—	potius, <i>rather</i>	potissimum, <i>especially</i>
—	prius, <i>before</i>	primum, <i>first</i>
nūper, <i>recently</i>	—	nūperrimē, <i>most recently</i>
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius, <i>oftener</i>	saepissimē, <i>oftenest</i>
diū, <i>long</i>	diūtius, <i>longer</i>	diūtissimē, <i>longest</i>
prope, <i>near</i>	propius, <i>nearer</i>	proximē, <i>nearest, next</i>

NOTE. Sētius, *less*, is not related to secus, *otherwise*.

## NUMERALS

## CARDINALS AND ORDINALS

130. Cardinals answer the question "How many?" Ordinals, the question "Which in order?"

CARDINALS	ORDINALS	ROMAN NOTATION
1. <i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>	I
2. <i>duo, two</i>	<i>secundus, second</i>	II
3. <i>trēs</i>	<i>tertius</i>	III
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	IIII <i>or</i> IV
5. <i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>	V
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	VI
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	VII
8. <i>octō</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	VIII
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nōnus</i>	VIII <i>or</i> IX
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>	X
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	<i>ūndecimus</i>	XI
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	XII
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	XIII
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>	XIIII <i>or</i> XIV
15. <i>quīndecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>	XV
16. <i>sēdecim</i>	<i>sextus decimus</i>	XVI
17. <i>septendecim</i>	<i>septimus decimus</i>	XVII
18. <i>duodēvigintī</i>	<i>duodēvicēsimus</i>	XVIII
19. <i>ūndēvigintī</i>	<i>ūndēvicēsimus</i>	XVIII <i>or</i> XIX
20. <i>vīgintī</i>	<i>vicēsimus</i>	XX
21. <i>vīgintī ūnus</i> ( <i>ūnus et vīgintī</i> )	<i>vicēsimus prīmus</i> ( <i>ūnus et vicēsimus</i> )	XXI
22. <i>vīgintī duo</i> ( <i>duo et vīgintī</i> )	<i>vicēsimus secundus</i> ( <i>alter et vicēsimus</i> )	XXII
30. <i>trīgintā</i>	<i>trīcēsimus</i>	XXX
40. <i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēsimus</i>	XXXX <i>or</i> XL
50. <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>quīnquāgēsimus</i>	L
60. <i>sexāgintā</i>	<i>sexāgēsimus</i>	LX
70. <i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsimus</i>	LXX
80. <i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsimus</i>	LXXX
90. <i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsimus</i>	LXXXX <i>or</i> XC



CARDINALS	ORDINALS	ROMAN NOTATION
100. centum	centēsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	CI
120. centum (et) vīgintī	centēsimus vicēsimus	CXX
121. centum vīgintī ūnus	centēsimus vicēsimus prīmus	CXXI
200. ducentī	ducentēsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	CCCC
500. quīgentī	quīgentēsimus	D
600. sescentī	sescentēsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	DCCCC
1000. mille	millēsimus	(earlier CIO) M
1120. mille centum vīgintī	millēsimus centēsimus vicēsimus	MCXX
1900. mille nōngentī	millēsimus nōngentēsimus	MDCCCC
2000. duo milia	bis millēsimus	MM
10,000. decem milia	decīens millēsimus	X̄
100,000. centum milia	centīens millēsimus	C̄
1,000,000. decīens centēna milia	decīens centīens millēsimus	[X]

NOTE. For some of the numeral signs, other forms, not resembling Latin letters, were commonly used in inscriptions, especially in the early period. M for 1000 did not replace CIO until the second century A.D. For numbers like 4, 9, 14, etc., the method of notation by adding was commoner than the method by subtracting; so, for example, VIIII is usual, IX rare.

### Declension of Cardinals and Ordinals

131. Both Cardinals and Ordinals are Adjectives, and the latter are declined like *bonus* (110). But of the Cardinals up to 100, only the first three are declined.

1. *Ūnus* is declined like *tōtus* (112).

2. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows :

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

NOTE. Like *duo* is declined *ambō, ambae, ambō, both*.

3. The plural of *mille* is *mīlia*, declined like *tria*. It is not an Adjective like *mille*, but a Substantive, and is followed by the Genitive; for example, *cum mille militibus*, *with a thousand soldiers*, but *cum duobus milibus militum*, *with two thousand soldiers*.

4. The hundreds, *ducenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bonus*, but the Genitive ends in *-um*, not in *-orum*.

NOTE. The older spelling *millia* was supplanted by *mīlia* in the first century A.D. The Ordinals like *vicēsimus* are also spelled *vicēsīmus*, etc.; but the spelling *-ēsimus* is preferable (52, 5). An early spelling of *septimus* and *decimus* is *septumus* and *decumus* (52, 2).

### Order of Words in Compound Numerals

132. 1. The method of making the compound numerals from 20 to 100 is the same as in English; just as we say either *twenty-one* or *one and twenty* (rarely twenty and one), so the Romans said *vīginti ūnus* or *ūnus et vīginti* (rarely *vīginti et ūnus*).

2. The compound numerals from 100 on regularly begin with the largest number and descend to the smallest, just as in English. If there are only two numbers, *et* is sometimes used, sometimes not. But if there are more than two numbers *et* is never used. So *trecenti ūnus* or *trecenti et ūnus*, 301, but *trecenti quadrāgintā ūnus*, 341, and *mille ducenti trīgintā duo*, 1232.

3. Compound numerals are sometimes used for the numbers 11–19, the large number usually preceding, as *decem et octō*.

### DISTRIBUTIVES, MULTIPLICATIVES, AND NUMERAL ADVERBS

133. Distributives denote how many apiece, as *singuli*, *one apiece*, *one by one*. Multiplicatives denote how many fold, as *duplex*, *twofold*, *double*. Numeral Adverbs denote how many times, as *bis*, *twice*. The following is a partial list:

DISTRIBUTIVES	MULTIPLICATIVES	NUMERAL ADVERBS
1. <i>singuli</i> , <i>one apiece</i>	<i>simplex</i> , <i>simple</i>	<i>semel</i> , <i>once</i>
2. <i>bīni</i> , <i>two apiece</i>	<i>duplex</i> , <i>double</i>	<i>bis</i> , <i>twice</i>
3. <i>terni</i> ( <i>trīni</i> )	<i>triplex</i>	<i>ter</i>
4. <i>quaterni</i>	<i>quadruplex</i>	<i>quater</i>
5. <i>quīni</i>	<i>quīncuplex</i>	<i>quīnquīens</i>

DISTRIBUTIVES	MULTIPLICATIVES	NUMERAL ADVERBS
6. <i>sēnī</i>		<i>sexīēns</i>
7. <i>septēnī</i>	<i>septemplex</i>	<i>septīēns</i>
8. <i>octōnī</i>		<i>octīēns</i>
9. <i>novēnī</i>		<i>novīēns</i>
10. <i>dēnī</i>	<i>decemplex</i>	<i>decīēns</i>
11. <i>ūndēnī</i>		<i>ūndeciēns</i>
12. <i>duodēnī</i>		<i>duodeciēns</i>
13. <i>ternīdēnī</i>		<i>terdeciēns</i>
20. <i>vīcēnī</i>		<i>vīciēns</i>
21. <i>vīcēnī singulī</i>		<i>semel et vīciēns</i>
30. <i>trīcēnī</i>		<i>trīciēns</i>
100. <i>centēnī</i>	<i>centuplex</i>	<i>centīēns</i>
101. <i>centēnī singulī</i>		
200. <i>ducēnī</i>		<i>ducentīēns</i>
1000. <i>singula milia</i>		<i>miliēns</i>

*a.* For the use of Distributives in place of Cardinals, see under Syntax (247).

NOTE. The Numeral Adverbs *sexīēns*, etc., are also spelled *sexiēs*, etc., but the spelling *-iēns* is preferable (52, 5).

## PRONOUNS

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

134. The Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are declined as follows :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>	<i>tū, thou</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrum, nostrī</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrum, vestrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi (mī)</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

*a.* Beside *mihi* and *tibi*, the old forms with final long *i* are frequent in poetry (28, note).

*b.* The Genitive Plural ends in *-um* or *-ī* according to the meaning. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Genitives of the Whole, *nostrī* and *vestrī*

as Objective Genitives. Early and late forms of *vestrum* and *vestri* are *vostrum*, *vostrī*.

c. Old forms of the Genitive Singular are *mīs*, *tīs*; of the Accusative and Ablative Singular *mēd* and *tēd* (similarly *sēd*).

d. The particles *met* and *te* are added to the pronominal form for emphasis; *egomet*, *I myself*; *tūte*, *you yourself* (also *tūtemet*).

e. For the Third Person the Determinative Pronoun is (137) is used.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

135. For the First and Second Person the ordinary forms of the Personal Pronoun are used with the reflexive sense, as *laudō mē*, *I praise myself*, *laudās tē*, *you praise yourself*, *laudāmus nōs*, *we praise ourselves*. For the Third Person there is a distinct Reflexive Pronoun, without distinction of gender or number, which is declined as follows :

Gen.	suī,	of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Dat.	sibi,	to " " " "
Acc.	sē, sēsē,	" " " "
Abl.	sē, sēsē, by	" " " "

a. Beside *sibi*, the old form with final long *i* is frequent in poetry (28, note).

## POSSESSIVES

136. The Adjective forms of the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are known as Possessives. They are :

meus, mea, meum, <i>my</i> ;	noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, tua, tuum, <i>thy</i> ;	vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, sua, suum, <i>his, her, its, their</i> .	

a. They are declined as regular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. But the Vocative Singular of *meus* is *mī*.

b. An early and late form of *vester*, *-tra*, *-trum* is *voster*, *-tra*, *-trum*.

c. The enclitic *-pte* is frequently added to the Ablative Singular for emphasis, as *meōpte ingeniō*, *by my own genius*; *suāpte nātūrā*, *by its own nature*.

d. *Suus* is used only in the reflexive sense, *his (her, their, etc.) own*. For the Possessive of the Third Person when not reflexive, the Genitive of *is* is used, as *eius* (*of him, etc.*), *his, her, its*; *eōrum*, *eārum*, *their*.

## DETERMINATIVE-DESCRIPTIVE PRONOUNS

137. The Pronoun *is*, *this* (or *he*) or *such*, and its compound *idem*, *the same*, are declined as follows :

<b>is</b>			
SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	iī (ī), eī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs	iīs (īs), eīs
<b>Idem</b>			
SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem (iīdem), eīdem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eōsdem	eāsdem	eāsdem
<i>Abl.</i>	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem	īsdem (iīsdem), eīsdem

a. The Gen. Sing. *eius* was pronounced *ei-yus*, the first syllable containing a diphthong and being long for this reason (29, 2, a).

b. The Nom. Plur. Masc. and the Dat.-Abl. Plur. of *is* were oftenest written *iī*, *iīs*, but these were pronounced, and not infrequently written also, *ī*, *īs*. The forms *eī*, *eīs* are also frequent, but poetic usage shows that dissyllabic pronunciation was rare. The

same is true of the corresponding cases of *idem*, except that *idem* and *isdem*, which represent the actual pronunciation, are also the commonest spellings.

c. The Dative Singular appears in early poetry as *ēi*, *ei*, or monosyllabic *ei*.

138. 1. *Hic*, *this* or *such*, and *ille*, *that* or *such*, are declined as follows :

SINGULAR						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>	<i>illi</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>

PLURAL						
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

2. *Iste*, *that* or *such*, is declined like *ille*.

a. For *hic* and *hoc* as long syllables, see 30, 2.

b. The Gen. Sing. *huius* was pronounced *hui-yus*, the first syllable containing a diphthong and being long for this reason (29, 2, a); for the pronunciation of the Dat. Sing. *huic*, see 10. The earlier forms *hoius* and *hoic* were still used in Cicero's time.

c. The particle -c(e), always present in *hic*, *haec*, etc., is often added to other forms. Thus *huiusce*, *haec* (Nom. Plur. Fem.), *hōsce*, *hāsce*, *hīsce*, and, in early Latin, also *hōrunc*, *hārunc*. Similarly early Latin *illic* and *istic*, declined as follows (the Neuter forms *istuc* and *istaec* also used later) :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	illic	illaec	illuc		illaec	illaec
<i>Gen.</i>	illiusce	illiusce	illiusce			
<i>Dat.</i>	illic	illic	illic	illisce	illisce	illisce
<i>Acc.</i>	illunc	illanc	illuc	illōsce	illāsce	illaec
<i>Abl.</i>	illōc	illāc	illōc	illisce	illisce	illisce

d. The interrogative particle -ne is sometimes added to forms in -ce, the e of the latter changing to i (42, 2); e.g. *hic(c)ine*, *haecine*, *hoc(c)ine*, etc. (So, too, the adverb *hicine*, *in this place*? Cf. *sicine*, *in this way*? similarly formed from *sīce*, the old form of *sic*.)

- e. Early Latin has a Nom. Plur. Masc. *hīsce*.  
 f. Some forms of early Latin *olle* or *ollus*, used like *ille*, occur also in later writers;  
 e.g. Dat. Sing. *olli*, Nom. Plur. Masc. *olli*, Dat. Abl. Plur. *ollis*.

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

139. The Intensive Pronoun *ipse, self*, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

- a. Early Latin has also Nom. Sing. Masc. *ipsus*. Note *ea-pee*, *eam-pee*, *eā-pee* (*reāpee*), etc.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS

140. The Relative Pronoun *quī, who*, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

- a. The Gen. and Dat. Sing. *cuius* and *cui* were pronounced in the same manner as *huius* and *huic*. See above, 138, 2, b. The earlier forms *quotius* and *quoi* were still used in Cicero's time.

b. An Abl. Sing. *quī* in place of *quō*, *quā*, is frequent in the phrase *quicum, with whom* or *with which*. The adverb *quī, whereby*, also used interrogatively, is of the same origin.

- c. A Dat.-Abl. Plur. *quīs* in place of *quibus* is frequent.

d. Other Relatives are : *quicumque, whoever*, with the *quī* declined as above ; *quisquis, whoever*, with both parts declined like *quis* of the following paragraph (but only *quisquis*, *quidquid* or *quicquid* (50), and *quōquō* in common use) ; *uter, which of two*, the declension of which is given above (112), and *utercumque, whichever of two*, the first part of which is declined in the same way.

## THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

141. The Interrogative Pronoun, when used Substantively, is **quis**, *who?* When used Adjectively, it is **quī**, *what?* (e.g. **quī deus**, *what god?*). **Quī** is declined like the Relative. The declension of **quis**, differing from that of **quī** only in a few forms, is as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M., F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. The distinction between the substantive and adjective forms is not always maintained; **quis** is sometimes used adjectively, and, *vice versa*, **quī** is sometimes used substantively (hence the Fem. **quae** also occurs substantively, although the proper substantive form is **quis** for both Masculine and Feminine).

b. Other Interrogatives are: **quisnam**, *who, pray?* with the Adjective form **quīnam**; **ecquis**, *any one?* Adjective **ecquī** (Nom. Sing. Fem. **ecquae** or **ecqua**); **uter**, *which of two?* declined in 112.

NOTE. The stem is **quo-** in the Relative forms **quī** (earlier **quoi**) and **quod**, but **qui-** in the Interrogative forms **quis** and **quid**. The other forms, which are the same for both Relative and Interrogative, are from the stem **quo-**, except **quem** and **quibus**, which are from the stem **qui-** (**quem** like **finem**). But the **quī** of **quicum** (140, b) is also from **qui-**, and, *vice versa*, **Dat.-Abl. Plur. quīs** for **quibus** is from **quo-**. A rare Nom. Plur. **quēs** (Interrog. and Indef.) is also from **qui-** (like **finēs**). A third stem **quu-**, belonging properly to adverbial formations, appears in the form **cu-** (cf. **quīncu-plex** from **\*quīnqu-plex**) in **alicubi**, etc., and, with loss of the initial consonant, in **ubi**, **unde**, **ut**, and **uter**.

## INDEFINITE AND DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS

142. The principal Indefinite Pronouns are **quis** (**quī**) and its various compounds. They are used both substantively and adjectively. In Substantive use the Neuter is **quid**, and, except in a few of the compounds, **quis** is used for both the Masculine and the Feminine gender; in the Adjective use the Neuter is **quod**, and **quī** and **quae** (or **qua**) are used for the Masculine and the Feminine gender.



## USED SUBSTANTIVELY

## USED ADJECTIVELY

1. quis (qui), *any one*      quid, *anything*      quī (quis), quae or qua, quod, *any*  
 NOTE. For the Nom. Sing. Fem. and the Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut., both *quae* and *qua* are used.
2. aliquis (aliquī), *some one*      aliquid, *something*      aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod, *some*  
 NOTE. The Nom. Sing. Fem. nearly always, and the Nom.-Acc. Plur. Neut. always, is *aliqua*.
3. quidam, quaedam, *a certain one*      quiddam, *a certain thing*      quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain*  
 NOTE. As in the declension of *idem*, *m* is changed to *n* before *d*; e.g. *quendam* (for \**quemdam*), *quandam*, etc.
4. quispiam, *some one*      quippiam or quidpiam(50), *something*      quispiam, quaeipiam, quodpiam, *some*
5. quisquam, *any one at all*      quicquam, *anything at all*      quisquam, quicquam, *any (rare)*  
 NOTE. There is no Plural. The Adjective use is commonly supplied by *ūllus*.
6. quisque, *each one*      quidque, *each thing*      quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each*
7. ūnusquisque, *each one severally*      ūnumquidque, *each thing severally*      ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque, ūnumquodque, *each severally*
8. quīvis, quaevis, *any one whatever*      quīdvis, *anything whatever*      quīvis, quaevis, quodvis, *any whatever*
9. quilibet, quaelibet, *any one*      quīdlibet, *anything whatever*      quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, *any whatever*

a. The following compounds of *uter* have the force of Indefinite or Distributive Pronouns, in both substantive and adjective use. For their declension, see 112.

*uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two*

*utervis, utravis, utrumvis, either of two*

*uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet, either of two*

*alteruter, alterutra or altera utra, alterutrum or alterum utrum, one or the other*

NOTE. In *alteruter* sometimes both parts are declined, sometimes only the latter.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

143. Besides the Adjective forms of the Pronouns already given may be mentioned :

*tālis, tāle, such*

*quālis, quāle, such as or of what sort?*

*tantus, tanta, tantum, so great*

*quantus, quanta, quantum, so great as or how great?*

*alius, alia, aliud, another*

*alter, altera, alterum, the other*

*neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two*

*ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, any*

*nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, no one*

*nōnnūllus, nōnnūlla, nōnnūllum, some, many a*

NOTE. For the declension of the last six forms, see 112.

## CORRELATIVES

144. Adjectives and Adverbs which stand to each other in the relation of corresponding Determinative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite words are called Correlatives. A partial list is :

DETERMINATIVE	RELATIVE	INTERROGATIVE	INDEFINITE
is, hic, etc., <i>this</i>	quī, <i>who</i>	quis, <i>who?</i>	aliquis, <i>any one</i>
tālis, <i>such</i>	quālis, <i>as</i>	quālis, <i>of what sort?</i>	
tantus, <i>so great</i>	quantus, <i>as great</i>	quantus, <i>how great?</i>	aliquantus, <i>some-what</i>
tot, <i>so many</i>	quot, <i>as many</i>	quot, <i>how many?</i>	aliquot, <i>several</i>
ibi, <i>there</i>	ubi, <i>where</i>	ubi, <i>where?</i>	alicubi, <i>any-where</i>
inde, <i>thence</i>	unde, <i>whence</i>	unde, <i>whence?</i>	alicunde, <i>from somewhere</i>
eō, <i>thither</i>	quō, <i>whither</i>	quō, <i>whither?</i>	aliquō, <i>to some place</i>
tum, <i>then</i>	cum, <i>when</i>	quandō, <i>when?</i>	aliquandō, <i>some-time</i>
totiēns, <i>so many times</i>	quotiēns, <i>as many times</i>	quotiēns, <i>how many times?</i>	aliquotiēns, <i>several times</i>

## VERBS

145. The Inflection of Verbs, or Conjugation, comprises the variations in Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person. There are :

Two Voices, — Active and Passive.

Some Verbs have only one Voice. Those which are mostly Passive in form but Active in meaning are known as Depo-  
nents.

Three Moods, — Indicative, Subjunctive, and Impera-  
tive.

Six Tenses, — Present, Imperfect, Future ; Perfect, Past Perfect,<sup>1</sup> and Future Perfect.

Only the Indicative has all six Tenses. The Subjunctive lacks the Future and the Future Perfect. The Imperative has only the Present and the Future.

Two Numbers, — Singular and Plural.

Three Persons, — First, Second, and Third.

**146.** The Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative forms make up what is known as the Finite Verb.

Besides these, the following Noun and Adjective forms have become a part of the Verb-System :

Verbal Nouns, — Infinitives (Present, Future, and Perfect of both Voices), the Supine, and the Gerund.

Verbal Adjectives, — Participles (Present and Future Active, Perfect Passive,<sup>2</sup> and Future Passive<sup>2</sup> or Gerundive).

### THE THREE STEMS OF THE VERB

**147.** There are three principal Stems about which are grouped the various forms of the Verb.

**NOTE 1.** As, in declension, the Stem is the base to which the Case-endings are added, so, in Conjugation, the Stem of any given Tense is the base to which the Personal Endings are added. These stems, the formation of which, by means of suffixes known as Tense-Signs or Mood-Signs, is treated below (166 ff.), are conveniently grouped under the three principal stems, as given above. Not all tenses of the Present System, for example, are actually formed directly from the Present Stem, but most of them are formed from stems which *contain* the Present Stem with certain fixed additions or substitutions.

**NOTE 2.** The part which is common to all three stems is known as the Verb-Stem, that is, the general stem of the verb. Thus in a verb like *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, amā-* is the Verb-Stem, as well as Present Stem. Often the only part which is common to all the stems is the monosyllabic element which is called the Root (see 203, footnote), and in such cases we speak of the Root or the Root-Syllable rather than of the Verb-Stem. The Root occasionally varies in form, owing partly to regular phonetic change, partly to an original variation. Thus the root of *canō* is *can*, which has become *cin* in the Perfect *cecini* (42, 1) ; the root of *tegō* is *teg*, but this had another form *tēg*, from which are formed Perf. *tēxi*, Partic. *tēctus* (46).

<sup>1</sup> Commonly, and properly, so named in English grammars ; commonly called Pluperfect in Latin grammars.

<sup>2</sup> The form commonly known as the Perfect Passive Participle is not always Perfect or always Passive. Similarly the term Future Passive Participle does not properly describe the functions of *this form*. See the Syntax.

*A. The Present Stem*, or stem of the Present System, which consists of :

1. The Present, Imperfect, and Future of all Moods and Voices in which they occur.
2. The Present Infinitive of both Voices.
3. The Present Active Participle.
4. The Future Passive Participle and the Gerund.

*B. The Perfect Stem*, or stem of the Perfect System (Active), which consists of :

1. The Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect, — of the Active Voice.
2. The Perfect Infinitive of the Active Voice.

*C. The Participial Stem*, or stem of :

1. The Perfect Passive Participle, from which is formed the Perfect Passive System, consisting of :
2. The Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect, and the Perfect Infinitive, — of the Passive Voice.

From the same stem can also be determined, nearly always :

3. The Supine.
4. The Future Active Participle, from which is formed :
5. The Future Infinitive, — Active and Passive.

#### THE CONJUGATIONS

**148.** There are four regular types of Verb Inflection, known as the *Four Conjugations* and distinguished by the ending of the Present Stem. The Present Infinitive is chosen as a convenient characteristic of each Conjugation.

		<i>Present Stem ends in :</i>	<i>Infinitive :</i>
CONJUGATION	I	ā	-āre
"	II	ē	-ēre
"	III	e or o <sup>1</sup>	-ere
"	IV	i	-ire

<sup>1</sup> This variable vowel, e or o, which also occurs in other tense-stems, is known as the Thematic Vowel. This term means really nothing more than Stem-Vowel, but has come to be applied to that particular stem-vowel which is, or was in the parent speech, the commonest in verb-formation. It is identical in form with the stem-vowel of Nouns

149. There are also some verbs the inflection of which does not conform to any of the Four Conjugations. Such are known as *Irregular Verbs*.

#### THE PRINCIPAL PARTS

150. Certain forms of the verbs are known as the Principal Parts, because they furnish the key to the inflection of any given verb, showing, as they do, the Present Stem and thereby the Conjugation, and the Perfect and Participial Stems. These are :

1. *The Present Indicative Active*, cited in the First Person Singular.
2. *The Present Infinitive Active*.
3. *The Perfect Indicative Active*, cited in the First Person Singular.
4. *The Perfect Passive Participle*, cited in the Nominative Singular Neuter.<sup>1</sup>

So for example :

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
<b>amō, love</b>	<b>amāre</b>	<b>amāvī</b>	<b>amātum</b>

a. For verbs which lack the Perfect Passive Participle, the Supine, if occurring, is cited ; e.g. :

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	SUPINE.
<b>maneō, remain</b>	<b>manēre</b>	<b>mānsī</b>	<b>mānsūm</b>

of the Second Declension, which is commonly o (hence the name o-Stems) but is sometimes e (e.g., in Latin, in the Vocative Singular, and in the variant form of the Ablative Singular which appears in the Adverbs in -ē; see 126, 1, note).

Verb-formations which contain this variable vowel are called *thematic*, while those in which the endings are added directly to the root are known as *unthematic*. Such are many of the forms of the Irregular Verbs (170).

<sup>1</sup> This is preferred to the Nominative Singular Masculine, because of the large number of Verbs in which the Perfect Passive Participle occurs only in the Neuter form (i.e. is used only impersonally), and also because of the advantage of citing a form which is identical with that of the Supine. It is not essential for students, in learning the Principal Parts, to distinguish between Verbs which have the fully inflected Participle and those which have only the Neuter, and, again, those which have only the Supine. The reason for abandoning the older method, of always giving the Supine as the fourth of the Principal Parts, is that the Perfect Passive Participle is vastly more common than the Supine, and that upon it, rather than upon the Supine, is based the *Perfect Passive System*.

*b.* For verbs which lack both the Perfect Passive Participle and the Supine, the Future Active Participle, if occurring, is cited; e.g.:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	FUT. ACT. PARTIC.
<b>doleō, grieve</b>	<b>dolēre</b>	<b>dolui</b>	<b>dolitūrus</b>

*c.* For verbs which occur only as Passives or Deponents, the form of the Perfect Indicative answers for both the Perfect and Participial Stems; e.g.:

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.
<b>mīror, admire</b>	<b>mīrārī</b>	<b>mīrātus sum</b>

### THE PERSONAL ENDINGS

#### 151. The Personal Endings are:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>-ō, -m</b>	<b>-mus</b>	1. <b>-r</b>	<b>-mur</b>
2. <b>-s</b>	<b>-tis</b>	2. <b>-ris</b> or <b>-re</b>	<b>-minī</b>
3. <b>-t</b>	<b>-nt</b>	3. <b>-tur</b>	<b>-ntur</b>

NOTE. In the Second Singular Passive, **-re** is the usual ending in early Latin, but yields more and more to **-ris**, which eventually becomes the normal ending. In some authors, as Cicero and Virgil, **-ris** is more common in the Present Indicative, but **-re** elsewhere.

*a.* The Perfect Indicative Active has different endings, namely:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <b>-ī</b>	<b>-mus</b>
2. <b>-stī</b>	<b>-stis</b>
3. <b>-t</b>	<b>-ērunt</b> or <b>-ēre</b>

NOTE. In the Third Plural, **-ērunt** is the usual ending, but **-ēre** is also very common. In poetry is also found **-erunt** with short *e*.

*b.* The endings of the Imperative are:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> 2. —	<b>-te</b>	<b>-re</b>	<b>-minī</b>
<i>Fut.</i> 2. <b>-tō</b>	<b>-tōte</b>	<b>-tor</b>	—
3. <b>-tō</b>	<b>-ntō</b>	<b>-tor</b>	<b>-ntor</b>

NOTE. In early Latin there is a rare ending **-minō**, used in place of **-tor** in a few Deponents; e.g. *fruinminō*.

### The Union of the Endings with the Stem

**152.** 1. If the stem to which the endings are added ends in the thematic vowel, originally *e* or *o* (see p. 80, footnote), this (1) appears as *e* before *r*, as in *tege-ris*; (2) unites with the ending of the First Person Singular to form *-ō*, as in *tegō*; (3) becomes *u* before *nt* (**44**, 1; **42**, 5), as in *tegunt*, *teguntur*; (4) becomes *i* before all other endings (**44**, 2; **42**, 2), as in *tegis*, *tegit*, *tegitur*, etc.

2. If the stem to which the endings are added ends in a long vowel, this vowel is shortened before the endings *-m*, *-t*, *-nt*, and *-r*; e.g. *amat*, *amant*, beside *amās*, *amāmus*, *amātis*; *monet*, *monent*, beside *monēs*, etc.; *audit* beside *audīs*, etc. (but not *\*audint*; *audiunt* is from *\*audiont*, formed from a stem in *-io-*; see **169**, note); Pres. Subj. *amem* beside *amēs*, Pass. *amer* beside *amēris*. See **26**, 1, 2. Before the ending *-ō* of the First Singular the *ā* of the First Conjugation disappears by contraction, as in *amō*, from *\*amāō*, while in the Second and Fourth Conjugations we find short *e* and short *i*, as in *moneō*, *audiō* (**167**, note; **169**, note).

NOTE. But before the ending *-t* the original forms with the long vowel are found in early Latin and in poetry; e.g. *arāt*, *vidēt*, etc. See **26**, note.

3. In the Perfect Indicative the endings beginning with a consonant are preceded by a short *i*; e.g. *amāvisti*, *amāvit*, *amāvimus*.

NOTE. In early Latin and in poetry there is also a Third Singular with long *i* (probably formed after the analogy of the First Singular); e.g. *subiit*. The usual form with the short vowel is not derived from this (by shortening before *-t*), but represents a different formation.

### CONJUGATION OF SUM

**153.** *Sum*, *be*, is one of the Irregular Verbs, but as an auxiliary it enters into the inflection of the regular verbs, and is therefore given first.

#### Principal Parts

PRES. INDIC.	INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	FUT. PARTIC.
<b>sum</b>	<b>esse</b>	<b>fuī</b>	<b>futūrus</b>

#### INDICATIVE

#### Present

#### SINGULAR

1. *sum*, *I am*

2. *es*, *thou art*

3. *est*, *he (she, it) is*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

*sim*<sup>1</sup>

*sis*

*sit*

<sup>1</sup> Any single translation of the Subjunctive is likely to be misleading. Accordingly none is given. For the different meanings, see the Syntax.

## INDICATIVE

## PLURAL

1. *sumus, we are*
2. *estis, you are*
3. *sunt, they are*

*Imperfect*

## SINGULAR

1. *eram, I was*
2. *erās, thou wast*
3. *erat, he was*

## PLURAL

1. *erāmus, we were*
2. *erātis, you were*
3. *erant, they were*

*Future*

## SINGULAR

1. *erō, I shall be*
2. *eris, thou wilt be*
3. *erit, he will be*

## PLURAL

1. *erimus, we shall be*
2. *eritis, you will be*
3. *erunt, they will be*

*Perfect*

## SINGULAR

1. *fuī, I have been, was*
2. *fuisti, thou hast been, wast*
3. *fuit, he has been, was*

## PLURAL

1. *fuimus, we have been, were*
2. *fuistis, you have been, were*
3. *fuērunt or -ēre, they have been, were*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*simus*  
*sitis*  
*sint*

*essem*  
*essēs*  
*esset*

*essēmus*  
*essētis*  
*essent*

*fuерim*  
*fuерis*  
*fuерit*

*fuерimus*  
*fuерitis*  
*fuерint*



## INDICATIVE

*Past Perfect*

## SINGULAR

1. fueram, *I had been*
2. fuerās, *thou hadst been*
3. fuerat, *he had been*

## PLURAL

1. fuerāmus, *we had been*
2. fuerātis, *you had been*
3. fuerant, *they had been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

fuissem

fuissēs

fuisset

fuissēmus

fuissētis

fuissent

*Future Perfect*

## SINGULAR

1. fuerō, *I shall have been*
2. fueris, *thou wilt have been*
3. fuerit, *he will have been*

## PLURAL

1. fuerimus, *we shall have been*
2. fueritis, *you will have been*
3. fuerint, *they will have been*

## IMPERATIVE

## SINGULAR

- Pres.* 2. es, *be thou*
- Fut.* 2. estō, *thou shalt be*
3. estō, *he shall be*

## PLURAL

2. este, *be ye*
2. estōte, *you shall be*
3. suntō, *they shall be*

## INFINITIVE

- Pres.* esse, *to be*
- Perf.* fuisse, *to have been*
- Fut.* futūrus esse, *to be about to be*

## PARTICIPLE

- Fut.* futūrus, *about to be*

154. The following forms are sometimes found in place of those given in the paradigm :

1. Imperfect Subjunctive forem, forēs, foret, forent.
2. Future Infinitive fore.
3. Present Subjunctive (in early Latin) siem, siēs, siet, sient; also fuam, fuās, fuat, fuant.
4. For early Latin es (s) in the Present Indicative, see 30, 3.
5. For early Latin fūi in the Perfect Indicative, see 21, 7.

NOTE. The various forms of the verb *sum* are made from two different roots, one, *es*, related to English *is*, the other, *fū*, related to English *be*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

155.

amō, *love*

## Principal Parts

PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	PERF. PASS. PARTIC.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

amō, *I love*  
amās  
amat  
amāmus  
amātis  
amant

## SUBJUNCTIVE

amem  
amēs  
amet  
amēmus  
amētis  
ament

*Imperfect*

amābam, *I was loving*  
amābās  
amābat  
amābāmus  
amābātis  
amābant

amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

*Future*

amābō, *I shall love*  
amābis  
amābit  
amābimus  
amābitis  
amābunt

*Perfect*

amāvī, *I have loved, loved*  
amāvisti  
amāvit  
amāvimus  
amāvistis  
amāvērunt or -ēre

amāverim  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

## INDICATIVE

*Past Perfect*amāveram, *I had loved*

amāverās

amāverat

amāverāmus

amāverātis

amāverant

## SUBJUNCTIVE

amāvissem

amāvissēs

amāvisset

amāvissēmus

amāvissētis

amāvissent

*Future Perfect*amāverō, *I shall have loved*

amāveris

amāverit

amāverimus

amāveritis

amāverint

## IMPERATIVE

## SINGULAR

*Pres.* amā, *love thou**Fut.* amātō, *thou shalt love*amātō, *he shall love*

## PLURAL

amāte

amātōte

amantō

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* amāre, *to love**Perf.* amāvisse, *to have loved**Fut.* amātūrus esse, *to be about to love*

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* amāns, *loving**Fut.* amātūrus, *about to love*

## GERUND

*Gen.* amandī, *of loving**Dat.* amandō, *for loving**Acc.* amandum, *loving**Abl.* amandō, *by loving*

## SUPINE

amātum, *to love*amātū, *to love*

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

*Present*amor, *I am loved*

amāris or -re

amātur

amāmur

amāmini

amantur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

amer

amēris or -re

amētur

amēmur

amēmini

amentur

## INDICATIVE

*Imperfect*

amābar, *I was loved*  
 amābāris or -re  
 amābātur  
 amābāmur  
 amābāmini  
 amābantur

*Future*

amābor, *I shall be loved*  
 amāberis or -re  
 amābitur  
 amābimur  
 amābimini  
 amābuntur

*Perfect*

amātus sum, *I have been (was) loved*  
 amātus es  
 amātus est  
 amātī sumus  
 amātī estis  
 amātī sunt

*Past Perfect*

amātus eram, *I had been loved*  
 amātus erās  
 amātus erat  
 amātī erāmus  
 amātī erātis  
 amātī erant

*Future Perfect*

amātus erō, *I shall have been loved*  
 amātus eris  
 amātus erit  
 amātī erimus  
 amātī eritis  
 amātī erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

amārer  
 amārēris or -re  
 amārētur  
 amārēmur  
 amārēmini  
 amārentur

amātus sim  
 amātus sis  
 amātus sit

amātī simus  
 amātī sitis  
 amātī sint

amātus essem  
 amātus essēs  
 amātus esset

amātī essēmus  
 amātī essētis  
 amātī essent

## IMPERATIVE

## SINGULAR

*Pres.* amāre, *be loved**Fut.* amātor, *thou shalt be loved*  
amātor, *he shall be loved*

## PLURAL

amāmini

amantor

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* amāri, *to be loved**Perf.* amātus esse, *to have been*  
*loved**Fut.* amātum iri, *to be about to*  
*be loved*

## PARTICIPLE

*Perf.* amātus, *loved**Fut.* amandus, *to be loved,*  
*worthy of love*

## SECOND CONJUGATION

156.

moneō, *advise*

## Principal Parts

moneō

monēre

monui

monitum

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

moneō

moneam

moneor

monear

monēs

moneās

monēris, -re

moneāris, -re

monet

moneat

monētur

moneātur

monēmus

moneāmus

monēmur

moneāmur

monētis

moneātis

monēmini

moneāmini

monent

moneant

monentur

moneantur

*Imperfect*

monēbam

monēreim

monēbar

monērer

monēbās

monērēs

monēbāris, -re

monērēris, -re

monēbat

monēret

monēbātur

monērētur

monēbāmus

monērēmus

monēbāmur

monērēmur

monēbātis

monērētis

monēbāmini

monērēmini

monēbant

monērent

monēbantur

monērentur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

*Future*

monēbō	monēbor
monēbis	monēberis, -re
monēbit	monēbitur
monēbimus	monēbimur
monēbitis	monēbimini
monēbunt	monēbuntur

*Perfect*

monuī	monuerim	monitus sum	monitus sim
monuistī	monueris	monitus es	monitus sis
monuit	monuerit	monitus est	monitus sit
monuimus	monuerimus	monitī sumus	monitī simus
monuistis	monueritis	monitī estis	monitī sitis
monuerunt, -ēre	monuerint	monitī sunt	monitī sint

*Past Perfect*

monueram	monuissem	monitus eram	monitus essem
monuerās	monuissēs	monitus erās	monitus essēs
monuerat	monuisset	monitus erat	monitus esset
monuerāmus	monuissēmus	monitī erāmus	monitī essēmus
monuerātis	monuissētis	monitī erātis	monitī essētis
monuerant	monuissent	monitī erant	monitī essent

*Future Perfect*

monuerō	monitus erō
monueris	monitus eris
monuerit	monitus erit
monuerimus	monitī erimus
monueritis	monitī eritis
monuerint	monitī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	monē	monēte	monēre	monēmini
<i>Fut.</i>	monētō	monētōte	monētor	
	monētō	monentō	monētor	monentor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	monēre	monēri
<i>Perf.</i>	monuisse	monitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	monitūrus esse	monitum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	monēns	<i>Perf.</i>	monitus
<i>Fut.</i>	monitūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	monendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	monendī	
<i>Dat.</i>	monendō	
<i>Acc.</i>	monendum	monitum
<i>Abl.</i>	monendō	monitū

## THIRD CONJUGATION

157.

tegō, cover

## Principal Parts

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
tegō	tegam	tegor	tegar
tegis	tegās	tegeris, -re	tegaris, -re
tegit	tegat	tegitur	tegātur
tegitur	tegāmur	tegitur	tegāmur
tegitis	tegātis	teginī	tegāminī
tegitur	tegant	tegitur	tegantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
tegēbam	tegerem	tegēbar	tegerer
tegēbās	tegerēs	tegēbāris, -re	tegerēris, -re
tegēbat	tegeret	tegēbātur	tegerētur
tegēbāmur	tegerēmur	tegēbāmur	tegerēmur
tegēbātis	tegerētis	tegēbāminī	tegerēminī
tegēbant	tegerent	tegēbantur	tegerentur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

*Future*

tegā	tegar
tegēs	tegēris, -re
teget	tegētur
tegēmus	tegēmur
tegētis	tegēmini
tegent	tegentur

*Perfect*

tēxī	tēxerim	tēctus sum	tēctus sim
tēxistī	tēxeris	tēctus es	tēctus sis
tēxit	tēxerit	tēctus est	tēctus sit
tēximus	tēxerimus	tēctī sumus	tēctī sīmus
tēxistis	tēxeritis	tēctī estis	tēctī sitis
tēxerunt, -ēre	tēxerint	tēctī sunt	tēctī sint

*Past Perfect*

tēxeram	tēxissem	tēctus eram	tēctus essem
tēxerās	tēxissēs	tēctus erās	tēctus essēs
tēxerat	tēxisset	tēctus erat	tēctus esset
tēxerāmus	tēxissēmus	tēctī erāmus	tēctī essēmus
tēxerātis	tēxissētis	tēctī erātis	tēctī essētis
tēxerant	tēxissent	tēctī erant	tēctī essent

*Future Perfect*

tēxerō	tēctus erō
tēxeris	tēctus eris
tēxerit	tēctus erit
tēxerimus	tēctī erimus
tēxeritis	tēctī eritis
tēxerint	tēctī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	tege	tegite	tegere	teginimi
<i>Fut.</i>	tegitō	tegitōte	tegitōr	
	tegitō	tegunto	tegitōr	teguntor



## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	tegere	tegi
<i>Perf.</i>	tēxisse	tēctus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	tēctūrus esse	tēctum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	tegēns	<i>Perf.</i>	tēctus
<i>Fut.</i>	tēctūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	tegendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	tegendī	
<i>Dat.</i>	tegendō	
<i>Acc.</i>	tegendum	tēctum
<i>Abl.</i>	tegendō	tēctū

## VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

158. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation have in the Present System many forms identical with those of the Fourth Conjugation, namely, all those in which i is followed by a vowel.

*capiō, take*

## Principal Parts

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capias	caperis, -re	capiaris, -re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiamus	capimur	capiamur
capitis	capiatīs	capimini	capiamini
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Imperfect</i>			
capiēbam <sup>1</sup>	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
<i>Future</i>			
capiam		capiar	
<i>Perfect</i>			
cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
cēperō		captus erō	

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	cape	capite	capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i>	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	capiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	captus
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	capientus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	capienti	
<i>Dat.</i>	capiendo	
<i>Acc.</i>	capendum	captum
<i>Abl.</i>	capiendo	captū

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, capiēbam, capiēbās, capiēbat, etc. So elsewhere.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

159.

audiō, hear

## Principal Parts

audiō	audire	audiui	audītum
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
audīs	audiās	audiris, -re	audiāris, -re
audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
audītis	audiātis	audīmini	audiāmini
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, -re	audīrēris, -re
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
<i>Future</i>			
audiam		audiar	
audiēs		audiēris, -re	
audiet		audiētur	
audiēmus		audiēmur	
audiētis		audiēmini	
audient		audientur	
<i>Perfect</i>			
audiui	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audivistī	audīveris	audītus es	audītus sis
audivit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audivimus	audīverimus	audīti sumus	audīti simus
audivistis	audīveritis	audīti estis	audīti sitis
audiverunt, -ere	audīverint	audīti sunt	audīti sint

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
audīverās	audīvisseās	audītus erās	audītus esseās
audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
audīverāmus	audīvissemus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
audīverātis	audīvissetis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
audīverant	audīvisSENT	audītī erant	audītī essent

*Future Perfect*

audīverō	audītus erō
audīveris	audītus eris
audīverit	audītus erit
audīverimus	audītī erimus
audīveritis	audītī eritis
audīverint	audītī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	audī	audīte	audīre	audīmini
<i>Fut.</i>	audītō	audītōte	audītor	
	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	audīre	audīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	audīvisse	audītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	audītūrus esse	audītum irī

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	audiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	audītus
<i>Fut.</i>	audītūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	audiendus

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō

## SUPINE

audītum
audītū

## DEPONENT VERBS

**160.** Deponent Verbs<sup>1</sup> are mostly Passive in form but Active in meaning. In addition to the Passive forms, they have also the Present and Future Participles Active, the Future Infinitive Active, and the Supine. The Future Passive Participle, and occasionally the Perfect Participle, are Passive in meaning. The inflection follows that of the regular Conjugations. Examples :

## Principal Parts

CONJUGATION I	<i>mīror, admire</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i>
“ II	<i>vereor, fear</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>
“ III	<i>sequor, follow</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>
“ IV	<i>partior, share</i>	<i>partīrī</i>	<i>partītus sum</i>

## INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīror</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>partior</i>
	<i>mīrāris, -re</i>	<i>verēris, -re</i>	<i>sequeris, -re</i>	<i>partīris, -re</i>
	<i>mīrātur</i>	<i>verētur</i>	<i>sequitur</i>	<i>partītur</i>
	<i>mīrāmur</i>	<i>verēmur</i>	<i>sequimur</i>	<i>partīmur</i>
	<i>mīrāminī</i>	<i>verēminī</i>	<i>sequiminī</i>	<i>partīminī</i>
	<i>mīrantur</i>	<i>verentur</i>	<i>sequuntur</i>	<i>partiuntur</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mīrābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>partiēbar</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mīrābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>partītus sum</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>partītus eram</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>partītus erō</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīrer</i>	<i>verear</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mīrārer</i>	<i>verērer</i>	<i>sequerer</i>	<i>partīrer</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sim</i>	<i>veritus sim</i>	<i>secūtus sim</i>	<i>partītus sim</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus essem</i>	<i>veritus essem</i>	<i>secūtus essem</i>	<i>partītus essem</i>

<sup>1</sup> For many verbs ordinarily Deponent, early Latin shows Active forms.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	partīre
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	partītor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	partīrī
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. Act.</i>	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	partiēns
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	partītus
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	partiendus

## GERUND

mīrandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
---------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------

## SUPINE

mīrātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	partītum, -tū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------

## SEMI-DEPONENTS

161. Semi-Deponents are verbs of which the Perfect System is Passive in form but Active in meaning, such as :

audeō, dare,	audēre	ausus sum
gaudeō, rejoice,	gaudēre	gāvisus sum
soleō, am wont,	solēre	solitus sum
fidō, trust,	fidere	fisus sum

NOTE. Some verbs, otherwise regular, have a Perfect Passive Participle with active meaning. So *cēnātus*, *having dined*, from *cēnō*, *dine* ; *iūrātus*, *having sworn*, from *iūrō*, *swear* ; *prānsus*, *having breakfasted*, from *prandeō*, *breakfast* ; *pōtus*, *having drunk*, from *pōtō*, *drink*.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

162. The Periphrastic Conjugation<sup>1</sup> is a combination of the Future Active or Future Passive Participle with the verb *sum*.

<sup>1</sup> That is, a Conjugation in which all the parts are expressed by a phrase rather than by a single form. Some parts of the Regular Conjugations are also periphrastic, as *amātus sum*,

## ACTIVE

**Amātūrus sum, I am about to love**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>	amātūrus sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>	amātūrus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been, was, about to love</i>	amātūrus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>	amātūrus fuisset
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>	

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

## PASSIVE

**Amandus sum, I (am to be loved) have to be loved**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum, <i>I have to be loved</i>	amandus sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amandus eram, <i>I had to be loved</i>	amandus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui, <i>I have had to be loved</i>	amandus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>	amandus fuisset
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>	

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

## PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION

## Short Forms of the Perfect System

163. 1. Perfects in *-āvi* and *-ēvi*, as well as the other tenses formed from the same stem, have a series of shortened forms in which the *v*, together with the following vowel,

is lost before *s* and *r*. Perfects in *-īvi* also have forms without the *v*, but the vowel is lost only before *s*, not before *r*. The two sets of forms may be seen in the following <sup>1</sup>:

FULL FORMS			SHORTENED FORMS		
<i>Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāvistī, dēlēvistī, audīvistī			amāstī, dēlēstī, audistī		
amāvistis, dēlēvistis, audīvistis			amāstis, dēlēstis, audīstis		
amāvērunt, dēlēvērunt, audīvērunt			amārunt, dēlērunt, audierunt		
<i>Past Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāveram, <sup>2</sup> dēlēveram, audīveram			amāram, dēlēram, audieram		
<i>Future Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāverō, dēlēverō, audīverō			amārō, dēlērō, audierō		
<i>Perfect Subjunctive</i>					
amāverim, dēlēverim, audīverim			amārim, dēlērim, audierim		
<i>Past Perfect Subjunctive</i>					
amāvissem, dēlēvissem, audīvissem			amāssem, dēlēsssem, audīssem		
<i>Perfect Infinitive</i>					
amāvisse, dēlēvisse, audīvisse			amāsse, dēlēsse, audīsse		

2. Similarly from *nōvī*: *nōvistī*, — *nōstī*; *nōvērunt*, — *nōrunt*; *nōveram*, — *nōram*; *nōvisse*, — *nōsse*, etc. (but Fut. Perf. *nōrō* only in compounds).

3. Beside Perfects in *-īvi* are sometimes found, in the First and Third Singular, forms in *-īi*, *-iit*, as *audiī*, *audiit*; and, rarely, a similar First Plural form, such as *audiimus*. A contracted form *audit* from *audīvit* also occurs.

NOTE. It is probable that neither the forms like *audiī*, nor those like *audieram*, mentioned above, really come from the forms with *v*. They seem, rather, to have started from Perfects which were regularly formed without *v*, especially the Perfect of *eō*, *go*, and its compounds, e.g. *īi*, *abiī*, etc. (194, a). On the other hand, forms like *audiīstī*, *audīssem*, etc., and all the short forms of Perfects in *-āvi* and *-ēvi*, are the result of contraction.

4. Perfects in *-īi* and the other tenses formed from the same stem sometimes have contracted forms, beside the full forms, wherever the *s* is itself followed by *-is-* in the ending; e.g. *dixīi* beside *dixistī*; *dixem* beside *dixissem*; *dixē* beside *dixisse*. Such forms are more frequent in early Latin, but are also found in later authors.

<sup>1</sup> The student should observe that in the shortened forms the vowel before *s* is always long, and also that before *r*, except in forms like *audieram*, etc., in which both *i* and *e* are short.

<sup>2</sup> That is, *amāveram*, *amāverās*, *amāverat*, etc. Similarly elsewhere.



5. In the Future Perfect Indicative and the Perfect Subjunctive early Latin has forms in *-sō* and *-sim* (*-ssō* and *-ssim*); e.g. *faxō* and *faxim* from *faciō*; *ausim* from *audō*; *capō* from *capīō*; *axim* from *agō*; Perf. Subj. *sīris*, *sīrit*, etc., from *sinō* (*sīris* from \**si-sis*; see 47); *amāssō*, *negāssim* (also Infin., as *reconciliāssere*).

*Faxō*, *faxim*, *ausim*, and, rarely, *sīris* occur also in later authors.

### Other Peculiarities

164. 1. The Imperatives of *dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* are *dic*, *dūc*, and *fac*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, and *face*, though in early Latin the latter are more frequent. The same is true of compounds of *dicō* and *dūcō*; e.g. *maledīc*, *ēdūc* (for the accent, see 32, 1); but in compounds of *faciō* only the full form is known; e.g. *calfāce*. Cf. also *fer*, *cōfer* from *ferō* (193).

2. The Future Passive Participle and the Gerund of the Third and Fourth Conjugations often end in *-undus* and *-undī*; e.g. *ferundus*, *faciundus*, *potiundī*.

3. The Present Infinitive Passive has an early and poetical form in *-ier*; e.g. *laudārier*, *vidērier*, *dīcier*.

4. The Imperfect Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation has an old form in *-ibam*, found in poetry of all periods; e.g. *lēnibat*, *polibant*.

5. The Future of the Fourth Conjugation has an early form in *-ibō*; e.g. *audibō*, *dormibō*.

6. There is some confusion in the Second Singular and First and Second Plural between the Future Perfect Indicative, which regularly has short *i* in these forms, and the Perfect Subjunctive, which regularly has long *i*. In the former *-is* is nearly as common as the normal *-is*, and *-imus*, *-itis* are also found; while in the latter *-is* is frequent beside *-is*, and *-imus* occurs once for *-imus*. See 174, 2, 175, 6.

7. In the Future Active Infinitive and the Perfect Passive Infinitive, *esse* is often omitted; e.g. *amātūrus* for *amātūrus esse*; *amātus* for *amātus esse*.

8. In the Perfect Passive System the auxiliary is sometimes a form of the Perfect System of *sum*, instead of the usual form of the Present System; e.g. *amātus fuit* for *amātus est*, *amātus fuerat* for *amātus erat*, etc. The form *amātus fuerō*, etc., also occurs, but more rarely.

### Variation between Conjugations

165. 1. Some verbs in *-ior* which in general follow the Third Conjugation have also forms with *ī*. So *orior* has usually *oritur* (but *adoritur*), but *orirētur* beside *orerētur*, and always Infinitive *orīrī*; *potior* has nearly always *potitur*, but *potirētur* beside *poterētur*, and nearly always *potīrī*; *moriōr* has *moritur*, but sometimes Infinitive *morīrī* (chiefly in early Latin) beside *morī*. Other examples are rare.

2. Beside *lavō*, *wash*, *lavāre*, there are also forms of the Third Conjugation, as *lavit*, *lavimus*, etc. Other examples of variation between the First and Third Conjugations, and also between the Second and Third, are mostly confined to early Latin.

## FORMATION OF THE STEMS

## The Present Stem

166. Conjugation I. — Present Stem in *-ā-*.

1. Most verbs of the First Conjugation are Denominatives,<sup>1</sup> as *cūrō*, *care for*, *cūrāre*, from the Noun *cūra*, *care*. See 211, 1. The Present Stem is also the Verb-Stem, the *ā* appearing in the Perfect and Participial Stems; e.g. *cūrāvī*, *cūrātum*.

2. The Frequentatives, like *rogitō*, *keep asking*, *rogitāre*, are also Denominative in origin, and form a large class. See 212, 1.

3. There are also a few Primary Verbs<sup>1</sup> from roots ending in *ā*, as *nō*, *swim*, *nāre* (Perf. *nāvī*), *stō*, *stand*, *stāre* (*stetī*).

4. There are a few Primary Verbs in which the *ā* belongs only to the Present Stem, as *iuuō*, *aid*, *iuuāre* (but *iūvī*, *iūtum*); *secō*, *cut*, *secāre* (but *secuī*, *sectum*).

NOTE. The Present Stem of the Denominatives was originally *-ā-yo-* and *-ā-ye-* (211, note), which became *-ā-*, partly by loss of *y* and contraction, partly through the influence of Primary Verbs having the stem in original *-ā-*.

167. Conjugation II. — Present Stem in *-ē-*.

1. In most verbs the *ē* is confined to the Present System. We may further distinguish:

- a) Primary Verbs, as *videō*, *see*, *vidēre* (*vidī*, *visum*).
- b) Causatives, as *monēō*, *cause to think, advise*, *monēre* (*monuī*, *monitum*), from the root *men* seen in *me-min-i*, *remember*.
- c) Denominatives, as *albēō*, *be white*, *albēre*, from *albus*, *white*.

2. There are some Primary Verbs from roots ending in *ē*. In these the *ē* belongs to the whole verb-system. So *fleō*, *weep*, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*. Similarly *neō*, *spin*, *pleō*, *fill*, etc.

NOTE. The Present Stem of the Denominatives was originally *-e-yo-* and *-e-ye-* (211, note; the Causatives also had *-eyo-* and *-eye-*). The latter became regularly *-ē-*, and, aided also by the influence of Primary Verbs having the stem in original *-ē-*, this became established as the Present Stem for most forms. But the First Sing. Pres. Indic. in *-eō* and the Present Subj. in *-eam*, etc., are based upon the stem *-e(y)o-*, the *y* being lost, but without contraction of the vowels.

168. Conjugation III. — Present Stem in *-e-* and *-o-*, the thematic vowel.<sup>2</sup> Various types are to be distinguished:

<sup>1</sup> The term Denominative (from *dē* and *nōmen*) is used of Verbs which are derived from Nouns or Adjectives. In contrast to these are the Primary Verbs, which are formed directly from Roots.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 76, footnote.

A. Simple Thematic Present, as *dūcō, lead* (*dūxi, ductum*). The Present Stem consists simply of the root with the thematic vowel. This is by far the commonest type.

B. Reduplicated Present, as *si-stō, set* (*stiti, statum*). The reduplication consists of the initial consonant of the root and the vowel *i*.

a. A less obvious example is *serō, sow* (*sēvi, satum*), which comes from \**si-sō*.

C. Present with Inserted Nasal, as *rumpō, break* (*rūpi, ruptum*). Sometimes the nasal is extended to the Perfect and Participial Stems; e.g. *iungō, join, iūnxi, iūctum*.

NOTE. Those verbs in which the nasal is extended throughout the verb-system outwardly resemble verbs like *pendō*, in which the *n* is a part of the root. But the related forms (as *iugum* beside *iungō*, but *pondus* beside *pendō*), as well as some other less obvious factors, make it possible to distinguish the two classes. In verbs in *-endō*, as *tendō, pendō, fendō*, the *n* belongs to the root.

D. Present in *-nō*, as *ster-nō, strew* (*strāvi, strātum*).

a. This type properly includes some Presents in *-llō*, coming from *-lnō* by the regular assimilation of *ln* (49, 11); e.g. *pellō, strike* (*pepuli*), *tollō, raise* (*sus-tuli*), *fallō, deceive* (Perf. *fefelli*, with extension of *ll* from the Present).

E. Present in *-tō*, as *flec-tō, turn* (*flexi, flexum*).

F. Present in *-scō*, as *crē-scō, increase* (*crēvi, crētum*).

NOTE. The root to which the *-scō* is added ends in a long vowel in all examples of this formation, except *discō, learn, poscō, ask*, and *compscō, restrain*, in which a consonant has been lost before the *-scō*. *Discō* comes from \**dic-scō*, earlier \**di-dc-scō* with reduplication (cf. Perf. *didici*); *poscō* from \**porc-scō* (cf. *precor*); *compscō* from \**compere-scō*. In *poscō* the *sc* has spread from the Present to the whole verb-system (Perf. *po-posci*).

a. The extension of this suffix in the specific meaning of *becoming* or *beginning* to has given rise to the numerous class of Inchoatives in *-escō, -iscō, -āscō* formed from other Verbs and from Nouns. See 212, 2.

G. Verbs in *-essō*, as *capessō, seize eagerly* (*capessivi, capessitum*).

See 212, 4.

H. Verbs in *-uō*, as *statuō, set* (*statui, statutum*). They include:

1. Denominatives from *u*-Stems, as *statuō* from *status*.
2. Primary Verbs from roots in *u*, as *suō, sew*.
3. Primary Verbs with a suffix *-nuō*, as *mi-nuō, lessen*.

a. This type includes also *solvō, loose* (*solvi, solutus*), and *volvō, roll* (*volvi, volutus*), in which *u* has become consonantal.

I. Present in *-iō*, as *capīō, take, capere* (*cēpi, captum*).

NOTE. Verbs like *capīō* are in origin closely connected with the Primary Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. The short *i*, partly inherited, but partly, also, due to "iambic shortening" (28, note; observe that the first syllable is short in all verbs of this type), caused a resemblance to the forms of the Third Conjugation, in which *i* comes from *e*. For some examples of confusion with the Fourth Conjugation, see 165, 1.

**169.** Conjugation IV. — Present Stem in *-i-*. Two types are to be distinguished :

1. Denominatives, as *finiō, finish, finire*, from *finis, end*. The Present Stem is also the Verb-Stem (*finivī, finitum*).

2. Primary Verbs, as *veniō, come, venire*. The *i* is usually confined to the Present System (*vēnī, ventum*).

NOTE. The Present Stem of Denominatives was originally *-i-yo-* and *-i-ye-*, or, when formed from consonant-stems, *-yo-* and *-ye-* (211, note); that of Primary Verbs was *-iyo-* or *-yo-* and *-i-*. This last became established as the Present Stem for most forms. But the First Sing. and Third Plur. Pres. Indic. in *-iō* and *-iunt*, as well as the Imperf. Indic. in *-iēbam*, etc., the Fut. in *-iam*, etc., and the Pres. Subj. in *-iam*, etc., are based upon the stem *-(y)o-*.

### 170. The Irregular Verbs.

These are relics of a once extensive system of conjugation known as unthematic,<sup>1</sup> in which the endings were added directly to the root, as in *es-t, is, fer-t, brings*, etc. But only part of the forms of the Irregular Verbs are of this nature; the rest differ in no way from those of the Third Conjugation, e.g. *ferō, ferimus, ferunt*.

### The Imperfect Indicative

**171.** The Tense-Sign of the Imperfect Indicative is *-bā-* (shortened to *-ba-* before the endings *-m, -t, -nt, -r*; see 26, 1, 2), added to forms ending in a long vowel, namely, *-ā* for the First Conjugation, *-ē* for the Second and Third, and *-iē* (sometimes *-ī*) for the Fourth.

NOTE. This formation originated in the combination of a past tense of the verb *to be* (cf. *fuī*) with certain case-forms (probably old Instrumentals), which, in this combination, became associated with the verb-system. The case-form in *-ē* belonged to a noun-stem in *-o* (cf. Adverbs in *-ē*, originally Ablatives of *o*-Stems; see 126, 1); and, since in verbs the corresponding stem-vowel is the thematic vowel of the Third Conjugation (p. 80, footnote), the form in *-ē-bam* came to be used in the Third Conjugation as well as in the Second, in which the Present Stem ends in *-ē-*. In the Fourth Conjugation, *-i-bam* represents an earlier type than *-iē-bam* (cf. early Latin Fut. *audibō*, not \**audiēbō*).

### The Future Indicative

**172.** In the First and Second Conjugations, and in early Latin sometimes in the Fourth, the Future is formed like the Imperfect, except that the tense-sign is *b* + the thematic vowel, instead of *-bā-*.

In the Third and Fourth Conjugations the tense-sign is *-ā-*, which occurs in the First Person (shortened, because before the endings *-m* or *-r*; see 26, 1, 2), or *-ē-*, which occurs in all other Persons (shortened before the endings *-t, -nt*; see 26, 1).

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 76, footnote.

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	tegere	tegi
<i>Perf.</i>	tēxisse	tēctus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	tēctūrus esse	tēctum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	tegēns	<i>Perf.</i>	tēctus
<i>Fut.</i>	tēctūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	tegendus

## GERUND

## SUPINE

<i>Gen.</i>	tegendī	
<i>Dat.</i>	tegendō	
<i>Acc.</i>	tegendum	tēctum
<i>Abl.</i>	tegendō	tēctū

## VERBS IN -iō OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

158. Verbs in -iō of the Third Conjugation have in the Present System many forms identical with those of the Fourth Conjugation, namely, all those in which i is followed by a vowel.

## capiō, take

## Principal Parts

capiō	capere	cēpi	captum
-------	--------	------	--------

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
------------	-------------	------------	-------------

*Present*

capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capias	caperis, -re	capiaris, -re
capit	capiat	capitur	capiatur
capimus	capiamus	capimur	capiamur
capitis	capiatis	capimini	capiamini
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Imperfect</i>			
capiēbam <sup>1</sup>	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
<i>Future</i>			
capiam		capiar	
<i>Perfect</i>			
cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
cēperō		captus erō	

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	cape	capite	capere	capimini
<i>Fut.</i>	capitō	capitōte	capitor	
	capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	capere	capī
<i>Perf.</i>	cēpisse	captus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus esse	captum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	capiēns	<i>Perf.</i>	captus
<i>Fut.</i>	captūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	captendus

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	capiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	capiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	capiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	capiendō

## SUPINE

captum
captū

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, capiēbam, capiēbās, capiēbat, etc. So elsewhere.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

159.

audiō, hear

## Principal Parts

audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present</i>			
audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
audis	audias	audiris, -re	audiaris, -re
audit	audiat	auditur	audiatur
audimus	audiamus	audimur	audiamur
auditis	audiatis	audimini	audiāmini
audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris, -re	audīrēris, -re
audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāmini	audīrēmini
audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
<i>Future</i>			
audiam		audiar	
audiēs		audiēris, -re	
audiet		audiētur	
audiēmus		audiēmur	
audiētis		audiēmini	
audient		audientur	
<i>Perfect</i>			
audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
audīvisti	audīveris	audītus es	audītus sis
audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
audīvimus	audīverimus	audīti sumus	audīti simus
audīvistis	audīveritis	audīti estis	audīti sitis
audīverunt, -ēre	audīverint	audīti sunt	audīti sint

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Past Perfect*

<b>audīveram</b>	<b>audīvissem</b>	<b>audītus eram</b>	<b>audītus essem</b>
<b>audīverās</b>	<b>audīvisseās</b>	<b>audītus erās</b>	<b>audītus esseās</b>
<b>audīverat</b>	<b>audīvisset</b>	<b>audītus erat</b>	<b>audītus esset</b>
<b>audīverāmus</b>	<b>audīvisseāmus</b>	<b>audītī erāmus</b>	<b>audītī esseāmus</b>
<b>audīverātis</b>	<b>audīvissetis</b>	<b>audītī erātis</b>	<b>audītī esseētis</b>
<b>audīverant</b>	<b>audīvissent</b>	<b>audītī erant</b>	<b>audītī essent</b>

*Future Perfect*

<b>audīverō</b>	<b>audītus erō</b>
<b>audīveris</b>	<b>audītus eris</b>
<b>audīverit</b>	<b>audītus erit</b>
<b>audīverimus</b>	<b>audītī erimus</b>
<b>audīveritis</b>	<b>audītī eritis</b>
<b>audīverint</b>	<b>audītī erunt</b>

## IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i>	<b>audī</b>	<b>audīte</b>		<b>audīre</b>	<b>audīmini</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>audītō</b>	<b>audītōte</b>		<b>audītor</b>	
	<b>audītō</b>	<b>audiuntō</b>		<b>audītor</b>	<b>audiuntor</b>

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>audīre</b>	<b>audīrī</b>
<i>Perf.</i>	<b>audīvisse</b>	<b>audītus esse</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>audītūrus esse</b>	<b>audītum irī</b>

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	<b>audiēns</b>	<i>Perf.</i>	<b>audītus</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	<b>audītūrus</b>	<i>Fut.</i>	<b>audiendus</b>

## GERUND

<i>Gen.</i>	<b>audiendī</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>audiendō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>audiendum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>audiendō</b>

## SUPINE

<b>audītum</b>
<b>audītū</b>



## DEPONENT VERBS

**160.** Deponent Verbs<sup>1</sup> are mostly Passive in form but Active in meaning. In addition to the Passive forms, they have also the Present and Future Participles Active, the Future Infinitive Active, and the Supine. The Future Passive Participle, and occasionally the Perfect Participle, are Passive in meaning. The inflection follows that of the regular Conjugations. Examples :

## Principal Parts

CONJUGATION I	<i>mīror, admire</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i>
“ II	<i>vereor, fear</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>
“ III	<i>sequor, follow</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>
“ IV	<i>partior, share</i>	<i>partīrī</i>	<i>partītus sum</i>

## INDICATIVE

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīror</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>partior</i>
	<i>mīrāris, -re</i>	<i>verēris, -re</i>	<i>sequeris, -re</i>	<i>partīris, -re</i>
	<i>mīrātur</i>	<i>verētur</i>	<i>sequitur</i>	<i>partītur</i>
	<i>mīrāmur</i>	<i>verēmur</i>	<i>sequimur</i>	<i>partīmur</i>
	<i>mīrāminī</i>	<i>verēmīnī</i>	<i>sequiminī</i>	<i>partīminī</i>
	<i>mīrantur</i>	<i>verentur</i>	<i>sequuntur</i>	<i>partiuntur</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mīrābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>partiēbar</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mīrābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>partītus sum</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>partītus eram</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>partītus erō</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīrer</i>	<i>verear</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>partiar</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>mīrārer</i>	<i>verērer</i>	<i>sequerer</i>	<i>partīrer</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus sim</i>	<i>veritus sim</i>	<i>secūtus sim</i>	<i>partītus sim</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus essem</i>	<i>veritus essem</i>	<i>secūtus essem</i>	<i>partītus essem</i>

<sup>1</sup> For many verbs ordinarily Deponent, early Latin shows Active forms.

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīrāre</i>	<i>verēre</i>	<i>sequere</i>	<i>partire</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mīrātor</i>	<i>verētor</i>	<i>sequitor</i>	<i>partitor</i>

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequi</i>	<i>partiri</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mīrātus esse</i>	<i>veritus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partītus esse</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>mīrātūrus esse</i>	<i>veritūrus esse</i>	<i>secūtūrus esse</i>	<i>partītūrus esse</i>

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. Act.</i>	<i>mīrāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	<i>mīrātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partītūrus</i>
<i>Perf. Pass.</i>	<i>mīrātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partītus</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	<i>mīrandus</i>	<i>verendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>

## GERUND

<i>mīrandī, etc.</i>	<i>verendī, etc.</i>	<i>sequendī, etc.</i>	<i>partiendī, etc.</i>
----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

## SUPINE

<i>mīrātum, -tū</i>	<i>veritum, -tū</i>	<i>secūtum, -tū</i>	<i>partītum, -tū</i>
---------------------	---------------------	---------------------	----------------------

## SEMI-DEPONENTS

161. Semi-Deponents are verbs of which the Perfect System is Passive in form but Active in meaning, such as :

<i>audeō, dare,</i>	<i>audēre</i>	<i>ausus sum</i>
<i>gaudeō, rejoice,</i>	<i>gaudēre</i>	<i>gāvīsus sum</i>
<i>soleō, am wont,</i>	<i>solēre</i>	<i>solitus sum</i>
<i>fidē, trust,</i>	<i>fidere</i>	<i>fīsus sum</i>

NOTE. Some verbs, otherwise regular, have a Perfect Passive Participle with active meaning. So *cēnātus*, *having dined*, from *cēnō*, *dine*; *iūrātus*, *having sworn*, from *iūrō*, *swear*; *prānsus*, *having breakfasted*, from *prandeō*, *breakfast*; *pōtus*, *having drunk*, from *pōtō*, *drink*.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

162. The Periphrastic Conjugation<sup>1</sup> is a combination of the Future Active or Future Passive Participle with the verb *sum*.

<sup>1</sup> That is, a Conjugation in which all the parts are expressed by a phrase rather than by a single form. Some parts of the Regular Conjugations are also periphrastic, as *amātus sum*.

## ACTIVE

**Amātūrus sum, I am about to love**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus sum, <i>I am about to love</i>	amātūrus sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amātūrus eram, <i>I was about to love</i>	amātūrus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō, <i>I shall be about to love</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui, <i>I have been, was, about to love</i>	amātūrus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amātūrus fueram, <i>I had been about to love</i>	amātūrus fuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuerō, <i>I shall have been about to love</i>	

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fuisse, <i>to have been about to love</i>

## PASSIVE

**Amandus sum, I (am to be loved) have to be loved**

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum, <i>I have to be loved</i>	amandus sim
<i>Imperf.</i>	amandus eram, <i>I had to be loved</i>	amandus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui, <i>I have had to be loved</i>	amandus fuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>	amandus fuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>	

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

## PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION

## Short Forms of the Perfect System

163. 1. Perfects in *-āvi* and *-ēvi*, as well as the other tenses formed from the same stem, have a series of shortened forms in which the *v*, together with the following vowel,

is lost before **s** and **r**. Perfects in **-īvi** also have forms without the **v**, but the vowel is lost only before **s**, not before **r**. The two sets of forms may be seen in the following <sup>1</sup>:

FULL FORMS			SHORTENED FORMS		
<i>Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāvisti,	dēlēvisti,	audivisti	amāsti,	dēlēsti,	audisti
amāvistis,	dēlēvistis,	audivistis	amāstis,	dēlēstis,	audistis
amāvērunt,	dēlēvērunt,	audivērunt	amārunt,	dēlērunt,	audiērunt
<i>Past Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāveram, <sup>2</sup>	dēlēveram,	audiveram	amāram,	dēlēram,	audieram
<i>Future Perfect Indicative</i>					
amāverō,	dēlēverō,	audiverō	amārō,	dēlērō,	audierō
<i>Perfect Subjunctive</i>					
amāverim,	dēlēverim,	audiverim	amārim,	dēlērim,	audierim
<i>Past Perfect Subjunctive</i>					
amāvissem,	dēlēvissem,	audivissem	amāssem,	dēlēsssem,	audissem
<i>Perfect Infinitive</i>					
amāvisse,	dēlēvisse,	audivisse	amāsse,	dēlēsse,	audisse

2. Similarly from **nōvī**: **nōvistī**, — **nōstī**; **nōvērunt**, — **nōrunt**; **nōveram**, — **nōram**; **nōvisse**, — **nōsse**, etc. (but Fut. Perf. **nōrō** only in compounds).

3. Beside Perfects in **-īvi** are sometimes found, in the First and Third Singular, forms in **-iī**, **-iit**, as **audiī**, **audiit**; and, rarely, a similar First Plural form, such as **audiimus**. A contracted form **audīt** from **audīvit** also occurs.

NOTE. It is probable that neither the forms like **audiī**, nor those like **audieram**, mentioned above, really come from the forms with **v**. They seem, rather, to have started from Perfects which were regularly formed without **v**, especially the Perfect of **eō**, **gō**, and its compounds, e.g. **iī**, **abī**, etc. (194, a). On the other hand, forms like **audistī**, **audissem**, etc., and all the short forms of Perfects in **-āvi** and **-ēvi**, are the result of contraction.

4. Perfects in **-sī** and the other tenses formed from the same stem sometimes have contracted forms, beside the full forms, wherever the **s** is itself followed by **-is-** in the ending; e.g. **dīxtī** beside **dixistī**; **dixem** beside **dixissem**; **dixē** beside **dixisse**. Such forms are more frequent in early Latin, but are also found in later authors.

<sup>1</sup> The student should observe that in the shortened forms the vowel before **s** is always long, and also that before **r**, except in forms like **audieram**, etc., in which both **i** and **e** are short.

<sup>2</sup> That is, **amāveram**, **amāverās**, **amāverat**, etc. Similarly elsewhere.

5. In the Future Perfect Indicative and the Perfect Subjunctive early Latin has forms in *-sō* and *-sim* (*-ssō* and *-ssim*); e.g. *faxō* and *faxim* from *faciō*; *ausim* from *audeō*; *capeō* from *capiō*; *axim* from *agō*; Perf. Subj. *siris*, *sirit*, etc., from *sino* (*siris* from \**si-sis*; see 47); *amāssō*, *negāssim* (also Infin., as *reconciliāssere*).

*Faxō*, *faxim*, *ausim*, and, rarely, *siris* occur also in later authors.

### Other Peculiarities

164. 1. The Imperatives of *dicō*, *dūcō*, and *faciō* are *dic*, *dūc*, and *fac*, instead of *dice*, *dūce*, and *face*, though in early Latin the latter are more frequent. The same is true of compounds of *dicō* and *dūcō*; e.g. *maledīc*, *ēdūc* (for the accent, see 32, 1); but in compounds of *faciō* only the full form is known; e.g. *calfāce*. Cf. also *fer*, *cōnfer* from *ferō* (193).

2. The Future Passive Participle and the Gerund of the Third and Fourth Conjugations often end in *-undus* and *-undī*; e.g. *ferundus*, *faciundus*, *potiundī*.

3. The Present Infinitive Passive has an early and poetical form in *-ier*; e.g. *laudārier*, *vidērier*, *dicier*.

4. The Imperfect Indicative of the Fourth Conjugation has an old form in *-ībam*, found in poetry of all periods; e.g. *lōnībat*, *polībant*.

5. The Future of the Fourth Conjugation has an early form in *-ībō*; e.g. *audībō*, *dormībō*.

6. There is some confusion in the Second Singular and First and Second Plural between the Future Perfect Indicative, which regularly has short *i* in these forms, and the Perfect Subjunctive, which regularly has long *i*. In the former *-is* is nearly as common as the normal *-is*, and *-imus*, *-itis* are also found; while in the latter *-is* is frequent beside *-is*, and *-imus* occurs once for *-imus*. See 174, 2, 175, 6.

7. In the Future Active Infinitive and the Perfect Passive Infinitive, *esse* is often omitted; e.g. *amātūrus* for *amātūrus esse*; *amātus* for *amātus esse*.

8. In the Perfect Passive System the auxiliary is sometimes a form of the Perfect System of *sum*, instead of the usual form of the Present System; e.g. *amātus fuit* for *amātus est*, *amātus fuerat* for *amātus erat*, etc. The form *amātus fuerō*, etc., also occurs, but more rarely.

### Variation between Conjugations

165. 1. Some verbs in *-ior* which in general follow the Third Conjugation have also forms with *i*. So *orior* has usually *oritur* (but *adoritur*), but *orirētur* beside *orerētur*, and always Infinitive *oriri*; *potior* has nearly always *potitur*, but *potirētur* beside *poterētur*, and nearly always *potiri*; *moriōr* has *moritur*, but sometimes Infinitive *moriri* (chiefly in early Latin) beside *mori*. Other examples are rare.

2. Beside *lavō*, *wash*, *lavāre*, there are also forms of the Third Conjugation, as *lavit*, *lavimus*, etc. Other examples of variation between the First and Third Conjugations, and also between the Second and Third, are mostly confined to early Latin.

## FORMATION OF THE STEMS

## The Present Stem

166. Conjugation I. — Present Stem in *-ā-*.

1. Most verbs of the First Conjugation are Denominatives,<sup>1</sup> as *cūrō*, *care for*, *cūrāre*, from the Noun *cūra*, *care*. See 211, 1. The Present Stem is also the Verb-Stem, the *ā* appearing in the Perfect and Participial Stems; e.g. *cūrāvī*, *cūrātum*.

2. The Frequentatives, like *rogitō*, *keep asking*, *rogitare*, are also Denominative in origin, and form a large class. See 212, 1.

3. There are also a few Primary Verbs<sup>1</sup> from roots ending in *ā*, as *nō*, *swim*, *nāre* (Perf. *nāvī*), *stō*, *stand*, *stāre* (*steti*).

4. There are a few Primary Verbs in which the *ā* belongs only to the Present Stem, as *iuvō*, *aid*, *iuvāre* (but *iūvī*, *iūtum*); *secō*, *cut*, *secāre* (but *secuī*, *sectum*).

NOTE. The Present Stem of the Denominatives was originally *-ā-yo-* and *-ā-ye-* (211, note), which became *-ā-*, partly by loss of *y* and contraction, partly through the influence of Primary Verbs having the stem in original *-ā-*.

167. Conjugation II. — Present Stem in *-ē-*.

1. In most verbs the *ē* is confined to the Present System. We may further distinguish:

- a) Primary Verbs, as *videō*, *see*, *vidēre* (*vidī*, *visum*).
- b) Causatives, as *monēō*, *cause to think*, *advise*, *monēre* (*monuī*, *monitum*), from the root *men* seen in *me-min-i*, *remember*.
- c) Denominatives, as *albeō*, *be white*, *albēre*, from *albus*, *white*.

2. There are some Primary Verbs from roots ending in *ē*. In these the *ē* belongs to the whole verb-system. So *fleō*, *weep*, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*. Similarly *neō*, *spin*, *pleō*, *fill*, etc.

NOTE. The Present Stem of the Denominatives was originally *-ē-yo-* and *-ē-ye-* (211, note); the Causatives also had *-ē-yo-* and *-ē-ye-*. The latter became regularly *-ē-*, and, aided also by the influence of Primary Verbs having the stem in original *-ē-*, this became established as the Present Stem for most forms. But the First Sing. Pres. Indic. in *-eō* and the Present Subj. in *-eam*, etc., are based upon the stem *-ē(y)o-*, the *y* being lost, but without contraction of the vowels.

168. Conjugation III. — Present Stem in *-e-* and *-o-*, the thematic vowel.<sup>2</sup> Various types are to be distinguished:

<sup>1</sup> The term Denominative (from *dē* and *nōmen*) is used of Verbs which are derived from Nouns or Adjectives. In contrast to these are the Primary Verbs, which are formed directly from Roots.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 76, footnote.

A. Simple Thematic Present, as *dūcō*, *lead* (*dūxī*, *ductum*). The Present Stem consists simply of the root with the thematic vowel. This is by far the commonest type.

B. Reduplicated Present, as *si-stō*, *set* (*stīti*, *statum*). The reduplication consists of the initial consonant of the root and the vowel *i*.

a. A less obvious example is *sērō*, *sow* (*sēvi*, *satum*), which comes from \**si-sō*.

C. Present with Inserted Nasal, as *rumpō*, *break* (*rūpi*, *ruptum*). Sometimes the nasal is extended to the Perfect and Participial Stems; e.g. *iungō*, *join*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*.

NOTE. Those verbs in which the nasal is extended throughout the verb-system outwardly resemble verbs like *pendō*, in which the *n* is a part of the root. But the related forms (as *iugum* beside *iungō*, but *pondus* beside *pendō*), as well as some other less obvious factors, make it possible to distinguish the two classes. In verbs in *-endō*, as *tendō*, *pendō*, *fendō*, the *n* belongs to the root.

D. Present in *-nō*, as *ster-nō*, *strew* (*strāvi*, *strātum*).

a. This type properly includes some Presents in *-llō*, coming from *-lnō* by the regular assimilation of *ln* (49, 11); e.g. *pellō*, *strike* (*pepulī*), *tollō*, *raise* (*sus-tulī*), *fallō*, *deceive* (Perf. *fefellī*, with extension of *ll* from the Present).

E. Present in *-tō*, as *flec-tō*, *turn* (*flexī*, *flexum*).

F. Present in *-scō*, as *crē-scō*, *increase* (*crēvi*, *crētum*).

NOTE. The root to which the *-scō* is added ends in a long vowel in all examples of this formation, except *discō*, *learn*, *poscō*, *ask*, and *compscō*, *restrain*, in which a consonant has been lost before the *-scō*. *Discō* comes from \**dic-scō*, earlier \**di-de-scō* with reduplication (cf. Perf. *didici*); *poscō* from \**porc-scō* (cf. *precor*); *compscō* from \**comperc-scō*. In *poscō* the *sc* has spread from the Present to the whole verb-system (Perf. *po-posci*).

a. The extension of this suffix in the specific meaning of *becoming* or *beginning* to has given rise to the numerous class of Inchoatives in *-escō*, *-iscō*, *-āscō* formed from other Verbs and from Nouns. See 212, 2.

G. Verbs in *-essō*, as *capessō*, *seize eagerly* (*capessivī*, *capessitum*). See 212, 4.

H. Verbs in *-uō*, as *statuō*, *set* (*statuī*, *statūtum*). They include:

1. Denominatives from *u*-Stems, as *statuō* from *status*.
2. Primary Verbs from roots in *u*, as *suō*, *sew*.
3. Primary Verbs with a suffix *-nuō*, as *mi-nuō*, *lessen*.

a. This type includes also *solvō*, *loose* (*solvī*, *solūtus*), and *volvō*, *roll* (*volvī*, *volūtus*), in which *u* has become consonantal.

I. Present in *-iō*, as *capiō*, *take*, *capere* (*cēpi*, *captum*).

NOTE. Verbs like *capiō* are in origin closely connected with the Primary Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. The short *i*, partly inherited, but partly, also, due to "iambic shortening" (28, note; observe that the first syllable is short in all verbs of this type), caused a resemblance to the forms of the Third Conjugation, in which *i* comes from *e*. For some examples of confusion with the Fourth Conjugation, see 166, 1.

**169.** Conjugation IV. — Present Stem in **-ī-**. Two types are to be distinguished :

1. Denominatives, as *finiō, finish, finire, from finis, end*. The Present Stem is also the Verb-Stem (*finīvi, finitum*).
2. Primary Verbs, as *veniō, come, venire*. The *ī* is usually confined to the Present System (*vēnī, ventum*).

NOTE. The Present Stem of Denominatives was originally *-i-yo-* and *-i-ye-*, or, when formed from consonant-stems, *-yo-* and *-ye-* (§11, note); that of Primary Verbs was *-iyo-* or *-yo-* and *-ī-*. This last became established as the Present Stem for most forms. But the First Sing. and Third Plur. Pres. Indic. in *-iō* and *-iunt*, as well as the Imperf. Indic. in *-iēbam*, etc., the Fut. in *-iam*, etc., and the Pres. Subj. in *-iam*, etc., are based upon the stem *-i(y)ō-*.

### 170. The Irregular Verbs.

These are relics of a once extensive system of conjugation known as unthematic,<sup>1</sup> in which the endings were added directly to the root, as in *es-t, is, fer-t, brings*, etc. But only part of the forms of the Irregular Verbs are of this nature; the rest differ in no way from those of the Third Conjugation, e.g. *ferō, ferimus, ferunt*.

### The Imperfect Indicative

**171.** The Tense-Sign of the Imperfect Indicative is **-bā-** (shortened to **-ba-** before the endings **-m, -t, -nt, -r**; see §6, 1, 2), added to forms ending in a long vowel, namely, **-ā** for the First Conjugation, **-ē** for the Second and Third, and **-iē** (sometimes **-ī**) for the Fourth.

NOTE. This formation originated in the combination of a past tense of the verb *to be* (cf. *fuī*) with certain case-forms (probably old Instrumentals), which, in this combination, became associated with the verb-system. The case-form in **-ē** belonged to a noun-stem in **-o** (cf. Adverbs in **-ē**, originally Ablatives of *o*-Stems; see §26, 1); and, since in verbs the corresponding stem-vowel is the thematic vowel of the Third Conjugation (p. 80, footnote), the form in **-ē-bam** came to be used in the Third Conjugation as well as in the Second, in which the Present Stem ends in **-ē-**. In the Fourth Conjugation, **-ī-bam** represents an earlier type than **-iē-bam** (cf. early Latin Fut. *audībō*, not \**audībō*).

### The Future Indicative

**172.** In the First and Second Conjugations, and in early Latin sometimes in the Fourth, the Future is formed like the Imperfect, except that the tense-sign is **b** + the thematic vowel, instead of **-bā-**.

In the Third and Fourth Conjugations the tense-sign is **-ā-**, which occurs in the First Person (shortened, because before the endings **-m** or **-r**; see §6, 1, 2), or **-ē-**, which occurs in all other Persons (shortened before the endings **-t, -nt**; see §6, 1).

<sup>1</sup> See above, p. 76, footnote.



NOTE. The Future in -bō originated in the combination of a Future of the verb *to be* (formed like *erō*, but from the root seen in *ful*) with the same case-forms which appear in the formation of the Imperfect.

Both *ā* and *ē* were Mood-Signs of the Subjunctive (175), so that the Future of the Third and Fourth Conjugation are in origin Present Subjunctives,—only, except in the First Person, of a different type from that which is seen in the regular Present Subjunctive.

The Future of *sum* (*erō*, *eris*, etc.) is also a Subjunctive in origin, but of still another type, the mood-sign being simply the thematic vowel. This was originally the regular Subjunctive formation for all *unthematic* Indicatives, and so would have been the normal formation for the Future of the Irregular Verbs so far as they are truly unthematic (170). But in all of these except *sum*, the Present contains so many thematic forms identical with those of the Third Conjugation that the Future also has the same formation as in the Third Conjugation; e.g. Fut. *feram* beside Pres. *ferō*, like *tēgam* beside *tēgō*.

### The Perfect Indicative

#### 173. Various types are to be distinguished :

A. Perfect in -vī. In the form -āvī this type is common to most verbs of the First Conjugation, and in the form -ivī to a large proportion of the verbs of the Fourth. Several verbs of the Second and Third Conjugations have Perfects in which -vī is added to the root, or to a variant form of the root, ending in a long vowel, giving rise to forms in -ēvī, -ōvī, as well as -āvī, -ivī. Examples (the prevailing types in black) :

amā-vī, from amō, <i>love</i> , amāre	finī-vī, from finiō, <i>finish</i> , finire
flē-vī <sup>1</sup> “ fleō, <i>weep</i> , flēre	nō-vī “ nōscō, <i>know</i> , nōscere
crē-vī “ crēscō, <i>grow</i> , crēscere	strā-vī “ sternō, <i>strew</i> , sternere
sprē-vī “ spernō, <i>spurn</i> , spernere	trī-vī “ terō, <i>rub</i> , terere

a. For shortened forms of -vī-Perfects, see above, 163.

B. Perfect in -uī. This is common to a large proportion of the verbs of the Second Conjugation, and to many of the Third, mostly those in which the root-syllable ends in *l*, *r*, *m*, or *n*. It is also found in some Primary Verbs of the First and a very few of the Fourth Conjugation. Examples :

monuī, from moneō, <i>advise</i> , monēre	moluī, from molō, <i>grind</i> , molere
seculī “ secō, <i>cut</i> , secāre	saluī “ salio, <i>leap</i> , salire

NOTE. This is obviously related to the preceding type. The apparent difference is that -vī is used after vowels and -uī after consonants. But -uī probably comes through \**-o-vī*, from \**-ē-vī*, just as *dēnuō* comes from \**dē-novō* (42, 4) and this *novō* from an earlier \**nevo-*. With this assumed \**-e-vī* compare the Participle in -itus, from \**-e-tos*, which nearly always accompanies the Perfect in -uī (179, 3).

a. A combination of this with the following type is seen in *messuī*, from *metō*, *mow*, and *nexuī* from *nectō*, *bind*.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that -ēvī is not the common type for verbs of the Second Conjugation, as -āvī is for those of the First. Only those verbs in which *ē* belongs to the root-syllable have Perfects in -ēvī. An apparent exception is *dēlēō*, *destroy*, Perf. *dēlēvī*, but this is really a compound *dē-leō* (cf. *linō*, *smear*, Perf. *lēvī*).

C. Perfect in *-sī*. This is most common in the Third Conjugation, but is not infrequent in the Second, and is occasionally found in the Fourth. Examples :

*dīxī*, from *dicō*, *say*, *dicere*      *serpsī*, from *serpō*, *crawl*, *serpere*  
*auxī* “ *augeō*, *increase*, *augēre*      *sēnsī* “ *sentiō*, *feel*, *sentire*

*a.* Consonant changes. The changes resulting from the combination of the final consonant of the root with the *s* are in accordance with the statements already given (49, 1-4, 7). *Ius-sī* belongs under 49, 4, since the *b* of *iubeō* stands for an original dental (*dh*). In *ges-sī*, *us-sī*, the root itself ends in *s*, which has become *r* in the Presents *gerō*, *ūrō* (47). Similarly *pres-sī* from *pres-*, although the Present *premō* is from *prem-*. For *vixī*, *strūxī*, *flūxī* (*vivō*, *struō*, *fluō*), see 49, 2.

*b.* In general, barring the regular lengthening before *ns* and *nx* (18), the quantity of the vowel in the root-syllable of this Perfect is the same as in the Present. But there are some examples of an inherited variation (46), as follows :

*c.* A short vowel, as against a long vowel in the Present, is seen in *ussī*, from *ūrō*; *cessī*, from *cēdō*.

*d.* A long vowel, as against a short vowel in the Present, is seen in *mīsī*, from *mittō*; *divīsī*, from *dividō*; *rēxī*, from *regō*; *tēxī*, from *tegō*; *flūxī*, from *fluō*; *strūxī*, from *struō*; and (probably) *trāxī*, from *trahō*. Compare *lēgī*, from *legō*, of type E.

D. Reduplicated Perfect. This is confined to the Third Conjugation, except for four examples from the Second (*mordeō*, *pendeō*, *spondeō*, *tondeō*), and the verbs *dō* and *stō*. The vowel of the reduplication is regularly *e*; but this is replaced by the vowel of the root-syllable wherever the latter, in both the Present and the Perfect, is *i*, *u*, or *o*. For the changes in the vowel of the root-syllable, see 42. Examples :

<i>cecinī</i> , from <i>canō</i> , <i>sing</i>	<i>didicī</i> , from <i>discō</i> , <i>learn</i>
<i>cecidī</i> “ <i>caedō</i> , <i>cut</i>	<i>cucurrī</i> “ <i>currō</i> , <i>run</i>
<i>pepulī</i> “ <i>pellō</i> , <i>strike</i>	<i>momordī</i> “ <i>mordeō</i> , <i>bite</i>
<i>tetendī</i> “ <i>tendō</i> , <i>stretch</i>	<i>stetī</i> “ <i>stō</i> , <i>stand</i>

*a.* In compounds, except those of *dō*, *stō*, *sistō*, *discō*, *poscō*, the reduplication is usually lost. So *oc-cidī*, *at-tendī*, etc.; but often *-cucurrī* beside *-currī* in compounds of *currō*. Compounds of *canō* and *pungō* (Perf. *pupugī*) substitute other formations; e.g. *oc-cinuī* and *ex-pūnxī*.

*b.* In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, both consonants appear in the reduplication, but *s* is lost in the root-syllable; e.g. *spopondī* (for \**spo-spondī*) from *spondeō*, *stetī* from *stō*.

E. Perfect in *-ī* with lengthened vowel in the root-syllable. This type is found mostly in the Second and Third Conjugations. Examples :

<i>sēdī</i> , from <i>sedeō</i> , <i>sit</i>	<i>ēdī</i> , from <i>edō</i> , <i>eat</i> , <i>edere</i>
<i>mōvī</i> “ <i>moveō</i> , <i>move</i>	<i>fēcī</i> “ <i>faciō</i> , <i>do</i> , <i>facere</i>
<i>cāvī</i> “ <i>caveō</i> , <i>beware</i>	<i>fōdī</i> “ <i>fodiō</i> , <i>dig</i> , <i>fodere</i>
<i>iūvī</i> “ <i>iuvō</i> , <i>aid</i> , <i>iuvāre</i>	<i>vēnī</i> “ <i>veniō</i> , <i>come</i> , <i>venire</i>

*F.* Perfect in -ī without change of the vowel of the root-syllable. This type is found in many Verbs of the Third Conjugation, including nearly all in -uō. Examples :

vertī, from vertō, <i>turn</i>	lui, <sup>1</sup> from luō, <i>atone for</i>
fīdī " fīdō, <i>split</i>	minūi " minuō, <i>lessen</i>

### The Past Perfect Indicative and the Future Perfect

**174.** 1. The Past Perfect Indicative is formed from the Perfect Stem + -erā- (originally -esā-), with the regular shortening of ā before the endings -m, -t, -nt (**26**, 1).

2. The Future Perfect is formed from the Perfect Stem + -er- (originally -es-), followed by the thematic vowel. The Third Plural in -int (not -unt) and the Second Singular and First and Second Plural forms in -is, -imus, -itis beside the regular -is, -imus, -itis, are due to confusion with the Perfect Subjunctive, in which ī was original. See **164**, 6 ; **175**, *b*.

### The Subjunctive

**175.** The Subjunctive has three Mood-Signs, namely, -ā-, -ē-, and -ī- (shortened before the endings -m, -t, -nt, and -r ; see **26**, 1, 2).

The -ā- occurs in the Present Subjunctive of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations.

The -ē- occurs in the Present Subjunctive of the First, and in the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive of all Conjugations.

The -ī- occurs in the Present Subjunctive of many Irregular Verbs and in the Perfect Subjunctive of all Conjugations.

**NOTE.** The Latin Subjunctive represents in its formation, as well as in its functions (see the Syntax), a mixture of two originally distinct moods, namely, the Subjunctive proper and the Optative. The -ī- is the mood-sign of the old Optative. Another form of this was -iē-, seen in early Latin *siem*, *siēs*, etc., beside *sim*, *sis*, etc. The -ā- and -ē- belong to the Subjunctive proper, and, besides the forms enumerated, they are seen in the Future of the Third and Fourth Conjugations (**172**, note). Still another old Subjunctive formation, with the simple thematic vowel, is seen in the Future *erō* (**172**, note), and in the Future Perfect -erō, -eris, etc.

*a.* In the Imperfect Subjunctive the mood-sign -ē- is added to the Present Stem + s, the s becoming r regularly after a vowel (**47**). So *es-s-ē-s* (also *vellēs*, *ferrēs*, from \**vel-s-ē-s*, \**fer-s-ē-s* ; **49**, 11), but *amā-r-ē-s*, *tege-r-ē-s*, etc.

*b.* In the Perfect Subjunctive the mood-sign -ī- is added to the Perfect Stem + -er- (originally -es-). The frequently occurring Second Singular

<sup>1</sup> Such Perfects, though ending in -uī, are not to be classified under the -uī type, since the u belongs to the Verb-Stem.

in *-is* beside the normal *-īs*, and the rare *-imus* for *-īmus*, are due to confusion with the Future Perfect. See 164, 6 ; 174, 2.

c. In the Past Perfect Subjunctive the mood-sign *-ē-* is added to *-is-s-*; e.g. *tēx-is-s-ē-s*.

**176. The Imperative.** The Imperative has no special mood-sign, and is characterized only by its peculiar endings.

**177. The Passive.** The formation of the Moods and Tenses is the same as in the Active, except in the Perfect System, which is periphrastic.

### The Infinitive

**178. 1.** The Suffix of the Present Infinitive Active is *-se*, which is preserved in *es-se* (also *velle*, *ferre*, from \**vel-se*, \**fer-se* ; 49, 11), but which became *-re* after a vowel (47). So *amā-re*, *tege-re*, etc. The Perfect Infinitive Active also has *-se*, which in this case is added to the Perfect Stem + *-is-*; e.g. *amāv-is-se*, *tēx-is-se*, etc.

2. The Present Infinitive Passive has *-rī* in all Conjugations except the Third, where the ending is simply *-ī*. So *amā-rī*, *monē-rī*, *audī-rī*, but *teg-ī*. With the addition of an *-er* (of doubtful origin), and the regular shortening of the long vowel before another vowel (21), arose the variant forms *laudārier*, *dicier*, etc. (164, 3).

3. The other Infinitives are periphrastic, the Perfect Passive Infinitive being formed from the Perfect Passive Participle with *esse*, the Future Active Infinitive from the Future Participle with *esse*, and the Future Passive Infinitive from the Supine with *īrī* (Pres. Infin. Pass. of *eō*, used impersonally like *ītur*, etc., but not occurring separately).

NOTE. Infinitives are, in origin, case-forms which have become associated with the verb-system.

### The Perfect Passive Participle

**179.** The Perfect Passive Participle is formed with the suffix *-to-*, and is declined like an Adjective of the First and Second Declensions. As regards the form of the stem to which the suffix is added, there is a certain relationship between the formation of this Participle and that of the Perfect Indicative, as follows :

1. *-ātus*, *-ītus*. Such are the forms for nearly all verbs which have Perfects in *-āvī*, *-īvī*, as :

*amātus* beside *amāvī*, from *amō*, *love*, *amāre*

*audītus* " *audīvī* " *audiō*, *hear*, *audīre*

a. Exceptions are: *pōtus* (but also *pōtātus*) beside *pōtāvī*, from *pōtō*, *drink*, *pōtāre*; *sepultus* beside *sepeliāvī*, from *sepeliō*, *bury*, *sepelire*.

2. **-ūtus**. This is the regular formation for Verbs in **-uō (-vō)**, as **minūtus** from **minuō**, *lessen*, *minuere*, *minui*.

a. So also **secūtus**, **locūtus**, from the two Deponents in **-quor**, *sequor*, *follow*, and *loquor*, *speak*. Compounds of **ruō**, *fall*, have **-rūtus**.

3. **-itus**. This is the usual formation for Verbs having Perfects of the **-uī** type, as :

<b>monitus</b>	beside	<b>monuī</b>	from	<b>moneō</b>	<i>advise</i> , <b>monēre</b>
<b>molitus</b>	"	<b>moluī</b>	"	<b>molō</b>	<i>grind</i> , <b>molere</b>
<b>domitus</b>	"	<b>domuī</b>	"	<b>domō</b>	<i>tame</i> , <b>domāre</b>

a. But there are a few exceptions, e.g. :

<b>doctus</b>	beside	<b>docuī</b>	from	<b>doceō</b>	<i>teach</i> , <b>docēre</b>
<b>cultus</b>	"	<b>coluī</b>	"	<b>colō</b>	<i>cultivate</i> , <b>colere</b>
<b>sectus</b>	"	<b>secuī</b>	"	<b>secō</b>	<i>cut</i> , <b>secāre</b>

4. **-tus (-sus)** added directly to the root-syllable. This formation is common to all Verbs with Perfects of other types than those already mentioned. The consonant changes follow the statements given in 49. Examples :

<b>flētus</b>	beside	<b>flē-vī</b>	from	<b>fleō</b>	<i>weep</i> , <b>flēre</b>
<b>scrīptus</b>	"	<b>scrīpsī</b>	"	<b>scribō</b>	<i>write</i> , <b>scribere</b>
<b>morsus</b>	"	<b>momordī</b>	"	<b>mordeō</b>	<i>bite</i> , <b>mordēre</b>
<b>factus</b>	"	<b>fēcī</b>	"	<b>faciō</b>	<i>make</i> , <b>facere</b>
<b>fissus</b>	"	<b>fīdī</b>	"	<b>findō</b>	<i>split</i> , <b>findere</b>

NOTE. The form in **-sus** is regular for all roots ending in dentals, as **fissus**, etc. (49, 5) ; but, after the analogy of such forms, **-sus** came to be used also in a number of verbs with roots not ending in a dental ; e.g. :

<b>lāpsus</b>	from	<b>lābor</b>	<i>slip</i>	<b>pulsus</b>	from	<b>pellō</b>	<i>drive</i>
<b>mulsus</b>	"	<b>mulgeō</b>	<i>milk</i>	<b>cēnsus</b>	"	<b>cēnseō</b>	<i>think</i>
<b>fixus</b>	"	<b>figō</b>	<i>fix</i>	<b>amplexus</b>	"	<b>amplector</b>	<i>embrace</i>

180. Vowel Changes. In general, barring the regular lengthening before **ns** and **nct** (18), the quantity of the vowel of the root-syllable is the same in the Perfect Participle as in the Present. But there are some examples of an inherited variation (46). Besides such cases as **satus** (**serō**, Perf. **sē-vī**), **strātus** (**sternō**, Perf. **strā-vī**), **mōtus** (**moveō**, Perf. **mōvī**), etc., there are also differences among verbs coming from roots ending in a mute, as follows :

1. A short vowel, as against a long vowel in the Present, is seen in **cessus** (cf. Perf. **cessī**), from **cēdō** ; **ustus** (cf. Perf. **ussī**), from **ūrō** ; and **dictus**, **ductus**, from **dicō**, **dūcō** (Perf. also **dixī**, **dūxī**).

2. A long vowel, as against a short vowel in the Present, is seen in *cāsūrus, divīsus, fūsus, ēsus, ēmptus, āctus, lēctus, rēctus, tēctus, flūsus* (Adj.), *strūctus, frāctus, pāctus, tāctus*.

NOTE. With the exception of *cāsūrus* and *tāctus* (with which compare *con-tāg-iō*), these long-vowel forms are accompanied by Perfects with a long vowel, as *fūdī, lēgī, rēxī*, etc. (though in some it is a different long vowel, e.g. *ēgī*, beside *āctus*, etc.). But it does not follow that a long-vowel Perfect is always accompanied by a long-vowel Participle. Cf. *miſi*, but *miſſus*; *ſēdī*, but *ſeſſum* (Supine); *fōdī*, but *fossus*; *rūpī*, but *ruptus*; *fēcī*, but *factus*, etc.

It is also true that the Participles mentioned come from roots ending in a voiced mute, namely, *d* or *g* (for *flūsus, strūctus*, see 49, 2). But among verbs from roots in a voiced mute there are also some that have the short vowel; e.g. *fossus* from *fodiō*; *ſeſſum* from *ſedeō*; *ſtrictus* from *ſtringō*.

**181. The Supine.** This is formed in the same way as the Perfect Passive Participle, but with the suffix *-tu-*, not *-to-*. It is, then, a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, of which the Accusative and Ablative only are in common use.

NOTE. The Dative form in *-tūi* is rare.

**182. The Future Active Participle.** This is formed with the suffix *-tūro-*, and is declined like an Adjective of the First and Second Declensions. As regards the form of the stem to which the suffix is added, it usually follows the formation of the Perfect Passive Participle; e.g. *amātūrus*, like *amātus*. But there are occasional variations, as:

<i>moritūrus</i>	beside	<i>mortuus</i> ,	from	<i>morior</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>morī</i>
<i>oritūrus</i>	“	<i>ortus</i>	“	<i>orior</i> , <i>arise</i> , <i>oriri</i>
<i>paritūrus</i>	“	<i>partus</i>	“	<i>pariō</i> , <i>bring forth</i> , <i>parere</i>
<i>ruitūrus</i>	“	<i>-rutus</i>	“	<i>ruō</i> , <i>tumble down</i> , <i>ruere</i>

**183. The Present Active Participle.** This is formed with the suffix *-nt-*, added to the Present Stem, and is declined as an adjective of one ending (117). The long vowels of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are regularly shortened (20, 1). The thematic vowel of the Third Conjugation appears as *e*, not *o(u)*; e.g. Gen. *legentis*, contrasted with *legunt*, from \**legont*, of the Present Indicative. But *iēns*, from *eō*, *go*, has the stem *eunt-* in all other forms; e.g. Gen. *euntis*.

**184. The Future Passive Participle and the Gerund.** These are formed with the suffix *-ndo-*, added to the Present Stem, which appears in the same form as in the Present Participle. The Future Passive Participle is declined as an Adjective of the First and Second Declensions. The Gerund is the Neuter Singular of this, lacking the Nominative and *Vocative*.

NOTE. The forms in *-undus, -iundus* of the Third and Fourth Conjugations (164, 2) represent what was probably the original type in these conjugations, the forms in *-endus, -iendus* having arisen under the influence of the Present Participles, which have *-ent-*. From *eō, go*, the Gerund is always *eundī*, corresponding to the Participle *euntis*.

### ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE VARIOUS TYPES OF VERBS

**185.** The Principal Parts of any given Verb are found most conveniently by reference to a single list arranged alphabetically, such as the Catalogue of Verbs given at the end of this grammar, or to a lexicon. The following list is merely illustrative, showing what different combinations of Present, Perfect, and Participial Stems occur, and which are the most common.

The types which are most common are given in *black letters*, the others in *Roman*. Where *small letters* are used, it is to be understood that *all* the examples of the type are given. A prefixed hyphen indicates that the form occurs only in compounds. For all details, such as variant forms, etc., see the *Catalogue of Verbs*.

#### 186.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION

##### 1. Perfect in *-āvi*.

<b>amō, love</b>	<b>amāre</b>	<b>amāvi</b>	<b>amātum</b>
<i>pōtō, drink</i>	<i>pōtare</i>	<i>pōtāvi</i>	<i>pōtum (pōtātum)</i>

##### 2. Perfect in *-uī*.

<b>domō, tame</b>	<b>domāre</b>	<b>domuī</b>	<b>domitum</b>
-------------------	---------------	--------------	----------------

Here also *crepō, cubō, fricō, micō, -plicō, secō, sonō, tonō, vetō*.<sup>1</sup>

##### 3. Perfect in *-ī* with lengthened vowel.

<b>iuvō, help</b>	<b>iuvāre</b>	<b>iūvi</b>	<b>iūtum</b>
<i>lavō, wash</i>	<i>lavāre</i>	<i>lāvi</i>	<i>lautum, lōtum</i>

##### 4. Reduplicated Perfect.

<b>stō, stand</b>	<b>stāre</b>	<b>steti</b>	<b>stātūrus</b>
-------------------	--------------	--------------	-----------------

##### 5. Deponents.

<b>mīror, wonder</b>	<b>mīrārī</b>	<b>mīrātus sum</b>
----------------------	---------------	--------------------

#### 187.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION

##### 1. Perfect in *-uī*.

<b>moneō, advise</b>	<b>monēre</b>	<b>monuī</b>	<b>monitum</b>
<b>doceō, teach</b>	<b>docēre</b>	<b>docuī</b>	<b>doctum</b>
<b>egeō, need</b>	<b>egēre</b>	<b>egui</b>	—

##### 2. Perfect in *-sī*.

<b>augeō, increase</b>	<b>augēre</b>	<b>auxī</b>	<b>auctum</b>
------------------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

<sup>1</sup> But Perf. Pass. Partic. *frictum, sectum*. In this and the similar statements below, it is not meant that the verbs cited as belonging to the type specified in the heading follow in every detail the example under which they stand.

## 3. Perfect in -vī.

fleō, <i>weep</i>	flēre	flēvī	flētum
-------------------	-------	-------	--------

Here also neō, -pleō, dēleō, aboleō, cieō.

## 4. Reduplicated Perfect.

mordeō, <i>bite</i>	mordēre	momordi	morsum
---------------------	---------	---------	--------

Here also pendeō, spondeō, tondeō.

## 5. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

caveō, <i>take care</i>	cavēre	cāvī	cautum
-------------------------	--------	------	--------

Here also faveō, toveō, moveō, paveō, voveō, sedeō, videō, of which all but the last two end in -veō.

## 6. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

ferveō, <i>boil</i>	fervēre	fervī	—
prandeō, <i>lunch</i>	prandēre	prandi	prānsum
strideō, <i>grate</i>	stridēre	stridi	—

## 7. Deponents.

vereor, <i>fear</i>	verērī	veritus sum
fateor, <i>confess</i>	fatērī	fassus sum

## 188.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## A. Simple Thematic Present.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

scribō, <i>write</i>	scribere	scripsi	scriptum
dicō, <i>say</i>	dicere	dixi	dictum
claudō, <i>shut</i>	claudere	clausi	clausum

With few exceptions, from roots ending in a mute.

## 2. Perfect in -uī.

molō, <i>grind</i>	molere	molui	molitum
--------------------	--------	-------	---------

With few exceptions, from roots ending in a liquid or nasal.

metō, <i>mow</i>	metere	messui	messum
------------------	--------	--------	--------

## 3. Reduplicated Perfect.

cadō, <i>fail</i>	cadere	cecidī	cāsūrus
-------------------	--------	--------	---------

Here also caedō, canō, currō, parcō, pendō, tendō.

## 4. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

vertō, <i>turn</i>	vertere	vertī	versum
--------------------	---------	-------	--------



## 5. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

agō, <i>drive</i>	agere	ēgī	actus
Here also edō, emō, legō.			

## 6. Perfect in -īvī.

terō, <i>rub</i>	terere	trīvī	trītum
petō, <i>seek</i>	petere	petīvī (-īi)	petītum
quaerō, <i>seek</i>	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesītum

## B. Present with reduplication.

sistō, <i>set</i>	sistere	stitti	statum
gignō, <i>beget</i>	gignere	genui	genitum
serō, <i>sow</i>	serere	sēvī	satum
bibō, <i>drink</i>	bibere	bibi	—

## C. Present with inserted nasal.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

iungō, <i>join</i>	iungere	iūnxī	iūnctum
So cingō, lingō, -mungō, nungit, pangō, plangō, stingūō, tinguō, unguō.			

figō, <i>mould</i>	figere	fīnxī	fictum
So mingō, pingō, stringō.			

## 2. Reduplicated Perfect.

tangō, <i>touch</i>	tangere	tetigī	tāctum
Here also pangō, pungō, tundō.			

## 3. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

fundō, <i>pour</i>	fundere	fūdī	fūsum
Here also rumpō, vincō, linquō, frangō.			

## 4. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

findō, <i>split</i>	findere	fidi	fissum
scindō, <i>rend</i>	scindere	scidi	scissum
pandō, <i>open</i>	pandere	pandi	passum

## 5. Perfect in -uī.

-cumbō, <i>recline</i>	-cumbere	-cubuī	-cubitum
------------------------	----------	--------	----------

## D. Present in -nō (and -līō from -līnō).

## 1. Perfect in -vī.

sternō, <i>strew</i>	sternere	strāvī	strātum
Here also spernō, cernō, linō, sinō.			

## 3. Perfect in -vī.

fleō, <i>weep</i>	flēre	flēvī	flētum
-------------------	-------	-------	--------

Here also neō, -pleō, dēleō, aboleō, cieō.

## 4. Reduplicated Perfect.

mordeō, <i>bite</i>	mordēre	momordi	morsum
---------------------	---------	---------	--------

Here also pendeō, spondeō, tondeō.

## 5. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

caveō, <i>take care</i>	cavēre	cāvī	cautum
-------------------------	--------	------	--------

Here also faveō, foveō, moveō, paveō, voveō, sedeō, videō, of which all but the last two end in -veō.

## 6. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

ferveō, <i>boil</i>	fervēre	fervī	—
prandeō, <i>lunch</i>	prandēre	prandi	prāsum
strīdeō, <i>grate</i>	stridēre	stridī	—

## 7. Deponents.

vereor, <i>fear</i>	verēri	veritus sum
fateor, <i>confess</i>	fatēri	fassus sum

## 188.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## A. Simple Thematic Present.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

scribō, <i>write</i>	scribere	scripsi	scriptum
dicō, <i>say</i>	dicere	dixi	dictum
claudō, <i>shut</i>	claudere	clausi	clausum

With few exceptions, from roots ending in a mute.

## 2. Perfect in -uī.

molō, <i>grind</i>	molere	molui	molitum
--------------------	--------	-------	---------

With few exceptions, from roots ending in a liquid or nasal.

metō, <i>mow</i>	metere	messui	messum
------------------	--------	--------	--------

## 3. Reduplicated Perfect.

cadō, <i>fall</i>	cadere	cecidī	cāsūrus
-------------------	--------	--------	---------

Here also caedō, canō, currō, parcō, pendō, tendō.

## 4. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

vertō, <i>turn</i>	vertere	vertī	versum
--------------------	---------	-------	--------

## 5. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

agō, <i>drive</i>	agere	ēgī	āctus
Here also edō, emō, legō.			

## 6. Perfect in -īvī.

terō, <i>rub</i>	terere	trīvī	trītum
petō, <i>seek</i>	petere	petīvī (-ii)	petitum
quaerō, <i>seek</i>	quaerere	quaesīvī	quaesitum

## B. Present with reduplication.

sistō, <i>set</i>	sistere	stiti	statum
gignō, <i>beget</i>	gignere	genui	genitum
serō, <i>sow</i>	serere	sēvi	satum
bibō, <i>drink</i>	bibere	bibi	_____

## C. Present with inserted nasal.

## 1. Perfect in -sī.

iungō, <i>join</i>	iungere	iūnxī	iūnctum
So cingō, lingō, -mungō, nunguit, pangō, plangō, stingūō, tinguō, unguō.			

fingō, <i>mould</i>	figere	finxī	fictum
So mingō, pingō, stringō.			

## 2. Reduplicated Perfect.

tangō, <i>touch</i>	tangere	tetigī	tāctum
Here also pangō, pungō, tundō.			

## 3. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

fundō, <i>pour</i>	fundere	fūdī	fūsum
Here also rumpō, vincō, linguō, frangō.			

## 4. Perfect in -ī without lengthening.

findō, <i>split</i>	findere	fidi	fissum
scindō, <i>rend</i>	scindere	scidi	scissum
pandō, <i>open</i>	pandere	pandi	passum

## 5. Perfect in -uī.

-cumbō, <i>recline</i>	-cumbere	-cubui	-cubitum
------------------------	----------	--------	----------

## D. Present in -nō (and -līnō from -līnō).

## 1. Perfect in -vī.

sternō, <i>strew</i>	sternere	strāvī	strātum
Here also spernō, cernō, linō, sinō.			

## 2. Reduplicated Perfect.

pellō, *drive*  
fallō, *deceive*  
tollō, *raise*

pellere  
fallere  
tollere

pepulī  
fefellī  
(sus-tulī)

pulsū  
(falsus, Adj.)  
(sub-lātum)

## 3. Perfect in -sī.

temnō, *scorn*

temnere

con-tempsī

con-temptum

## E. Present in -tō.

flectō, *bend*

flectere

flexī

flexum

So pectō, plectō, nectō (but Perf. nexuī commoner than nexī).

## F. Present in -scō.

## 1. Primary Verbs.

discō, *learn*

discere

didicī

—

crēscō, *grow*

crēscere

crēvī

crētum

nōscō, *get to know*

nōscere

nōvī

(nōtus, Adj.)

## 2. Inchoatives in -ēscō.

calēscō, *become hot*

calēscere

caluī<sup>1</sup>

—<sup>1</sup>

(from caleō)

durēscō, *become hard*

durēscere

duruī<sup>1</sup>

—<sup>1</sup>

(from durus)

algēscō, *catch cold*

algēscere

alsī<sup>1</sup>

—<sup>1</sup>

(from algeō)

## 3. Inchoatives in -iscō.

-dormiscō, *fall asleep*

-dormiscere

-dormivī<sup>1</sup>

—<sup>1</sup>

(from dormiō)

## 4. Inchoatives in -āscō.

vesperāscō, { *become*  
                  *evening* }

vesperāscere

vesperāvī<sup>1</sup>

—<sup>1</sup>

(from vesper)

## G. Present in -essō.

capessō, *seize*

capessere

capessivī

capessitum

## H. Present in -uō.

## 1. Perfect in -uī.

statuō, *set up*  
ruō, *fall*

statuere  
ruere

statuī  
ruī

statūtum  
ruitūrus

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect of Inchoatives which are derived from Verbs is the same as that of the simple verbs; in the case of Inchoatives derived from Nouns or Adjectives, it follows the type which is commonest in those derived from verbs, namely, -uī for Presents in -ēscō, -ivī for Presents in -iscō, -āvī for Presents in -āscō. The Participial Stem is nearly always lacking.

## 2. Perfect in -xī.

struō, *build*  
fluō, *flow*struere  
fluerestrūxī  
flūxīstrūctum  
(flūxus, Adj.)

## I. Present in -iō.

## 1. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

capiō, *take*

capere

cēpī

captum

Here also faciō, iaciō, fodiō, fugiō.

## 2. Perfect in -sī.

-spiciō, *see*  
-liciō, *allure*  
quatiō, *shake*-spicere  
-licere  
quaterere-spexī  
-lexī  
-cussī-spectum  
-lectum  
quassum

## 3. Perfect in -īvī.

cupiō, *wish*  
sapiō, *be wise*cupere  
saperecupīvī  
sapīvīcupitum  
—

## 4. Perfect in -uī.

rapiō, *seize*

rapere

rapuī

raptum

## 5. Reduplicated Perfect.

pariō, *bring forth*

parere

peperi

partum

## J. Deponents.

utor, *use*

ūtī

ūsus sum (cf. A)

fungor, *perform*

fungī

fūctus sum (cf. C)

amplector, *embrace*

amplectī

amplexus sum (cf. E)

vēscor, *feed*

vēsci

— (cf. F, 1)

oblīvīscor, *forget*

oblīvīsci

oblītus sum (cf. F, 3)

sequor, *follow*

sequī

secūtus sum (cf. H)

gradior, *step*

gradī

gressus sum (cf. I)

## 189.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## 1. Perfect in -īvī.

audiō, *hear*

audīre

audīvī

audītum

sepeliō, *bury*

sepelīre

sepelīvī

sepultum

## 2. Perfect in -sī.

vinciō, *bind*

vincīre

vīnxī

vīnctum

## 3. Perfect in -uī.

aperiō, *open*

aperīre

aperuī

apertum

operiō, *cover*

operīre

operuī

opertum

saliō, *leap*

salīre

saluī

—

## 4. Reduplicated Perfect (originally).

reperiō, *find*  
comperiō, *learn*reperiŕe  
comperiŕerepperi  
comperireptum  
comptum

## 5. Perfect in -ī with lengthened vowel.

veniō, *come*

veniŕe

vēni

ventum

## 6. Deponents.

partior, *divide*  
ōrdior, *begin*partīŕi  
ōrdīŕipartitus sum  
ōrsus sum

## IRREGULAR VERBS

For the character of Irregular Verbs in general, see 170.

## Compounds of Sum

190. *Adsum*, etc. Most compounds of *sum* follow the conjugation of the simple verb, which has been given above (153). So *ad-sum*, *ad-esse*, *ad-fui*, etc. The Present Participle, which is wanting in the simple verb, appears in the adjectival *absēns*, *absent*, from *ab-sum*, and *praesēns*, *present*, from *prae-sum*. In *prō-sum* the preposition appears as *prōd* before a vowel (24, 2); e.g. Pres. Indic. *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, *prōsumus*, *prōdestis*, *prōsunt*; Imperf. Indic. *prōderam*; Imperf. Subj. *prōdessem*; Fut. *prōderō*; Pres. Infin. *prōdesse*; Imperat. *prōdes*, *prōdestō*, etc.

191. *Possum*, *be able*. The Present System is based on a union of *potis* or *pote*, *able*, with *sum*; the Perfect System does not contain *sum*, but belongs to a Present \**poteō*, \**potēre*, of which only the participial form *potēns* is in use.

## Principal Parts

	possum	posse	potui
	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	possum		possim
	potes		possis
	potest		possit
	possumus		possimus
	potestis		possitis
	possunt		possint
Imperf.	poteram <sup>1</sup>		possem

<sup>1</sup> That is, *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc. Similarly elsewhere.

<i>Fut.</i>	poterō	
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī	potuerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	potueram	potuissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō	

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	potēns (Adj.)
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse	

*a.* Early Latin shows the uncompound forms *potis sum* or *pote sum*, *potis est* or *pote est*, etc.; also Infin. *potesse*.

### Volō, wish, and its Compounds

#### 192. Principal Parts

<b>volō, wish</b>	<b>velle</b>	<b>voluī</b>
<b>nōlō, be unwilling</b>	<b>nōlle</b>	<b>nōluī</b>
<b>mālō, prefer</b>	<b>mālle</b>	<b>māluī</b>

#### Present

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim	mālō	mālim
vīs	velis	nōn vīs	nōlis	māvīs	mālis
vult	velit	nōn vult	nōlit	māvult	mālit
volumus	velimus	nōlumus	nōlimus	mālumus	mālimus
vultis	velitis	nōn vultis	nōlitis	māvultis	mālitis
volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint	mālunt	mālint

#### Imperfect

volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem	mālēbam	māllem
---------	--------	---------	--------	---------	--------

#### Future

volam	nōlam	mālam
-------	-------	-------

#### Perfect

voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim	māluī	māluerim
-------	----------	-------	----------	-------	----------

#### Past Perfect

volueram	voluissem	nōlueram	nōluissem	mālueram	māluissem
----------	-----------	----------	-----------	----------	-----------

#### Future Perfect

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
---------	---------	---------

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlītō	nōlītōtē

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

*a.* For *vult*, *vultis*, the forms in use down to the Augustan period were *volt*, *voltis* (44, 1). For *sī vis* a contracted form *sīs* is common, and, in early Latin, *sultis* is used for *sī vultis* (*sultis* is from \**soltis*, which arose beside *sī vultis*, not by contraction, but after the analogy of the relation of *vis* to *sī vis*).

*b.* For *nōn vis* and *nōn vult*, early Latin has *nevis*, *nevult*.

*c.* For *mālō*, *mālim*, etc., the early forms are *māvolō*, *māvelim*, and these are compounds of *magis* and *volō* (*māvolō* probably from \**mag(i)s-volō*; cf. *sēvirī*, 49, 12).

## 193.

## Ferō, bear

## Principal Parts

ferō	ferre	tuli	lātum
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
<i>Present</i>			
ferō	feram	feror	ferar
fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris, -re
fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
<i>Imperfect</i>			
ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Future</i>			
feram		ferar	
<i>Perfect</i>			
tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
tulerō		lātus erō	



## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse	lātum iri

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i>	lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus

## GERUND

ferendī, etc.

a. The earlier form of the Perfect is *tetuli* (cf. also *rettuli*; see 43, 1); the root is the same as in *tollō*; *lātus* is for \**tlātus*, *tlā* being another form of the same root.

## 194.

## Eō, go

## Principal Parts

	eō	ire	ii	itum
	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	eō	īmus		eam eāmus
	īs	ītis		eās eātis
	it	eunt		eat eant
<i>Imperf.</i>	ībam			īrem
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō			
<i>Perf.</i>	ii	iimus		ierim
	īstī (iīstī)	īstis (iīstis)		
	iit, it	iērun, -ēre		
<i>Past Perf.</i>	ieram			īssem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ierō			

## IMPERATIVE

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	i	ite	<i>Pres.</i>	ire	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns, Gen. euntis, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	itō	itōte	<i>Perf.</i>	isse (iisse)	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus
	itō	euntō	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	eundum (est)

## GERUND

eundī, etc.

a. In the Perfect System, forms with *v*, as *ivī*, *iveram*, etc., are rare, except in late writers. Compounds often have *iistī*, *iistis*, etc., for *istī*, *istis*, etc.

b. The Passive is used only impersonally; e.g. *itur*, *ibātur*, *itum est*, etc. But compounds with transitive meaning have the full Passive; e.g. *adeor*, *adīris*, etc., from *adeō*, *approach*.

c. *Queō*, *can*, follows the conjugation of *eō*, except that the Perfect is *quīvī*.

### **FIŌ, become**

**195.** The verb *fiō*, *become*, serves as the Passive of *faciō*, *make*, in the Present System. The Perfect System and the Future Passive Participle are formed regularly from *faciō*.

### **Principal Parts**

**fiō<sup>1</sup>      fierī      factus sum**

#### **INDICATIVE**

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>fiō</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
	<i>fis</i>	—	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
	<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fiēbam</i>		<i>fierem</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fiam</i>			
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>factus sum</i>		<i>factus sim</i>	
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>factus eram</i>		<i>factus essem</i>	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>factus erō</i>			

#### **SUBJUNCTIVE**

#### **IMPERATIVE**

*Pres. fi      fite*

#### **INFINITIVE**

*Pres. fierī*  
*Perf. factus esse*  
*Fut. factum irī*

#### **PARTICIPLE**

*Perf. factus*  
*Fut. faciendus*

a. Prepositional compounds of *faciō* usually have the regular Passive; e.g. *cōnficiō*, Pass. *cōnfīcior*. But compounds of *fiō* also occur in some forms; e.g. *cōnfīt*, *happens*, *dēfīt*, *lacks*, *īnfīt*, *begins*. For the Passive of compounds like *benefaciō*, *calefaciō*, etc., *benefiō*, *calefiō*, etc., are used.

<sup>1</sup> The student should remember that the *i* is long throughout, except in the Third Singular and before short *e*.

### Present System of *Edō, eat*

196. The Present System of *edō* contains several forms in which the endings are added directly to the root in the form *ēd-*. The Perfect System is regular.

#### Principal Parts

	<i>edō</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>ēdi</i>	<i>ēsum</i>
	ACTIVE			
	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>edō</i>	<i>edimus</i>	<i>edim, edam</i>	<i>edīmus, edāmus</i>
	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ēstis</i>	<i>edis, edās</i>	<i>editis, edātis</i>
	<i>ēst</i>	<i>edunt</i>	<i>edit, edat</i>	<i>edint, edant</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>edēbam</i>		<i>ēssem</i>	
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>edam</i>			
	IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ēste</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>edēns</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>estō</i>	<i>estōte</i>	<i>ēsūrus esse</i>	<i>ēsūrus</i>
	<i>estō</i>	<i>edunto</i>		

#### PASSIVE

*Pres. Indic.* 3. *Sing.* *ēstur*  
*Imperf. Subj.* 3. *Sing.* *ēssetur*

a. The Subjunctive forms *edim*, etc., which go with the Indicative forms *ēs*, *ēst*, just as *sim*, etc., with *es*, *est* (175), were almost exclusively employed until well into the Augustan period. Horace has only *edim*, but Ovid *edam*.

b. Indicative forms *edis*, *edit*, *editis*, following the regular type, are not found until late times.

c. *Comedō* has a Perfect Passive Participle *comēstus* beside *comēsus*.

### Present System of *Do, give*

197. The Present System of *dō* differs from that of verbs of the First Conjugation only in having the *a* short everywhere except in the Second Singular of the Present Indicative and Present Imperative, and, of course, the Nom. Sing. of the Present Participle. The Perfect System is regular.

## Principal Parts

**dō dare dedi datum**

## ACTIVE

## INDICATIVE

*Pres.*    dō        damus  
          dās        datis  
          dat        dant

## SUBJUNCTIVE

dem        dēmus  
dēs        dētis  
det        dent

*Imperf.* dabam

darem

*Fut.*     dabō

## IMPERATIVE

*Pres.*    dā        date  
*Fut.*    datō     datōte  
          datō     dantō

## INFINITIVE

dare  
datūrus esse

## PARTICIPLE

dāns  
datūrus

## GERUND

dandī, etc.

## SUPINE

datum, datū

## PASSIVE

datur, damur, etc. ; dabar, dabor, darer, datus, dandus, etc.

*a.* Early Latin often uses a Present Subjunctive *duim, duīs, duit*, etc., and sometimes *duam, duās, duat*, etc. These are from a related root *du-*. Such Subjunctives are also formed from compounds like *crēdō, believe, perdō, lose*,<sup>1</sup> etc., which otherwise follow the Third Conjugation. So *crēduit, perduit*, etc.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

**Aiō, Inquam, Fārī**

**198.** 1. **Aiō**, *say, assent*, has the following forms. It is pronounced and often spelled **ai-iō** (29, 2, *a*).

*Pres. Indic.*    aiō, ais, ait, aiunt

*Imperat.*        ai

*Pres. Subj.*    aiās, aiat

*Partic.*        aiēns

*Imperf. Indic.* aiēbam, aiēbās, aiēbat, aiēbāmus, aiēbātis, aiēbant.

*a.* Early Latin has *Imperf. aiēbam*, etc., from \**aiēbam* like *lēnībam* (164, 4), but with *ai* pronounced as one syllable.

<sup>1</sup> These compounds are really from a root meaning "put," which was originally distinct from *dō, give*.

2. **Inquam**, *say* (*said I, said he*, etc.), has the following forms, of which only **inquam**, **inquis**, and **inquit** are in common use.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	inquam, inquis, inquit		
	inquimus, inquitis, inquitunt	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	inquii, inquīsti
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	inquēbat	<i>Imperat.</i>	inque, inquitō
<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	inquēs, inquiet		

3. **Fārī**, *speak*, has the following forms, of which some occur only in compounds.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	fātur, -fāmur	<i>Infin.</i>	fārī
<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	-fābar, -fābantur	<i>Pres. Act. Partic.</i>	fāns
<i>Fut.</i>	fābor, fābitur, -fābimur	<i>Perf. Pass. Partic.</i>	fātus
<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	fātus sum, etc.	<i>Fut. Pass. Partic.</i>	fandus
<i>Past Perf. Indic.</i>	fātus eram, etc.	<i>Gerund</i>	fandī, fandō
<i>Imperat.</i>	fāre	<i>Supine</i>	fātū

### Meminī, Ōdī, Coepī

199. 1. **Meminī**, *remember*, and **ōdī**, *hate*, are Present in meaning, but in form belong to the Perfect System. But **meminī** has an Imperative, and **ōdī** a Future Participle.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
meminī, <i>I remember</i>	ōdī, <i>I hate</i>	meminerim, ōderim
memineram, <i>I remembered</i>	ōderam, <i>I hated</i>	meminissem, ōdissem
meminerō, <i>I shall remember</i>	ōderō, <i>I shall hate</i>	
<i>Imperat.</i>	mementō, mementōte	
<i>Infin.</i>	meminisse, ōdisse	
<i>Fut. Partic.</i>	—, ōsūrus	

2. **Coepī**, *have begun, began*, is also confined mainly to the Perfect System, the Present being supplied by **incipiō**. When a Passive Infinitive follows, **coeptus sum** takes the place of **coepī**; e.g. *quae rēs agī coeptae sunt, which began to be done*.

a. Some forms of the Present System are found in early Latin, as **coepiō**, **coepere**.

200. Other isolated forms are :

1. Imperat. **salvē**, *hail*, **salvēte**, **salvētō**; Infin. **salvēre**.
2. Imperat. **(h)avē**, *hail*, **(h)avēte**, **(h)avētō**; Infin. **(h)avēre**.
3. Imperat. **cedo**, *give*, **cette**.
4. Pres. Indic. **quaesō**, *beg*, **quaesumus**.

## Impersonal Verbs

**201.** A special class of Defectives consists of verbs used only impersonally, the forms occurring being those of the Third Person Singular, the Infinitive, and sometimes the Gerund. So, for example, *licet, it is allowed*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	licet	liceat
<i>Imperf.</i>	licēbat	licēret
<i>Fut.</i>	licēbit	—
<i>Perf.</i>	licuit or licitum est	licuerit or licitum sit
<i>Past Perf.</i>	licuerat or licitum erat	licuisset or licitum esset
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	licuerit or licitum erit	—
	<i>Infin.</i> licēre, licuisse, licitūrum esse	

a. The following verbs are always, or usually, Impersonal :

<i>decet, it is fitting</i>	<i>piget, it grieves</i>
<i>libet, it is pleasing</i>	<i>pluit, it rains</i>
<i>licet, it is permitted</i>	<i>pudet, it shames</i>
<i>miseret, it excites pity</i>	<i>taedet, it disgusts</i>
<i>ninguit, it snows</i>	<i>tonat, it thunders</i>
<i>oportet, it is necessary</i>	

b. Many verbs are used impersonally only in certain senses ; e.g. *placet, it pleases, is decided, accidit, it happens*.

c. The Passive of intransitive verbs can be used only impersonally ; e.g. *itur, there is a going, some one goes, curritur, there is a running, some one runs*.

# PART III

## WORD-FORMATION

**202. INTRODUCTORY.** In the broadest sense, Word-Formation includes the subject of Inflection; but the term as used here refers to the formation of the word as a whole, i.e. the unit of which the inflectional forms are variations.

In the case of declensional forms the true unit is the Stem, to which the case-endings are added, so that Stem-Formation would be a more precise term to use in this connection. But in the case of Verb-forms, although the unit of any given tense is the stem, the verb as a whole includes several different stems (tense and mood-stems), and their formation is properly treated as a part of Inflection. As regards Verbs, then, there is left for treatment here only what is known as Secondary Verbal Derivation, that is, the formation of Verbs from Nouns, Adjectives, or other Verbs.

The derivation of most uninflected words is too obscure to be discussed except in connection with the related forms of other languages. The formation of Adverbs, however, which in part stands in close relation with case-formation, has been touched upon under Inflection.

Under Word-Formation, then, will be included :

- 1) Derivation of Nouns and Adjectives by means of suffixes.
- 2) Secondary Verbal Derivation.
- 3) Composition.

### DERIVATION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

**203.** The stems to which the case-endings are added are sometimes identical with the Root,<sup>1</sup> as in *dux*, Gen. *ducis*, of which *duc-* is both stem and root. But usually they are formed by means of Suffixes<sup>2</sup> added either to the root or to other stems.

---

<sup>1</sup> By a Root is meant the simplest element common to a group of related words and conceived as containing the essential meaning common to all. It is what is left after the separation of all recognizable formative parts, such as prefixes, suffixes, endings. But for any given language it is only a convenient grammatical abstraction, not necessarily an absolutely primitive element. For example, in English the root of *preacher* and *preaching* is *preach*, but this, when taken back to *præ-dicō*, is seen to be a compound. The roots assumed in Latin are not necessarily the same as those assumed for the parent speech, much less are they to be thought of as ultimate roots.

<sup>2</sup> Suffixes are doubtless independent words in origin, just as the English suffix *-ly* (man-ly, etc.) meaning *like, having the form of*, has arisen in historical times from a word meaning *body, form* (from which comes also *like*, i.e. *having the same form as*). But most suffixes had already, in a remote period, become mere formative elements, which it is useless to try to connect with any known independent words.

The ultimate origin of the inflectional endings is of the same nature, but in detail will always be obscure. There is, then, in the general principles of formation no hard and fast line between composition, derivation by suffixes, and inflection.

If the suffix is added to a Root or a Verb-Stem, the form is known as a Primary Derivative ; if the suffix is added to a Noun-Stem, Adjective-Stem, or Adverb, the form is known as a Secondary Derivative. Thus *vic-tor*, *victor*, in which the suffix is added to the root of *vincō*, *conquer*, is a Primary Derivative ; while *victōr-ia*, *victory*, in which the suffix is added to the Noun-Stem *victōr*-, is a Secondary Derivative. Many suffixes were used primarily for only one of these two kinds of derivation, but their use was often extended, the same suffix appearing in both Primary and Secondary Derivation.

**204.** Some suffixes are seen in words inherited from the parent speech, but are no longer used freely to form new words. They are called *non-productive* suffixes. Thus *-ti*-, seen in *par-ti*- (*pars*), *mor-ti*- (*mors*), etc., was once one of the commonest suffixes for the formation of feminine abstracts, but in Latin it is not productive, its place having been usurped by an extension of it, namely, *-tiōn*-, seen in *actiōn*- (*actiō*), etc.

**205.** Regarding the combination of the root or stem with the suffix, observe :

1. If the root or stem ends in a consonant and the suffix begins with one, the usual consonant changes take place ; e.g. *scrip-tor* from *scribō* ; *dēfēn-sor* from *dēfendō*, etc. See 49.

2. The final vowel of a stem is lost before the initial vowel of a suffix ; e.g. *aur-eus* from *auro*- (*aurum*).

3. The final short vowel of a stem suffers the regular weakening before a suffix beginning with a consonant ; e.g. *boni-tās* from *bono*- (*bonus*) ; *porcu-lus* from *porco*- (*porcus*). See 42, 5.

NOTE. The final vowel of a stem (or sometimes a consonant, or even a whole syllable belonging properly to the stem) often becomes so closely associated with the suffix that it is felt to be a part of it, and not a part of the stem. In this way a new suffix arises. So from words like *Rōmānus* (really *Rōmā-nus*) the suffix *-ānus* arises, and is then applied freely to stems not ending in *-ā*, as *urb-ānus* (*urbs*), *pāg-ānus* (*pāgus*), etc. Similarly from words like *porcu-lus* (see above, 3) arose words like *rēg-ulus* (*rēx*), etc. This process was constantly going on.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For this reason, the division between the stem and the suffix is often somewhat arbitrary. For example, one may divide *Rōmā-nus* in accordance with its origin, but, since *-ānus* has itself come to be a common suffix, one may properly divide *Rōm-ānus* like *urb-ānus*, etc. Indeed, in some cases, the only practicable division is one which includes in the suffix an element which a scientific analysis shows to have belonged properly to the stem ; for any other division would be not only confusing to the student, but contrary to the feeling which the Romans themselves had in using the suffix.



## NOUNS — PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

206. I. **-tor**<sup>1</sup> (Fem. **-trix**) forms nouns denoting the *agent* or *doer* of the action expressed by the verb. (cf. English **-er**).

<b>vic-tor</b> , <i>victor</i> , F. <b>vic-trix</b> ( <b>vincō</b> )	<b>scrip-tor</b> , <i>writer</i> ( <b>scribō</b> )
<b>can-tor</b> , <i>singer</i> ( <b>canō</b> )	<b>amā-tor</b> , <i>lover</i> ( <b>amō</b> )
<b>dēfēn-sor</b> (for * <b>dē-fend-tor</b> <sup>2</sup> ), <i>defender</i> ( <b>dēfendō</b> ).	

*a.* By an extension of use, this suffix is sometimes added to Nouns to form other Nouns, as **iāni-tor**, *janitor*, *one who keeps the door* (**iānua**), **gladi-ātor** (**-ātor** from **amā-tor**, etc.; see 205, note), *one who uses the sword* (**gladius**).

2. **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus** (Gen. **-tūs**), **-tūra**, and often **-ium**, form *abstracts* denoting the *action* expressed by the verb, or, by a frequent transfer from the abstract to a concrete meaning, the *result of the action*. Compare English *clipping*, the act of clipping, and a (newspaper) *clipping*, the thing clipped.

<b>leg-iō</b> , <i>legion</i> , originally <i>the selecting</i> , <i>levying</i> ( <b>legō</b> )	<b>scrip-tūra</b> , <i>writing</i> ( <b>scribō</b> )
<b>āc-tiō</b> , <i>the doing</i> , <i>act</i> ( <b>agō</b> )	<b>tōn-sūra</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>shearing</i> ( <b>tondeō</b> )
<b>mis-siō</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>dismissal</i> ( <b>mittō</b> )	<b>gaud-ium</b> , <i>joy</i> ( <b>gaudeō</b> )
<b>can-tus</b> , <i>singing</i> ( <b>canō</b> )	<b>stud-ium</b> , <i>zeal</i> ( <b>studeō</b> )
<b>adven-tus</b> , <i>arrival</i> ( <b>adveniō</b> )	<b>imper-ium</b> , <i>command</i> ( <b>imperō</b> )
<b>vī-sus</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>sight</i> ( <b>videō</b> )	<b>iūdic-ium</b> , <i>judgment</i> ( <b>iūdicō</b> )

*a.* Many words with the suffix **-tūra** are closely associated with agent-nouns in **-tor**, and denote *office*.

<b>quaes-tūra</b> , <i>quaestorship</i> ( <b>quaestor</b> )	<b>cēn-sūra</b> , <i>ensorship</i> ( <b>cēnsor</b> )
---	--

3. **-men** and **-mentum** from nouns denoting *action*, or, oftener, the *result of an action*.

<b>flū-men</b> , <i>stream</i> ( <b>fluō</b> )	<b>frag-men</b> , <i>frag-mentum</i> , <i>fragment</i>
<b>sē-men</b> , <i>seed</i> ( <b>serō</b> , Perf. <b>sē-vī</b> )	( <b>frangō</b> )
<b>ōrnā-mentum</b> , <i>ornament</i> ( <b>ōrnō</b> )	

*a.* So sometimes **-mōnium**, as **ali-mōnium**, *nourishment* (**alō**); but this suffix is more frequent in secondary derivatives, as **patri-mōnium**, *patrimony* (**pater**).

<sup>1</sup> Only some of the commoner and more productive suffixes will be mentioned. For the sake of convenience the form of the Nominative Singular is cited, rather than the stem.

<sup>2</sup> Before suffixes beginning with *t*, the same consonant-changes take place as in Perfect Passive Participles. Hence **-sor**, **-siō**, **-sus**, **-sūra**, beside **-tor**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, **-tūra**. See 49, 4.

4. **-or** (Gen. **-ōris**) forms abstracts which usually indicate a *physical* or *mental state*.

trem-or, <i>trembling</i> (tremō)	cand-or, <i>brightness</i> (candēō)
cal-or, <i>warmth</i> (caleō)	am-or, <i>love</i> (amō)

5. **-dō** and **-gō** form nouns of various meanings.

cupi-dō, <i>desire</i> (cupiō)	ori-gō, <i>source</i> (orior)
--------------------------------	-------------------------------

6. **-ulum**, **-bulum**, **-culum**, **-brum**, **-crum**, and **-trum** (also **-ula**, **-bula**, **-bra**, etc.), form nouns denoting *instrument* or *means*. The idea sometimes passes over into that of *place* or *result*.

vinc-ulum, <i>chain</i> (vincō)	dēlū-brum, <i>shrine</i> (dēluō)
pā-bulum, <i>fodder</i> (pāscō)	simulā-crum, <i>image</i> (simulō)
vehi-culum, <i>wagon</i> (vehō)	arā-trum, <i>plough</i> (arō)
fā-bula, <i>tale</i> (fārī)	dolā-bra, <i>axe</i> (dolō)

#### NOUNS — SECONDARY DERIVATIVES

207. 1. **-lus** (Fem. **-la**, Neut. **-lum**) and its various combinations **-ulus**, **-olus**, **-ellus**, **-illus**, **-ullus**, and **-culus**, form *Diminutives*. These usually follow the gender of the word from which they are derived.

porcu-lus, <i>little pig</i> (porcus)	rēg-ulus, <i>chieftain</i> (rēx)
filio-lus, <i>young son</i> (filius)	fili-ola, <i>young daughter</i> (filia)
agel-lus, <i>small field</i> (ager; see 49, 11)	tabel-la, <i>tablet</i> (tabula)
lapil-lus, <i>small stone</i> (lapis;	homul-lus, <i>manikin</i> (homō;
* lapid-lo-; see 49, 11)	* homon-lo-; see 49, 11)
ōs-culum, <i>little mouth, kiss</i> (ōs)	arti-culus, <i>joint</i> (artus)

2. **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tiēs**, **-tās**, **-tūdō**, **-tūs**, and sometimes **-ium** and **-tium** form abstracts denoting *quality* or *condition*.

miser-ia, <i>misery</i> (miser)	magni-tūdō, <i>greatness</i> (magnus)
audāc-ia, <i>boldness</i> (audāx)	cīvi-tās, <i>citizenship, state</i> (cīvis)
dūri-tia, <i>hardness</i> (dūri-tiēs, dūri-tās, hardness	vir-tūs, <i>manliness</i> (vir)
(dūrus)	sacerdōt-ium, <i>priesthood</i> (sacerdōs)
boni-tās, <i>goodness</i> (bonus)	servi-tium, <i>servitude</i> (servus)

3. -adēs, -iadēs, -idēs, -idēs (Masc.) and -ias, -is, -ēis (Fem.) occur in Greek Patronymics, denoting *descent*.

Aene-adēs, son of Aeneas

Thest-ias, daughter of Thestius

Anchis-iadēs, son of Anchises

Tyndar-is, daughter of Tyndarus

Tantal-idēs, descendant of Tantalus

Nēr-ēis, daughter of Nereus

Pēl-idēs, son of Peleus

4. -īna often forms nouns denoting an *art* or *craft*, or the place where a craft is practiced.

medic-īna, healing (medicus)

doctr-īna, teaching (doctor)

discipl-īna, instruction (discipulus)

tōnstr-īna, barber's shop (tōnsor)

a. This type originated in Adjectives used substantively, *ars* or *officina* being understood. But the suffix -īna is used in other ways, e.g. in simple Feminines like rēg-īna, *queen* (rēx) or in Primary Derivatives, as rap-īna, *robbery* (rapiō).

5. Other significant suffixes are : -ātus (Gen. -ātūs), denoting *office* or *official body*; -ārius, a *dealer* or *artisan*; -ārium, a *place where things are kept*; -īle, a *place for animals*.

cōsul-ātus, consulship (cōsul)

aer-ārium, treasury (aes)

argent-ārius, money changer (argentum)

ov-īle, sheepfold (ovis)

#### ADJECTIVES — PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

208. 1. -āx and sometimes -ulus form adjectives denoting *tendencies* or *qualities*.

aud-āx, bold (audeō)

bib-ulus, fond of drink (bibō)

ten-āx, tenacious (teneō)

crēd-ulus, credulous (crēdō)

vor-āx, voracious (vorō)

2. -ilis and -ibilis form adjectives denoting *passive qualities*.

frag-ilis, breakable, frail (frangō)

mō-bilis, movable (moveō)

fac-ilis, easy (faciō)

amā-bilis, lovable (amō)

bib-ilis, drinkable (bibō)

crēdi-bilis, worthy of belief (crēdō)

3. -bundus forms adjectives having about the force of a Present Participle, but is more intensive; -cundus denotes a *characteristic*.

verberā-bundus, flogging (verberō)

irā-cundus, wrathful (irāscor)

mori-bundus, dying (moriōr)

fā-cundus, eloquent (fārī)

## ADJECTIVES — SECONDARY DERIVATIVES

209. I. -eus, -āceus, and sometimes -nus, -neus, -inus, form adjectives of *material*.

aur-eus, <i>golden</i> (aurum)	acer-nus, <i>of maple</i> (acer)
ferr-eus, <i>of iron</i> (ferrum)	ebur-neus, <i>of ivory</i> (ebur)
ros-āceus, <i>of roses</i> (rosa)	fāg-inus, <i>of beech</i> (fāgus)

2. -ōsus and -lentus form adjectives denoting *fullness*.

vīn-ōsus, <i>drunken</i> (vīnum)	vīno-lentus, <i>drunken</i> (vīnum)
verbō-sus, <i>verbose</i> (verbum)	opu-lentus, <i>wealthy</i> (* ops, opis)
bellic-ōsus, <i>warlike</i> (bellicus)	

3. -tus, identical with the suffix of the Perfect Passive Participle, is also added to Noun-Stems, forming adjectives meaning *provided with* (cf. English -ed).

barbā-tus, <i>bearded</i> (barba)	aurī-tus, <i>(long-)eared</i> (auris)
dent-ātus, <i>toothed</i> (dēns)	cornū-tus, <i>horned</i> (cornū)
onus-tus, <i>laden</i> (onus)	

4. -idus forms adjectives denoting a *condition*.

lūc-idus, <i>light</i> (lūx)	fūm-idus, <i>smoky</i> (fūmus)
------------------------------	--------------------------------

a. This suffix, though originating in Secondary Derivatives (properly compounds; e.g. lūci-dus, *light-giving*; cf. dō, *give*, or -dō, *put*), is also used to form Primary Derivatives.

cup-idus, <i>eager</i> (cupiō)	langu-idus, <i>weak</i> (languē)
--------------------------------	----------------------------------

5. -ernus, -ternus, -urnus, -turnus, and -tinus, form adjectives denoting *time*, mostly from Adverbs.

hodi-ernus, <i>of to-day</i> (hodiē)	diu-turnus, <sup>1</sup> <i>long-continued</i> (diū)
hes-ternus, <i>of yesterday</i> (herī)	diū-tinus, <i>long-continued</i> (diū)
di-urnus, <i>daily</i> (diēs)	crās-tinus, <i>of to-morrow</i> (crās)
annō-tinus, <i>last year's</i> (annus)	

210. I. -ius, -cus, -icus, -icius, -īcius, -nus, -ānus, -īnus, -ālis, -īlis, -ēlis, -āris, -ārius, form adjectives meaning *belonging to, connected with, derived from*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> In spite of the connection with diū, the u in the second syllable is short in all the passages thus far noted in poetry.

<b>patr-ius, paternal (pater)</b>	<b>urb-ānus, of the city (urbs)</b>
<b>senātor-ius, senatorial (senātor)</b>	<b>can-inus, canine (canis)</b>
<b>hosti-cus, hostile (hostis)</b>	<b>rēg-ālis, royal (rēx)</b>
<b>bell-icus, of war (bellum)</b>	<b>civ-īlis, of a citizen (civis)</b>
<b>patr-icius, patrician (pater)</b>	<b>crūd-ēlis, cruel (crūdus)</b>
<b>nov-īcius, new (novus)</b>	<b>popul-āris, of the people (populus)</b>
<b>pater-nus, paternal (pater)</b>	<b>legiōn-ārius, of a legion (legiō)</b>

2. **-ivus**, seen in **aest-ivus, of summer (aestus)**, was often added to the stem of the Perfect Passive Participle, giving rise to a suffix **-tīvus**.

**cap-tivus, captive (capiō, captus)**      **fugi-tivus, fugitive (fugiō)**

a. Observe also the names for the Cases and Moods; e.g. **nōminā-tivus, gene-tivus, indicā-tivus**, etc. (used substantively, **cāsus** or **modus** being understood).

3. **-ēnsis** and **-iēnsis** form adjectives from words denoting place, mostly names of towns.<sup>1</sup>

**castr-ēnsis, of the camp (castra)**      **Carthāgin-iēnsis, of Carthage**  
**Cann-ēnsis, of Cannae**

4. Other suffixes frequently added to names of towns and countries are **-ās, -ānus, -inus, and -icus**.<sup>1</sup>

**Arpin-ās, of Arpinum**      **Lat-inus, of Latium, Latin**  
**Rōm-ānus, of Rome, Roman**      **Ital-icus, of Italy, Italian**

a. **-ās** is used only with names of Italian towns. Adjectives denoting *nationality* usually, though not always, end in **-icus**; e.g. **Gall-icus, Gallic, Germān-icus, Germanic**.

5. Adjectives derived from names of persons commonly end in **-ānus** or **-iānus**.

**Sull-ānus, of Sulla**      **Cicerōn-iānus, of Cicero**

## SECONDARY VERBAL DERIVATIVES

### VERBS DERIVED FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

#### (DENOMINATIVES)

211. The great mass of Denominatives follow the First Conjugation, but there are also many of the Fourth, some of the Second, and a few (from *u*-Stems) of the Third.

<sup>1</sup> Many such adjectives are also used substantively, especially in the Plural; e.g. **Athēniēnsēs, Athenians, Arpinātēs, inhabitants of Arpinum, Rōmānī, Romans**, etc.

## 1. First Conjugation.

cūrō, <i>care for</i> (cūra)	sinuō, <i>bend</i> (sinus, Gen. sinūs)
dōnō, <i>give</i> (dōnum)	honōrō, <i>honor</i> (honor, Gen. honōris)
levō, <i>lift</i> (levis)	laudō, <i>praise</i> (laus, Gen. laudis)

## 2. Fourth Conjugation.

finiō, <i>end</i> (finis)	custōdiō, <i>guard</i> (custōs, Gen. custōdis)
partiō, <i>divide</i> (pars, Gen. partis)	serviō, <i>be a slave</i> (servus)

## 3. Second Conjugation.

albeō, <i>be white</i> (albus)	flōreō, <i>blossom</i> (flōs, Gen. flōris)
--------------------------------	--

a. These are mostly intransitive, denoting a condition. Contrast clāreō, *be bright* (clārus), with clārō, *make bright*, clārāre.

## 4. Third Conjugation.

statuō, <i>set up</i> (status)	tribuō, <i>assign</i> (tribus)
--------------------------------	--------------------------------

NOTE. Denominatives were formed from Noun-Stems by means of a suffix -yo- and -ye-. The y disappeared between vowels, and, in most forms, the vowels then contracted. Thus cūrō from \*cūrā-yō; albeō from \*albe-yō. See notes to 166, 167, 169.

The type in -ō, -āre originated in ā-Stems, that in -iō in i-Stems and Consonant-Stems, that in -eō in o-Stems (but with the e-form of the stem, which appears in the Vocative). But the different formations came finally to be used without reference to the form of the Noun-Stem, and especially the type -ō, -āre was used to form Denominatives from all kinds of stems.

## VERBS DERIVED FROM OTHER VERBS

212. I. *Frequentatives*. These end in -tō (-sō), -itō, and sometimes -titō, and denote *repeated*, or sometimes merely *intensive*, action.

dictō, <i>dictate</i> (dicō)	habitō, <i> dwell</i> (habeō)
versō, <i>keep turning</i> (vertō)	rogitō, <i>keep asking</i> (rogō)
dictitō, <i>keep saying, declare</i> (dicō)	

NOTE. The Frequentatives are Denominative in origin, being formed from the stem of the Perfect Passive Participle. But, owing to their distinctive meaning, they came to be contrasted with the simple Verbs and were felt to be derived from them. In general they follow the formation of the Participle, but many are formed directly from the Present Stem, as agitō, *move violently* (agō, Partic. āctus). The Frequentatives from verbs of the First Conjugation always end in -itō, not -ātō, as rogitō. The forms in -titō are double Frequentatives, being based on the forms in -tō.

2. *Inchoatives*. These end in -escō, -āscō, -iscō, and denote *beginning or becoming*.

calēscō, <i>become hot</i> (caleō)	obdormiscō, <i>fall asleep</i> (dormiō)
------------------------------------	---

a. Some Inchoatives are derived from Nouns or Adjectives, and so, properly, form a special class of Denominatives.

*dūrēscō, become hard (dūrus)    vesperāscō, become evening (vesper)*

NOTE. This formation has its origin in the Primary Verbs in -*scō*, as *crē-scō*, *nō-scō*, etc. Gaining the specific meaning of *beginning to* or *becoming* (through verbs like *crēscō*, *grow*, that is, *begin to be large*), its use was then extended so as to form Verbs from other Verbs, and also to form Denominatives.

3. *Desideratives*. These end in -*turiō* (-*suriō*), and denote *desire*; e.g. *par-turiō, desire to bring forth, be in travail (pariō)*; *ēsuriō*,<sup>1</sup> *desire to eat, be hungry (edō)*.

4. *Intensives* (also called *Meditatives*). These end in -*essō* and denote earnest action; e.g. *petessō, seek eagerly (petō)*; *capessō, seize eagerly (capio)*.

## COMPOSITION

213. Composition is the union of two or more words in one.

### NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

#### Form

214. According to the *form* of the first part, compounds may be classified as follows:

1. The first part is the Stem of a Noun or Adjective. The final vowel of the stem appears as *i* before consonants, and is dropped before vowels (rarely before consonants). Consonant-Stems usually take the form of *i*-Stems.

<i>armi-ger, armor-bearer (arma)</i>	<i>ūn-oculus, one-eyed (ūnus)</i>
<i>agri-cola, farmer (ager)</i>	<i>prīn-ceps, chief (prīmus)</i>
<i>tubi-cen, trumpeter (tuba)</i>	<i>frātri-cida, fratricide (frāter)</i>
<i>parti-ceps, sharing</i>	<i>bi-dēns, two-pronged (bi-, found</i>
<i>corni-ger, horned (cornū)</i>	<i>only in compounds)</i>

NOTE. The final *i* of the first part may represent original *i*, or, by the regular weakening (42, 5, 6), *o* or *u*; and, by the analogy of such cases, it is also used for *ā*.

2. The first part is an Adverbial Prefix. Such prefixes, with the exception of the negatives *in-* and *vē-*, are also common in the composition of Verbs, and most of them occur separately as Prepositions. See 218, 1.

<i>in-grātus, unpleasant</i>	<i>per-facilis, very easy</i>
<i>vē-cors, senseless</i>	<i>sub-rūsticus, somewhat rustic</i>

<sup>1</sup> From \* -*ēd*-*turiō*. See 49, 5.

NOTE. Some compounds outwardly resembling those mentioned are of essentially different origin, being derived from phrases consisting of a Preposition with its proper case. So *prō-cōsul*, *one who is in the place of a consul* (*prō cōsule*); *ē-gregius*, *distinguished, out of the common run* (*ē grege*); *ob-vius*, *in the way* (*ob-viam*).

3. The first part is a Case-form or Adverb. Since this is merely the union of forms which can be used separately, it is sometimes called Improper Composition, or Juxtaposition.

<i>senātūs-cōsultum</i> , <i>decree of the senate</i>	<i>aquae-ductus</i> , <i>aqueduct</i>
	<i>bene-volēns</i> , <i>well-wishing</i>

215. 1. The *second* part of a compound is always the Stem of a Noun or Adjective. But sometimes it is one which appears only in composition; e.g. *-fer*, *-ger*, *-ficus*, *-ceps*, *-cen*, *-cida* (related to the verbs *ferō*, *gerō*, *faciō*, *capiō*, *canō*, *caedō*), *-duum* (*bī-duum*, *two days*; related to *diēs*), etc.

2. Adjective compounds, of which the second part represents a noun of the First or Second Declension, are commonly declined like *bonus* (110), but many of them are made into i-Stems, e.g. *bī-fōrmis*, *double* (*fōrma*).<sup>1</sup> In some compounds a suffix is added, especially *-ius*, *-ium*; e.g. *in-iūrius*, *unlawful* (*iūs*); *bī-ennium*, *period of two years* (*annus*). For the vowel-weakening in the second part of compounds, see 42.

### Meaning

216. According to their *meaning*, compounds may again be classified as follows:

1. *Copulative Compounds*. The parts are coördinate, as in *suove-aurilia*, *sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and a bull*, *quattuor-decim*, *fourteen*.

2. *Descriptive Compounds*. The first part stands to the second in the relation of an adjectival or an adverbial modifier, as in *lāti-fundium*, *large estate*, *per-facilis*, *very easy*.

3. *Dependent Compounds*. The first part stands in a logical (not formal) case-relation to the second, as in *armi-ger*, *armor-bearer*.

4. *Possessive Compounds*. Compounds of which the second part is a Noun may become Adjectival with the force of *possessed of*. So *ūn-oculus* means not *one eye*, but *possessed of one eye*, *one-eyed*.

<sup>1</sup> Similarly *in-ermis* (*arma*), *bī-iugis* (*iugum*), but also *in-ermus*, *bī-iugus*. Most adjectives of varying declension are compounds. But cf. also *hilarus* beside *hilaris*, etc.



## ADVERBS

217. 1. Most Adverbs that are apparently compounds are simply Adverbs formed from Nouns or Adjectives already compounded, as *per-facile*, *very easily*, from *perfacilis*, *very easy*. But :

2. Some of the compounds with the prefixes *in-*, *not*, and *per*, *very*, are formed directly from the simple Adverbs ; e.g. *in-grātilis*, *without thanks*, from *grātilis*, *with thanks* ; *in-iussū*, *without command*, from *iussū*, *by command* ; *per-saepe*, *very often*, from *saepe*, *often*.

3. The juxtaposition (214, 3) of Prepositions and Adverbs of Time or Place is frequent ; e.g. *ab-hinc*, *from this time*, *since*, *dē-super*, *from above*, *ad-hūc*, *hitherto*, *inter-ibi*, *meanwhile*.

4. The juxtaposition of a Preposition and its case gives rise to some compound Adverbs ; e.g. *ob-viam*, *in the way*, *ad-modum*, *to a degree*, *very*, *dē-nuō*, *anew* (from \**dē-novō* ; see 42, 4), *dē-subitō*, *of a sudden*, *suddenly*.

## VERBS

218. 1. The only genuine and widely extended type of Verbal Composition is that in which the first part is an Adverbial Prefix, as *ab-eō*, *go away*, *dir-imō*, *take apart*.

These prefixes, many of which are also used separately as Prepositions or Adverbs, are as follows (for change in form, see 51) :

a) Also used separately.

<i>ā-</i> , <i>ab-</i> , <i>abs-</i> , <i>away</i>	<i>in-</i> , <i>in</i>	<i>prō-</i> , <i>pro-</i> , <i>prōd-</i> , <i>forth</i>
<i>ad-</i> , <i>to</i>	<i>inter-</i> , <i>between</i>	<i>retrō-</i> , <i>back</i>
<i>ante-</i> , <i>before</i>	<i>ob-</i> , <i>obs-</i> , <i>before</i> , <i>against</i>	<i>sub-</i> , <i>subs-</i> , <i>under</i>
<i>circum-</i> , <i>about</i>	<i>per-</i> , <i>through</i> , <i>thoroughly</i>	<i>subter-</i> , <i>beneath</i>
<i>con-</i> , <i>with</i> ( <i>cum</i> )	<i>post-</i> , <i>after</i>	<i>super-</i> , <i>over</i>
<i>dē-</i> , <i>away</i>	<i>prae-</i> , <i>before</i>	<i>suprā-</i> , <i>over</i>
<i>ē-</i> , <i>ex-</i> , <i>out</i>	<i>praeter-</i> , <i>beside</i>	<i>trāns-</i> , <i>across</i>

b) Not used separately.

<i>amb-</i> , <i>am-</i> , <i>about</i>	<i>intrō-</i> , <i>within</i>	<i>re-</i> , <i>red-</i> , <i>back</i>
<i>an-</i> , <i>in</i> (rare)	<i>por-</i> , <i>forth</i>	<i>se-</i> , <i>sēd-</i> , <i>apart</i>
<i>dis-</i> , <i>apart</i>		

2. Juxtaposition is seen in forms like *bene-dīcō*, *bless*, *manūmittō*, *set free*, *animadvertō*, *attend to*, from *animus advertō*.

3. Forms like *cale-faciō*, *make hot*, *candē-faciō*, *make white*, originated in simple juxtaposition (*cale faciō* written separately in early Latin), but came to be felt as derived from Verbs in *-eō*.

4. Forms like *aedi-ficō*, *build*, are apparently compounds of a Noun-Stem with a Verb, but this type really originated in Denominatives from Nouns already compounded ; e.g. *aedificō*, from \**aedi-fex* or \**aedi-ficus*, *house builder*.

## PART IV

### SYNTAX

#### A. INTRODUCTORY

219. Syntax treats of the use of words in the expression of thought or feeling.

220. A Sentence is a complete expression of thought or feeling through the use of words.

221. The Latin Sentence is made up of some or all of the following *kinds* of words, called **Parts of Speech** :

The Noun, which expresses a person or thing.

The Adjective, which expresses a quality, condition, etc.

The Pronoun, which stands instead of a Noun.

The Verb, which expresses an act or state.

The Adverb, which expresses manner, degree, etc.

The Preposition, which expresses relations between words.

The Conjunction, which expresses connection.

The Interjection, which expresses feeling, etc.

a. Nouns are called **Substantives** ; e.g. *arbor*, *tree* ; *mŭrus*, *wall* ; *amātor*, *lover* ; *vīta*, *life*.

b. Pronouns, Adjectives, and Participles, when *taking the place of Nouns*, are, like Nouns, called **Substantives** ; e.g. *hic*, *this man* ; *boni*, *the good* ; *amāns*, *a lover*.

c. The Verb-forms called **Participles** often express *condition, quality*, etc., and so have much in common with Adjectives. Compare, e.g., *fatigātus*, *wearied*, with *fessus*, *weary* ; and *vir laudandus*, *a man to be praised*, with *vir laudābilis*, *a praiseworthy man*. In what follows, statements that are true both of the Adjective and of the Participle will be given in the treatment of the former.

d. The last four **Parts of Speech**, the Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection, are often called **Particles**.

e. *Latin has no article.*

## SIMPLE, COMPOUND, AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

222. Generally, one or more Verbs are either expressed or clearly understood in every sentence.

a. Certain verbs which can easily be supplied are often omitted. Thus *dicō, loquor, agō*, and the auxiliary *est* (*sunt*, etc.).

*sic Venus, thus* (spoke) *Venus*; Aen. 1, 325.

b. Occasionally a sentence does not admit of a verb.

*ō tempora, ō mōrēs!* *O the times, O the ways of men!* Cat. 1, 1, 2.

*ō fortunātam rem publicam!* *O happy Commonwealth!* Cat. 2, 4, 7.

223. 1. A **Simple Sentence** is one that contains not more than a single Finite Verb.

*dicīt liberius, he speaks with more freedom*; B. G. 1, 18, 2.

2. A **Compound Sentence** is one that consists of two or more Simple Sentences *of the same rank*, called **Coördinate**.

D. *Brūtum classī praeſcit, et in Venetōs proficiſcī iubet, he appoints Decimus Brutus to the command of the fleet, and orders him to proceed to the country of the Veneti*; B. G. 3, 11, 5. (*Praeficit* and *iubet* are Coördinate.)

3. A **Complex Sentence** is one in which, in addition to one or more simple sentences, there are one or more sentences *of inferior rank*, called **Subordinate** or **Dependent**.

*quod iussī sunt, faciunt, they do what they have been told (to do)*;

B. G. 3, 6, 1. (*Quod iussī sunt* is a *Dependent* Sentence, while *faciunt* is the *Main*, or *Principal*, Sentence.)

## CLAUSES AND PHRASES

224. In a Complex Sentence,

1. The Independent Sentences are called **Main**, or **Principal, Sentences**; while the Dependent Sentences are generally distinguished by being called **Dependent**, or **Subordinate, Clauses**. Thus, in *quod iussī sunt, faciunt, they do what they have been told (to do)*, *faciunt* is called a **Principal Sentence**, and *quod iussī sunt* a **Dependent Clause**.

2. But, for convenience, the word **Clause** is sometimes used of the main sentence also, so that one speaks of **Principal Clauses** as well as of **Dependent Clauses**.

*a.* The word Clause is confined to members of a sentence that contain a Finite Verb (146) or an Infinitive (cf. 238, *a*).

*b.* A Phrase is a group of associated words not containing a Finite Verb or an Infinitive.

*hominēs magnae virtūtis*, *men of great courage*; B. G. 2, 15, 5. (*Magnae virtūtis* is a Phrase.)

*ūnā ex parte*, *on one side*; B. G. 1, 2, 3.

225. Clauses, like sentences, may be Coördinate; *or* one may be Dependent upon another.

*huic mandat Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat*, (Caesar) *instructs him to go to the Belgians and hold them to their allegiance*; B. G. 3, 11, 2. (*Adeat* and *contineat* are Coördinate.)

*equitātum praemittit, quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant*, *he sends the cavalry ahead, to find out in what direction the enemy are moving*; B. G. 1, 15, 1. (*Quās . . . faciant* is Subordinate to *quī videant*, — which itself is Subordinate to *praemittit*.)

#### DEPENDENCE AND SEMI-DEPENDENCE (OR PARATAXIS)

226. The term Dependence, or Subordination, as used in grammar, means *dependence both in thought and in form*.

Thus in *quod advēnit, gaudeō*, *I am glad because he has come*, not only the obvious thought, but the form of the clause, show the dependence of *advēnit*, *he has come*, upon *gaudeō*, *I am glad*.

227. Semi-Dependence, or Parataxis,<sup>1</sup> is *dependence in thought, with independence in form*.

Thus in *advēnit: gaudeō*, *he has come: I am glad*, *advēnit* is really dependent upon *gaudeō* (*I am glad because he has come*), though there is nothing in the form to show this.

*a.* Almost all dependent clauses have passed through the middle stage of Parataxis. Thus *eās*<sup>2</sup> *necesse est*, *it is necessary that you go*, must have come down from a paratactic stage, *eās: necesse est, go: it is necessary*.

*b.* In passing into the dependent form a sentence often shifts its meaning somewhat, to fit the closer relationship in which it stands in the new form. Thus the (original) paratactic combination *mē ēripiam: nē causam dicam* must have meant *I will save myself: I will not plead my cause*; while *mē ēripiam nē causam dicam* means *I will save myself from pleading my cause*. Cf. *nē causam diceret sē ēripuit*, B. G. 1, 4, 2.

<sup>1</sup> A Greek word meaning *setting side by side*.

<sup>2</sup> *Eās* is dependent, not paratactic. Cf. 501, 3, *a*, 2).

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES AND CLAUSES

228. Every Sentence or Clause *declares, assumes, inquires, or exclaims*.

1. It declares (tells) something (*Declarative* Sentence or Clause).

*veniat, let him come; utinam veniat, I wish he would come; venit, he is coming.*

NOTE. To declare is to *make known*. Thus in the above, the various verbs declare respectively the speaker's *will*, his *desire*, and his *perception of a fact*. A *Dependent Clause* may likewise declare. Thus in *dīc ut veniat, tell him that he is to come, veniat declares the speaker's will (he is to come)*.

2. It assumes something as a condition for something else (*Conditional, or Assumptive*,<sup>1</sup> Sentence or Clause).

*sī venit, if he is coming; sī veniat, if he should come; quisquis vēnerit, occidētur, whoever comes will be killed (i.e. IF any man comes, he will be killed).*

3. It inquires or exclaims about something (*Interrogative or Exclamatory* Sentence or Clause).

*venit? is he coming? fortis est? is he brave? quam fortis est! how brave he is!*

a. Interrogative and Exclamatory sentences, if the latter contain a verb, have the same form in Latin. It is therefore best to treat them together.

b. All true Dependent Clauses introduced by a Relative (*quī, etc.*), or by any Conjunction implying a Relative idea (*quōtiēns, cum, dum, antequam, postquam, etc.*), are necessarily confined to the first two uses, i.e. they are either *Declarative* or *Conditional*; for it is impossible to inquire or exclaim in a really dependent Relative Clause.

## SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

229. The **Subject** is that about which something is declared, assumed, or asked. That which is declared, assumed, or asked, is called the **Predicate**.<sup>2</sup>

*Caesar respondit, Caesar answered; B. G. I, 14, 1. (Caesar is the Subject, and respondit the Predicate.)*

a. The Predicate is often omitted, especially if formed from the verb *sum, quot hominēs, tot sententiae, as many men, so many minds; Ph. 454.*

<sup>1</sup> The word "conditional" is convenient, as being in common use. The word *assumptive*, as corresponding to the verb *assume*, would be more exact. Cf. 578.

<sup>2</sup> The word Predicate is derived from *praedicō, predicate, assert*.

### PREDICATE NOUN, ADJECTIVE, OR PRONOUN

**230.** A Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun forming a part of that which is predicated is called a **Predicate Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun.**

*hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, of all these, the Belgians are the bravest;* B. G. 1, 1, 3. (The idea "bravest" is as much predicated as is the idea "are.")

a. The verb *sum*, when thus joining a predicate word with its subject, is called a **Copula** (i.e. "joiner").

b. Participles employed as Adjectives (248) are often used predicatively, true Participles very rarely.

### FORMS OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

**231.** Questions are of two main kinds :

1. Questions of the whole sentence ("yes" or "no" questions). Of these there are four possible forms :

a) Without introductory word, as in English :

*vīs pugnāre?* *do you want to fight?* Rud. 1011.

*nōn sentīs?* *do you not see?* Cat. 1, 1, 1.

b) With the neutral enclitic *-ne* (implying nothing about the answer).

The enclitic is attached to the emphatic word :

*voltisne eāmus visere?* *do you wish that we should go and call upon her?* Ph. 102.

NOTE 1. The neutral enclitic *-ne* is occasionally used where the context makes it clear what the answer *must be*. Thus *vidētisne ut apud Homērum?* Sen. 10, 31 (answer "yes"); *potestne tibi huius caeli spiritus esse iucundus?* Cat. 1, 6, 15 (answer "no").

NOTE 2. In poetry, *-ne* is sometimes attached to interrogative words. Thus *quōne malō?* *by what curse?* Sat. 2, 3, 295.

NOTE 3. *-ne* sometimes loses its *e*, especially in early Latin. Thus *ain?* (for *aisne?* for loss of *s*, see 49, 12), *audin?* (for *audisne?*), *itan?* (for *itane?*), *satin?* (for *satisne?*), *scin?* (for *scisne?*), *viden?* (for *vidēsne?*; for the quantity, see 28, note), *vin?* (for *visne?*), *utin* (for *uti-ne*, from *uti*, a by-form of *uti*, *ut*, as in *uti-nam*, *uti-que*). Similarly *Pyrrhin* (= *Pyrrhine*), Aen. 3, 319.

c) With *nōne*, implying the answer "yes" :

*Mithridātēs nōne ad Cn. Pompeium lēgātum mīsīt?* *did not Mithridates send an ambassador to Gnaeus Pompey?* Pomp. 16, 46.

d) With *num*, implying the answer "no" :

*num negāre audēs?* *you dare not deny, do you?* Cat. 1, 4, 8.

## 2. Questions of detail.

quid exspectās? *what are you looking for?* Cat. 2, 8, 18.

cūr tam diū loquimur? *why do we talk so long?* Cat. 2, 8, 17.

NOTE. Tandem, or the interrogative enclitic -nam, may be added to the simple interrogative to strengthen it; thus quousque tandem? *how long, pray?* Cat. 1, 1, 1; quibusnam manibus? *with what hands, pray?* B. G. 2, 30, 4.

## FORMS OF ANSWERS TO "YES" OR "NO" QUESTIONS

232. 1. "Yes" may be expressed by repeating the Verb; or, less formally, by ita, sic, etiam, vērō, certō, sãnē, etc.

"fuistīn liber?" "Fui," *"were you a free man?"* "I was"; Capt. 628.

"illa maneāt?" "Sic," *"is she to remain?"* "Yes"; Ph. 813.

2. "No" may be expressed by repeating the Verb and adding a negative; or, less formally, by nōn, minimē, etc.

"nōn ego illi argentum redderem?" "Nōn redderēs," *"should I not have paid him the money?"* "You should not have paid him"; Trin. 133.

"ea praeteriit?" "Nōn," *"has that (day) passed?"* "No"; Ph. 525.

233. An answer correcting or heightening the force of a preceding question is introduced by immō, *on the contrary, why even.*

vīvit? Immō vērō etiam in senātum venit! *lives, do I say? Why! he even comes into the senate!* Cat. 1, 1, 2.

## ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

234. Alternative Questions, or questions that offer the hearer or reader two or more things to choose among, are expressed as follows:

I. With utrum . . . , an . . .

II. With -ne . . . , an . . .

III. With — . . . , an . . .

I. haec utrum lēx est, an lēgum omnium dissolūtīō? (whether) *is this a law, or an undoing of all laws?* Phil. 1, 9, 21.

II. Rōmamne veniō, an hic maneō, an Arpinum fugiam? *do I come to Rome, or stay here, or shall I flee to Arpinum?* Att. 16, 8, 2.

III. privātām servitūtem servit, an pūblicā? *is he slave to a private person, or to the state?* Capt. 334.

a. If the second part of the question is *negatived*, nōn, *not*, is added to an, making an nōn (annōn), or *not*. The verb is regularly omitted. In an Indirect Question (537), necne may also be used instead of an nōn (rarely in a Direct one).

pater eius rediit an nōn? *has his father returned or not?* Ph. 147.

quaesivī in conventū fuisset necne, *I asked whether he had been at the meeting or not?* Cat. 2, 6, 13.

b. In the Indirect Question, the forms utrum . . . , -ne and —, -ne *sometimes occur*; also, in poetry, -ne . . . , -ne (as in Aen. 5, 702 and 1, 308).

## RHETORICAL QUESTIONS, ETC.

**235.** Questions that do not really ask for information, but are only stronger ways of *declaring* something, are called **Rhetorical Questions**.

*quis dubitat?* *who doubts?* (= nobody doubts).

*quis dubitet?* *who would doubt?* (= nobody would doubt).

*cūr dubitem?* *why should I doubt?* (= I ought not to doubt).

*quid prōdest?* *what is the use?* (= there is no use).

**236.** An **Absurd Question** is often introduced by an *alone*.

*an vērō Catilinam perferēmus?* *are we really going to tolerate Catiline?*

Cat. 1, 1, 3.

**237.** A **Question Suggesting the Probable Answer** may be introduced by *an*.

*cuium pecus?* *An Meliboei?* *whose flock?* *That* (perhaps) *of Meliboens?*

Ecl. 3, 1.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

**238.** Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive Clauses are often used **Substantively** (i.e. in some *case*-relation in the sentence).

*ut nē addam quod ingenuam nactus es,* *not to add that you have now a freeborn wife;* Ph. 168. (*Quod nactus es* is the Object of *addam*.)

*placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret,* *it seemed best to him that he should send ambassadors to Ariovistus;* B. G. 1, 34, 1. (*Ut . . . mitteret* is the Subject of *placuit*.)

*lēgātōs mitti placet?* *does it seem best that ambassadors be sent?* Phil. 5, 9, 25.

*placuit experiri,* *it seemed best to try;* Caecin. 7, 20.

*a.* The Infinitive in such relations, even when standing alone, is the equivalent of a clause. No line can be drawn in the above between the three subjects of *placuit* or *placet*.

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

**239.** Clauses modifying Verbs are called **Adverbial**.

*nec enim, dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis,* *for while I was with you, you did not see my soul;* Sen. 22, 79. (*Dum eram vōbiscum* is attached, like an *Adverb of time*, to *vidēbātis*.)



## B. THE PARTS OF SPEECH IN DETAIL

## NOUNS .

240. Nouns are divided into the following kinds :

1. **Proper Nouns** denote *particular* persons, places, or things, as *Cicerō*, *Cicero*; *Rōma*, *Rome*; *Mausōlēum*, *the tomb of Mausolus*.

2. **Common Nouns** denote *any* person or thing of a given *class*, as *senātor*, *senator*; *servus*, *slave*; *mīles*, *soldier*; *urbs*, *city*; *sepulcrum*, *tomb*.

a. Proper Nouns are sometimes used like Common Nouns, as *Catōnēs*, *men like Cato*; Am. 6, 21.

b. Common Nouns are sometimes used like Adjectives, as *victōrem exercitum*, *victorious army*; B. G. 7, 20, 12.

3. **Collective Nouns** denote a *group* or *class* of persons or things, as *senātus*, *senate* (collection of senators); *exercitus*, *army* (collection of soldiers).

4. **Concrete Nouns** denote things that can be perceived by the senses (sight, touch, hearing, etc.), as *mūrus*, *wall*; *aurum*, *gold*; *sonus*, *sound*.

5. **Abstract Nouns** denote things that cannot be perceived by the senses, namely, qualities, states of mind, conditions, activities, and the like, as *virtūs*, *virtue*; *sapientia*, *wisdom*; *servitium*, *servfdom, slavery*.

a. Abstract Nouns are occasionally used with concrete meaning. Thus *servitia concitat*, *he is stirring up the slaves*; Cat. 4, 6, 13.

b. The Plural of Abstracts is often used to express *acts, instances, or kinds*. Thus *audāciae*, *acts of insolence*; Cat. 2, 5, 10.

c. In poetry, the Plural of either Abstract or Concrete Nouns is sometimes used for the singular to produce a more striking effect.

d. The line between Concrete and Abstract Nouns is impossible to draw sharply. Thus *animus*, *mind*, lies between the two.

## ADJECTIVES (and Participles, in Certain Parallel Uses)

## COMPARISON

241. 1. The three degrees of Comparison have the same meanings as in English.

2. But the Comparative is also used merely to indicate a *higher* degree of the quality or condition *than is usual* (English *rather* or *too*), as *loquācior*, *rather talkative*; *audācior*, *too bold*.

3. The Superlative is used, more freely than in English, to indicate a *very high* degree of the quality or condition, as *loquācissimus*, *most talkative, very talkative*; *ērudītissimus*, *very learned*.

a. In this sense, the Superlative is often strengthened by the addition of *vel*, *even*; or *ūnus*, *the one*. Thus *vel summa paupertās*, *even the greatest poverty*; Tusc. 5, 39, 113.

4. To indicate the *highest degree possible*, the Superlative is accompanied by *quam* with some form of *possum*, or by *quam* alone.

*nāvis quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt*, *they collect as many ships as they can* (as many as possible); B. G. 3, 9, 9.

*quam plūrimās civitātis*, *as many states as possible*; B. G. 1, 9, 3.

**242. Two Comparatives.** When an object is said to possess a quality in a higher degree than some other quality (English *rather . . . than*), both Adjectives regularly take the same form.

*pestilentia minācior quam perniciosior*, *a plague that was alarming rather than destructive* (more alarming than destructive); Liv. 4, 52, 3.

*magis invidiosō crimine quam vērō*, *on an accusation that was invidious rather than true* (more invidious than true); Verr. 2, 46, 113.

a. The uses of the Comparative Adverb correspond, as also for 241. Compare 241 with 300, and 242 with 301.

#### SPECIAL USES OF CERTAIN ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

**243.** The Romans used the Adjectives *prior*, *princeps*, *primus*, *postrēmus*, and *ultimus* to express the idea of *first*, or *last*, *to do a thing*.

*ea princeps poenās persolvit*, *this was the first to pay the penalty*; B. G. 1, 12, 6.

**244.** The Romans used certain Adjectives to denote a *part*. Thus :

<i>primus</i> , <i>first</i>	<i>summus</i> , <i>topmost</i>	<i>medius</i> , <i>middle</i>
<i>postrēmus</i> , <i>last</i>	<i>īnfimus</i> ( <i>īmus</i> ), <i>lowest</i>	<i>sērus</i> , <i>late</i>
<i>extrēmus</i> , <i>outermost</i>	<i>īntimus</i> , <i>innermost</i>	<i>multus</i> , <i>much</i>

*summus mōns*, *the top of the mountain*; B. G. 1, 22, 1.

*multō diē*, *late in the day* (in the late part of the day); B. G. 1, 22, 4.

*primō impetū*, *at the beginning of the attack*; B. G. 2, 24, 1.

a. This use must be carefully distinguished from the ordinary one, as in *ante primam vigiliam*, *before the first watch*; B. G. 7, 3, 3.

**245.** The Romans generally used certain Adjectives and Participles where we use Adverbs. The most common of these are :

<i>sciēns</i> , <i>witting(ly)</i>	<i>invītus</i> , <i>unwilling(ly)</i>	<i>assiduus</i> , <i>constant(ly)</i>
<i>īnsciēns</i> , <i>unwitting(ly)</i>	<i>laetus</i> , <i>glad(ly)</i>	<i>praeceps</i> , <i>headlong</i>
<i>libēns</i> , <i>willing(ly)</i>	<i>maestus</i> , <i>sorrowful(ly)</i>	<i>frequēns</i> , <i>in great numbers</i>

*laetī pergunt*, *proceed joyfully*; B. G. 3, 18, 8.

*frequentēs vērunt*, *came in great numbers*; B. G. 4, 13, 4.

**246.** When *multus* is used with an Adjective or Participle expressing quality, the two are generally connected by a word meaning "and."

*multis gravibusque vulneribus*, with many dangerous wounds ; B. G. 2, 25, 1.

*multis ac summis viris*, to many influential men ; Cat. 1, 4, 10.

**247.** A Distributive Numeral is used instead of a Cardinal :

1. If its Noun is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form (104, 4 ; 105). Thus *duās epistulās* or *bīnās litterās*, two letters (of correspondence. *Duās litterās* would mean *two letters of the alphabet*).

a. For *three*, *trīnī*, not *ternī*, is used in prose with such a noun.

b. For *one*, *ūnī* is used (not *singulī*), as *ūnās litterās*, one letter.

2. Usually in multiplication, as *bis bīnī*, twice two.

3. Occasionally in poetry with the meaning of the corresponding Cardinal, as in *centēnās manūs*, a hundred hands ; Aen. 10, 566.

## THE PARTICIPLE AS ADJECTIVE

**248.** Participles are often used as Adjectives. But in Ciceronian Latin the only *Future Active* Participles thus used are *futūrus* and *ventūrus*.

*acūtus et prōvidēns*, intelligent and farsighted ; Fam. 6, 6, 9.

*opiniō ventūri bonī*, an impression of coming good ; Tusc. 4, 7, 14.

## ADJECTIVE OR PARTICIPLE AS SUBSTANTIVE

**249.** Certain Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives.

1. In the Singular Number, the *Masculine* denotes a class of persons, the *Neuter* a quality, or a corresponding abstract idea.

*iūstus*, the just man

*iūstum*, that which is just, justice

*timidus*, the timid man

*timēns*, the man that fears

2. In the Plural, the *Masculine* denotes a class of persons, the *Neuter* either a class of things or a number of instances of a quality.

*iūstī*, the just

*iūsta*, due ceremonies (just things)

*bonī*, the good

*bona*, good things, goods, blessings

*doctī*, the learned, scholars

*praeterita*, past things, the past

**250.** In prose, the Substantive uses of the Adjective and Participle are confined within certain limits, as follows :

1. In the Singular :

a) The *Masculine*<sup>1</sup> of the *Participle* is freely used in any Case except the Nominative and Vocative, and in any construction.

b) The *Masculine* of the *Adjective* is freely used in the Predicate Genitive only (340). If it is of the Third Declension, this construction is *preferred* to that of the Predicate Nominative.

*dēmentis est, it is the part of a madman* (not *dēmēns est*); Off. 1, 24, 83.

c) The *Masculine Nominative* of either the *Adjective* or the *Participle* is rare in prose, unless modified by a Pronoun (*hic, quisque*, etc.); but it is freely employed by the poets.

*semper avārus eget, the miserly is always poor*; Ep. 1, 2, 56.

NOTE 1. In place of using the Masculine Nominative Adjective alone, the prose writers generally couple it with *vir* or *homō*, as in *vir bonus, the good man*; Tusc. 5, 16, 48.

NOTE 2. In place of using the Masculine Nominative Participle alone, the prose writers generally use *is quī*, e.g. *is quī timet, the man who fears*; Leg. 1, 14, 41.

d) The *Neuter* of the *Adjective* is freely used in any Case, but is especially frequent with Prepositions and in the Genitive of the Whole (346).

*in angustō, in straits*; B. G. 2, 25, 1.

*sine dubiō, without doubt*; Cat. 2, 1, 1.

*nihil solidī, nothing solid*; N. D. 1, 27, 75.

NOTE. This Genitive is rare with Adjectives of the Third Declension (346, a).

2. In the Plural :

a) The *Masculine* of either the Adjective or the Participle is freely used in any Case and in any construction.

*cognōvit montem ā suis tenēri, learned that the mountain was held by his men*; B. G. 1, 22, 4.

*quī leviter aegrōtantis lēniter cūrant, who cure the moderately sick by mild methods*; Off. 1, 24, 83.

b) The *Neuter* is generally avoided except in the Nominative and Accusative, in which the form makes the Gender clear. In other Cases, the Noun *rēs*, with the Adjective in agreement, is generally preferred.

*omnia, all things*, Cat. 1, 13, 32; but *omnium rērum, of all things*, Pomp. 9, 22.

<sup>1</sup> The uses of the Feminine correspond for all the constructions of this section, but examples are rare.

NOTE. Perfect Passive Participles used as Substantives may retain the verb-feeling sufficiently to be modified by an Adverb, or they may completely become Nouns, and so have an Adjective agreeing with them. Thus *facta rectē*, *deeds well done*, Cat. 3, 12, 27; but *improbis factis*, *evil deeds*, Fin. 1, 16, 51. Similarly in the Singular.

251. Many words which came to be used as simple Nouns were originally Adjectives or Participles. Thus :

<i>amicus</i> , friend	<i>dextra</i> , the right hand
<i>inimicus</i> , enemy	<i>sinistra</i> , the left hand
<i>propinquus</i> , relation	<i>hiberna</i> , winter quarters
<i>pār</i> (an even thing), a pair	<i>institutum</i> , institution

252. Rarely, a Perfect Passive Participle is used *impersonally* (287) as a Noun.

*nōtumque furēns quid fēmina possit*, and the knowledge to what lengths a woman in wrath may go; Aen. 5, 6. (*Nōtum* = *nōtitia*.)

### PRONOUNS AND CORRESPONDING ADJECTIVES

253. Pronouns and corresponding Adjectives are divided into the following classes :

I. Personal, and	VI. Determinative-Descriptive
Personal Possessive	VII. Interrogative
II. Reflexive, and	VIII. Indefinite
Reflexive Possessive	IX. Collective
III. Reciprocal	X. Distributive
IV. Intensive	XI. Pronominal Adjectives
V. Identifying	XII. Relative

### I. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND THE CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

254. The Personal Pronouns denote *persons*, with no further idea (*I, you*, etc.). The Possessive Pronouns denote persons as *possessors* (*mine, your*, etc.).

*a.* The Personal Genitives in *-ī* (*meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, and vestrī*) are generally Objective (354); while *nostrum* and *vestrum* are Genitives of the Whole (346).

*memoriam nostrī*, the recollection of us; Sen. 22, 81.

*ūnumquemque nostrum*, every one of us; Cat. 1, 1, 2.

*b.* But the form in *-um* is occasionally used Objectively, and is regularly used with *omnium*, whatever the construction. Thus *omnium nostrum salutem*, the safety of us all; Cat. 1, 6, 14.

**255.** Latin has no true *Personal Pronoun of the Third Person* (*he, she, etc.*). The place of this is supplied by one of the Determinative Pronouns (271), — most frequently by *is*.

*Helvētīī lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt, the Helvetians sent ambassadors to him*; B. G. 1, 27, 1.

**256.** The place of the *Possessive Pronoun of the Third Person* is supplied by the Genitive of one of the Determinative Pronouns (271), — most frequently of *is*.

*cōsiliō eius, by his plan* (the plan of him); B. G. 4, 21, 5.

**257.** Since the form of the Verb shows its person, the Personal Pronouns are generally not expressed as Subjects. But they are necessarily expressed when *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended.

*Not expressed*: *polliceor, I promise*; Cat. 1, 13, 32.

*Expressed for emphasis*: *ego cūrābō, I will attend to it*; Ph. 713.

*Expressed for contrast*: *tuos (= tuus) est dāmnātus gnātus, nōn tū, it was YOUR SON that was condemned, not YOU*; Ph. 422.

*a. Quidem* is often added to *tū* for still further emphasis. *Equidem* is mostly confined to the first person, and the pronoun is not expressed. Thus *haud equidem adsentior . . . ; perseverās tū quidem, I do not assent . . . ; YOU keep on*; Leg. 3, 11, 26.

**258.** The Possessive Pronouns are generally not expressed if the meaning is clear without them. But they are necessarily expressed where *clearness* requires, or where *emphasis* or *contrast* is intended.

When expressed for clearness, they, like Adjectives, follow their Nouns. When expressed for emphasis or contrast, they, like Adjectives under the same circumstances, precede their Nouns.

*Not expressed*: *filiū nārās mihi? do you talk to me of (my) son?* Ph. 401.

*Expressed for clearness*: *operā tuā ad restim mihi rēs redit, through YOUR doing it has come to be a hanging matter for me*; Ph. 685.

*Expressed for emphasis*: *mī patrue! MY DEAR uncle!* Ph. 254.

*Expressed for contrast*: *nostrā culpa ea est an iūdicū? is it OUR fault? or the JUDGES'?* Ph. 275.

**259. Plural of Dignity.** The Personal or Possessive Pronoun of the First Person is often used in the Plural instead of the Singular, for greater dignity.

*ad senātum referēmus, we (= I) shall refer* (other matters) *to the senate*; Cat. 2, 12, 26.

## II. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND THE CORRESPONDING POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**260.** The Reflexive Pronouns and corresponding Possessives denote persons who are also the Subject of the Verb (as in *I love MYSELF*, *YOU love YOUR son*), or of an activity expressed by an Adjective or Noun.

*sē alunt*, *they support themselves*; B. G. 4, 1, 5.

*cōservātiō suī*, *the saving of himself*; Fin. 5, 13, 37.

*a.* In the *First* and *Second Persons*, the Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives are identical with the Personal Pronouns and Possessives (*ego*, *meus*, *tū*, *tuus*, etc.). Thus *mē amat*, *he loves me*, and *mē amō*, *I love myself* (*I love me*).

*b.* In the *Third Person*, the Reflexive Pronoun is *sē* (or *sēsē*), and the Reflexive Possessive is *suus*. (For *ipse* as Reflexive, see 263.)

**261.** The Latin Reflexive Pronouns and corresponding Possessives are generally not accompanied by any word corresponding to our English "self."

*mē dēfēdī*, *I have defended myself*; Cat. 1, 5, 11.

*sē ex nāvī prōiēcit*, *he flung himself from the ship*; B. G. 4, 25, 4.

*suīs finibus eōs prohibent*, *they keep them from their territory*; B. G. 1, 1, 4.

*a.* Yet *ipse*, *self*, is sometimes added. See 268.

**262.** *Sē* and *suus* are used mainly in two ways:

1. To refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand. ("Direct Reflexive.")

*sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt*, *they surrendered themselves and all their possessions*; B. G. 2, 15, 2.

2. To refer to the Subject of the *main clause*, though themselves standing in a subordinate clause. ("Indirect Reflexive.")

This is possible only where the subordinate clause expresses the thought of the Subject of the main clause.

*his mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus ad sē referrent*, *he charged them to report to him what Ariovistus should say*; B. G. 1, 47, 5.

*a.* Where the subordinate clause expresses the thought, not of the subject of the main clause, but of the *writer* or *speaker*, *is* is used, not *sē*, and *eius*, etc., not *suus*, to refer to that subject; for the *idea* in this case is not reflexive.

*cum propter multās eius virtūtēs magnā cum dignitatē viveret*, *since on account of his many virtues he was enjoying great authority*; Nep. Them. 8, 2.

**263.** In a subordinate clause *ipse* may be used as a Reflexive referring to the Subject of the *main* clause, as follows :

1. Where *two* Reflexives are needed, referring to *the same* person or thing.  
**Ariovistus respondit :** *sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse, Ariovistus replied that, if he himself had wanted anything from Caesar, he would have come to him ;* B. G. 1, 34, 2.

2. Where *two* Reflexives are needed, referring to *different* persons or things.

*cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent ?* (Caesar asked) *why they should despair of their own valor or his vigilance ;* B. G. 1, 40, 4.

3. Where *sē* or *suus* would be ambiguous :  
*erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra visae essent, he had been instructed by Caesar not to join battle, unless his (Caesar's) forces should be seen near the enemy's camp ;* B. G. 1, 22, 3.

**264.** *Sē*, *suus*, and *ipse* gain the following *extensions* of usage :

1. *Suus* is often used to refer to the subject of an act involved in the thought, though not distinctly stated.

**Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōn. remittit in hiberna,** *Caesar sends Fabius back with his (Fabius's) legion to his winter quarters (Fabius went back with his legion) ;* B. G. 5, 53, 3.

2. *Suus* is occasionally used to refer to the person most prominent in the thought of the sentence, even though that person is neither the grammatical nor the real ("logical") subject.

**dēsīnant insidiārī domī suae cōsulī,** *let them cease to set an ambushade for the consul in his own house ;* Cat. 1, 13, 32.

a. So especially with *quisque*, as in *suus cuique erat locus attribūtus*, *to each had been assigned his proper place* (his own place to each) ; B. G. 7, 81, 4.

3. Out of the meaning *own* arise the meanings *proper*, *favorable*, etc.  
**dē ordine praecipiēmus suō tempore,** *on the matter of rank we will give instructions at the proper time (its time) ;* Quintil. 2, 4, 21.

**sī hostis in suum locum ēlicere posset,** *if he could draw the enemy into a favorable place (his own place) ;* B. G. 5, 50, 3.

a. Similarly *noster*, *our*, may have the meaning *favorable*, and *aliēnus*, *belonging to another*, the meaning *unfavorable*.

4. *Sē*, *suus*, and *ipse* are often used of an *indefinite* self.  
**dēforme est dē sē ipsum praedicāre,** *it is bad form to brag about one's self ;* Off. 1, 38, 137.



## III. PRONOUNS USED WITH RECIPROCAL FORCE

**265.** The Pronouns used with Reciprocal Force denote two or more persons as affecting *each other* or *one another*.

The reciprocal idea may be expressed, for *two* persons or things, by using *alter* or *uterque* twice, in different cases; for *more than two* persons or things, by using *alius* twice, in different cases.

*ut alter alteri auxiliū esset, so that each was of assistance to the other;*

B. G. 5, 44, 14.

*uterque utrique est cordi, they are dear to each other;* Ph. 800.

*accēdebat ut aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, then besides, they relieved one another successively;* B. G. 5, 16, 4.

a. The reciprocal idea is sometimes expressed by *ipsi*, with *sui*, *sibi*, or *sē*.

*ubi militēs sibi ipsōs esse impedimentō vidit, when he saw that the soldiers were hindering one another;* B. G. 2, 25, 1.

**266.** The phrase *inter nōs* (or *vōs*, or *sē*), is used with reciprocal force, in *any* case-relation.

*cohortāti inter sē, encouraging one another;* B. G. 4, 25, 5.

*quō differant inter sēsē, wherein they differ from one another;* B. G. 6, 11, 1.

## IV. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

**267.** The Intensive Pronoun *ipse*, *self*, expresses emphasis or distinction.

*Catilina ipse profūgit; hī quid exspectant? Catiline himself has fled; what, then, are these men waiting for?* Cat. 2, 3, 6.

a. *Ipse* is sometimes used alone, to denote a person prominent in the minds of the speaker and the hearer.

*respondere solitōs: "ipse dixit"; "ipse" autem erat Pŷthagorās, they used to answer "he said so himself"; now "himself" was Pythagoras;* N. D. 1, 5, 10.

*sēsēs in Galliā, ab ipsis concessās, a home in Gaul, granted by (the Gauls) themselves;* B. G. 1, 44, 2.

**268.** When *ipse* is used at the same time with the Reflexive Pronoun (see 261) it agrees with the Subject or with the Reflexive, according as the idea of the one or the other is to be emphasized.

*mē ipse condemnō, I condemn myself;* Cat. 1, 2, 4. (Self as actor.)

*nec agrum sed ipsum mē excolō, and I cultivate, not my field, but myself;* Plin. Ep. 4, 6, 2. (Self as object.)

**269.** *Ipse* is much more freely used than English "self," being employed to express ideas conveyed by our "very," "mere," "precisely," "exactly," "positively," "in person," "of his own motion," etc. in *ipsis fluminis ripis*, *on the very banks of the river*; B. G. 2, 23, 3. *Catilinam ipsum egredientem verbis prosecuti sumus*, *we have presented Catiline with our compliments as he went out of his own accord*; Cat. 2, 1, 1.

a. For *ipse* as a Reflexive, see 263; for *ipsius* with a Possessive Pronoun, 339, b.

## V. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

**270.** *Idem*, *same*, identifies a person or thing with one that has just been mentioned or is immediately to be mentioned. *eādem dē causā*, *for the same reason* (mentioned before); B. G. 2, 7, 2.

a. *Idem* often corresponds to English "also," "likewise," or "yet."  
*dixi ego idem in senātū*, *I also said in the senate* (I, the same man); Cat. 1, 3, 7.

b. "The same as" is expressed by *idem quī* or *idem atque* or *ac* (307, 2, a).

## VI. THE DETERMINATIVE-DESCRIPTIVE PRONOUNS AND CORRESPONDING ADJECTIVES

*hic, iste, ille, is, talis, tantus, tot*

**271.** These Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives have the power of telling either (I) *what* person or thing is meant (*determinative* power), or (II) *what kind of* person or thing is meant (*descriptive* power).

I. *Determinative Use*: Q. *Maximum*, eum quī Tarentum recēpit, *Quintus Maximus*, (I mean) *the man who recovered Tarentum*; Sen. 4, 10.  
*id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur*, *they endeavor to do (what?) that which they had determined upon*; B. G. 1, 5, 1.

II. *Descriptive Use*: *habētis eum cōsulem quī nōn dubitet*, *you have (what kind of consul?) a consul that does not hesitate*; Cat. 4, 11, 24.

a. The distinctive meanings of these words are as follows:

*Hic*, *this*, or *of this kind*, refers to something near the *speaker*, in space, time, or thought.

*Iste*, *that* (of yours), or *of that kind*, refers to something near the *person addressed*, in space, time, or thought.

*Ille*, *that*, or *of that kind*, refers to something more remote from both the *speaker* and the *person addressed*, in space, time, or thought.

*Is*, *this*, *that*, or *of this kind*, *of that kind*, is less specific than any of these, and may be used in place of any of them.

**Tālis**, *such*, expresses a quality just indicated or to be indicated immediately.  
**Tantus**, *so great*, expresses a size just indicated or to be indicated immediately.  
**Tot**, *so many*, expresses a number just indicated or to be indicated immediately.

NOTE. **Hic** is often called the Pronoun of the First Person (*this* BY ME),  
**iste** of the Second (*that* BY YOU), and **ille** of the Third (*that* BY HIM).

**272.** The Determinative Pronouns are often used substantively, thus supplying the place of the Third Personal Pronoun. See **255**, **256**.

*a.* In the Neuter, the substantive use is very common.

*b.* **Ea** *rēs*, etc., is often preferred to **id**, **hoc**, etc., especially where there might be a doubt about the gender (cf. **250**, 2, *b*).

**273.** From their meanings, the Determinative Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives are adapted to point to something at hand, either in bodily presence or in the speaker's thought.  
**hic tamen vivit**, *yet this man is allowed to live* (Catiline, who sits before the speaker, and at whom he points); Cat. 1, 1, 2.  
**his paucis diēbus**, *within these few days* (i.e. the last few); B. G. 3, 17, 3.

*a.* A neuter pronoun is often used to point backward or forward to a substantive clause. So especially **id**, **eō**, **hoc**, **hōc**, and **illud**.

**eō quod memoriā tenēret**, *for the reason that he remembered* (for this reason, namely that); B. G. 1, 14, 1.

**cum id nūtiātum esset, eōs cōnārī**, *when it was announced that they were endeavoring*; B. G. 1, 7, 1. (*Id* is a mere "expletive," like English "it.")

*b.* In Latin, a Noun-idea *repeated*, with a change only in a *dependent* word, is generally left unexpressed. In English, we use a Pronoun.

**carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium**, *the hulls were somewhat flatter than (those) of our ships*; B. G. 3, 13, 1.

**274.** Certain Determinative Pronouns gain special uses:

1. **Ille** is often used of a person or thing familiar to everybody, — *that* (well-known), *that* (famous) *person* or *thing*.

**M. Catōnem, illum senem**, *Marcus Cato, that (famous) old man*; Arch. 7, 16.

2. **Hic** and **ille** are often used to *distinguish* between persons or things just mentioned, **hic** meaning the one last mentioned ("the latter"), and **ille** the one mentioned farther back ("the former").

**sī haec nōn dicō maiōra fuērunt in Clōdiō quam in Milōne, sed in illō maxima, nūlla in hōc**, *if these (bad qualities) were, I will not say greater in Clodius than in Milo, but immensely great in the former, and non-existent in the latter*; Mil. 13, 35.

a. But sometimes *hic* refers to the person or thing more prominent in the speaker's thought, and *ille* to the one less prominent, although the order in which they have been mentioned is the opposite.

b. *Hic* and *ille* are often weakened into mere *Indefinite Pronouns*.

*modo hoc modo illud*, *now one thing, now another*; N. D. 1, 18, 47. Similarly *iam hōe iam illōe*, Aen. 4, 157.

3. *Is* or *is quidem*, and *ille* or *ille quidem*, in combination with various connectives (*et*, *atque*, *nec*, etc.), are used when a second and still more striking quality or action is to be added to one already attributed to a person or thing (English "and that," "and that too").

*vincula, et ea sempiterna*, *imprisonment, and that too for life*; Cat. 4, 4, 7.

a. *Id*, in combination with various connectives (*et*, *-que*, etc.), is used when a similar addition is to be made to an idea expressed by a verb.

*doctum hominem cognōvī, idque ā puerō*, *I know him to be a person of learning, and that too from boyhood*; Fam. 13, 16, 4.

4. *Iste* is often used to express contempt.

*dē istis, quī sē populārīs habērī volunt*, *of these fellows who want themselves to be thought friends of the people*; Cat. 4, 5, 10.

## VII. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND CORRESPONDING ADJECTIVES

275. The Interrogative Pronouns and corresponding Adjectives are those which ask a question, namely:

1. *Uter*, *which?* used in speaking of two persons or things, *quis*, *who?* *which?* in speaking of any larger number.

*in utrō haec fuit*, *in Milōne*, *an in Clōdiō?* *in which of the two did this exist, in Milo or in Clodius?* Mil. 16, 43.

*quis est mē mītiōr?* *who is gentler than I?* Cat. 4, 6, 11.

2. *Cuius* (*-a*, *-um*), *whose?* (rare).

*cuium pecus?* *whose flock is this?* Ecl. 3, 1.

3. *Quot*, *how many?* *quotus*, *which in order?* (e.g. *second*, *third*, etc.) "*quot sunt?*" "*Totidem quot ego et tū sumus*," "*how many are there of them?*" "*As many as of you and me*"; Rud. 564.

*hōra quota est?* *what o'clock is it?* (what in the order of hours?); Sat. 2, 6, 44.

4. *Quī*, *what?* *of what kind?* (= *quālis*; see under 5).

*at quod erat tempus?* *but what kind of a situation was it?* Mil. 15, 39.

a. The poets sometimes use *quī* for *quis* in independent questions. In dependent questions, the distinction stated is not always observed, even in Ciceronian Latin. Cf. 141, a.

5. *Quālis, of what kind? quantus, how great?*  
*ubi tua (mēns) aut quālis? where is your mind, or of what nature?*  
 Tusc. I, 27, 67.  
*"quantī (ēptae)?" "Octussibus," "(bought) at what price?" "Eight cents";* Sat. 2, 3, 156.
6. *Ecquis, any? (without implication), and num quis, any? (implying "none"),* are *indefinite* interrogatives.  
*ecquid adferēbat festinātiōnis? did it occasion any delay?* Mil. 19, 49.

### VIII. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND CORRESPONDING ADJECTIVES

276. The Indefinite Pronouns and corresponding Adjectives present the idea of *some* person, thing, quality, or quantity, without further explanation.

quis, quī; aliquis, aliquī; quispiam;  
 nesciō<sup>1</sup> quis; quīdam, nōn nūllus; quisquam, ūllus;  
 utervīs, uterlibet; quivīs, quīlibet; neuter, nūllus;  
 quantusvis, quantuslibet

1. **Quis** (or the corresponding Adjective **quī**), the vaguest of the indefinites, means *any one, some one*, and is used chiefly with **sī, nisi, nē**, and with Interrogative<sup>2</sup> or Relative<sup>3</sup> words. It always stands *after* one or more words of its clause.

*roget quis, some one may ask;* Eun. 511.

*sī quid his accidat, if anything should happen to them;* B. G. 3, 22, 2.

2. **Aliquis** (or the corresponding Adjective **aliquī**) means *somebody, some one*, as opposed to *nobody*.

*sī vis esse aliquid, if you want to be somebody (something);* Iuv. I, 74.

3. **Quispiam**, *some one*, approaches **aliquis** in force.

*cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat, when some cohort had gone out of the circle;* B. G. 5, 35, 1.

4. **Nesciō quis** (originally *I don't know who*) means *somebody or other* (it does not matter who). It often is contemptuous.

*nesciō quō pactō, in some way or other;* Cat. I, 13, 31.

<sup>1</sup> *Nesciō quis* with iambic shortening as in *volō*, etc. (28, note), in all poetical occurrences, in the hexameter necessarily so.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. *num? ubi?*

<sup>3</sup> E.g. *cum, ubi, quō, quantō.*

5. *Quīdam* means *a certain one* (who might be named or more definitely made known or described, if necessary).

*videō esse hīc quōsdam, quī tēcum unā fuērunt, I see that there are certain men here present who were in your company; Cat. 1, 4, 8.*

a. Like English "a certain," *quīdam* is sometimes employed to *soften* an adjective or noun. In this use it is frequently accompanied by *quasi*, *as it were*, *so to speak*.

*omnēs artēs quasi cognātiōne quādam inter sē continentur, all the arts are bound together by a certain relationship, as it were; Arch. 1, 2.*

6. *Nōn nullus* (*not none*) means *some*, or, in the Plural, *several, a number of*. It differs from *quīdam* in *not* suggesting that a more definite statement might be made.

*nōn nullī inter carrōs matarās subiciēbant, some of them were throwing javelins from below among the carts; B. G. 1, 26, 3.*

a. *Nōn nēmō* may be used in the same way. See example, 298, 2.

7. *Quisquam*, *any at all*, and the corresponding Adjective *ūllus* are used only in negative sentences or phrases, in questions implying a negative, in clauses following a Comparative or Superlative, in Relative Clauses, and in Conditions.

*neque quisquam est tam āversus ā Mūsīs, nor is any one so hostile to the Muses; Arch. 9, 20.*

*cūr quisquam iūdicāret? why should any one judge? (= no one should); B. G. 1, 40, 2.*

*sine ūllō periculō, without any danger; B. G. 2, 11, 6.*

*taetrior quam quisquam superiōrum, more hideous than any of his predecessors; Verr. 4, 55, 123.*

*quam diū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, as long as there shall be any one who will dare to defend you; Cat. 1, 2, 6.*

*sī quicquam spērent, if they have any hope; B. G. 5, 41, 5.*

8. *Utervis* and *uterlibet* mean *either of two indifferently* ("whichever you wish"), and *quīvis* and *quīlibet*, *any one whatever* ("any you wish") of three or more. *Quantusvis* and *quantuslibet* mean of *any size whatever*.

*minus habēō vīrium quam vestrum utervīs, I have less strength than either of you; Sen. 10, 33.*

*ad quemvis numerum, up to any number whatever; B. G. 4, 2, 5.*

*quantāsvīs cōpiās, forces of any size whatever; B. G. 5, 28, 4.*

9. **Neuter** means *neither of the two*, and **nūllus**, *no one out of a larger number*. They are thus the negative words corresponding respectively to **utervīs** and **quīvīs**.

**neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt**, *neither party begins the crossing*;

B. G. 2, 9, 2.

**nūllō hoste prohibente**, *with no enemy to prevent*; B. G. 3, 6, 5.

a. The Plural forms of **neuter** have regularly the meaning of *neither of the two parties*, as in the first example just above.

b. **Nūllus** is sometimes used for **nēmō** (i.e. as a Substantive), but rarely in Cicero.

c. **Nēmō** is occasionally used for **nūllus** (i.e. as an Adjective), as in **servus est nēmō**, *there is no slave*; Cat. 4, 8, 16; **nēmō homō**, *no man*; Pers. 211.

d. **Nēmō** is regularly used instead of **nūllus**, to agree with a Proper Name or an Adjective, Participle, or Pronoun used substantively.

**nēmō Cornēlius**, *no Cornelius*; Att. 6, 1, 18.

**nēmō alius**, *no other*; Brut. 88, 302.

10. **Quicumque**, *whosoever*, and **quālisumque**, *of what kind soever* (properly Generalizing; 282, II), are sometimes used as Indefinite Pronouns or Adjectives even in Cicero's time, and very frequently later.

**quae sārārī poterunt, quācumque ratiōne sārābō**, *what can be healed*,

*I'll heal in any way soever*; Cat. 2, 5, 11.

## IX. THE COLLECTIVE PRONOUN

277. **Ambō** means *both*, i.e. *two taken together*.

**ambō incolumēs sēsē recipiunt**, *both return unharmed*; B. G. 5, 44, 13.

a. For a larger number, Latin uses the Adjective **omnēs**, *all*.

## X. THE DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS

278. I. **Uterque** (**uter**, *either of two*, plus the indefinite enclitic **-que**, *soever*) means *either soever of two, each of two*, taken separately. (Compare **ambō**, *both of two*, taken together.)

**uterque cum equitātū venīret**, (demanded) *that each of the two should come with cavalry*; B. G. 1, 42, 4.

a. The Plural forms of **uterque** have the sense of *each of the two sides, each of the two parties*, etc.

**pugnātum est ab utrīque ācritē**, *each of the two sides fought valiantly*; B. G. 4, 26, 1.

b. But with a Noun Singular in meaning though Plural in form (105), the Plural of **uterque** is Singular in meaning.

**utrīque castrīs**, *for each camp*; B. G. 1, 51, 1.

c. For **uterque** with reciprocal force, see 265.

2. **Quisque** (**quis**, *any*, plus the indefinite enclitic **-que**, *soever*) means *any one soever, each, all*, etc., taken *individually*. (Compare **omnēs**, *all*, taken *together*.) It is used with the following words, and immediately after them:

a) With *Reflexive, Relative, or Interrogative* words.

**prō sē quisque**, *each to the best of his power*; B. G. 2, 25, 3.

**quam quisque in partem dēvēnit**, *to whatever place each came*; B. G. 2, 21, 6.

**quid quōque locō faciendum esset**, *what needed to be done in each place*;

B. G. 5, 33, 3.

b) With *Superlatives*, to indicate a class.

**optimus quisque**, *all the best men* (each best man); Arch. 11, 26.

c) With *Ordinal Numerals*.

**decimum quemque**, *one man in ten* (every tenth man); B. G. 5, 52, 2.

**quotus quisque fōrmōsus est!** *how few are handsome!* (one of how many is each handsome man?); N. D. 1, 28, 79.

## XI. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

### **alter, alius**

279. 1. When used singly, **alter** means *the other* or *one*, where *two* are thought of; and **alius** means *other* or *another*, where *more than two* are thought of.

**itinerā duo, ūnum per Sēquanōs, alterum per prōvinciam nostram**, *two ways, one through the country of the Sequani, the other through the province*; B. G. 1, 6, 1.

**alterō oculō capitur**, *is blinded in one eye*; Liv. 22, 2, 11.

**filius Domitī aliūque complūrēs adulescentēs**, *the son of Domitius and several other young men*; B. C. 1, 23, 2.

a. **Cēterī** differs from **aliū** in meaning *ALL the others, the REST*.

**hōsce ego hominēs excipiō; cēterī vērō quā virtūte cōsentiunt!** *these men I except; but how nobly all the rest agree!* Cat. 4, 7, 15.

b. **Reliquī**, *those remaining*, approaches **cēterī** in force, but does not so insist upon completeness.

**oppida sua, vicōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt**, *they set fire to their towns, their villages, and the private buildings that remained*; B. G. 1, 5, 2.

2. **Alter** or **alius** is often used twice, with correlative meaning, *one . . . the other, one . . . another*.

**hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est**, *of these, one was killed, the other taken prisoner*; B. G. 1, 53, 4.



3. *Alius* is often used twice in the same clause or phrase, with the meaning *one . . . one . . . , another . . . another*.

*alius aliā ex nāvi sē adgregābat*, *they were gathering, one from one ship, another from another*; B. G. 4, 26, 1.

4. For *alter* and *alius* with reciprocal force, see 265.

a. The Adverbs *aliter*, *aliās*, and *alibi* are used with forces corresponding in all respects to those of *alius*, as given in 3 and 4.

## XII. RELATIVE PRONOUNS AND CORRESPONDING ADJECTIVES

280. INTRODUCTORY. The Latin Relative Pronoun is probably derived from two sources (which were doubtless originally one), the Interrogative Pronoun and the Indefinite Pronoun, as follows:

In sentences like *quis volet, vindex estō* (Twelve Tables, II), the *quis* could be either Interrogative or Indefinite. "Who shall wish? He shall be protector" would lead to the *relative* feeling, *who shall wish, he shall be protector*, i.e. *he who shall wish shall be protector*.<sup>1</sup> But so, also, could "any man shall wish: he shall be protector," i.e. *whichever shall wish, he shall be protector*.

281. The Relative Pronouns and Adjectives are *connecting* Pronouns and Adjectives referring to something that precedes or follows.

a. The word to which a Relative refers is called its *Antecedent*.<sup>2</sup>

*rēgnum quod pater habuerat*, *the royal power which his father had had*;

B. G. 1, 3, 4. (*Rēgnum* is the Antecedent.)

282. The meanings of the Relatives are as follows:

### I. Individual or Generalizing

*quī*, *who*, or *whoever*

*quālis*, *of which kind*, or *of what kind soever*

*quantus*, *of what size*, or *of what size soever*

*quot*, *of what number*, or *of what number soever*

### II. Generalizing Only

*quicumque*, *whoever*

*quisquis*, *whoever*

*quālis cumque*, *of what kind soever*

*quantus cumque*, *of what size soever*

*quot cumque*, *of what number soever*

*quot quot*, *of what number soever*

a. Note that the uncompounded forms are either Individual or Generalizing in meaning, while the compounded forms are always Generalizing.

<sup>1</sup> Similarly, the English Relative "who" has arisen from the Interrogative "who."

<sup>2</sup> Because the word referred to generally comes before the Relative.

## GENERALIZING FORMS WITH MERELY INDEFINITE MEANING

**283.** The same Pronouns, Pronominal Adjectives, or Adverbs which may be used in a Generalizing sense can also be employed of *individual* persons or things *not definitely known* to the speaker.

*tibi hercle deûs irâtûs esse oportet, quisquis es, the gods must surely be angry at you, whoever you are*; Rud. 1146. (The "you" is of course a particular person, but the speaker does n't know *who*.) Similarly *quaecumque*, Aen. 1, 330.

## PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE LATIN RELATIVE

**284.** 1. The Antecedent is often omitted, especially if *indefinite*.  
*ut quae bellû cēperint quibus vëndant habeant, that they may have (people) to whom to sell what they take in war*; B. G. 4, 2, 1.

*a.* The antecedent is often incorporated into the relative clause, appearing only here.

*habētis quam petistis facultātem, you have the opportunity which you have been waiting for*; B. G. 6, 8, 3.

2. *The Relative is never omitted in Latin.*

3. The Relative Clause is frequent in Latin, where English would use a shorter expression (Noun, Participle, Appositive, etc.).

*pontem quī erat ad Genāvam, the bridge (which was) at Geneva* (in English idiom, *the bridge at Geneva*); B. G. 1, 7, 2.

*quī decimae legiōnis aquillam ferēbat, the man who bore the standard of the tenth legion (= aquilifer)*; B. G. 4, 25, 3.

*a.* Yet occasionally the same condensation is found in Latin as in English.  
*sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, (said) that he had a home in Gaul (which had been) granted him by the Gauls themselves*; B. G. 1, 44, 2.

4. The Antecedent Noun is sometimes repeated, for greater distinctness, in the Relative Clause.

*ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, beyond the place in which (place) the Germans had encamped*; B. G. 1, 49, 1.

5. The Relative Clause often precedes its Antecedent. So especially the Rhetorical Determinative Clause (550, *a*, n. 3).

*quōs ferrō trucidārī oportēbat, eōs nōndum vōce vulnerō, I do not yet wound with a word the men who ought to be slain with the sword (what men . . . , those . . . )*; Cat. 1, 4, 9.

*a.* English idiom does not tolerate this order in prose.

6. When the Relative Clause precedes, the principal Noun is generally *attached to the Relative* and takes its case.

**implōrāre dēbētis** ut quam urbem pulcherrimam esse voluērunt, hanc dēfendant, *it is your duty to implore (the gods) that, since they have chosen to make this city the fairest in the world, they will defend it*; Cat. 2, 13, 29. (For the translation, see *a*, just above.)

7. The Relative Clause frequently attracts into itself an Adjective belonging to the Antecedent, especially if that Adjective is a Superlative. **cōnsiliis pārē, quae nunc pulcherrima Nautēs dat**, *follow the admirable plans which Nautes now proposes* (follow the plans which, — admirable they are, — Nautes proposes); Aen. 5, 728.

8. Latin often uses a Relative Pronoun where English would use a Determinative or Personal Pronoun introduced by *and*, *but*, etc.

**quae cum ita sint**, *and since this is so*; Cat. 1, 5, 10.

9. More frequently than in English, the relative belongs in government to a clause *Subordinate* to that which it really introduces.

**nōn politus iis artibus quās quī tenent ēruditi appellantur**, *not finished in those accomplishments the possessors of which are called learned*; Fin. 1, 7, 26 (those who possess which; similarly **cui quī pārēat**, Sen. 1, 2).

10. More frequently than in English, a Relative Adverb of place is used, instead of a Relative Pronoun, to refer to a Personal Antecedent. **is unde tē audisse dīcis**, *the man from whom you say you heard it* (the man whence); De Or. 2, 70, 285.

## VERBS

### EXPRESSION (OR OMISSION) OF THE SUBJECT

**285.** Since the termination of the Finite Verb shows its Person and Number (e.g. **amō**, *I love*; **amās**, *you love*; **amant**, *they love*), the Subject does not need to be expressed, except for emphasis or contrast, or to prevent ambiguity (cf. 257).

*Subject omitted*: **abiit**, *he has gone away*; Cat. 2, 1, 1.

*Subject expressed for emphasis or contrast*: **tam ille apud nōs servit quam ego nunc apud tē serviō**, *HE is a slave in our country just as I am now a slave in yours*; Capt. 312.

*Subject expressed to avoid ambiguity*: **Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur**, *Quintus Laberius Durus, a military tribune, is killed. They (i.e. the enemy) are driven off by the sending of a number of cohorts to the rescue*; B. G. 5, 15, 5.

## INDEFINITE SUBJECT

**286.** The First and Third Persons Plural, and the Second Person Singular Indefinite are used, as in English, to express an *Indefinite Subject*; ("we," "they," or "you" in the sense of "any one").

*fortūnātōrum memorant insulās, they tell of the islands of the blessed* (men tell); Trin. 549.

*datur ignis, tametsi ab inimicō petās, fire is given you, even if you ask it of an enemy* ("you" is anybody); Trin. 679.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

**287.** Some Verbs are used in the Third Singular without a Subject, either expressed or understood, and are accordingly called *Impersonal*.

These Verbs express *operations of nature*, or *mental distress*, or *acts considered merely as such*, without reference to the performer.

*iam advesperāscit, it is getting dark now*; And. 581.

*eius mē miseret, I pity him* (it makes me pitiful of him); Ph. 188.

*pugnātum est ācriter, there was a fierce fight*; B. G. 3, 21, 1.

a. The name Impersonal is also conveniently applied to verbs that have an Infinitive or a Clause for Subject, as in *insānīre iuvat, 't is a pleasure to play the madman*; Carm. 3, 19, 18.

## VOICE

**288.** 1. The Active Voice represents the Subject of the Verb as *acting* or *being*.

*Helvētiī lēgātōs mittunt, the Helvetians send ambassadors*; B. G. 1, 7, 3.  
*erant omnīnō itinera duo, there were in all but two ways*; B. G. 1, 6, 1.

2. The Passive Voice represents the Subject as *acted upon*.  
*mittitur C. Arpineius, Gaius Arpineius is sent*; B. G. 5, 27, 1.

3. **Reflexive Use of the Passive.**<sup>1</sup> The Passive Voice is sometimes used, especially in poetry, in a *reflexive* sense, to express an act as done by the actor to or for *himself*.

*ad spectāculum omnēs effunduntur, all pour out to see the show*; Liv. 39, 49, 8.

(Cf. *sēsē multītūdō effūdīt, the crowd poured itself out*; B. C. 2, 7, 3.)

*umerōs insternor pelle, I cover my shoulders with a skin*; Aen. 2, 721.

---

<sup>1</sup> Often called "Middle Voice," as in Greek.

a. An Active verb that can be used reflexively in a Passive Finite form can also be used reflexively in the Present Active Participle. Compare *exercentur, exercise (themselves)*, Tusc. 2, 23, 56, with *exercentibus, exercising*, De Or. 2, 71, 287.

b. The Deponent Verbs (160) were originally Reflexive. Thus *vēscor, eat* (originally, *feed myself*).

### TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

**289.** A Transitive Verb is one that expresses an action immediately directed upon some person or thing ("transitive" = *passing over upon*). That upon which the action is immediately directed is called the *Direct Object* (390).

*Caesar eius dextram prēdit, Caesar took his hand*; B. G. 1, 20, 5.

a. Absolute Use. A Transitive Verb may be used *without* an Object, to represent the mere action, without reference to that upon which it is directed. Thus *arāre māvelim, I should prefer to plough*; Merc. 356.

b. Similarly, verbs governing *other* cases than the Accusative may be used Absolutely. Thus *suscēnsēdī tempus erit, there will be a time for being angry*; Liv. 22, 29, 2; *vēscēdī causā, for the purpose of eating*; Sall. Cat. 13, 3.

**290.** An Intransitive Verb is one that expresses an act or state *not* immediately directed upon any person or thing.

*vivō et rēgnō, I live and reign*; Ep. 1, 10, 8.

a. Intransitive Verbs, generally speaking, have no Passive. But

1) An Intransitive Verb may be used *impersonally* in the Passive.

*diū pugnātum est, there was a long fight* (it was fought long); B. G. 1, 26, 1.

2) A few Intransitive Verbs may be used with a Subject of Kindred Meaning.

*illa (pugna) quae cum rēge est pugnāta, the battle which was fought with the king*; Mur. 16, 34.

3) Verbs generally Intransitive are occasionally used in the Future Passive Participle with true Passive meaning.

*laetandum magis quam dolendum putō cāsum tuum, I think your fate is rather to be rejoiced at than grieved over*; Sall. Iug. 14, 22.

4) A few Perfect Passive Participles from Intransitive Verbs may be used with Active meaning; thus *iūrātus, having sworn, cēnātus, having dined, prānsus, having breakfasted, pōtus, having drunk*.

*Lūcillus iūrātus dixit, Lucullus, having taken the oath, said*; Mil. 27, 73.

5) *Coepī* and *dēsinō* with Infinitives of *true Passive* meaning are generally *themselves made Passive* in form.

**Milōnis cōsulātus temptāri coeptus est**, *Milo's candidature for the consulship began to be assailed*; Mil. 13, 34. (But **vidēri** coepit, *began to seem*, in Verr. 1, 50, 132, since **vidēri** has not true passive meaning here.)

NOTE 1. A verb may of course be Active, yet not be Transitive. Thus **rēgnat**, *reigns*, is Active, because it expresses activity; but it is not Transitive, because the activity is not represented as immediately directed upon a person or thing. We cannot say, for example, "the king reigns his subjects."

NOTE 2. Yet the poets sometimes *force the meanings* of Intransitive verbs, and use them in the Passive.

**terra rēgnāta Lycurgō**, *a land reigned over by Lycurgus*; Aen. 3, 13.

#### VOICE-MEANINGS OF DEPONENT AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

**291.** Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs (160, 161) are active in meaning, *except in the Future Passive Participle*.

a. Accordingly, Transitive Deponents and Semi-Deponents have three Participles of active meaning, and one of passive. Thus:

<b>admirāns</b> , <i>admiring</i>	<b>admirātus</b> , <i>having admired</i>
<b>admirātūrus</b> , <i>about to admire</i>	<b>admirandus</b> , <i>to be admired</i>

b. *Intransitive* Deponents and Semi-Deponents of course lack a true Future Passive Participle. Thus **proficiēns**, **profectus**, **profectūrus**, —. But such Verbs may have a Gerund, and they may also have an *impersonal* Future Passive Participle. Thus **ad proficiēndum**, *for departing*; B. G. 1, 3, 1; **ei proficiēndum est**, *he must depart*; Fin. 3, 22, 73.

c. For Future Passive Participles like **laetandus**, *to be rejoiced at*, see 290, a, 3).

d. The Perfect Passive Participle of Deponents and Semi-Deponents is sometimes used with a true passive force.<sup>1</sup>

**pactam diem**, *a date agreed upon*; Cat. 1, 9, 24.

**adeptā libertāte**, *after freedom had been won*; Sall. Cat. 7, 3.

#### SUBJECT OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

**292.** The Subject of the Passive Voice corresponds to the Direct Object (390) of the Active. Thus *Dick struck Tom* (Active Voice) becomes in the Passive *Tom was struck by Dick*.

a. Verbs that do not take an Accusative Object (390) in the Active Voice are regularly used only *impersonally* (287) in the Passive, with the same cases as in the Active. **ut hostibus nocērētur**, *that harm might be done to the enemy*; B. G. 5, 19, 3. Compare **nocēre alteri**, under 362, I.

**num argūmentis ūtendum?** *must one make use of arguments?* Verr. 4, 6, 11. Compare 429.

b. Yet Passives are sometimes formed from such verbs. Thus **crēdita**, *believed*, Aen. 2, 247; **persuāsus est**, *is persuaded*, Caecin. ap. Fam. 6, 712; **invidetur**, *I am envied*, A. P. 56.

<sup>1</sup> Especially of such Deponents as had also an active form in occasional use (e.g. **pacīscor**, occasionally **paciscō**; **adipīscor**, occasionally **adipiscō**).

## ADVERBS

293. INTRODUCTORY. As explained in 124, 126, many Adverbs are simply stereotyped case-forms, e.g. *partim* (as regards a part), *partly* (old Acc. of Respect, 388), *hâc, by this way* (Abl. of Route, 426), *vērō, in truth* (Abl. of Respect, 441), *modo* (with a measure, exactly), *just* (Abl. of Manner, 445), *miserē, in a wretched manner* (old Ablative, 126, 1). A few are made up of Prepositions with a case, as *admodum* (to a degree), *very*. Cf. 217, 4.

294. Adverbs express ideas of manner, degree, place, time, etc.

Thus *ita, so* or *so much*, *ibi, there*, *tum, then*.

295. Adverbs modify Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs (or Adverbial Phrases).

*ita exercitum trādūcit, in this way he takes the army across*; B. G. 1, 13, 1.

*quārtam ferē partem, about a fourth part*; B. G. 1, 12, 2.

*minus facile, less easily*; B. G. 1, 2, 4.

*paene in cōspectū, almost within sight*; B. G. 1, 11, 3.

a. Adverbs of number or degree may also, through brevity of expression, seem to modify Nouns.

*bis unā cōsulēs, twice consuls together* (= who had twice been consuls together); Am. 1, 139.

b. In poetry and later prose, other Adverbs sometimes modify Nouns *implying action*.

*populum lātē rēgem, a people monarch* (= ruling) *far and wide*; Aen. 1, 21.

*haud dubiē victor, beyond doubt a victor* (= victorious); Sall. Jug. 102, 1.

c. A few Adverbs are freely used in the sense of Adjectives, especially *ita, sic, satis, bene, male*. The poets extend the list.

*quod satis esse arbitrabātur, which he thought to be sufficient*; B. G. 4, 22, 6.

*sic sum, that's the way I am* (that's the kind of man); Ph. 527.

## NEGATIVE ADVERBS

296. 1. The Sentence-Negative for the ideas of *Command, Will, or Wish* is *nē, not*; or, if the negative is also a connective, *nēve* or *neu, and not, nor*.

a. *Nē* and *nēve* (*neu*) also become Conjunctions. See, e.g., 502, 2, 3.

2. The Sentence-Negative for *Statements* or corresponding Questions is *nōn, not*; or, if also a connective, *neque, and not, nor*.

a. For further details with regard to the negatives, see 464.

297. *Haud* (*haut, hau*) negatives a single word. In Ciceronian use, it is employed sparingly, — mostly to modify Adjectives and Adverbs expressing Quantity, Kind, or Manner.

*haud mediocris vir, no ordinary man*; Rep. 2, 31, 55.

*haud facile, not easily*; Rep. 1, 3, 6.

a. *Haud* is also used with a few Verbs, as *sciō* (B. G. 5, 54, 5), *dubitō* (Rep. 1, 15, 23).

298. 1. Instead of *dīcō nōn*, *I say that . . . not*, *negō* is preferred.  
*negāvī mē esse factūrum*, *I said I would not (so) act*; Cat. 3, 3, 7.

2. In general, two negatives make an affirmative.

*videō abesse nōn nēmīnem*, *I see that some one is absent*; Cat. 4, 5, 10.

a. But after a sweeping negative, the negatives *nē* . . . *quidem*, *neque* . . . *neque*, or *nēve* . . . *nēve* simply add emphasis.

*numquam illum nē minimā quidem rē offendī*, *I never offended him, not even in the smallest thing*; Am. 27, 103.

299. When the phrase *nōn modo* (or *nōn solum*) . . . *sed nē* . . . *quidem* is used in a sentence containing but a single verb, the second negative is felt throughout the whole (*not only not . . . but not even*).

*tālis vir nōn modo facere, sed nē cōgitāre quidem quicquam audēbit, quod nōn audeat praedicāre*, *such a man will not only NOT venture to do a thing he dare not speak of, but will not even dare to think of it*; Off. 3, 19, 77.

#### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

300. The Comparative and Superlative degrees of Adverbs correspond in meaning to those of Adjectives (241). Thus *facile*, *easily*; *facilius*, *more easily* or *rather easily*; *facillimē*, *most easily* or *very easily*; *vel facillimē*, *very easily indeed*; *quam facillimē*, *as easily as possible*.

301. Two Comparatives. When an act is said to be done in one way rather than in another (English *with more . . . than . . .*, *rather . . . than . . .*), both Adverbs regularly take the same form (cf. 242).

*libentius quam vērīus*, *with more readiness than truth*; Mil. 29, 78.

*magis honestē quam vērē*, *rather in compliment than truthfully*; Planc. 15, 37.

#### FORCES OF CERTAIN IMPORTANT ADVERBS

302. 1. *Quidem*, *to be sure, indeed, at any rate* (postpositive<sup>1</sup>), is a particle of *emphasis*, generally expressing either a moderate concession or a moderate claim. It is often followed by *sed*, *autem*, etc.

*dicitur quidem ā Cottā; sed . . .*, *Cotta does say so, to be sure; but . . .*; Div. 1, 5, 8. (Moderate Concession.)

*mihī quidem illa certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta*, *to me, at any rate, these things seemed indubitable proofs*; Cat. 3, 5, 13. (Moderate Claim.)

a. For *quidem* (and *equidem*) with pronouns, see 257, a.

2. *Etiam* and *et*,<sup>2</sup> *even, also* (regularly prepositive<sup>3</sup>), are used as strengthening particles.

<sup>1</sup> I.e. put immediately after the word on which the particle bears.

<sup>2</sup> The same words as the Conjunctions *etiam* and *et*, but used Adverbially.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. put immediately before the word on which the particle bears.



**Quoque, also, too** (postpositive), expresses mere addition.

**etiam in extrēmā spē**, *even at the last ebb of hope*; B. G. 2, 27, 3.

**vērūm et alii multi**, *but also many others*; Rosc. Am. 33, 94.

**haec quoque ratiō (eōs dēdūxit)**, *this reason, too, (impelled them)*; B. G. 2, 10, 5.

a. **Etiam** modifying a phrase containing no preposition is generally placed *inside* that phrase. Thus **nostrā etiam memoriā**, *even within our memory*; B. G. 2, 4, 7.

b. **Et** in the sense of **etiam** is not used by Caesar.

c. The later writers use **etiam** (or **et**) and **quoque** with less careful distinction.

3. **Prīmō** and **primum** should be carefully distinguished. With **prīmō**, *at first*, the idea of *time* is more important; with **primum**, *firstly*, the idea of *logical order*.

These Adverbs often begin a series (more or less complete). Thus:

<b>prīmō</b> (= <b>prīncipiō</b> ), <i>at first, at the beginning</i> ,	<b>primum</b> , <i>firstly, in the first place</i> ,
<b>deinde</b> (inde) or <b>postea</b> , <i>later</i> ,	<b>deinde</b> (inde) or <b>postea</b> , <i>secondly</i> ,
<b>tum</b> , <i>then</i> , etc., <b>postrēmō</b> or <b>dēnique</b> ,	<b>tum</b> , <i>then</i> , etc., <b>postrēmō</b> or <b>dēnique</b> ,
<i>finally.</i>	<i>lastly.</i>

**ille prīmō negāvit**; **post autem aliquantō surrēxit**, *quaesivit . . . , at first he denied; a little later, however, he rose and asked*; Cat. 3, 5, 11.

**id aliquot dē causis acciderat**, **primum**, **quod . . . , tum etiam quod . . . ; accēdēbat quod . . . , this had come about through several reasons; first, because . . . ; then also because . . . ; further because . . . ;** B. G. 3, 2, 2.

a. The feeling of logical order sometimes prevails, even where the idea of order in time is also present. Thus **primum Antiochiaē, nam ibi nātus est, . . . ; post in cēteris Asiae partibus . . . , first at Antioch, for this was his birthplace . . . ; then in the rest of Asia . . . ;** Arch. 3, 4.

4. **Nunc**, *now*, deals with a single point of time, without reference to any other. Thus **nunc adest**, *he is now present*.

a. After a Condition Contrary to Fact (581), **nunc** means *as it is*.

5. **Iam**, *by this time, already*, contrasts a time with a preceding one. Thus **iam aderat**, *he was by this time present* (had not been before); **iam adest**, *he is by this time present* (has not been before); **iam aderit** (Aen. 2, 662), *he will soon be present* (is not now).

With negatives, **iam** means *no longer* (by this time, *not*).

With the Imperfect, **iam** may suggest the *beginning* of an act or state. Thus **quod iam incrēdibile vidēbātur**, *which was beginning to seem incredible*; Pomp. 14, 41.

6. **Potius**, *preferably, rather*, and **potissimum**, *in preference to all other persons or things*, express the idea of *selection*.

**his potissimum ostendam**, **quī . . . , I shall display it to those before all others, who . . . ;** Pomp. 1, 2.

7. *Adeō, eō, and tam* express *degree, ita* and *sic* *manner*, occasionally *degree*. (For other Correlatives, see 144.)

8. *Nē, surely*, should be carefully distinguished from *nē, not, lest*.  
*nē illi vehementer errant, surely they are grievously in error*; Cat. 2, 3, 6.

## PREPOSITIONS

303. Prepositions define the relation of a Substantive to another word.

*iter per prōvinciam, a journey through the province*; B. G. 1, 14, 3.

a. Prepositions were originally Adverbs, modifying, not the Noun, which at a later time they seemed to govern, but a Verb or Adjective. At this period, all case-relations were expressed by the bare Case alone. Thus a sentence like *portā ab iit* would have been used to express the idea *from the gate, he went away*. But such a combination suggested a *relation* between the Noun and the Verb (*he went away from the gate*). In consequence, the Adverb came to be placed *before the Noun*, whence the name Preposition ("placed in front").

b. In certain combinations, the Adverb remained permanently attached to the Verb, as in *inferō, bring-in*. In others, it remained with the Verb, even when repeated (as Preposition) with the Noun, as in *ā portā abiit, he went-away from the gate*. It is customary and convenient to call such Verbs *prepositional compounds*.

c. Certain words can be used either as Prepositions or as Adverbs. So especially *ante, adversus, circā, circum, circiter, contrā, post, prope, super*.

*annō post, a year after* (=afterward by a year); B. G. 4, 1, 5.

## CONJUNCTIONS

304. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, sentences, or clauses. They are of two main kinds:

305. I. **Coördinating Conjunctions** join words, phrases, sentences, or clauses of equal rank and essentially similar nature.

*nōbilissimus et dītissimus, the noblest and the richest man*; B. G. 1, 2, 1.  
*cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat, had killed the consul and sent his army under the yoke*; B. G. 1, 12, 5.

a. **Asyndeton**, or "want of connective." The same effect of joining is often produced still more sharply by using no connective at all.

*frigus, sitim, famem ferre poterat, he could bear cold, thirst, hunger*; Cat. 3, 7, 16.  
*senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt, the senate knows all this, the consul sees it*;  
 Cat. 1, 1, 2.

NOTE. In certain common phrases the conjunction is habitually omitted. Thus *Iuppiter Optimus Maximus*, cf. Cat. 3, 9, 21; *volēns propitius*, Liv. 1, 16, 3; *vultis iubētisne*, cf. Liv. 1, 46, 1. So generally with the names of colleagues, unless a single name only is given for each. Thus *L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus*, B. G. 1, 6, 4; but *Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus*, Cat. 1, 6, 15.

II. **Subordinating Conjunctions** join a dependent clause to the sentence or clause upon which it depends.

*cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat*, *when he inquired, he learned the following*; B. G. 2, 4, 1.

## COÖRDINATING CONJUNCTIONS IN DETAIL

**306.** Coördinating Conjunctions fall under four classes, according as they express Union (Copulative Conjunctions), Separation (Disjunctive Conjunctions), Opposition (Adversative Conjunctions), or Inference (Inferential Conjunctions).

### I. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS: *et*, *-que*, *atque*, *ac*, *neque*, *nēve*

**307.** 1. *Et* expresses simple connection (examples in 305, I.); while *-que* expresses closer connection, — often one which exists in the nature of things.

*multitūdō perditōrum hominum latrōnumque*, *a multitude of desperadoes and brigands*; B. G. 3, 17, 4.

*eī legiōni castrisque*, *this legion and camp*; B. G. 6, 32, 6.

*a.* But a natural connection is often left *unexpressed*, as in *impeditōs et inopinantis*, *encumbered and off their guard*; B. G. 1, 12, 3.

*b.* When *-que* introduces a word, it is attached to it. Thus *oppida vicōsque*, *towns and villages*; B. G. 1, 28, 3.

When it introduces a phrase, it is generally attached to the first word of that phrase; but if that first word is a preposition, the *-que* is generally attached to the second word of the phrase. Thus *ob eāsq̄ rēs*, *and on account of these achievements*; B. G. 2, 35, 4.

When it introduces a clause, it is generally attached to the first word of that clause, and this word is generally *not* the verb. Thus, *duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit*, *and there enrolls two legions*; B. G. 1, 10, 3.

*c.* When several members are put together in a series, Latin ordinarily uses the connective throughout, or not at all.

*turpem et infirmam et abiectam*, *base and weak and downcast*; Cat. 4, 10, 20.  
*ferōx, vehemēs, prōptus*, *rough, ardent, quick*; Sall. Cat. 43, 4.

*d.* Sometimes, however, in Latin as in English, the last two members only are connected (generally by *-que*, rarely by *et*).

*pācem, tranquillitatem, ōtium, concordiamque*, *peace, tranquillity, repose, and concord*; Mur. 1, 1.

2. **Atque** or **ac**, and *also*, and *indeed*, and, likewise expresses close connection, — sometimes with stress upon the word which it introduces.

**ā cultū atque hūmānitātē prōvinciāe**, *from the civilization and refinement of the Province*; B. G. 1, 1, 3.

**hebetī ingeniō atque nullō**, *of a dull mind, and indeed of none at all*; Tusc. 5, 15, 45.

a. After words of likeness or difference, **atque** or **ac** has the force of *as* or *than*. Thus after **īdem**, *is*, **aequus** or **aequē**, **alius** or **aliter**, **contrā**, **pār** or **pariter**, **similis** or **similiter**, **simul**.

**Gallōrum eadē atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec**, *the Gallic way of storming is the same as that of the Belgians, as follows*; B. G. 2, 6, 2.

**prō eō ac mereor**, *according as I deserve* (in proportion to that, *as*); Cat. 4, 2, 3.

b. **Alius** and **aliter** may also be followed by **nisi**, *except*, or **quam**, *than*.

c. For the choice between the forms **atque** and **ac**, see 3, c, below.

3. **Neque** (**nec**), and **nēve** (**neu**), and *not*, *nor*, are at the same time negatives and connectives. (For the difference between them, see 464.)

**Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō . . .**, *Orgetorix died; and a suspicion is not lacking . . .*; B. G. 1, 4, 3.

a. The idea "and not" is regularly expressed in Latin (as in the above examples) by **neque** or **nēve**, not by **et nōn** or **et nē**. Similarly "and none" is expressed by **nec ūllus**, "and never" by **nec umquam**; etc., etc. **resistere neque dēprecārī**, *to resist and not beg off*; B. G. 4, 7, 3.

b. But **et nōn** may be used to express *contrast* or *emphasis*. **manēre et nōn discēdere**, *to remain and NOT give way*; Caecil. 2, 5. **periniquum et nōn ferundum**, *very unjust, and NOT to be endured*; Pomp. 22, 63.

c. The forms **atque** and **neque** are used before either vowels or (less frequently) consonants, **ac** and **nec** only before consonants (rarely before a guttural, as in **ac contrā**, B. G. 1, 44, 3). But the poets allow themselves more freedom.

**atque ea**, B. G. 1, 1, 3; **atque pecore**, 4, 1, 8; **neque eam**, 3, 2, 3; **neque pedibus**, 3, 12, 1; **ac lassitudine**, 2, 23, 1; **nec locō**, 7, 48, 4. (But **nec exanimēs**, Aen. 5, 669.)

## II. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS: **aut**, **vel**, **-ve**, **sive** (**seu**)

308. 1. **Aut**, *or*, is used to connect alternatives. These may both be possible, or they may be mutually exclusive.

**cūr dē suā virtutē aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent?** *why* (Cæsar asked) *should they despair of their own valor or of his vigilance?* B. G. 1, 40, 4. (They *might* do both.)

**hōrae mōmentō cita mors venit aut victōria laeta**, *in the brief space of an hour comes swift death or joyful victory*; Sat. 1, 1, 7. (Only *one could* come in a given case.)

2. **Vel**<sup>1</sup> or **-ve** (enclitic) is used to connect alternatives between which there may be a *choice*.

**Catilinam vel ēiēcimus vel ēmisimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbis prōsecūtī sumus**, *we have turned Catiline out, or, if you choose, have sent him out, or, if you choose, have presented him our compliments as he went out of his own accord*; Cat. 2, 1, 1.

3. **Sive** or **seu**, or (originally *or if*) is used to connect alternatives between which there is *doubt*.

**ēiectō sive ēmissō ex urbe Catilinā**, *when Catiline had been turned out of the city, or sent out*; Sull. 5, 17.

a. **Aut**, **vel**, or **sive** may introduce a *correction* ("or rather," "or perhaps").

### COPULATIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS IN PAIRS

309. The following pairs of Conjunctions are in frequent use.

**et . . . et . . .**, *both . . . and . . .*; Arch. 1, 1.

**neque (nec) . . . neque (nec) . . .**, *neither . . . nor . . .*; B. G. 2, 22, 1.

**et . . . neque (nec) . . .**, *both . . . and at the same time not . . .*; Cat. 3, 8, 20.

**neque (nec) . . . et . . .**, *not . . . and at the same time . . .*; B. G. 2, 25, 1.

**aut . . . aut . . .**, *either . . . or . . .*; B. G. 1, 39, 4.

**vel . . . vel . . .**, *either . . . or . . .*; B. G. 1, 19, 5.

**sive (seu) . . . sive (seu) . . .**, *whether . . . or . . .*; B. G. 1, 12, 6.

a. **-que . . . -que . . . and -que . . . atque (ac)** are found in later Latin.

**sēque remque publicam**, *both themselves and the Commonwealth*; Sall. Cat. 9, 3.

**sēque ac liberōs**, *themselves and their children*; Tac. Hist. 3, 63.

### III. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS: **at**, **autem**, **sed**, **tamen**, **vērō**, etc.

310. 1. **At**, *but*, *yet* (regularly first in its clause), expresses contrast or objection.

**quid tē impedit? Mōsne maiōrum? At persaepe etiam privāti perniciosōs civīs morte multārun**, *what hinders you? The traditions of our ancestors? But even men in private life have often punished mischief-making citizens with death*; Cat. 1, 11, 28.

a. **At**, *but*, or **at enim**, *but indeed*, may introduce the supposed objection of an adversary.

**at rēs populāris**, *but, you will say, it is a popular movement*; Phil. 1, 9, 21.

b. **At** often merely shifts the scene to another person or place.

**pāret Amor dictis cārae genetrīcis. At Venus . . .**, *Cupid obeys his beloved parent's words. But Venus . . .*; Aen. 1, 689.

c. The form **ast** is sometimes used in legal Latin and in poetry.

---

<sup>1</sup> An old Imperative of **volō**, meaning *choose*.

2. *Autem, however, on the other hand* (postpositive), expresses continuation and contrast.

*hanc si nostrī trānsirent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, si ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, parātī erant, the enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross this (swamp); our men, on the other hand, were ready, in case the enemy should start to cross; B. G. 2, 9, 1.*

*a. Continuative autem must sometimes be translated by now, and sometimes must be left untranslated; e.g. Rhēnus autem, B. G. 4, 10, 3.*

*b. Autem only rarely expresses addition (" moreover ").*

3. *Atquī, but at any rate, but yet, and yet*, is an emphatic *at*.  
*atquī nihil interest, and yet there is no difference; Balb. 10, 26.*

4. *Sed, but*, and the less common *vērū, but in truth, but*, are used to modify or contradict a previous statement. They are often accompanied by *tamen*.

*aetāte iam adfectum, sed tamen exercitātiōne rōbustum, feeling the effects of age already, but nevertheless kept vigorous by exercise; Cat. 2, 9, 20. (Modification.)*

*reliquōs nōn ex bellō, sed ex tuō scelere, the survivors, not of war, but of your wickedness; Verr. 3, 54, 126. (Contradiction.)*

*a. Cēterum, but, resembles sed in meaning (not in Cicero or Caesar as a true Conjunction).*

*b. Sed and vērū often follow nōn, in pairs of phrases. Thus nōn solum (modo) . . . sed (vērū), not only . . . but . . . ; Cat. 3, 10, 24.*

*Etiam or quoque, also, is often added to the sed or vērū. Thus nōn solum militāris virtūs, sed aliae quoque virtūtēs; Pomp. 22, 64.*

5. *Vērō, in fact, indeed, but, however* (postpositive), is used to express strong contrast or emphasis.

*mihi vērō ferreus, to me, indeed, he (would seem) hard of heart; Cat. 4, 6, 12.*

*a. Autem and vērō are interchangeable, but vērō is stronger.*

*b. Vērō is often on the doubtful line between Conjunction and Adverb.*

6. *Tamen, yet, nevertheless*, expresses something as true in spite of a previous concession, objection, or difficulty. It may be placed either at the beginning of a clause or after the emphatic word.

*vehementissimē perturbātus, tamen signum cognōvit, though greatly disturbed, still he recognized the seal; Cat. 3, 5, 12.*

7. *Quamquam, etsī, and tametsī, and yet, however*, are sometimes used to introduce a modification or objection made by the speaker (*Corrective quamquam, etsī, tametsī*).

*quamquam quid loquor! and yet why am I talking! Cat. 1, 9, 22.*

## IV. INFERENTIAL CONJUNCTIONS

**ergō, igitur, itaque, quārē, proinde, nam, enim**

**311.** 1. **Ergō**, *therefore*, expresses either natural result or logical inference.

2. **Igitur**, *accordingly, therefore, then* (usually postpositive), expresses natural result or logical inference, or the resumption of an interrupted thought.

3. **Itaque** (*and so*), *accordingly*, introduces an action naturally following from a preceding one, or an example of something stated just before.

4. **Quārē**, *wherefore*, introduces a consequence.

5. **Proinde** (*forth from that*), *therefore*, and sometimes **igitur** and **quārē**, introduce an inference which is also a command or exhortation.

*proinde exeant, let them therefore depart*; Cat. 2, 5, 11.

6. **Nam** and **enim**,<sup>1</sup> *for*, introduce an explanation of what has preceded, a justification of it, or a fuller statement. **Enim** is postpositive.

a. **Namque**, *for indeed*, is stronger than **nam**, and **etenim**, *for indeed*,<sup>2</sup> stronger than **enim**. (Note that **etenim** begins the clause, since in it the postpositive **enim** has an *et* to which to attach itself.)

b. In *nec enim* and *sed enim*, **enim** has its original sense of *indeed*.

*nec requiēvit enim, nor indeed did he rest*; Aen. 2, 100.

*sed enim audierat, but she had heard indeed*; Aen. 1, 19.

## SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

**312.** These can be understood only in connection with the constructions in which they are found, and accordingly will be treated under the Uses of the Moods.

## INTERJECTIONS

**313.** Interjections are exclamatory words (1) expressing feeling, (2) calling attention to some one or something, or (3) calling the attention of a person addressed to the speaker.

Thus **ā** or **āh!** *alas!* **ecce!** *behold!* **ō, O.**

<sup>1</sup> Originally *indeed*.

<sup>2</sup> Originally *and indeed*.

## C. THE EXPRESSION OF IDEAS THROUGH CASES, MOODS, AND TENSES

### PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMATICAL EXPRESSION

**314.** 1. The varying forms of Nouns, Pronouns, and Adjectives make, beside other things, what are called **Cases**; the varying forms of Verbs make, beside other things, what are called **Moods** and **Tenses**.

2. The study of Latin Syntax is in large degree the study of *the way in which the Romans expressed ideas by Cases, Moods, and Tenses*.

3. A given way of expressing an idea by a Case, a Mood, a Tense, etc., is called a **Construction**.

**315.** Each Case, each Mood, and each Tense probably had at one time a single meaning of a simple kind, or a limited sphere of closely related meanings.<sup>1</sup>

There took place, however, partly in the parent speech, partly in Latin itself, a large growth and change of these meanings; and in Latin literature we find *many* meanings of the Cases, and *many* meanings of the Moods and Tenses.

These growths came about mainly in four ways:

1. Through the **Figurative Use** of a Case, a Mood, or a Tense.

Thus *prō castris*, *before the camp* (literal place-idea), but also *prō patriā*, *in defence of country* (figurative idea).

2. Through the **Association** of a new idea with an existing construction.

Thus the idea of *Definition* or *Explanation* (**341**) grows up through association with the Genitive in combinations like *nōmen poetæ*, *the name of poet* (originally merely *the name which belongs to a poet*).

3. Through the **Fusion** of two or more constructions into one. (Constructions arising in this way may be called *Constructions of Composite Origin*.)

Thus three different Kinds of Ablative may express *Cause* (**444**): the Separative, as in our "ill from anxiety" (cf. **444**, *δ*), the Sociative, as in "ill with anxiety," and the Locative, as in "you take pleasure in my anxiety." There is evidence that Latin originally expressed Cause in all three of these ways. But since the form in the developed language was the *same* for all three, there must to the Roman feeling have seemed to be merely a *single* construction of Cause.

<sup>1</sup> But see, for a probable or possible exception, footnote, p. 303.



4. Through **Analogy**, i.e. the influence of one or more constructions upon another resembling them in meaning.

Thus, since the Ablative was used with *vēscor*, *feed*, *eat*, it might occur to some one to use the same case with *epulor*, *feast*, — as it did to Virgil in *Aen.* 3, 224 (see 429, *d*). This particular use is exceptional; but many *fixed uses* grew up in just such a way.

### AGREEMENT

**316.** By **Agreement** a word is put in the same case, number, etc., as a Noun or Pronoun, to show that it *belongs with* that Noun or Pronoun.

**317.** There are *three ways* in which an agreeing word may be attached to its Noun or Pronoun :

1. A word may be *closely united* with its Noun or Pronoun. Words so used are called **Attributive**.<sup>1</sup>

*hic vīlicus*, THIS *steward*. (*Hic* is Attributive.)

*vīlicus meus bonus*, MY GOOD *steward*. (*Meus* and *bonus* are Attributive.)

2. A word may be *loosely added* to its Noun or Pronoun. Words so used are called **Appositive**<sup>2</sup> (i.e. *put beside*).

*vīlicus meus, adiūtor rērum meārum*, my *steward*, THE AID of my *fortunes*. (*Adiūtor* is Appositive.)

*vīlicus meus, bonus et impiger*, my *steward*, GOOD and *ENERGETIC*. (*Bonus* and *impiger* are Appositive.)

*vīlicus meus, rēs meās adiūtāns*, my *steward*, AIDING my *fortunes*. (*Adiūtāns* is Appositive.)

*a.* An Appositive may be defined as a word loosely attached to another to exhibit it *under some special aspect*. Thus *Caesar cōsul* means *Caesar* IN THE CAPACITY OF *consul*, *Caesar* AS *consul*.

*b.* Apposition is, in reality, a sort of *shortened Predication*. Thus *Caesar cōsul* means *Caesar* — *he was at the time consul* —, etc.

*c.* An attributive or appositive word may express Condition, Cause, or Opposition. Thus *privātus*, *although in private life*; *Cat.* 1, 1, 3. See also 578, 6.

<sup>1</sup> The word *adherent* would more exactly describe the relation.

<sup>2</sup> Nouns so attached are regularly called Appositive, as here. *Adjectives* similarly attached have regularly been called Attributive. But there is no difference of relation, and it is better to use the same word in both cases.

3. A word may be *predicated* of its Noun or Pronoun (see 229). Words so used are called **Predicates**, or **Predicative**.

*vīlicus meus bonus et impiger est*, *my steward IS GOOD and ENERGETIC.*

(*Est* is a Predicate Verb, and *bonus* and *impiger* are Predicate Adjectives.)

*vīlicus meus adiutor rerum mearum est*, *my steward IS the AID of my fortunes.* (*Est* is a Predicate Verb, and *adiutor* a Predicate Noun.)

*vīlicus meus me adiutat*, *my steward AIDS me.* (*Adiutat* is a Predicate.)

a. A Verb can be attached to a Substantive in this way only.

## GENERAL STATEMENT OF AGREEMENT

**318.** *So far as forms exist to make it possible, an Attributive, Appositive, or Predicative word agrees in Gender, Number, Person, and Case with the word to which it belongs.*

## DETAILS OF AGREEMENT FOR NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, PARTICIPLES, AND PRONOUNS

### I. AGREEMENT WITH A SINGLE WORD

#### Agreement of Nouns

**319.** Nouns agree in *Case* with the substantives to which they belong, and, if possible, in *Gender* and *Number* also.

To these substantives they may be either *appositive* or *predicative*.

#### I. *Appositive Noun* :

**C. Volusenus, tribunus**, *Gaius Volusenus, a tribune*; B. G. 3, 5, 2.

**Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum**, *Volsinii, a city of the Etruscans*; Plin.

N. H. 2, 139. (Agreement in *gender* and *number* impossible.)

a. **Partitive Apposition.** A noun denoting a whole may be followed by a distributive pronoun in apposition, or by two or more words in apposition, each denoting a part.

*quisque suos patimur mania*, *we suffer, each his own spirit*; Aen. 6, 743.

*duo reges, ille bello hic pace, civitatem auxerunt*, *two kings built up the state, one by war, the other by peace*; Liv. 1, 21, 6.

#### II. *Predicative Noun* :

*stilus optimus dicendi effector (est)*, *the pen is the best producer of eloquence*; De Or. 1, 33, 150. (Notice the Gender of *effector*.)

*pecunia est effectrix multarum voluptatum*, *money is the producer of many pleasures*; Fin. 2, 17, 55. (Notice the Gender of *effectrix*.)

a. On the other hand, a noun may also be made to agree in Gender and Number with an Appositive which is *going to be* used.

*illās omnium doctrinārum inventricēs Athēnās, that inventor of all learning, Athens*; De Or. 1, 4, 13.

*rēgina Pecūnia, the almighty Dollar* (our lady Money); Ep. 1, 6, 37.

b. Most nouns exist in but a single gender-form, and agreement with another noun in Gender is therefore often impossible.

c. A substantive clause (indicative, subjunctive, or infinitive) may be used as an appositive or predicate. See especially 238 and 597, 1, a), b).

### Agreement of Adjectives and Participles

**320.** Adjectives and Participles agree in *Case, Gender, and Number* with the substantives to which they belong.

To these substantives they may be *attributive, appositive, or predicative*.

#### I. *Attributive Adjective or Participle*:

*magnam partem, a large part*; B. G. 2, 20, 2.

*acta vīta, my past life*; Sen. 11, 38.

#### II. *Appositive Adjective or Participle*:

*Lūcili ritū, nostrum meliōris utrōque, in the manner of Lucilius, a better man than either of us*; Sat. 2, 1, 29.

*Dīviciācus, Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit, Diviciacus, embracing Caesar, began to implore him*; B. G. 1, 20, 1.

#### III. *Predicative Adjective or Participle*:

*Caesar fit ab Ubiis certior, Caesar is informed by the Ubii* (made more certain); B. G. 6, 10, 1.

*Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partīs trēs, Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts*; B. G. 1, 1, 1.

### Agreement of Determinative Pronouns

**321.** Determinative pronouns agree in *Case, in Gender, and in Number* with the substantives to which they belong.

To these substantives they may be *attributive or predicative*.

#### I. *Attributive Pronoun*:

*is diēs, this day*; B. G. 5, 39, 4.      *eās rēs, these facts*; B. G. 1, 14, 1.

#### II. *Predicative Pronoun*:

*haec fuit ōrātiō, their address was as follows* (was this); B. G. 4, 7, 2.

### Agreement of Relative Pronouns

**322.** Relative Pronouns agree with their Antecedents (281, a) in *Gender* and *Number*, but their *Case* depends upon their relations in the Clauses to which they belong.

*ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat*, *came to the part which had not yet crossed the river*; B. G. 1, 12, 2. (Feminine Singular, because referring to *eam partem*; Nominative, because the Subject of *trānsierat*.)

*omnis clientis, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat*, *all his clients, of whom he had a great number*; B. G. 1, 4, 2. (Masculine Plural, because referring to *clientis*; Genitive, because depending upon *numerum*.)

### II. AGREEMENT WITH TWO OR MORE WORDS<sup>1</sup>

**323.** 1. An Adjective, Participle, or Pronoun belonging or referring to two or more substantives *of the same* Gender and Number must agree with them in Gender, and may be either of the Number of the nearest, or Plural, even if the nearest is Singular.

*Of the Number of the individual substantives:*

*ventum et aestum nactus secundum*, *getting a favorable wind and tide*; B. G. 4, 23, 6. (Relative) *prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent*, *in accordance with his clemency and gentleness, of which they themselves heard from others*; B. G. 2, 31, 4.

*Of the Plural Number:*

*angēbant ingentis spiritūs virum Sicilia Sardiniaque āmissae*, *the lost (i.e. the loss of) Sicily and Sardinia troubled the high-spirited man*; Liv. 21, 1, 5. (Relative) *Cottae et Tituri calamitātem, qui occiderint*, *the fate of Cotta and Titurius, who fell*; B. G. 6, 37, 8.

2. An Adjective, Participle, or Pronoun belonging or referring to two or more substantives *of different* Gender or Number, or both, may agree with the nearest of them; otherwise it must be in the Masculine Plural if *one* of the substantives denotes a man, in the Feminine Plural if *one* of them denotes a woman and *none* of them a man, or in the Neuter Plural if *all* of them denote things.

*Agreeing with the nearest substantive:*

*signum et manum suam cognōvit*, *acknowledged his seal and hand*; Cat. 3, 5, 12. (Relative) *nostrī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō ūti cōsuērānt ūtēbantur*, *our men were not showing the same eagerness and zeal that they were in the habit of showing*; B. G. 4, 24, 4.

<sup>1</sup> The uses of the Relative, which in no wise differ, are included in the statements of 323.

*In the Masculine Plural where one substantive denotes a man :*  
*rēx rēgiaque classis profecti (sunt), the king and the royal fleet set out ; Liv. 21, 50, 11.*

*In the Neuter Plural where all the substantives denote things :*  
*ubi ira et aegritūdō permixta sunt, when anger and grief are united ; Sall. Jug. 68, 1.*  
*(Relative) ūsus ac disciplina, quae ā nōbis accēpissent, the experience and discipline which they had gained from us ; B. G. 1, 40, 5.*

a. The Neuter Plural may be used even if the substantives are all Masculine or all Feminine, provided they all denote things.

#### AGREEMENT BY FORM, BY SENSE, AND BY ATTRACTION

**324.** In Agreement by Form,<sup>1</sup> a word takes its Gender and Number from the *form* of the word or phrase to which it belongs.

*sex milia hostium caesa, six thousand of the enemy were killed ; Liv. 21, 60, 7.*

**325.** In Agreement by Sense, a word takes its Gender and Number from the *real meaning* of the word or phrase to which it belongs. So from a Collective Noun or Adverb, the name of a Country or Town, a Possessive Pronoun or Adjective, or a Noun connected with another by *cum*. Thus :  
*magna pars occisi (sunt), a large part were killed ; Sall. Jug. 58, 2.*

*cum partim ē nōbis timidi sint, partim ā rē publicā āversi, since some of us are timid, and others hostile to the commonwealth ; Phil. 8, 11, 32.*

*Latium Capuaque multati, Latium and Capua were punished ; Liv. 8, 11, 12.*

*nostrā, qui remansissēmus, caede contentum, satisfied with killing us who had stayed behind ; Cat. 1, 3, 7.*

*filiam cum minōre filiō, accitōs Amphipolim, the daughter with the younger son, being summoned to Amphipolis ; Liv. 45, 28, 11.*

a. A Pronoun referring to the *general thought* of what precedes, or follows, is in the Neuter Gender.

*diērum quindecim supplicatiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli, a thanksgiving of fifteen days was voted, which up to this time had happened to no one ; B. G. 2, 35, 4.* Similarly with *id quod*, B. G. 4, 29, 3.

*quod bonum, faustum, fēlixque sit, Quiritēs, rēgem creāte, citizens, — may it be attended with good, with fortune, and with blessing, — appoint a king ; Liv. 1, 17, 10.* (The Relative refers to what is to follow.)

NOTE 1. The word *rēs* (*fact, circumstance, etc.*) may be used, in which case the pronoun must agree with it. So *quae rēs*, B. G. 3, 15, 4.

NOTE 2. There are thus three possible forms in such a case, — *quod, id quod, and quae rēs*.

b. Substantive clauses, infinitives used substantively, and quoted expressions, are neuter. Examples in 58, 3.

<sup>1</sup> Also called Grammatical Agreement.

c. A Neuter Adjective used substantively may be a predicate to a subject of any Gender.

*mūtābile semper fēmina*, a woman is always a fickle thing; Aen. 4, 569.

d. With similar feeling, the Romans liked to use the neuter *in general expressions*, in place of the masculine or feminine. Thus *mihi tē cārius nihil esse*, (be sure) *that nothing (= no one) is dearer to me than yourself*; Fam. 14, 3, 5; *quicquid invalidum est*, *whatever (= whoever) is weak*; Aen. 5, 716.

**326.** In Agreement by Attraction, a word takes its Gender and Number from some word closely connected with the one to which it really belongs. Thus:

1. An Adjective, Participle, or Pronoun may be attracted into the Gender and Number of an Appositive or Predicate.

*Corinthum patrēs vestri, tōtius Graeciae lūmen, exstinctum esse voluērunt*, *your ancestors chose that Corinth, the light of the whole Greek world, should be extinguished*; Pomp. 5. 11. (*Exstinctum* is attracted by *lūmen*.)

*idem velle atque nōlle, ea amicitia est*, *to have the same desire and the same aversion, that is friendship*; Sall. Cat. 20, 4. (*Ea* is attracted by *amicitia*.)

(Relative) *omnis Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, coniūrāre*, *that all the Belgians, who (which) we have said are a third part of Gaul, were conspiring*; B. G. 2, 1, 1.

2. For Attraction of a Predicate into the Dative after *licet esse*, etc., *it is permitted (to a man) to be . . .*, see 585, c.

3. A word denoting a Name may be attracted by a Dative depending upon *nōmen est* (374), *nōmen dō* (365), etc.

*nōmen Arctūrō est mihi*, *my name is Arcturus*; Rud. 5.

a. Otherwise the Appositive construction is regularly used with *nōmen est* (not the Explanatory Genitive); thus *Troia huic locō nōmen est*, Liv. 1, 1, 5.

4. Rarely, the Relative is attracted into the Case of its Antecedent. *quibus quisque poterat ēlātis*, *picking up what each could (= iis ēlātis quibus quisque poterat, in place of iis ēlātis quae, etc.)*; Liv. 1, 29, 4.

5. In poetry, the Noun is sometimes put before the Relative and attracted into its Case.

*urbem quam statuō vestra est*, *the city which I build, 't is yours*; Aen. 1, 573.

**327.** The Romans avoided making a Relative refer to an Appositive Noun, preferring to attach the latter to the Relative itself.

*tanta tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent; quae quidem rēs maximē fuit opportūna*, *so great a calm arose that they could not stir from the place; a circumstance which (which circumstance) was most fortunate*; B. G. 3, 15, 3.

## DETAILS OF AGREEMENT FOR VERBS

### I. AGREEMENT WITH A SINGLE SUBJECT

**328.** 1. A Finite Verb (146) agrees with its Subject in *Number* and *Person*.

*relinquēbātur ūna via, one road remained*; B. G. 1, 9, 1.

*erant itinera duo, there were two ways*; B. G. 1, 6, 1.

a. When the subject is a Relative, the verb follows the Person of the Antecedent.

*adeum quī fēci, here am I, who did it*; Aen. 9, 427.

2. If a verb-form contains a Participle, this Participle must agree with the Subject in *Case*, in *Gender*, and in *Number*.

*ea rēs est enūntiāta, the affair was made known*; B. G. 1, 4, 1.

*ita Helvētiōs institūtōs esse, (answered) that the Helvetians had been so trained*; B. G. 1, 14, 7.

### II. AGREEMENT WITH TWO OR MORE SUBJECTS

**329.** A Verb may have two or more words for its Subject, and these may be of different Persons, Genders, or Numbers. The usage in such cases is as follows :

1. Where the Subjects are of different persons, the First Person is preferred to the other two, and the Second Person to the Third.

*sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et suāvisimus Cicerō valēmus, if you and Tullia are well, my dear boy and I are well*; Fam. 14, 5, 1.

2. When a Verb belongs to two or more words, it may either agree with the nearest of them, or be put in the Plural.

*Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est, the daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons were taken prisoners*; B. G. 1, 26, 4.

*ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius cōnsēderant, where Titurius and Aurunculeius had established themselves*; B. G. 6, 32, 4.

3. When a Verb belongs to several Subjects connected by *aut*, *aut . . . aut . . .*, or *nec . . . nec . . .*, it may be in either the Singular or the Plural.

*neque pēs neque mēns suum officium facit, neither foot nor mind does its duty*; Eun. 729.

*haec sī neque ego neque tū fēcimus, if neither you nor I did it*; Ad. 103.

# AGREEMENT OF VERBS BY FORM, BY SENSE, AND BY ATTRACTION

**330.** In Agreement by Form, a Verb takes its Number from the *form* of the word to which it belongs.

*pars stupet dōnum, a part (is) are amazed at the gift; Aen. 2, 31.*

**331.** In Agreement by Sense, a Verb takes its Number from the *real meaning*, not the *form*, of its Subject. This takes place as follows:

1. A Verb agreeing with a *Collective Noun* may be in the Plural.

*pars mōlem mirantur, a part admire the mighty bulk; Aen. 2, 31. Civitāti persuāsit ut exirent, persuaded the state to go out; B. G. 1, 2, 1.*

2. A Verb agreeing with *quisque, uterque, etc.*, may be in the Plural.  
*uterque eōrum exercitum ēdūcunt, each of them leads out his army; B. C. 3, 30, 3.*

*a.* For the more common Partitive Apposition, see **319, I, a.**

3. A Verb agreeing with two or more Subjects which make *one compound idea* may be in the Singular.

*ratio ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, the plan and arrangement of the line of march was different; B. G. 2, 19, 1.*

4. A Verb agreeing with a Subject attached to another word by *cum* may be in the Plural.

*Lentulus, cum ceteris qui principēs coniūratiōnis erant, cōstituerant . . . , Lentulus, with the other leaders of the conspiracy, had determined . . . ; Sall. Cat. 43, 1.*

**332.** In Agreement by Attraction, a Verb may take its Number, not from the Subject, but from an Appositive or Predicate which stands *between* it and the Subject.

*pictōrēs suum quisque opus ā vulgō cōsiderārī vult, painters want each his own work to be examined by the public; Off. 1, 41, 147.*

*amantium irae amoris integratiō est, lovers' tiffs are love's renewal; And. 555.*

## LEADING IDEA NOT IN THE PRINCIPAL NOUN

**333.** The leading idea of a phrase may be carried, not by the grammatically leading Noun, but by an Adjective, Participle, Pronoun, or Noun *in agreement with* it. (See also **608.**)

*post urbem conditam, after the founding of the city; Cat. 4, 7, 14.*  
*ante Verrem praetōrem, before the praetorship of Verres; Verr. 3, 6, 15.*  
*duce laetus Achātē, rejoicing in the guidance of Achates; Aen. 1, 696.*

*a.* The usage is common in Cicero, but still more frequent later.



## REMAINING USES OF THE CASES

334. GENERAL INTRODUCTION. 1. The earliest ideas expressed by the cases (as these are represented in Latin) were probably as follows:

By the Nominative, *the Name*.

" " Genitive, *that which Possesses*; or *a Whole, of which a Part only is affected*.<sup>1</sup>

" " Dative, *Direction*.

" " Accusative, *Contact or Nearness*.

" " Vocative, *Address*.

" " Ablative,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Separation.} \\ \text{Association.} \\ \text{Location.} \end{array} \right.$

2. The Ablative is made up (61, *b*) of remains of three cases possessed by the parent speech: I. the true Ablative, expressing Separation, II. the Sociative (generally called, from a derived use, the Instrumental), expressing Association (i.e. Accompaniment), and III. the Locative, expressing the Place Where.

3. It is obvious that these three cases of the parent speech originally expressed, or involved, *space-ideas*: the Ablative that of motion *from* some place, the Locative that of being *in* some place, the Sociative that of being *with* something (necessarily *in* some place). The two other common and striking space-ideas, namely that of Direction toward something, and that of Contact or Nearness, must have been expressed by two out of the remaining cases; and the actual uses of the Dative and the Accusative make it probable that these were respectively the two.

4. All space-ideas were originally expressed by bare cases; for Prepositions were of comparatively late origin (see 125; 303, *a*).

5. From expressions of space-relations arose a variety of figurative expressions. Compare English *FROM the camp* and *FROM affection*, *IN the camp* and *IN haste*.

## THE NOMINATIVE

## Subject of a Finite Verb

335. The *Subject of a Finite Verb* is put in the Nominative.

*hic tamen vivit*, *still this man lives*; Cat. I, 1, 2.

*interfectus est C. Gracchus*, *Gaius Gracchus was killed*; Cat. I, 2, 4.

*a.* The Subject is sometimes a Substantive Clause or an Infinitive (238, 597, I, *a*).

*b.* A Nominative is frequently used without a Verb, to present a person or thing simply as doing, suffering, or being, without telling *what* he or it does, suffers, or is.

*en Priamus*, *lo and behold, Priam*; Aen. I, 461.

*clāmor inde concursusque populi*, *then a shouting and a rushing together of the people*; Liv. I, 41, 1.

*c.* The *Subject of the Historical Infinitive* is likewise put in the Nominative. (Examples under 595.)

<sup>1</sup> The idea of Possession was perhaps the older; for the Part belongs to the Whole. Thus *multi Rōmānorum*, *many belonging to (= of) the Romans*.

**336.** The Nominative is also used :

1. As an Appositive. See 317, 2, and 319.
2. As a Predicate. See 317, 3, and 319.
3. In Exclamations. See 399, *a*.
4. In place of the Vocative. See 401.

## THE GENITIVE

**337.** The Latin Genitive expresses three general classes of ideas :

- I. *Possession.*
- II. *The Whole, of Which a Part is affected.*
- III. *Various ideas, in constructions of Composite Origin (Fusion).*

**338.** SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE GENITIVE

I Possessive Genitive	{	Genitive of Possession or Connection, directly attached (339)
		Possessive Genitive in Predicate (Genitive of Possession, Duty, Mark, etc.; 340)
	{	Derivatives from Genitive of Possession, directly attached :
		Explanatory Genitive (341) <sup>1</sup>
	{	Genitive of the Charge (342) <sup>1</sup>
		Genitive of the Penalty or Fine (343) <sup>1</sup>
	{	Subjective Genitive (344)
		Genitive with <i>rēfert</i> and <i>interest</i> (345)
II Genitive of the Whole	{	True Genitive of the Whole (346)
		Genitive of Plenty or Want (347)
	{	Poetic Genitive of Separation (348)
		Genitive of Material or Composition (349)
	{	Genitive of the Object, with Verbs :
		with <i>oblīviscor</i> , <i>memini</i> , <i>reminīscor</i> (350)
	{	" <i>admoneō</i> , <i>commoneō</i> , <i>commonefaciō</i> (351)
		" <i>miseret</i> , <i>paenitet</i> , <i>piget</i> , <i>puget</i> , <i>taedet</i> ; <i>miseretor</i> , <i>miserēscō</i> (352)
	{	" <i>potior</i> (353)
III Of Composite Origin	{	Objective Genitive and Genitive of Application (354)
		Descriptive Genitive (355)
	{	Genitive of Value or Price (356)
		Genitive with Neuter Plural Adjectives (357)

<sup>1</sup> In this table and those that follow, the setting back of a construction from the line means that it is derived from the *first* construction above standing *farther to the left*. Thus (under I) from the Possessive Genitive is derived the Explanatory Genitive; from the latter, the Genitive of the Charge; and from the last, the Genitive of the Penalty.

## I. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE AND ITS DERIVATIVES

## Possessive Genitive in Direct Attachment

**339.** *Possession or Connection* may be expressed by a Genitive attached to a Noun.

*servō accusātōris*, a slave belonging to (of) the accuser; Mil. 22, 59.  
*difficultātēs bellī*, difficulties connected with the war; Leg. Agr. 2, 30, 83.

a. As in English, the possessive pronoun of the first or second person or of the reflexive is regularly preferred to the Genitive of the personal pronoun; similarly, *aliēnus* to the Genitive of *alius*.

*meum filium*, my son; Cat. 4, 11, 23.

*aliēnis praeceptis*, the teachings of others; Pomp. 10, 28.

b. When used with a possessive pronoun, *ipse*, *sōlus*, *ūnus*, *omnis*, and sometimes other words, agree with the implied Genitive.

*nostrō omnium flētū*, the tears of us all; Mil. 34, 92.

*vestrae ipsōrum virtūtī*, your own valor; Liv. 1, 28, 4.

*tuum studium adulēsentis*, your zeal as a youth; Fam. 15, 13, 1.

*aedem Nymphārum*, the temple of the Nymphs; Mil. 27, 73.

*culius pater*, whose father (the father of whom); B. G. 1, 3, 4.

*amicōs populī Rōmānī*, friends of the Roman people; B. G. 1, 35, 4.

c. Certain adjectives meaning *like*, *common*, *connected*, or the opposite, may take either the Dative of Relation (362) or the Genitive of Possession or Connection: <sup>1</sup>

*tui similis*, like you (the like of you); Cat. 1, 2, 5.

*superstes omnium meōrum*, the survivor of all my people; Quintil. 6, Pr. 4.

*aliēnum dignitātis*, inconsistent with dignity; Fin. 1, 4, 11.

NOTE. With words denoting persons, *similis* more frequently takes the Genitive.

d. The idea of Possession or Connection may be lost, though the Genitive remains. Thus with *instar*, *causā*, *grātiā*, and *ergō* (the last three post-positive).

*instar montis equum*, a horse (the like of) like a mountain; Aen. 2, 15.

*amicitiāe causā*, by reason of their friendship; B. G. 1, 39, 2.

*illius ergō*, on his account (on account of him); Aen. 6, 670.

e. In a few expressions, the noun on which the Genitive depends may be omitted (so regularly with the master's name). Thus *ad Castoris*, to (the temple) of Castor; Mil. 33, 91; *Hectoris Andromachē*, Hector's (wife) Andromache; Aen. 3, 319.

f. For the Genitive with *prīdiē* and *postridiē*, see 380, c.

g. For the occasional Genitive with *tenuis*, see 407, 3.

<sup>1</sup> So especially *similis*, *pār*, *commūnis*, *adfinis*, and their opposites *dissimilis*, *contrārius*, *aliēnus*, *proprius*. Also *superstes*, surviving (left over with relation to, or the survivor of).

### Possessive Genitive in the Predicate

**340.** The Possessive Genitive may be used in the Predicate with *sum* or *faciō* to express the idea of *belonging to*, or various ideas naturally suggested by this (*is the business of, the part of, the duty of, etc.*).

*neque Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Rōmāni, and that Gaul did not belong to Ariovistus any more than to the Roman people; B. G. I, 45, 1.*

*virī fortis (est) nē supplicii quidem movērī, it is the duty of a brave man not to be stirred even by tortures; Mil. 30, 82.*

*a.* In certain phrases, the idea of Possession is faint or wholly lost.

*nihil reliquī fēcērunt, they left nothing undone (made nothing to belong to the left undone); B. G. 2, 26, 5.*

*b.* For the Dative of Possession with the verb *sum*, see **374**.

### Explanatory Genitive

**341.** The Genitive may be attached to a Noun to *define* or *explain* its meaning.

*hoc poëtae nōmen, this name of "poet"; Arch. 8, 19.*

*Troiae urbem, the city of Troy; Aen. I, 565.*

### Genitive of the Charge

**342.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, or acquitting*<sup>1</sup> may take a *Genitive of the Thing Charged*.

*eum accūsās avāritiae? do you accuse him of avarice? Flacc. 33, 83.*

*mē inertiae condemnō, I condemn myself for negligence; Cat. I, 2, 4.*

*a.* Similarly *reus, defendant* (i.e. person accused), may take the Genitive. Thus *pecūniarum repetundarum reus, charged with extortion* (money to be recovered); *Sall. Cat. 18, 3.*

*b.* The Thing Charged may also be expressed by *dē* with the Ablative. Thus *dē vi postulāvit, arraigned him on a charge of violence; Senat. 8, 19.*

*c.* By a different turn of the thought, *inter* may be used to denote the class in which the accused is placed. Thus *inter sicariōs accūsābant, accused him of belonging among cutthroats* (i.e. of murder); *Rosc. Am. 32, 90.*

*d.* The Thing Charged may become the Direct Object (**390**), the Person being left unmentioned. Thus *ambitum accūsās? do you charge bribery? Mur. 32, 67.*

<sup>1</sup> So especially *accūsō* and *incūsō*, *arcessō*, *arguō*, *dēferō*, *postulō*, *damnō*, *condemnō*, *convincō*, *absolvō*, *liberō*. Similarly, in poetry or later prose, *interrogō* and the adjectives or participles *innocēns*, *insōns*, *manifestus*, *noxius*, *innoxius*, *suspectus*, etc.

## Genitive of the Penalty or Fine

**343.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, or acquitting* may take a *Genitive of the Penalty or Fine*.

octuplī *damnāre*, to condemn (to pay) eightfold; Verr. 3, 11, 28.

capitis *condemnāri*, to be condemned to death; Rab. Perd. 4, 12.

*damnātum vōtī*, successful in his vow (condemned to pay it); Nep.

Timol. 5, 3. With similar meaning *vōtī reus*, Aen. 5, 237.

a. The construction is confined in prose to indefinite words like *pecūniae*, money, and *quantī*, how much, multiples like *octuplī*, eightfold, and the word *capitis*, death.

b. For the Ablative of the Penalty with verbs of *punishing or fining*, see 428.

## Subjective Genitive

**344.** The Genitive may be used to express the *Subject of an Activity denoted by a Noun*.

*ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī*, from wrong at the hands of Cassivellaunus;

B. G. 5, 20, 3. (He committed the wrong.)

*Caesaris adventus*, Caesar's coming; B. G. 6, 41, 4. (Caesar came.)

Genitive of the Person or Thing Concerned, with *rēfert* and *interest*

**345.** *Rēfert* and *interest*, it concerns, is for the interest of, take the *Genitive of the Person or Thing Concerned*, if expressed by a Noun, the Feminine Ablative Singular of the Possessive if expressed by a Pronoun (*meā*, *tuā*, etc.).

*quantum interesset P. Clōdī sē perire cōgitābat*, he always kept in mind how much his death concerned Publius Clodius; Mil. 21, 56.

*nihil meā rēfert*, it does not concern me; Pis. 17, 39.

*meā videō quid intersit*, I see what is to my interest; Cat. 4, 5, 9.

a. With the Genitive of the Person Cicero prefers *interest*.

b. The *degree* of the concern or interest may be expressed by an Accusative of Degree (387), a Genitive of Value (356), or an Adverb. Thus *meā interest plūrimū, plūrimī, or maximē*, it is greatly to my interest.

II. THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE,<sup>1</sup> AND ITS DERIVATIVES

## Genitive of the Whole in the Strict Sense

**346.** The *Whole to which a Part Belongs* may be expressed by the Genitive.

<sup>1</sup> The name *Partitive Genitive*, which is often used, is convenient because of its shortness. But the student should remember that what is expressed by the Genitive word itself is the *Whole*, not the *Part*.

The construction may be used with any Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, or Adverb that can imply a *part* of a whole.

*eōrum ūna pars, one part of them*; B. G. 1, 1, 5.

*primōs civitātis, the first men of the state*; B. G. 2, 3, 1.

*ubinam gentium sumus? where in the world are we?* Cat. 1, 4, 9.

*sceleris nihil, no crime* (nothing of crime); Mil. 12, 32.

*quid suī cōsili sit, what his plan is*; B. G. 1, 21, 2. (For *quid sibi cōsili sit, what of plan he has*.)

a. With words like *nihil* and *aliquid*, adjectives of the Second Declension may be put either in the neuter Genitive of the Whole, or in direct agreement; while adjectives of the Third Declension are almost always in direct agreement.

*nihil certī* (Ac. 1, 12, 46) and *nihil certum* (Tull. 15, 35), *nothing certain*.

*nihil maius, nothing greater*; Lig. 12, 38.

b. *Uterque, each of two*, and *quisque, each of a larger number*, regularly agree with a noun, but take the Genitive of the Whole if a pronoun is used.

*uterque dux, each general, both generals*; Marc. 8, 24.

*quōrum utrīque, to each of whom*; Mil. 27, 75.

c. English often uses the word "of" where there is no partitive relation, as in "all of us," meaning "we all." Latin is *generally* exact in this respect.

*hī omnēs, all (of) these*; B. G. 1, 1, 2.

*reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls* (the remaining Gauls); B. G. 2, 2, 3.

d. In poetry and later prose the Genitive of the Whole is sometimes used with words *not* implying a part.

*tē, sancte deōrum, thee, O holy one of the gods*; Aen. 4, 576.

*fīes nōbilitium tū quoque fontium, thou too shalt be of the world's great fountains*; Carm. 3, 13, 13. (In Predicate.)

e. After many words, the Whole to which a Part belongs *may* be expressed by *dē* or *ex* with the Ablative (405). So regularly with *quidam* and with cardinal numbers (130). Thus *ūnus ex istis, the only one of these*; Cat. 3, 7, 16.

### Genitive of Plenty or Want

347. Certain Adjectives and Verbs of *plenty* or *want* may take the Genitive.

*plēna exemplōrum vetustās, the past is full of examples*; Arch. 6, 14.

*implentur Bacchī, they take their fill of wine*; Aen. 1, 215.

*inopēs amicōrum, poor in friends*; Am. 15, 53.

*nē quis auxili egēret, that none might be in need of aid*; B. G. 6, 11, 4.

*a.* So, in Ciceronian Latin, the adjectives **plēnus**, **refertus**, **expers**, **inops**, **inānis**, and the verbs **indigeō**, **egeō**, **compleō**, **impleō** (the last three rarely).<sup>1</sup>

*b.* The words of this list also take the Ablative (425) freely in Ciceronian Latin, except **plēnus**, **inops**, **indigeō** (these three rarely), and **expers** (never).

*c.* Other words of Plenty or Want take the Ablative in Ciceronian Latin (425).

### Poetic Genitive of Separation

348. In poetry the Genitive is sometimes used to express *Separation*.

*ut mē labōrum levās!* *how you relieve me of toil!* Rud. 247.

*liber labōrum, free from toil*; A. P. 212. (Cf. *liberī ā dēliciis*; Leg. Agr. 1, 9, 27.)

*dēsine querellārum, cease from complaints*; Carm. 2, 9, 17.

*neque ciceris invīdit, nor grudged his chick-pea*; Sat. 2, 6, 83.

REMARK. This construction is an extension of the Genitive of Want; but the extension was doubtless *helped* by the influence of the Greek Genitive of Separation.

### Genitive of Material or Composition

349. *Material* or *Composition* may be expressed by a Genitive attached to a Noun.

*obtortī circulus aurī, a chain of twisted gold*; Aen. 5, 559.

*ancillārum gregēs, crowds (composed) of maidservants*; Mil. 21, 55.

*a.* The same idea *may* be expressed by the Ablative with **ex** (in poetry with **dē** also, or without preposition), and *must* be so expressed if a verb is used (406, 4).

*factae ex rōbre, made of oak*; B. G. 3, 13, 3.

### GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT, WITH VERBS

#### Genitive of the Object of Mental Action

350. **Oblīvīscor**, **meminī**, and **reminīscor**, *forget*, *remember*, and *recall*, may take a *Genitive Object*.

If the Object is a *person*, **oblīvīscor** takes the Genitive only, **meminī** *either* the Genitive or the Accusative, **reminīscor** the Accusative only.

If the Object is a *thing*, all three verbs take *either* the Genitive *or* the Accusative of a Noun, and (regularly) only the Accusative of a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective.

<sup>1</sup> Also, in later Latin (often with forced meaning), **dīves**, **egēnus**, **lactus**, and many others; and the verbs **repleō**, **careō**, and others.

vivōrum meminī, nec tamen Epicūrī licet obliviscī, *I remember the living, and, at the same time, it isn't possible for me to forget Epicurus*; Fin. 5, 1, 3.

nec umquam obliviscar noctis illius, *nor shall I ever forget that night*; Planc. 42, 101. Cf. reminisceretur virtūtis, B. G. 1, 13, 4.

an verō oblītī estis sermōnēs et opiniōnēs? *have you forgotten the expressions of opinion?* Mil. 23, 62.

sī id meminerītis, quod obliviscī nōn potestis, *if you bear in mind this fact, which you cannot forget*; Mil. 4, 11.

a. Meminī may also take dē of a person (*remember about*).

b. Recordor, *recollect*, takes dē of a person, and either dē or the Accusative of a thing.

**351.** Admoneō and commoneō, *remind*, and commonefaciō, *remind or inform*, may take, besides an Accusative of the Person, a Genitive of *the Thing of Which* he is reminded or informed.

admonēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae, *he would remind one man of his poverty, another of his covetousness*; Sall. Cat. 21, 4.

grammaticōs officiī suī commonēmus, *we remind the professors of languages of their duty*; Quintil. 1, 5, 7.

a. The Thing of Which one is reminded or informed, if expressed by a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective, is regularly in the Accusative. (See 397.)

b. These verbs of Reminding and Informing may take dē with the Ablative.

### Genitive of the Object of Feeling

**352.** 1. Impersonal Verbs of Feeling may take, besides the Accusative of the Person Feeling, a Genitive of that *toward which the feeling is directed*.

These Verbs are miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, and taedet, *it makes one pitiful, repentant, disgusted, ashamed, or bored*.

mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit, *I shall never repent of what I have done*; Cat. 4, 10, 20. (Cf. "It repenteth me," Genesis, VI, 7.)

eōrum nōs miseret, *we feel pity for them*; Mil. 34, 92.

a. Miseret never has a Subject. The other verbs of the list sometimes have for a Subject a Neuter Pronoun in the Singular, an Infinitive, or a quod-Clause (552).

taedet caelī convexa tuērī, *it wearies her to gaze upon the vault of Heaven*; Aen. 4, 451.



2. The *personal* Verbs of Feeling *miserere* and the poetic *miserescō*, *I pity*, take their Object in the Genitive. (*Miseror* takes the Accusative.)  
*miserere animi nōn dignaferentis, pity a soul that bears ills undeserved*; Aen. 2, 144.

3. The old Genitive of the Object of Feeling is also found in poetry with the personal verbs *cupiō*, *fastidiō*, *mīror*, *studeō*, and *vereor*.

*cupiunt tui, long for you*; Mil. Gl. 963.

*iūstitiae mīrer?* *should I admire your justice?* Aen. 11, 126.

### Genitive with *potior*

353. The Genitive is sometimes used with *potior*, *become master of, gain*.

*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope to be able to master the whole of Gaul*; B. G. 1, 3, 8.

*urbis potiri, to gain possession of the city*; Sall. Cat. 47, 2.

a. For the regular Ablative, see 429; for the occasional Accusative, 429, b.

## III. GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS OF COMPOSITE ORIGIN (FUSION)

### Objective Genitive and Genitive of Application

354. The Genitive may be used to express the *Object* or the *Application* of a Noun, an Adjective, or a Participle used adjectively.

The list of nouns is very large. The adjectives are especially those denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, memory, or participation*.<sup>1</sup>

*rēgnī cupiditāte, by desire of sovereignty*; B. G. 1, 2, 1.

*cupidum rērum novārum, desirous of a revolution*; B. G. 1, 18, 3.

*cōnsciū inīūriāe, conscious of wrong-doing*; B. G. 1, 14, 2.

*amantissimōs rei pūblicae virōs, firm friends of the state*; Cat. 3, 2, 5.

*rei pūblicae inīūriam, the wrong done to the state*; B. G. 1, 20, 5.

*excessū vitāe, by departure from life*; Tusc. 1, 12, 27.

*cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, in whom he had the greatest confidence in all matters*; B. G. 1, 19, 3.

*praestantiam virtūtis, preëminence in virtue*; Am. 19, 70.

<sup>1</sup> So especially *avidus*, *cōnsciū*, *cōnsors*, *cupidus*, *exhērēs*, *ignārus*, *immūnis*, *insciū*, *insolēns*, *insuētus*, *memor*, *immemor*, *particeps*, *peritus*, *imperitus*, *rudis*, *studiōsus*. Also *expers*, when meaning *not sharing, without knowledge of*, and *cōnsultus* in *iūris cōnsultus*.

*Rudis*, *insolēns*, and *insuētus* differ but little in meaning from *insciū* and *imperitus*, and therefore followed them in taking the Genitive; similarly *cōnsultus* followed *studiōsus* and *peritus*. But the feeling of the Genitive necessarily changed somewhat to fit the meanings of the new group, becoming that of *Application*.

a. Instead of the Objective Genitive depending on a noun, prepositions with the Accusative are often employed, especially *ergā*, *in*, and *adversus*, *toward*, *against*.

*in hominēs iniūriam*, *wrong to men*; N.D. 3, 34, 84. (Cf. *rei pūblīcae iniūriam*, above.)  
*deōrum summō ergā vōs amōre*, *by Heaven's great love toward you*; Cat. 3, 1, 1.

b. In Ciceronian Latin, only a moderate number of adjectives, mostly expressing or suggesting *Activity*, take this Genitive. With nouns it is more freely used.

c. Freer poetic and later Genitive of the Object or of Application. In poetry and later Latin this Genitive is used with greater freedom.<sup>1</sup>

*fessi rērum*, *weary of trouble*; Aen. 1, 178.

*integer vitae*, *upright of life*; Carm. 1, 22, 1.

*indignus avōrum*, *unworthy of my ancestors*; Aen. 12, 649.

d. Adjectives and possessive pronouns are sometimes used with objective force.

*metus hostilis*, *fear of the enemy*; Sall. Iug. 41, 2.

### Descriptive Genitive

355. *Kind* or *Measure* may be expressed by the Genitive of a Noun accompanied by a modifier.

The construction may be either appositive or predicative.

*Catō, adulēscēns nulliūs cōsili*, *Cato, a young man of no judgment*;  
 Q. Fr. 1, 2, 5, 15.

*Quīntus Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis*, *Quintus Lucanius, of the same rank*;  
 B. G. 5, 35, 7.

*hominēs magnae virtūtis*, *men of great courage*; B. G. 2, 15, 5.

*eius modī tempestātēs*, *storms of such a kind*; B. G. 3, 29, 2.

*māteria cuiusque generis*, *timber of every kind*; B. G. 5, 12, 5.

*diērum vīginti supplicātiō*, *a thanksgiving of twenty days*; B. G. 4, 38, 5.

*meam erus esse operam dēputat parvī preti*, *my master considers my services to be of small value*; Hec. 799.

a. Compounds equivalent to a noun *plus* an adjective, and nouns not used with serious meaning (e.g. *nihilī*, *zero*, *naught*, *naucī*, *a peasant*), take no modifier.

*tridui* (= *trium diērum*) *mora*, *a delay of three days*; B. G. 4, 11, 4.

*homō nihilī*, *man of naught*; Trin. 1017 (= *vir minumi preti*, Trin. 925).

b. In Ciceronian Latin this Genitive is generally attached to a *class-name* in apposition with the name of the person (as in the first example above). In later Latin it is more freely attached to the name of the person (as in the second example above).

c. For the Descriptive Ablative, see 443.

<sup>1</sup> Thus, with *Objective* feeling, with *certus*, *exsors*, *liberālis*, *potēns*, *praescius*, *profusus*, *sēcūrus*, *tenāx*. The list with the feeling of *Application* is very large.

## Genitive of Value or Price

**356.** *Indefinite Value or Price*<sup>1</sup> may be expressed by the Genitive of :

1. Certain Adjectives, especially *tantī, quantī, magnī, parvī; plūris, minōris; plūrimī, maximī, minimī*.

2. Certain Substantives *not used with serious meaning*, especially *nihilī, zero, nauci, a peascod, assis, a copper, flocci, a straw, pilli, a hair, huius, that much* (with a snap of the finger).

*haec nōlī putāre parvī, don't reckon these things of small account; Catull. 23, 25. (Cf. esse dēputat parvī preti in 355.)*

*nōlī spectāre quantī homō sit; parvī enim preti est quī tam nihilī est, don't consider how much the fellow is worth, for he is of little value who is so worthless; Q. Fr. I, 2, 4, 14. (Note the parallel expressions parvī preti, quantī, and nihilī.)*

*nōn habeo nauci Marsum augurem, I don't care a peascod for a Marsian augur; Div. I, 58, 132.*

a. For the Ablative of Price or Value, see 427.

## Genitive with Neuter Plural Adjectives

**357.** In the later writers a Genitive Noun is often attached to the Neuter Plural of an Adjective, where in Ciceronian Latin the Adjective would agree with the Noun.

*strāta viārum (= strātās viās), the paved streets; Aen. I, 422.*

*angusta viārum (= angustās viās), the narrow streets; Aen. 2, 332.*

## THE DATIVE

**358.** The Latin Dative expresses three general classes of ideas :

- I. *Figurative Direction (to- or for-Dative).*
- II. *(Rarely) Literal Direction (to-Dative).*
- III. *Person or Thing after Verbs compounded with certain Prepositions (Construction of Composite Origin).*

<sup>1</sup> The principal verbs with which the construction is used are *est, aestimō and existimō, putō, habeo, dūcō, faciō, pendō, emō, redimō, vēndō, vēneō*.

*Aestimō* with this construction is rare before Cicero; *existimō* is always rare with it.

## 359. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE DATIVE

I Dative of Figurative Direction	{	Dative of Tendency or Purpose (360)
		Dative of the Concrete Object for Which (361)
		Dative of Direction or Relation, with Adjectives, Verbs, Adverbs, etc. (362)
		Dative of the Indirect Object (365)
		Dative of Reference or Concern:
		With any Verb (366)
		<i>Versus</i> the Accusative (367)
		<i>In place of</i> the Genitive (368)
		Freer Poetic Dative of Reference or Concern (369)
		Dative of the Person Judging (370)
II Dative of Direction in Space	{	Dative of the Local Point of View (370, a)
		Dative with Verbs of Taking Away (371)
		Ethical Dative (372)
III Of Compos- ite Origin	{	Dative of the Agent (373)
		Dative of Possession (374)
		Poetic Dative of Direction in Space (375)
III Of Compos- ite Origin	{	Dative after Verbs compounded with certain Prepositions (376)

## I. DATIVE OF FIGURATIVE DIRECTION

Dative of Tendency or Purpose<sup>1</sup>

**360.** The Dative of many Nouns may be used to express *Tendency or Purpose*.<sup>2</sup>

*sibi eam rem cūrae futūram, that he would take care of this matter* (this matter would be to him for a care); B. G. 1, 33, 1.

*sī haec vōx nōn nullis salūtī fuit, if this voice of mine has been* (for) *the salvation of a number of men* (has tended toward); Arch. 1, 1.

*mūnerī mīsīt, sent as a present* (for a present); Nep. Att. 8, 6.

*auxiliō Nervii venirent, were coming to assist the Nervii*; B. G. 2, 29, 1.

a. These Datives are mostly Abstracts, and all are Singular.

b. The Dative of Tendency or Purpose is often accompanied by a Dative of the Person (Dative of Reference, 366), as in *auxiliō Nervii* above. Hence the common name "Two Datives."

<sup>1</sup> Compare English "it is for men's health to be temperate," "give a thing for a present," "he is not to my satisfaction," etc.

<sup>2</sup> The verbs most commonly used with this construction are *sum, fiō, dō, dōnō, relinquō, mittō, eō, veniō, habeo, dūcō, tribuō, vertō*. The nouns most commonly used are *auxiliō* and *subsidiō*, *praesidiō*, *salūtī*, *exitiō*, *bonō*, *malō* and *dētrimentō*, *impedimentō*, *onerī*, *cūrae*, *dolōrī*, *ōrnāmentō*, *honōrī*, *probrō*, *ūsui*, *cordī*, *odiō*, *dōnō* and *mūnerī*, *crimini*, *vitiō*. *Frūgī* (for profit), *useful*, as in *est frūgī bonae*, Trin. 321, comes also to be used as an *indeclinable adjective*. In early and later writers, many other verbs and nouns appear in this construction.

### Dative of the Concrete Object for Which

**361.** The Dative of the *Concrete Object for Which* something is intended may be used with Phrases containing Verbs of *choosing* or *appointing*, and a few others.<sup>1</sup>

castris locum dēlēgit, *chose a place for a camp*; B. G. I, 49, 1.

diēs conloquiō dictus est, *a day was set for a conference*; B. G. I, 42, 3.

a. **Later Freer Dative of the Object for Which.** The poets and later writers use the construction of the Object for Which more boldly, even attaching it directly to nouns.

aggeritur tumultū tellūs, *earth is heaped together for a mound*; Aen. 3, 63.

causam lacrimis, *a cause for tears* (tending toward tears); Aen. 3, 305.

Similarly causās bellō, Tac. Ann. 2, 64. (In Ciceronian Latin the Genitive, as in bellī causa, B. G. 3, 7, 2.)

### Dative of Direction or Relation<sup>2</sup>

**362.** The Dative is used to express that *toward which* a *Quality, Attitude, or Relation* is directed (English "to," "toward," "for").

The construction occurs after many Adjectives, Verbs, and Adverbs, and after certain Nouns in combination with Verbs<sup>3</sup>:

<sup>1</sup> Thus diem dicō (cōstituō) conciliō, conloquiō, operi, pugnae, huic rei, etc.; locum dēligō (capiō) castris, oppidō, domiciliō, etc.; also receptui canō, *sound for retreat*, and even receptui signum, *signal for retreat*; sometimes fundāmenta iaciō (fodiō) urbi, dēlūbrō, etc. (but the Genitive is more common).

The later writers extend the list of phrases.

<sup>2</sup> The line between these meanings is often not sharp.

<sup>3</sup> (a) The total list, especially of adjectives and verbs, is very large. The commonest meanings shared by two or more of the parts of speech are: *Pleasing, helpful, advantageous; friendly, favoring, obedient; indulgent, forgiving, trustful, yielding; persuasive, commanding, angry, threatening; flattering, envious, jealous; good, sufficient, necessary, permissible, suitable; near, similar, related*; or the opposites of any of these.

(b) The principal verbs or phrases with verbs, occurring with this construction in B. G., Cat., Arch., Pomp., and Mil. are: appropinquō, audiēns sum, auxilior, cēdō, cōfidiō, dēsum, diffidiō, fidem facio and habeo, crēdō, dēsum, faveō, grātiā habeo, ignoscō, imperō, indulgēō, insidiōr, invidēō, irāscor, libet, licet, medeor, minor, noceō, oboediō, obsistō, obstdō, officiō, obsum, obtemperō, obtrectō, obuius est, obuiam fiō, veniō, etc., opitulor, parcō, pāreō, placeō, praestō (*am superior*), praestō sum, praestōlor, prōsum, resistō, repugnō, satis facio, serviō, studeō, suādeō and persuādeō, succēseō, temperō.

(c) The more important remaining verbs or phrases with verbs are: adsentior, aduorsor, aemulor, appareō, auscultō, bene or male with dicō, loquor, or facio, blandior, convenit, convenienter with a verb, conducit, dictō audiēns sum, expedit, fidēs est (poetical), fidō, grātificor, grātulor, liquet and lūcet, moderor, mōrem gerō, obsequor, sufficiō, supplicō, vacō. To these may be added nūbō (put on the veil for), marry.

I. After words expressing or implying the *Quality* (Character, Nature) of a Person, Thing, or Act.

*mihi perniciosius, more injurious to me*; Sat. 2, 7, 104.  
*nocere alteri, to injure one's neighbor* (be injurious to); Off. 3, 5, 23.  
*mihi suavissimum, very acceptable to me*; Fam. 8, 1, 1.  
*civitati persuasit, persuaded* (made acceptable to) *the state*; B. G. 1, 2, 1.  
*sibi satis esse duxerunt, thought it was enough for them*; B. G. 1, 3, 2.  
*satis facere rei publicae, satisfy the state* (do enough for); Cat. 1, 1, 2.  
*neque ei fas erat, nor was it proper for him* (to speak); Off. 3, 7, 34.  
*sibi idem licere, (thought) the same was proper for them*; B. G. 3, 10, 2.

II. After words and phrases expressing or implying *Attitude*.

*blandus est pauperi, is flattering to the poor*; Aul. 196.  
*matrī blanditur, flatters the mother* (is flattering to); Flacc. 37, 92.  
*adversus nemini, opposed to no man*; And. 64.  
*qui vobis adversantur, who oppose you* (are opposed to you); Phil. 1, 15, 36.  
*dicto audientes, obedient* (listening to the word); B. G. 1, 39, 7.  
*Servio dicto audientem, obedient to Servius*; Liv. 1, 41, 5.  
*mihi crede, trust me* (be trustful toward); Cat. 1, 3, 6.  
*habebat studiis honorem, he had respect for literary pursuits*; Plin. Ep. 6, 2, 2.

III. After words and phrases expressing or implying *Relation*.

*servire meae laudi, to serve my glory* (be serviceable to); Cat. 1, 9, 23.  
*vectigalis sibi fecerunt, made them tributary to themselves*; B. G. 4, 3, 4.  
*proximi sunt Germanis, they are next to the Germans*; B. G. 1, 1, 4.  
*civitates propincae iis locis, states near (to) these places*; B. G. 2, 35, 3.  
*finibus appropinquare, to be drawing near the boundaries*; B. G. 2, 10, 5.  
*fit obviam Clodio, meets Clodius* (becomes in-the-way to); Mil. 10, 29.  
*virtus hominem iungit deo, virtue joins men to the gods*; Ac. 2, 45, 139.

### Details of the Dative of Direction or Relation

**363.** 1. In general, the Dative of Direction is not used with a *noun alone*, though it may be with a noun plus a verb. Compare *cui fidem habebat, in whom he had confidence* (= *cui confidebat*), B. G. 1, 19, 3, with *testimoniū fidem, confidence in the testimony*, Flacc. 15, 36, and *fidēs ergā plēbem, confidence in the people*, Leg. Agr. 2, 8, 20.

a) But abstract and semi-abstract nouns strongly suggesting action sometimes take the Dative of Direction. Thus *obtemperatiō lēgibus*,

*obedience to the laws*, Leg. 1, 15, 42; *insidiae cōsuli*, *the plotting against the consul*, Sall. Cat. 32, 1.

δ) A few personal nouns, mostly official, may take the Dative of Direction (rarely without a verb) instead of the ordinary Genitive. So especially *adiutor*, *comes*, *custos*, *dux*, *heres*, *lēgatus*, *patrōnus*, *quaestor*, *socius*, *tutor*. Similarly the adjective *cōnsci*us.

*tibi vēnit adiutor*, *came as assistant to you*; N. D. 1, 7, 17.

*suus bonis hērēdem esse*, *to be heir to his goods*; Caecin. 4, 12.

*nūllus est portis custōs*, *there is no guard for the gates*; Cat. 2, 12, 27.

*huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor*, *I offer myself as leader for this war*; Cat. 2, 5, 11.

2. Poetic and later Dative of Direction or Relation. The poets and later writers extend the construction, using it

α) With many personal nouns of *attitude* or *relation*, with or without a verb. So (beside the list above) with *acceptor*, *auctor*, *caput*, *cognātus*, *coniūnx*, *filius*, *frāter*, *hospes*, *māter*, *nūtrix*, *parēs*, *pater*, *patruus*, *prōmus*, *rēctor*, *rēgnātor*, *rēx* (also *rēgnum*), *sacerdōs*, *sodālis*, *servus*, *testis*.

*Faunō Picus pater*, *to Faunus, Picus was father*; Aen. 7, 48.

β) With verbs resembling those of 362 in meaning.

*propinquābam portis*, *was approaching the gates*; Aen. 2, 730 (with *propinquō* as with *appropinquō*).

*aequāta caelō*, *made level with* (equal to) *the sky*; Aen. 4, 89 (with *aequō* as with *aequus*).

*dubīs nē dēfice rēbus*, *fail not our doubtful fortunes*; Aen. 6, 196. Cf. 364, α.

γ) With verbs of *union*, *contention*, or *difference*.<sup>1</sup>

*sē miscet virīs*, *mingles with the men*; Aen. 1, 439.

*haeret laterī lētālis harundō*, *the deadly shaft sticks in the side*; Aen. 4, 73.

*pugnābis amorī*? *shall you struggle against love*? Aen. 4, 38.

δ) With *adsuēticiō*, *adsuēscō*, and *suēscō* (the last poetic only). Thus *mēnsae adsuētus erīlī*, *accustomed to the table of his mistress*, Aen. 7, 490 (Ablative in Ciceronian prose; 431, and α); *his suētus*, *accustomed to these*; Aen. 5, 414.

ε) With *idem*, *the same* (cf. the Dative with *similis*).

*idem facit occidētī*, *does the same thing as a murderer*; A. P. 467.

<sup>1</sup> So with *miscē* (in prose regularly with Abl. or cum; 431); *sociō*, *cōnsociō* (in prose regularly with cum; 419, 1); *haereō* (in prose with ad or in; in the Dative with *personal* nouns only); *nectō* (in prose with ex); *altercor*, *certō*, *contendō*, *luctor*, *obluctor*, *pugnō* (in prose regularly with cum; 419, 4); *differō*, *discordō*, *discrepō*, *dissentior*, *distō*, *differ* (in prose regularly with ab; 412). Similarly with certain participles of other verbs. Thus *āversa hostī*, *turned away from the enemy*; Tac. Ann. 1, 66.

*Perereō* also occurs with a locative ablative (436) without a preposition (rarely in prose, oftener in poetry). Thus *haeret pede pēs*, Aen. 10, 361.

f) With verbs corresponding to adjectives that take the Dative, and adjectives corresponding to verbs that take the Dative.

*mihi saevit, is savage to me*; Rud. 825. Cf. *saevum ambōbus*, Aen. 1, 458.

*simulāta magnis Pergama, a Trojan citadel made like the great one*; Aen. 3, 349.

*crēdula posterō, trusting to the future*; Carm. 1, 11, 8.

3. Several adjectives which ordinarily take the Dative *may* take the Genitive. Compare English "neighbor to" and "neighbor of"; and see 339, c.

4. *Propior* and *proximus* may take the Accusative of Space-Relation. See 380, b.

5. *Fidō* and *cōnfidō* may take the Ablative. See 439.

### Remarks on the Dative of Direction or Relation

**364.** 1. Verbs of Quality, Attitude, or Relation are with few exceptions *intransitive* in Latin, while in English we more frequently employ *transitive* verbs. Compare *noceō, am injurious to*, with the English "injure."

a. But Latin also possesses several *transitive* verbs of similar meanings, e.g. *iubeō, order, iuvō, help, assist, laedō, harm, dēficiō, fail, dēlectō, please*. These of course take the Accusative of the Direct Object (390).

2. In the passive, verbs of this class are regularly used only *impersonally*. The Dative remains.

*his persuādērī nōn poterat, they could not be persuaded* (it could not be made agreeable to them); B. G. 2, 10, 5.

a. For rare exceptions, see 292, b.

3. *Crēdō* takes a Direct Object of the *thing* believed.

*id quod volunt crēdunt, believe what they want to believe*; B. G. 3, 18, 6.

4. A few Verbs that take a Dative may take a Direct Object in addition. Thus *imperō, levy, indulgeō, indulge, minor, threaten, persuādeō, persuade*.

*id iis persuāsit, he persuaded them (to) this* (made this agreeable); B. G. 1, 2, 3.

5. Several Verbs take either the Dative of Direction or the Accusative of the Direct Object, with somewhat different meanings, or at different periods. Thus *aemulor, medeor, praestōlor, temperō*. Similarly *aequō* in poetry.

6. The *End for which a Quality is Adapted* is generally expressed by *ad* (occasionally *in*) with the Accusative. Thus *ad pugnam inūtilēs, useless for fighting*, B. G. 2, 16, 5; *ad bellum apta, in shape for war*, B. C. 1, 30, 5; *ad hanc rem idōneō, suited for this thing*, Verr. 1, 33, 83.

7. Instead of the Dative, many Adjectives of *Attitude* may take *ergā, in, or adversus* with the Accusative. Thus *in Teucrōs benignam, kindly disposed toward the Trojans*; Aen. 1, 304. Cf. *alii benigna, kindly disposed toward another*; Carm. 3, 29, 52.

8. The feeling of Direction sometimes leads to the use of *in* with Adjectives of *Quality*. Thus *grātae in vulgus, agreeable to the populace*; Liv. 2, 8, 3.



## Dative of the Indirect Object

365. The *Indirect Object* of a Transitive Verb is put in the Dative.<sup>1</sup>

*dat negotium Senonibus, assigns the task to the Senones*; B. G. 2, 2, 3.  
*rēgi haec dīcite, tell your king this* (tell this to him); Aen. 1, 137.

a. Since a Transitive Verb ordinarily takes a Direct Object, an Indirect and a Direct Object often appear together, as above.

b. With some verbs, e.g. *dōnō* and *aspergō*, different conceptions are possible, and different constructions may accordingly be used.

*praedam militibus dōnat, presents the booty to the soldiers*; B. G. 7, 11, 9.  
*civitate multōs dōnavit, presented many WITH citizenship*; Arch. 10, 26.

## Dative of Reference or Concern, after any Verb

366. Almost any Verb may be followed by a Dative of the Person to whom the act or state *refers*, or whom it *concerns*.

A Dative of the Thing is less frequent.

*mī esuriō, nōn tibi, 't is for myself I'm hungry, not for you*; Capt. 866.  
*praeterita sē frātrī condōnāre dicit, tells* (Dumnorix) *that he forgives the past for the sake of* (having reference to) *his brother*; B. G. 1, 20, 6.

a. The Dative of Reference is especially frequent with *est* combined with a noun or adverbial phrase.

*nūllus est iam lēnitātī locus, there is no longer any room for gentleness*; Cat. 2, 4, 6.  
*tibi in cōsiliō sunt, advise* (are in council for) *you*; Quinct. 1, 4.

b. Poetic and later Dative of Reference with Nouns. The poets and later prose writers often attach the Dative of Reference to nouns.

*collō monile, a collar for the neck* (necklace); Aen. 1, 654.  
*pectori tegimen, a covering for the breast*; Liv. 1, 20, 4.

c. The Dative of Reference *may* be used, with words denoting persons, after *interdicō*, *forbid*, *intercludō*, *cut off*, and *dēpellō*, *turn away*; also, in poetry, after *arceō*, *keep off*, and *dēfendō*, *ward off*.

*quibus cum aquā atque igni interdixisset, after forbidding them* (from) *the use of fire and water*; B. G. 6, 44, 3. (So regularly in this phrase.)  
*dēfendit aestātem capellīs, wards off the heat from my goats*; Carm. 1, 17, 3.

<sup>1</sup> So especially with verbs like *dō*, *reddō*, *trādō*, *dōnō*, *tribuō*, *tendō*, *praebeō*, *praestō* (*exhibit, furnish*), *sūmō*; *ferō*, *mittō*; *dēbeō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*, *spondeō*, *negō*; *mandō*, *praecipio*; *mōnstrō*, *narrō*, *dico*, *nūntiō*, *respondeō*; *faciō* (*do*), *agō* (*render, give*).

With *ferō* and *mittō*, the force of the Dative is on the line between the original one of Direction in Space and the derived one of the Indirect Object.

NOTE. These verbs commonly take an Accusative of the Person and an Ablative of the Thing (408). *Interdicō* may also combine a Dative of the Person (as above) with an Ablative of the Thing.

*utī frūmentō Caesarem interclūderet, in order to cut Caesar off from supplies;*

B. G. 1, 48, 2. (*Frūmentō* is Ablative.)

*quā adrogantiā Galliā Rōmānis interdixisset, with what arrogance he had excluded the Romans from Gaul (interdicted them from);* B. G. 1, 46, 4. (*Rōmānis* is Dative.)

d. "For," meaning "in defence of," must be expressed by *prō* (407, 1).

#### Dative of Reference *versus* the Accusative

367. Several Verbs of Feeling or Thought take either the Accusative or the Dative, according as the word which they govern is thought of as the *Direct Object*, or as that *in behalf of which, for which*, the feeling or thought is entertained.

So *cōsulō*, *cupiō*, *dēspērō*, *metuō*, *prōspiciō*, *prōvideō*, *timeō*.

*suīs rēbus timēre, to feel fears for their own position;* B. G. 4, 16, 1.

(But *magnitudinem silvārum timēre, feared the great stretch of forest;* B. G. 1, 39, 6.)

*cōsultite vōbīs, prōspicite patriae, look out for yourselves, take thought for your country;* Cat. 4, 2, 3. (But *sī mē cōsulis, if you ask my advice;* Cat. 1, 5, 13.)

#### Dative of Reference *in place* of the Genitive

368. The Dative of the Person *concerned by an act or state as a whole* is often used in place of a Possessive Genitive.

*sēsē Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt, cast themselves at Caesar's feet;* B. G. 1, 31, 2. Cf. *cum sē ad Caesaris pedēs abiēcisset, Fam. 4, 4, 3.*

*quotiēns tibi iam extorta est ista sica dē manibus! how often has that dagger of yours been twisted (out of the hands for you, i.e.) out of your hands!* Cat. 1, 6, 16. Similarly Aen. 1, 477.

a. This construction gives a touch of *feeling, of concern*, to the expression. English has no corresponding idiom.

#### Freer Poetic Dative of Reference or Concern

369. The later poets freely use the Dative of Reference *in loose attachment* to the rest of the sentence.

*tālia iactantī procella vēlum adversa ferit*, as he utters these words a blast strikes the sail athwart (for him, uttering these words); Aen. 1, 102.  
*vivitur parvō bene, cui paternum splendet in mēnsā tenuī salinum*, he lives well upon a little, for whom there shines, upon a frugal board, the saltcellar which his father had before him; Carm. 2, 16, 13.

a. The warmth and feeling of this construction gave it great vogue in later poetry. It is used with pronouns with especial frequency.

### Dative of the Person Judging

**370.** The Dative is used to denote the person *in whose eyes or for whom* the statement of the sentence holds good.

*Quintia formōsa est multis*, in the eyes of many (to many) *Quintia is beautiful*; Catull. 86, 1.

*levāta mihi vidētur*, (the state) *seems to me relieved*; Cat. 2, 4, 7.

a. Out of this grew the Dative of the Local Point of View (with the Participle, first in Caesar).

*quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpirō*, which is the first town of Thessaly as one comes (for people coming) from Epirus; B. C. 3, 80, 1.

### Dative with Verbs of Taking Away

**371.** Verbs of *taking away*<sup>1</sup> are regularly followed by the Dative of words denoting Persons.

*hunc mihi timōrem ēripe*, remove this fear from me; Cat. 1, 7, 18.

*scūtō militi detractō*, snatching a shield from a soldier; B. G. 2, 25, 2.

*omnia sociis adimere*, took everything from the allies; Sall. Cat. 12, 5.

a. The original conception was that of the Person as concerned by the act. Thus "remove for me this fear."

b. The poets use the construction more boldly, employing it with names of things as well, and also after verbs of *stealing, going away*, etc.

*siliçi scintillam excūdit*, struck out a spark from the flint; Aen. 1, 174.

*feasōs oculos fūrāre labōri*, steal your weary eyes from toil; Aen. 5, 845.

*ēvādere pugnae*, to escape from the battle; Aen. 11, 702.

### Ethical<sup>2</sup> Dative

**372.** A Personal Pronoun in the Dative may be loosely attached to a sentence to suggest *Concern* or *Interest* on the part of the person denoted.

<sup>1</sup> Various compounds of *ab, dē, and ex*, together with *adimō, subripiō, tollō*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> "Ethical" means "of feeling," and so might be used of many Datives. But its use is confined in grammar to the *Personal Pronouns*, in this construction.

The effect is generally whimsical or ironical.

**quī mihi accubantēs in conviviis ēructant caedem**, and these men — bless me! — as they recline at their banquets, belch forth talk about blood and murder; Cat. 2, 5, 10. Cf. Cat. 2, 2, 4. (Cf. "they drank me two bottles," Fielding, *Tom Jones*.)

**ecce tibi tellūs**, there lies the land you wish to reach; Aen. 3, 477.

### Dative of the Agent

#### 373. The Dative is used to express the *Agent* :

1. Regularly with the *Future Passive Participle*.

**Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda**, everything had to be attended to by Caesar at one and the same time; B. G. 2, 20, 1.

**vōbis erit videndum**, you will have to see to it; Cat. 3, 12, 28.

a. But the construction of the Agent with **ab** (406, 1) is occasionally used, either for sharper contrast, or to avoid confusion with the Dative of the Person Concerned, etc.

**aguntur bona multōrum civium**, quibus est ā vōbis cōsulendum, the property of many citizens is at stake, and for this precautions must be taken by you; Pomp. 2, 6.

2. Somewhat freely with the *Perfect Passive Participle*, and forms compounded with it.

**meīs civibus suspectum**, suspected by my fellow-citizens; Cat. 1, 7, 17.

**quī tibi ad caedem cōstitutī fuērunt**, who have been set apart for death by you; Cat. 1, 7, 16.

3. Occasionally, in the later writers, with any passive form.

**neque cernitur ullī**, and is not seen by any one; Aen. 1, 440.

a. The later writers sometimes used the construction with an adjective of passive meaning.

**multis bonis flēbilis**, by many a good man to be mourned; Carm. 1, 24, 9.

**tolerābilis vōbis eās fore crēditis?** do you think they will be endurable to you (possible to be endured by you)? Liv. 34, 3, 2.

### Dative of Possession

#### 374. Possession may be expressed by the *Dative with the Verb sum*.

**erat eī cōsiliū ad facinus aptum**, he possessed an understanding specially adapted for crime; Cat. 3, 7, 16.

**sunt mihi bis septem Nymphae**, I have twice seven Nymphs; Aen. 1, 71.

a. The Dative with **sum** asserts the fact of Possession. The Possessive Genitive (339) involves the fact of possession, but this idea is only a subordinate one in the sentence.

b. For the attraction of the Name into the case of the Possessor, see 326, 3.

## II. POETIC DATIVE OF DIRECTION IN SPACE

375. The poets use the Dative freely to express *Direction in Space*.

it clāmor caelō, *the shout rises to the heavens*; Aen. 5, 451.

caelō capita ferentēs, *raising their heads toward heaven*; Aen. 3, 678.

pelagō dōna praecipitāre, *hurl the gifts into the sea*; Aen. 2, 36.

a. The construction is sometimes used with great boldness of phrase.

stipat carinīs argentum, *packs silver into the ships* (for *packs the ships with silver*); Aen. 3, 465. Similarly Aen. 1, 195. The feeling is as in *lateri abdidit ēnsem* (for *in latus abdidit*), Aen. 2, 553.

b. The prose construction is the Accusative with *ad* or *in* (385). Thus *it ad aethera clāmor*, *the shout rises to the sky*; Aen. 12, 409.

## III. DATIVE IN A CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOSITE ORIGIN (FUSION)

## Dative after Verbs compounded with certain Prepositions

376. The Dative of the Person or Thing Concerned may be used after *many Verbs compounded with the Prepositions ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, or super*.<sup>1</sup>

adportō vōbīs Plautum, *I bring (to) you Plautus*; Men. 3.

finitimīs bellum inferre, *to make war upon their neighbors*; B. G. 1, 2, 4.

virtūtē omnibus praestārent, *were above all in valor*; B. G. 1, 2, 2.

a. If the verb of the compound is Transitive, it may of course take a Direct Object (390), in addition to the Dative taken by the compound as a whole. See *finitimīs bellum inferre*, above.

b. Several compounds may take either this construction or an Accusative of the object and an Ablative of means (423). Thus *circumdō, circumfundō, aspergō, induō* (in later Latin, *accingō, implicō*, etc.).

arma circumdat umerīs, *puts his armor about his shoulders*; Aen. 2, 509.

reliquōs equitātū circumdederant, *had surrounded the rest with cavalry*;

B. G. 4, 32, 5.

c. Several compounds may take either the Dative or the Accusative (391, 2, a). Thus *inlūdō*, *jeer at, mock*.

d. Several compounds expressing *comparison, union, or agreement* may take either the Dative, or the Ablative with *cum* (419, 1, 3). Thus *comparō, cōnferō* (cf. English "compare to" and "compare with").

<sup>1</sup> *Adsentior, cōnsentior, adversor, convenit, obsequor, officiō, obsistō, obstō, obsum, prōsum*, are generally placed here, but belong more properly under 362. Cf. the Dative with the corresponding (or opposite) words *adversus, cōnsentāneus, oboediō, pārēō, repugnō, resistō, dēsum, expedit*. Yet *oppōnō* shows the impossibility of drawing fixed lines. *Excellō, excel*, follows the analogy of *praestō, surpass*.

### Remarks on the Dative after Compound Verbs

**377.** 1. Compounds expressing *literal motion only* are regularly followed by the Accusative with *ad* or *in*. Thus *ad eum adcurrit*, *runs up to him*, B. G. 1, 22, 2; *in gladium incubuerat*, *had fallen upon his sword*, Inv. 2, 51, 154.

2. For compounds capable of expressing *both literal motion and a figurative idea* (like most under 376), no fixed rule can be laid down.

a. With some compounds both constructions are in use. Thus *in mē incidit*, *he fell in with me*, Planc. 41, 99; and *hominī inciit*, *I fell in with the man*, Verr. 2, 74, 182.

b. In general, it may be said that the preposition is regularly used *if the literal side of the meaning is to be brought out more strongly than usual*. Thus *bellum intulit prōvinciae Galliae*, *has made war upon the province of Gaul*, Phil. 5, 9, 24; but *dē bellō ā Parthis in prōvinciam Syriam inlātō*, *with regard to the war which has been carried by the Parthians into the province of Syria*, Fam. 15, 2, 1.

c. Yet many compounds with purely *figurative* meanings regularly take a preposition. Thus *incumbite ad salūtem rei pūblicae*, *bend your energies to the welfare of the state*; Cat. 4, 2, 4.

3. The poets and later prose writers love to vary the older construction, whatever it may be, *for the mere sake of variety*. Thus Virgil, Aen. 5, 15, says *incumbere rēmīs*, *to bend to the oars* (compare Cicero, under 2, c above); and Livy, 9, 22, 4, says *adequitāre vāllō*, *rode up to the rampart*, where Caesar would have used *ad* (cf. *ad nostrōs adequitāre*, *were riding up to our men*, B. G. 1, 46, 1).

4. The poets and later writers likewise use the Dative with compounds not employed at all in Ciceronian Latin. Thus with *ingeminō* (Aen. 5, 434), *invergō* (Aen. 6, 244).

5. The poets sometimes use the Dative with verbs resembling those of 376 in meaning, but differently formed.

*captae superāvimus urbī*, *have survived the capture of the city*; Aen. 2, 643. (*Superō* like *supersum*.)

### THE ACCUSATIVE

**378.** The Latin Accusative expresses three general classes of ideas :

I. *Space-Relation* (NOT *Separative* or *Locative*).

II. *Respect*.

III. *The Direct Object*.

## 379. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE ACCUSATIVE

I Accusative of Space- Relations (not Sepa- rative or Locative)	{	Accusative with Prepositions (380-384)
		With Verbs compounded with <i>trāns</i> or <i>circum</i> (386)
		Regular expression of the Place Whither (385)
		Accusative of Names of Towns, etc., Whither, <i>without</i> a Preposition (385, <i>b</i> , 450)
II Accusative of Respect	{	Accusative of Extent, Duration, or Degree (387)
		Accusative of Respect:
		In Ciceronian prose in a few phrases only (388)
III Accusative of the Direct Object	{	In freer use in later Latin (389)
		Accusative of the Direct Object (390)
		With Verbs ordinarily Intransitive (391, 1)
		With Compounds acquiring Transitive Force (391, 2)
		Two Objects with Verbs:
		of <i>making, choosing, having, regarding, calling, or showing</i> (392)
		of <i>inquiring, requesting, teaching, or concealing</i> (393)
		Accusative of the Result Produced (394)
		Accusative in Apposition to a sentence (395)
		Accusative of Kindred Meaning (396, 1)
	{	Extended use of the Accusative of Kindred Meaning (396, 2)
		Freer Neuter Accusative Modifiers (397)
		Subject of an Infinitive (398)
	{	Accusative of Exclamation (399)

## I. ACCUSATIVE OF SPACE-RELATIONS (NOT SEPARATIVE OR LOCATIVE) AND OF CORRESPONDING FIGURATIVE RELATIONS

Accusative with Prepositions<sup>1</sup>

380. The Accusative is always used with the Prepositions *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *ante*, *apud*, *circā*, *circiter*, and *circum*, *cis* and *citrā*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infrā*, *inter*, *intrā*, *iūxtā*, *ob*, *penes*, *per*, *pōne* and *post*, *praeter*, *prope*, *propter*, *secundum*, *suprā*, *trāns*, *ultrā* (and *uls*), *versus*.

*iūxtā mūrū*, *close to the wall*; B. C. 1, 16, 4.

*ante oppidū*, *in front of the town*; B. G. 2, 32, 4.

*Hannibal erat ad portās*, *Hannibal was at the gates*; Phil. 1, 5, 11.

*ad omnis nātiōnēs sānctum*, *sacred among all peoples*; B. G. 3, 9, 3.

*ad castra contendērunt*, *hastened to the camp*; B. G. 2, 7, 3.

*iter per prōvinciam*, *a passage through the province*; B. G. 1, 8, 3.

*vestra ergā mē voluntās*, *your good will toward me*; Cat. 4, 1, 1.

*a. Versus* follows its noun. Thus *orientem versus*, *toward the east*; Plin. N. H. 5, 43. But this is generally preceded by a preposition, unless it denotes a Town or Small Island (450). Thus *ad merīdiem versus*, *toward the south*; Plin. N. H. 5, 43.

<sup>1</sup> For summarized statements for all Prepositions, see 455-458.

*b.* The adverbs *propius* and *proximē* commonly, and the adjectives *propior* and *proximus* occasionally, take the Accusative of Space-Relation. (For the Dative with these adjectives, see 362; for *ab* and the Ablative, 406, 2.)

*proximē deōs accessit*, *has come very near the gods*; Mil. 22, 59.

*quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt*, *who live next the Rhine*; B. G. 1, 54, 1.

*c.* *Pridiē* and *postridiē*, *the day before* and *the day after*, generally take the Accusative (of Time-Relation), but sometimes the Genitive (of Connection; 339).

*pridiē Kalendās*, *the day before the Calends*; Cat. 1, 6, 15.

*postridiē eius diēi*, *the day after that day* (on the after-day of that day); B. G. 1, 23, 1.

*d.* *Per* may be used to represent persons as the *Means through Which*, in contrast to the Ablative with *ab*, which represents them as *Agents* (406, 1). Compare *rē per speculātōrēs cognitā*, *the fact having been learned THROUGH spies*, B. G. 2, 11, 2, with *cōnfirmātā rē ab explorātōribus*, *the report having been confirmed BY scouts*, B. G. 2, 11, 3.

**381.** The Accusative is used with *in* and *sub* to express the Place *Whither* something *moves*.

*cum in castra contenderent*, *when hurrying into camp*; B. G. 4, 37, 1.

*sub nostram aciem successerunt*, *came up under our line*; B. G. 1, 24, 5.

*a.* The Ablative is used to express the Place *Where* something *is* or *is done* (433).

*b.* *Sub* regularly takes the Accusative when meaning *just before*, *just after*, or *about*.

*sub occāsum sōlis*, *just before sunset*; B. G. 2, 11, 6.

*sub vesperum*, *about evening*; B. G. 7, 60, 1.

**382.** The Accusative is regularly used with *subter*, *beneath*.

*iram in pectore, cupiditatem subter praecordia locavit*, *placed the seat of anger in the breast, the seat of desire below the diaphragm*; Tusc.

1, 10, 20.

*a.* The Ablative may be used with *subter* in poetry to express the Place beneath which something *is* or *is done*.

*subter densā testūdine*, *under the close-packed roof of shields*; Aen. 9, 514.

**383.** The Accusative is regularly used with *super* in the sense of *upon*, *at*, or *in addition to* (the Ablative in the sense of *concerning*; see 435).

*saeva sedens super arma*, *sitting upon a pile of cruel arms*; Aen. 1, 295.

*a.* For the poetical Ablative with other senses than *concerning*, see 435, *a*.

**384.** The Accusative with a Preposition is used to express a great variety of figurative ideas. Notice especially:

1. *The Condition or Situation into Which*, with *in*: *filiam suam in matrimōnium dat*, *gives his daughter in marriage* (into that condition); B. G. 1, 3, 5. Cf. 434, 1; 406, 3.



2. *Figurative Direction*, with *ad*, *in*, *ergā*, etc.: *locō ad aciem instruendam opportūnō*, in a place suitable for drawing up a line of battle, B. G. 2, 8, 3; *intentī ad pācem*, eager for peace, B. C. 3, 19, 4; *grātae in vulgus*, agreeable to the populace, Liv. 2, 8, 2; *summō ergā vōs amōre*, with the greatest love (toward) for you; Cat. 3, 1, 1.

a. The construction is thus often an alternative for the Dative of Direction after Adjectives and Participles signifying *useful, suitable, or prepared* (364, and 6, 7, 8). Also for the Objective Genitive depending upon nouns (354, b).

b. *Parātus* takes the Dative also (362) in later Latin. Thus *parāta necī*, Aen. 2, 334; *pāci parātum*, Liv. 1, 1, 8.

3. *Purpose or Aim*, with *ad* or *in*: *eō ad conloquium vēnērunt*, came there for a conference, B. G. 1, 43, 1; *convivium in honōrem victōriae*, a banquet to celebrate the victory, Quintil. 11, 2, 12.

a. Hence the use of *ad* with the Gerundive or Gerund to express Purpose (612, III).

### Regular Expression of the Place Whither

385. In accordance with 380 and 381,

*Place Whither* is regularly expressed by *ad*, *in*, or *sub*, with the Accusative. The meaning may be either literal or figurative. *ut in Galliam venīrent*, to come into Gaul; B. G. 4, 16, 1. *ad illa veniō quae . . .*, I come to the things which . . . ; Cat. 1, 6, 14. *sub populī Rōmānī imperium cecidērunt*, fell under the dominion of the Roman people; Font. 5, 12.

a. With names of Countries, *in* means *into*, *ad*, to the borders of.

b. With names of Towns or Small Islands, and with *domus* and *rūs*, the Place Whither is expressed by the Accusative *without* a Preposition (450).

c. The poets freely omit the Preposition with nouns of any kind.

*Italiam vēnit*, came to Italy; Aen. 1, 2.

*spēluncam dēveniunt*, come to the cave; Aen. 4, 165.

### Two Accusatives, after Verbs compounded with *trāns* and *circum*

386. Transitive Verbs compounded with *trāns* or *circum* may take an *Accusative depending upon the Preposition*, as well as a Direct Object (390) depending upon the Verb.<sup>1</sup>

*exercitum Ligerim trādūcit*, he leads his army across the Loire (= *exercitum trāns Ligerim dūcit*); B. G. 7, 11, 9.

*quōs Pompeius sua praesidia circumdūxit*, these men Pompey led around his intrenchments; B. C. 3, 61, 1.

<sup>1</sup> So especially *trādūcō*, *trāciō*, *trānsportō*, *circumdūcō*. The later writers extend the list.

a. The Accusative is also found with the passive of these verbs, and with *praetervehor*.

*Rhēnum trāductōs*, brought across the Rhine; B. G. 2, 4, 1.  
*praetervehor ōstia*, I am carried past the mouth; Aen. 3, 688.

b. But the Preposition *trāns* is often repeated.

*nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum trāduceret*, that he should lead no more crowds of men across the Rhine; B. G. 1, 35, 5.

### Accusative of Extent, Duration, or Degree

**387.** *Extent of Space, Duration of Time, and Degree* are expressed by the Accusative.

#### I. Extent of Space.

*oppidum aberat mīlia passuum octō*, the town was eight miles distant;

B. G. 2, 6, 1.

*multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī*, after pursuing for many miles; B. G. 2, 11, 4.

#### II. Duration of Time.

*tot annōs bella gerō*, so many years have I been waging war; Aen. 1, 47.

*haec magnam partem aestātis faciēbant*, this they were engaged in doing during a large part of the summer; B. G. 3, 12, 5.<sup>1</sup>

*quinque et vigintī nātus annōs*, twenty-five years old (having been born twenty-five years); Tusc. 5, 20, 57.

a. But *per* is sometimes used of Duration of Time, as in *per hōsce annōs*, through (during) all these years; Cat. 2, 4, 7.

b. With *abhinc*, ago, either the Accusative of Duration of Time or the Ablative of the Degree of Difference (424) may be used. Thus *abhinc triennium* and *abhinc annis XV* are used almost side by side in Rosc. Com. 13, 37 (ago TO THE EXTENT OF three years, and ago BY THE AMOUNT OF fifteen years).

c. For the occasional Ablative of Duration of Time, see 440.

#### III. Degree.<sup>2</sup>

*quid in bellō possent*, how strong they were in war (to what extent they were powerful); B. G. 2, 4, 1.

*multum sunt in vēnātiōibus*, they are occupied to a large extent in hunting; B. G. 4, 1, 8.

<sup>1</sup> This construction of *partem* should be distinguished from that of 388.

<sup>2</sup> So especially *quid*, *aliquid*, *aliquantum*, *quicquam*, *multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *nihil*. The same use appears in *ecquid*, *sī quid*, and *nē quid*.

## II. ACCUSATIVE OF RESPECT

**388.** In Ciceronian prose the Accusative of Respect is confined to *vicem* and *partem* with modifiers, and *quid*, *in what respect*.  
*et meam et aliōrum vicem pertimēscere*, to fear both for myself and for others (as touching my part and that of others); Dom. S. 4, 8.  
*et meam partem tacēre, quom (= cum) aliēnast ōrātiō*, and to keep silent on my side, when it is another man's turn to talk; Mil. Gl. 646.  
*quid hoc differt?* in what respect does this differ? Caecin. 14, 39.

*a.* In early Latin, the Neuter Accusative of several Pronouns (*id*, *istuc*, *aliud*, *quod*, etc.) is still freely used as an Accusative of Respect.

*id maesta est*, that's what she's sad about (she is sad with regard to that); Rud. 397.  
*id nōs ad tē vēnimus*, that's why we came to you (we came about this); Mil. Gl. 1158.

*quid vēnistī?* why did you come? (with reference to what?); Amph. 377.

NOTE. Hence arose the use of *quid* in the sense of *why*, and of *quod* in phrases like *quod sī*, but if (touching which matter, if).

*b.* The indeclinable modifiers *id temporis*, at that time, and *id (hoc, etc.) aetātis*, of that age, are used like adverbs and adjectives respectively (originally Accusatives of Respect).

*quōs id temporis ventūrōs esse praedixeram*, who I had said would come at that time; Cat. 1, 4, 10.

*cum id aetātis filiō*, with a son of that age; Clu. 51, 141.

**389.** Under the influence of Greek literature, in which the Accusative of Respect always remained common, the later Roman writers revived its use in some degree, employing it especially with words expressing *birth*, *mind*, or *parts of the body*.

*Crēssa genus*, a Cretan in respect of birth; Aen. 5, 285.

*clārī genus*, men illustrious of race; Tac. Ann. 6, 9.

*mentem pressus*, o'erwhelmed in mind; Aen. 3, 47.

*nūda genū*, with bared knee (bare as to the knee); Aen. 1, 320.

*adversum femur ictus*, hit in the front of the thigh; Liv. 21, 7, 10.

*a.* The later writers use the construction also with *cūncta*, *omnia*, *alia*, *religua*, *cētera*, *plēraque*, and with *frontem*, *terga*, *latus* (*front*, *rear*, and *flank*).  
*cētera Graius*, in other respects a Greek; Aen. 3, 594.

*iuvenem alia clārum*, a youth famous in other respects; Tac. Ann. 12, 3.

## III. ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT, AND ITS DERIVATIVES

## Accusative of the Direct Object

**390.** The *Direct Object of a Transitive Verb* is put in the Accusative.

*duās legiōnēs cōscripsit*, enrolled two legions; B. G. 2, 2, 1.

*Rēmōs cohortātus*, after encouraging the Remi; B. G. 2, 5, 1.

*a.* Impersonal Verbs, if Transitive, take the Accusative of the Direct Object, like any other Transitive Verb. Thus *deceat, it becomes, iuvat and dēlectat, it pleases, fallit, fugit, and praeterit, it escapes.*

Similarly *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet.*

*sī vōs paenitet* (if it repenteth you), *if you repent*; B. C. 2, 32, 14.

*nisi mē fallit, unless I am deceived*; Sest. 50, 106.

*b.* The poets often attach an Object to a *passive form used reflexively* (288, 3), and even to a *true passive*.<sup>1</sup>

*galeam induitur, puts on the helmet*; Aen. 2, 392. Cf. *galeam induit*, Aen. 9, 366.

*tūnsae pectora, beating their breasts*; Aen. 1, 481.

*manūs post terga revinctum, with his hands bound behind his back*; Aen. 2, 57. (True passive.)

*c.* The Subject of a dependent clause is sometimes *attracted into the main clause*, becoming the Object of its Verb.

*nōsti Mārcellum, quam tardus sit, you know Marcellus, how slow he is*; Cael., Fam. 8, 10, 3.

NOTE. Corresponding passive constructions also occur, and various other turns of expression.

*quidam perspiciuntur quam sint levēs* (some are found how inconstant they are), *we find how inconstant some are*; Am. 17, 63.

**391.** 1. Several Verbs which also have an Intransitive use may be used *Transitively*, with an Accusative:

So especially *taceō, maneō*, and the Verbs of Feeling *dēspērō, doleō, fleō, gemō, quoror, horreō, lūgeō, maereō, rideō, and sitiō.*

*multa tacuī, many things I have passed by in silence*; Cat. 4, 1, 2.

*honōrēs quōs dēspērānt, the honors of which they despair*; Cat. 2, 9, 19.

*a.* So also, rarely, *iūrō, swear by*. Thus *maria aspera iūrō*, Aen. 6, 351.

*b.* The poets and later prose writers extend the list. Thus *ārdeō, love passionately, pereō, be dead in love with, paveō, shudder at, lateō, escape the knowledge of, cēnō, dine upon.*

*ārdēbat Alexim, passionately loved Alexis*; Ecl. 2, 1.

*eārum alteram perit, he is dead in love with one of them*; Poen. 1095.

*nec latuēre doli frātrēm Iūnōnis, nor did Juno's wiles escape her brother*; Aen. 1, 130.

2. A compound made up of an Intransitive Verb and a Preposition may, *as a whole*, have Transitive force, and so take an Accusative.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Accusative with the true passive is very close in *feeling* to the Accusative of Respect (cf. 388).

<sup>2</sup> So especially (out of a large list) *adeō, adscendō, adfor, adior and adgredior, circumveniō, circumstō, circumeō, conveniō (visit), increpō and increpitō, ineō, inrupō, inveniō, obeō, obseō, oppugnō, peragrō, praestō (show, perform), praetereō, subeō, subterfugiō, trāciō (pierce), transeō, transgredior*. Passives also occur, e.g. *circumveniriētur*, B. G. 1, 42, 4, *obsessis*, B. G. 3, 24, 2. Other compounds, not so used in *Ciceronian prose*, are found with an Accusative in poets and later prose writers. Thus *accēdō, ērupō, ēvādō, innō, interluō, invādō, praenatō, praevertor, superēmineō*.

These Prepositions are *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *con*, *in*, *ob*, *per*, *prae*, *praeter*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, *trāns*.

*omnia obire*, to accomplish everything; B. G. 5, 33, 3.

*officium praestiterō*, I shall perform my duty; B. G. 4, 25, 3.

*eōs adgressus*, attacking them; B. G. 1, 12, 3.

*flūmen trāsgressi*, having crossed the river; B. G. 2, 19, 4.

a. Several compounds similarly formed<sup>1</sup> take either the Accusative or the Dative (376). Thus *antecēdō* (go before), *surpass*, governs the Accusative in *cēterōs antecēdunt*, B. G. 3, 8, 1, and the Dative in *pecudibus antecēdat*, Off. 1, 30, 105.

3. A few phrases made up of a *Noun* and a *Verb* may as a whole have Transitive force, and so take an Accusative. Thus *animum advertō* (turn the mind upon), *notice*. (In the Passive the Accusative *animum* remains.)

*postquam id animum advertit*, upon noticing this; B. G. 1, 24, 1.

*quā rē animum adversā*, when this fact was noticed; B. C. 1, 80, 4.

4. Intransitive Verbs of Motion are sometimes used with Transitive force. So *ambulō*, *nāvigō*, and, in poetry, *currō*, *eō*, *errō*, *fugiō* (rarely also in prose), and even passives like *vehor*.

*ventis maria omnia vecti*, swept by the winds o'er every sea; Aen. 1, 524.

## Two Objects

392. Verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *having*, *regarding*, *calling*, or *showing* may take two Objects.<sup>2</sup> The Second<sup>3</sup> may be either a Noun or an Adjective.

*cōsulēs creat L. Papīrium L. Semprōnium*, appointed Lucius Papirius and Lucius Sempronius consuls; Liv. 4, 7, 10.

*illī mē comitem mīsit*, sent me as companion for him; Aen. 2, 86.

*mē sevērūm praebeō*, I show myself unrelenting; Cat. 4, 6, 12.

a. The Second Object is really in a kind of *predicative* relation ("makes to be"), and may therefore be called a Predicate Accusative.

b. In the Passive construction, the First Object of the Active Voice becomes the Subject, and the Second Object becomes the Predicate.

*cōsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servilius*, Julius Caesar and Publius Servilius are appointed consuls; B. C. 3, 1, 1.

<sup>1</sup> Especially *antecēdō*, *anteēō*, *invādō*, *praecurrō*. Similarly, in later Latin, *incēdō*, *interfluō*, *interiaceō*, *interveniō*, *praestō* (*surpass*), *succēdō*, *approach*, and many others.

<sup>2</sup> Thus (*making*) *faciō*, *creō*, *reddō*, *redigō*; (*choosing* or *deputing*) *ēligō*, *lēgō*; (*having*) *habeō*; (*regarding*) *habeō*, *dūcō*, *putō*, *existimō*, *iūdicō*, *cēnseō*; (*calling*) *appellō*, *nōminō*, *dicō*, *vocō*; (*showing*) *praebeō*, *praestō*; similarly verbs like *profiteor*, *adsciō*, *sūmō*, etc., which involve one of the meanings given above.

<sup>3</sup> "First Object" means *principal* object, and "Second Object" means *secondary* object, without regard to their order in the sentence.

**393.** Many Verbs of *inquiring, requesting, teaching, or concealing*<sup>1</sup> may take two Objects, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

*hōs sententiam rogō, I ask them their opinion; Cat. 1, 4, 9.*

*iter omnis cēlat, he conceals his route from everybody; Nep. Eum. 8, 7.*

*a.* In the Passive construction, the Person becomes the Subject, but the Accusative of the Thing remains.

*sententiam rogātus, having been asked his opinion; Sall. Cat. 50, 4.*

*nōsne hoc cēlātōs tam diū! the idea of our having been kept so long in the dark about this! Hec. 645.*

*b.* Other turns of expression also occur. Thus:

1) *Interrogō, doceō, and cēlō* may take *dē* of the Thing ("about," "concerning").

*tē dē causā rogābō, I shall ask you about the case; Vat. 16, 40.*

2) *Flāgitō, poscō, and postulō* may take *ab* of the Person asked (English "of"). *Postulō* generally does so.

*quod ā mē optimi civēs flāgitābant, which the best citizens were demanding of me; Sest. 17, 39.*

*c.* *Petō* takes *only ab* of the Person asked. *Quaerō* takes *only ab, dē, or ex* of the Person asked, or the Accusative or *dē* of the Thing asked about.

*causam quaerō, I ask the reason; Leg. Agr. 3, 3, 12.*

*sīn dē causā quaeritis, but if you ask about the case; Caecin. 36, 104.*

*haec cum ā Caesare peteret, when he asked this of Caesar; B. G. 1, 20, 5.*

*quōrum dē mōribus cum quaereret, on asking about their customs; B. G. 2, 15, 3.*

#### Accusative of the Result Produced

**394.** The *Result Produced* by the action of the Verb may be expressed by the Accusative.

*scribere versūs, to write verses; Sat. 1, 9, 23.*

*rumpit vōcem, breaks into utterance; Aen. 2, 129.*

#### Accusative in Apposition to a Sentence

**395.** An Accusative may stand in Apposition to a *sentence as a whole*.  
*audītā mūtātiōne principis immittere latrōnum globōs, excindere castella, causās bellō, upon hearing of the change of emperor he sent in bands of brigands, and razed forts, — grounds for declaring war; Tac. Ann. 2, 64.*

*a.* The construction is probably an extension of that of 394.

<sup>1</sup> Thus (*inquiring*) *interrogō, rogō*; (*requesting*) *rogō, poscō, reposcō, ōrō, postulō, flāgitō*; (*teaching*) *doceō*; (*concealing*) *cēlō*. Also, in poetry and later Latin, *percontor, inquire strictly*.

### Accusative of Kindred Meaning<sup>1</sup>

**396.** 1. An Intransitive Verb may take an Accusative Noun with a *meaning kindred to its own*.

*longam ire viam, be going a long journey*; Aen. 4, 467.

*vivere eam vitam, to live that life*; Sen. 21, 77.

2. **Extended Use of the Accusative of Kindred Meaning.** An Intransitive Verb may take an Accusative which, though not of a meaning kindred to its own, *modifies the idea of such a meaning*.

This Accusative may be a Noun, a Pronoun, or an Adjective.

*qui Bacchānalia vivunt, who live Bacchanalian lives*; Iuv. 2, 3.

*pauca querar, I shall make a few complaints*; Phil. 1, 4, 11. Cf. Aen. 1, 385.

*poëtis pingue quiddam sonantibus atque peregrinum, to poets having a certain heavy and foreign style*; Arch. 10, 26.

*quae hominēs arant, men's ploughing* (the ploughing that men do); Sall. Cat. 2, 7.

a. The poets like to make bold combinations of phrase.

*nec mortāle sonāns, not sounding like a mortal*; Aen. 6, 50.

*vōx hominem sonat, the voice sounds human*; Aen. 1, 328.

*acerba tuēns, with savage looks* (looking savage looks); Aen. 9, 794.

*dulce ridentem, sweetly smiling*; Carm. 1, 22, 23<sup>2</sup>

b. The construction may be used in poetry with the true Passive and with a Passive form used Reflexively (288, 2 and 3).

*corōnārī Olympia, be crowned with the Olympic crown*; Ep. 1, 1, 50.

*Satyrum movētur, dances the Satyr dances*; Ep. 2, 2, 125.

### Freer Neuter Accusative Modifiers

**397.** Neuter Accusatives of Pronouns and of several Adjectives may be used to modify Verbs which do not take the Accusative of a Noun.<sup>2</sup> So especially with:

1. Several Verbs of *advising, urging, compelling, or accusing*. Thus with *monēō* and its compounds, *hortor, iubeō, volō, arguō, accūsō* and *incūsō, cōgō*, and *addūcō*.

*quod tē iam dūdum hortor, which I have long been urging (upon) you*; Cat. 1, 5, 12.

*sī quid ille sē velit, if Caesar wanted anything of him*; B. G. 1, 34, 2.

*eōs hoc monēō, I give them this advice* (advise them this); Cat. 2, 9, 20.

*id cōgit omnis, forces everybody to this*; Rep. 1, 2, 3.

a. In the passive voice, the Accusative of the Thing remains.

*ego hoc cōgor, I am forced to this*; Rab. Post. 7, 17.

*illud addūcī vix possum, ut . . . , I can hardly be forced to the conclusion that*; Fin. 1, 5, 14.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the Cognate Accusative.

<sup>2</sup> In such examples with neuter adjectives, the Accusative is in effect adverbial.

2. Several Verbs of *assenting, boasting, contending, striving, or rejoicing*. Thus with *adsentior, gaudeō, glōrior, laetor, pugnō, studeō*.

*unum studētis, you have one common aim* ; Phil. 6, 7, 18.

*illud nōn adsentior tibi, I do not agree with you in this* ; Rep. 3, 35, 47.

*id pugnāt, contends for this* ; Phil. 8, 3, 8.

### Accusative as Subject of an Infinitive

**398.** The *Subject of an Infinitive* is put in the Accusative.

*liberōs ad sē addūcī iussit, ordered the children to be brought to him* ;

B. G. 2, 5, 1.

*nūntiāverunt manūs cōgī, brought word that bands of men were gathering* ; B. G. 2, 2, 4.

a. The *Historical Infinitive* has a *Nominative Subject* (595).

### Accusative of Exclamation

**399.** The Accusative is often used in *Exclamations*, to express the Object of Feeling.

*ō tempora, ō mōrēs ! O the times ! O the ways of men !* Cat. 1, 1, 2.

*mē miseram : wretched woman that I am !* Eun. 197.

*quō mihi fortunam ! what's the use of fortune to me !* Ep. 1, 5, 12.

a. The *Nominative* is occasionally used in Exclamations.

*ō fēstus diēs ! O joyful day !* Eun. 560.

*ō frūstrā suscepti labōrēs ! O toils performed in vain !* Mil. 34, 94.

## THE VOCATIVE

### Vocative of Address

**400.** The *Person or Thing Addressed* is put in the Vocative.

*quō usque abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā ? how long, Catiline, shall you abuse our patience ?* Cat. 1, 1, 1.

**401.** In poetry and ceremonious prose, the *Nominative* is sometimes used instead of the Vocative, or as an Appositive or Predicate to a Vocative.

*audī tū, populus Albānus, hear, people of Alba* ; Liv. 1, 24, 7.

*nāte, meae virēs, mea magna potentia sōlus, O son, my strength, my great power, thou alone* ; Aen. 1, 664.

*salvē, primus omnium parēns patriae appellāte, hail thou, named first of all the father of thy country* ; Plin. N. H. 7, 117.



## THE ABLATIVE

402. INTRODUCTORY. 1. The Latin Ablative inherited (334, 2) three forces from the parent speech, those of (1) Separation (Separative Ablative, or *from*-case), (2) Association (Sociative Ablative, or *with*-case), (3) Location (Locative Ablative, or *in*-case).

2. These three forces gave rise to a number of constructions, most of which correspond fairly closely to our constructions with *from*, *with*, or *in*. In addition, several constructions arose through Fusion (315, 3).

403. The Latin Ablative expresses four general classes of ideas :

- I. *Separation (Separative Ablative).*
- II. *Association (Sociative Ablative).*
- III. *Location (Locative Ablative).*
- IV. *Various ideas, in constructions of Composite Origin (Fusion).*

## 404. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE ABLATIVE

I Separative Ablative	{	Ablative with the Separative Prepositions <i>ab</i> , <i>dē</i> , <i>ex</i> , <i>sine</i> (405). Note especially: Agent of the Passive Voice, with <i>ab</i> (406, 1) Point of View from Which, with <i>ab</i> or <i>ex</i> (406, 2) Material of Which a thing is made, with <i>ex</i> (406, 4) Regular expression of the Place Whence (409)
		Ablative with the Prepositions <i>cōram</i> , <i>palam</i> , <i>prae</i> , <i>prō</i> (407) Ablative with Verbs of Separation (408) Ablative with Adjectives of Separation (411) Ablative with Verbs and Adjectives of Difference or Aversion (412) Ablative of Parentage or Origin (413) Ablative of Accordance (414) Ablative of the Standard (415) Ablative with a Comparative (416, 417)
II Sociative Ablative	{	Ablative with the Sociative Preposition <i>cum</i> (418, 419) Ablative of Accompaniment, with or without <i>cum</i> (420) Ablative Absolute (421) Ablative of Attendant Circumstances (422) Ablative of Means or Instrument (423) Ablative of the Degree of Difference (424) Ablative of Plenty or Want (425) Ablative of the Route (426) Ablative of Price or Value (427) Ablative of the Penalty or Fine (428) Ablative of the Object, with <i>ūtor</i> , <i>fruor</i> , <i>fungor</i> , <i>potior</i> , <i>vēscor</i> (429); Ablative with <i>opus est</i> and <i>usus est</i> (430) Ablative with Verbs of <i>exchanging</i> , <i>mixing</i> , <i>accustoming</i> , or <i>joining</i> (431); with <i>frētus</i> , <i>contineor</i> , <i>comitātus</i> , <i>stipātus</i> (432)
		Ablative with <i>in</i> , <i>sub</i> , etc. (Regular expression of the Place Where) (433) Ablative of certain words with or without a Preposition (436) Ablative with <i>fidō</i> and <i>cōnfidō</i> (437); with <i>nitor</i> , <i>innixus</i> , <i>subnixus</i> , <i>adquiescō</i> , <i>stō</i> , <i>cōnstō</i> , <i>cōnsistō</i> , <i>contentus</i> (438)
III Locative Ablative	{	

IV Of Composite Origin	{	Ablative of the Time at or within Which (439)
		Rarer Ablative of Duration of Time (440)
		Ablative of Respect (441)
		Ablative with <i>dignus</i> and <i>indignus</i> (442)
		Descriptive Ablative (443)
		Ablative of Cause or Reason (444)
		Ablative of the Way or Manner (445)
		Ablative with Verbs meaning <i>carry, hold, keep, receive</i> , etc. (446)

## I. THE SEPARATIVE ABLATIVE

### Ablative with Separative Prepositions<sup>1</sup>

405. The Ablative is always used with the Separative Prepositions *ā*, *ab* or *abs*, *dē*, *ē* or *ex*, *sine*.

*iter ab Ararī āverterant*, *had turned away from the Arar*; B. G. 1, 16, 3.  
*ab initio*, *from the beginning*; Liv. 1, 5, 5.

*dē mūrō iacta*, *thrown down from the wall*; B. G. 2, 32, 4.

*sine exercitū*, *without an army*; B. G. 1, 34, 3.

*a. Ā, ab, abs.* — *Ab* is used before vowels and *h*, *ā* before consonants. But before most consonants *ab* may also be used. *Abs* is common only in the phrase *abs tē* (for which *ā tē* is also frequent).

*ab Aquitāniis*, B. G. 1, 1, 2; *ā Belgis*, 1, 1, 2; *ā dextrō cornū*, 1, 52, 1; and also *ab decumānā portā*, 3, 25, 2; *abs tē*, 5, 30, 2.

*b. Ē, ex.* — *Ex* is used before vowels and *h*; both *ē* and *ex* before consonants, but more frequently *ex*.

*ex eō*, B. G. 1, 6, 3; *ē finibus*, 1, 5, 1; *ex finibus*, 4, 1, 4.

*c. Procul, far* (always with *āb* in Ciceronian prose), may take the Ablative in poetry and later prose; thus *procul negōtiis*, *far from business cares*; Epod. 2, 1.

406. The Separative Ablative with a Preposition is used to express a variety of ideas. Notice especially:

1. *The Agent of the Passive Voice*, with *ab* (cf. *John*, 1, 6, "there was a man sent from God"): *quod ab Gallis sollicitārentur*, *because they were being urged on (from) by the Gauls*, B. G. 2, 1, 3; *ab elephantis obtrīti*, *trampled upon by the elephants*, Liv. 21, 5, 15.

*a.* The Ablative with *ab* is sometimes used with an active verb, to suggest the passive idea. Thus *ā tantō cecidisse virō*, *to have fallen (slain) by so great a man*, Ov. Met. 5, 192.

*b.* Agents are properly *persons* (or *animals*). But things may be *personified*; thus *superārī ab his virtūtibus*, *to be surpassed by these virtues*, Cat. 2, 11, 25; *laesus fallāci piscis ab hāmō*, *the fish hurt by the deceitful hook*, Ov. Pont. 2, 7, 9. Cf. Aen. 3, 533.

<sup>1</sup> For summarized statements for all prepositions, see 455-458.

2. *The Point of View from Which*, with **ab** or **ex** (our English conception is generally that of the *place* WHERE). Thus:

**ā tergō**, **ā novissimō agmine**, etc., (from) **ex (ab) hāc parte**, (from) *on this side; on the rear*

**ā latere**, (from) *on the side* **ex (ab) utrāque parte**, *on both sides*, etc., etc.

**ā fronte**, (from) *on the front* **initium capit ā**, *begins (from) at*, etc., etc.

**ex hāc parte pudor pugnāt, illinc petulantia; hinc fidēs, illinc fraudātiō**, *on this side decency fights, on the other impudence; here financial faith, there robbery*; Cat. 2, 11, 25. (Note the same conception in **hinc, illinc**.)

**prope ā meis aedibus**, *near (reckoned from) my house*; Pis. 11, 26.

**“ain tū tē valēre?”** **“Pol ego haud perbene ā pecūniā,”** *“are you well, do you say?” “Not so very excellently well in point of (from the point of view of) money”*; Aul. 186.

3. *The Condition or Situation from or out of Which*, with **dē** or **ex**: **ex vinculis causam dicere**, *to plead his cause in chains*, B. G. 1, 4, 1 (speak *from* his position in chains); **fiēs dē rhētorē cōsul**, *from professor, you shall become consul*, Iuv. 7, 197; **dē templō carcerem fieri**, *that a prison should be made out of a temple*, Phil. 5, 7, 18. Compare the expression of the Condition into Which, 384, 1, and of the Condition in Which, 434, 1.

4. *The Material of Which a thing is made*, with **ex** (also, in poetry, with **dē**): **factae ex rōbre**, *made of oak*, B. G. 3, 13, 3; **pōcula ex aurō**, *cups of gold*, Verr. 4, 27, 62; **fuit dē marmore templum**, *there was a temple of marble*, Aen. 4, 457. (Cf. the Genitive of Material, 349.)

a. The poets freely omit the preposition. Thus **templa saxō strūcta vetustō**, *the temple built of ancient stone*; Aen. 3, 84.

407. 1. The Ablative is always used with the Prepositions<sup>1</sup> **cōram**, **palam**, **prae**, and **prō**.<sup>2</sup>

**legiōnēs prō castris cōstituit**, *drew up the legions in front of the camp*; B. G. 4, 35, 1.

**prō profugā vēnit**, *came as a deserter*; B. G. 3, 18, 3.

**cūr prō istō pugnās?** *why do you fight for him (in defence of him)?*

Verr. 4, 36, 79.

**cōram generō meō**, *in the presence of my son-in-law*; Pis. 6, 12.

**palam populō**, *in the presence of the people*; Liv. 6, 14, 5.

a. **Palam** is generally an adverb, but after Cicero's time occasionally a preposition.

<sup>1</sup> For summarized statements for all prepositions, see 455-458.

<sup>2</sup> The original feeling was that of separation. Thus **prō castris**, *in front, reckoning from the camp*. **Cōram**, *in face of*, followed the analogy of **prō**, *in front of*. **Palam** followed that of **cōram**. **Clam**, as the opposite, did the same. The Accusative with **clam** is due to the analogy of **cēlō** (393).

2. **Clam**, *secretly*, is regularly an adverb in Ciceronian Latin. In early and later Latin, it is either an adverb, or a preposition with the Accusative (*without the knowledge of*).

3. **Tenus**, *up to* (postpositive), is rare till after Cicero. It generally takes the Ablative, but sometimes the Genitive. Thus **capulō tenus**, *up to the hilt*, Aen. 2, 553; **genūs tenus**, *up to the knee*, Liv. 44, 40, 8.

4. **Finī** or **fine**, *up to* (prepositive or postpositive) is in rare use as a preposition, with the Ablative or Genitive.

**fine genūs**, *to the knee*; Ov. Met. 10, 536.

**osse finī**, *to the bone*; Men. 859.

### Ablative with Verbs of Separation

**408.** *Verbs of Separation* take an Ablative. The Preposition, if employed, is **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. The general usage in Ciceronian prose is as follows:

1. The Preposition is freely omitted<sup>1</sup> with Verbs of literal Separation, *if themselves containing a separative Preposition (ab, dē, or ex)*.<sup>2</sup>

**castrīs ēgressī**, *going out from the camp*; B. G. 2, 11, 1.

**ē castrīs ēgressī**, *going out from the camp*; B. G. 1, 27, 4.

a. Otherwise a Preposition is regularly used in Ciceronian prose.<sup>3</sup>

**prōcēdit ē praetoriō**, *comes out from the general's quarters*; Verr. 5, 41, 106.

**ab urbe proficisci**, *to set out from the city*; B. G. 1, 7, 1.

*Exceptions* are rare; thus **oppidō fugit**, B. C. 3, 29, 1; **Italiā cēdit**, Att. 9, 10, 4, and the fixed phrase **manū mittere**, as in Mil. 19, 56.

2. The Preposition is freely omitted with Verbs expressing *either* literal or figurative Separation, *if in very common use in both senses*.<sup>4</sup>

**dē mūrō sē dēiēcērunt**, *leaped from the wall* (threw themselves down from); B. C. 1, 18, 3.

**mūrō dēiectī**, *driven down from the wall*; B. G. 7, 28, 1.

**nē dē honōre dēicerer**, *that I should not be deprived of the honor* (driven from it); Verr. A. Pr. 9, 25.

**eā spē dēiectī**, *deprived of this hope*; B. G. 1, 8, 4.

*Exception*: **dēfendō**, *fend off and defend*, always takes **ab**.

<sup>1</sup> The word "omitted" should not be taken as implying that the preposition *ought* properly to be present, but only as a shorter expression in place of "not employed."

<sup>2</sup> So with **exeō**, **ēgredior**, **ēmittō**, **ērumpō**. **Auferō** (in which the preposition is disguised) regularly takes a preposition.

<sup>3</sup> So with **veniō**, **adveniō**, **discēdō**, **prōcēdō**, **proficiscor**, **prōgredior**, **dīgredior**, **redeō**, **referō**, **revertor**.

<sup>4</sup> So **arceō**, *keep off and prevent*; **cēdō**, **dēcēdō**, and **excēdō**, *go from and withdraw*; **moveō**, *move*; **pellō**, *drive away and banish*; **expellō**, *drive out and remove*; **solvō**,

a. Otherwise, a Preposition is regularly used in Ciceronian prose.<sup>1</sup>

ab officiō discessūrum, *would depart from his duty*; B. G. 1, 40, 2.

3. The Preposition is regularly omitted with Verbs expressing *figurative Separation* only.<sup>2</sup>

magistrātū sē abdicāvit, *abdicated (resigned from) his office*; Cat. 3, 6, 15.

proeliō supersedēre, *to refrain from battle*; B. G. 2, 8, 1.

*Exceptions*: 1. Temperō, *refrain*, and the passive of intermittō, *leave off*, take ab. Servō, *rescue*, and vindicō, *deliver*, take ab or ex. Vacō, *be free from*, and laxō, *loose*, either take or omit ab. Liberō, *free*, rarely takes ex.

temperātūrōs ab maleficiō, *would refrain from mischief*; B. G. 1, 7, 5.

2. Caveō, *beware (of)*, takes ab in Ciceronian Latin, and either ab or the bare Ablative in early Latin.

monuērunt ā venēnō ut cavēret, *warned him to beware of poison*;

Fin. 5, 22, 64. Cf. cavē malō, *beware of harm*; Pers. 835.

**409. Regular Expression of the Place Whence.** The Place Whence is regularly expressed in Ciceronian prose as shown in 408, 1 and a, 2 and a.

**410. Remarks on the Ablative with Verbs of Separation.** 1. With most Verbs of Separation, whether literal or figurative, a preposition is used with words denoting *persons*.

manūs ā tē abstinēre, *to keep their hands off from you*; Vat. 4, 10.

2. The poets freely use the Ablative without a preposition in any combination expressing or suggesting separation. This is true even if no verb is employed, and even if the word used denotes a person.

adsurgēns fluctū, *rising from the wave*; Aen. 1, 535.

antrō lātrāns, *barking from the cave*; Aen. 6, 400.

maritū Tyrō, *suitors from Tyre*; Aen. 4, 36.

dēiectam coniuge tantō, *robbed of so great a spouse*; Aen. 3, 317.

3. For the Place Whence with names of Towns, Small Islands, etc., see 451.

### Ablative with Adjectives of Separation

**411. Adjectives of Separation** take the Ablative either with or without ab.

*loose and free*; abeō, *go away, depart from, resign*; abstineō, *hold off and abstain*; dēficiō, *cast down*; dēsistō, *stand aside and desist*; dēturbō and prōturbō, *push off from and deprive*; exclūdō, *shut out and prevent*; interclūdō, *shut off and cut off*; expediō, *get from under foot and release*; prohibeō, *hold off and prevent*.

<sup>1</sup> So with abdūcō and dēdūcō, āmoveō, dēmōveō and removeō, āvertō, dēmō, dētrahō, discedō, ēficiō, prōpulsō, repellō, sēcernō, tollō. Absum and dēpellō generally take a preposition (absum may also take a Dative of Reference, as in B. G. 1, 36, 5; 366). A few words occur too seldom to admit of any statement.

<sup>2</sup> Such are verbs meaning *strip, despoil, defraud, grudge, deprive, bereave, interdict, absolve, relieve, free, be free, relax, leave off, refrain, abdicate*. Thus nūdō, spoliō, exuō, fraudō, invidēō, privō, orbō, interdicō, absolvo, levō and relevo, liberō, vacō, laxō and relaxō, supersedeō, abdicō. Also, in poetry and later prose, viduō, exherēdō, etc., etc.

- vacua ab omnī periculō, free from all danger*; Prov. Cons. 12, 30.  
*nōn vacua mortis periculō, not free from mortal danger*; Cat. 4, 1, 2.
- a.* In Ciceronian prose, these adjectives are *liber, free, pūrus, pure, nūdus, stripped, orbus, bereft, vacuus, empty*.<sup>1</sup>
- b.* In later poetry, and, to some extent, in later prose, the above adjectives may also take the Genitive (348).  
*sceleris pūrus, free from guilt*; Carm. 1, 22, 1.

### Ablative with Verbs and Adjectives of Difference or Aversion

- 412.** *Verbs of Difference or Aversion* take the Ablative with *ab*. *Aliēnus, foreign*, may either take or omit the Preposition.
- ab eō dissentiō, I differ from him*; Pomp. 20, 59.  
*quod abhorret ā meis mōribus, which is foreign to my ways*; Cat. 1, 8, 20.  
*aliēna ā dignitāte, inconsistent with your dignity*; Fam. 4, 7, 1.  
*aliēnum dignitāte imperī, inconsistent with the dignity of the realm*;  
 Prov. Cons. 8, 18.

- a.* *Alius, else, other than*, is regularly followed by *atque (ac)*, or, if negated, by *nisi, quam, or praeter*; but it *may* take the Ablative without a preposition, as in *alium sapiente*, Ep. 1, 16, 20 (very rarely in prose).
- b.* *Aliēnus* may also take a Genitive (339, *c*) or Dative (362, III).
- c.* A few of these verbs (e.g. *dissentiō*) may also take the construction of Contention (Ablative with *cum*; 419, 4).
- d.* The later writers freely employ the Dative with these verbs (363, 2, *c*).

### Ablative of Parentage or Origin

- 413.** *Parentage or Origin*<sup>2</sup> is expressed by the Ablative, generally without a Preposition.

*amplissimō genere nātus, born of a very noble stock*; B. G. 4, 12, 4.  
*quō sanguine crētus? from what blood sprung?* Aen. 2, 74.

- a.* A preposition (generally *ex*) is sometimes used with the noun, especially if this denotes a parent. Before a pronoun, the preposition is regular.
- b.* Remoter origin is expressed by *ortus* with *ab*, or *prōgnātus* with *ex*.  
*Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānis, (he learned that) the Belgae were descended from the Germans*; B. G. 2, 4, 1.

<sup>1</sup> Also, in later poetry, *cassus, siccus, viduus*, and others.  
*Immūnis, exempt* (in Cicero with Objective Genitive; 354), after Cicero takes either the Genitive or, as implying want, the Ablative, the latter with or without a preposition (e.g. *immūnis militiā, exempt from service*; Liv. 1, 43, 8).

<sup>2</sup> The verb employed in Ciceronian Latin is *nāscor*. The participles are *nātus, prōgnātus, ortus*; also, in later Latin, *genitus, generātus, crētus, satus, editus, oriundus*, and others.

## Ablative of Accordance

414. That *in Accordance with which* one acts or judges may be expressed by the Ablative of certain words, regularly without a Preposition.

*cōnsuetūdine suā Caesar VI legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat, according to his custom, Caesar, as he marched, kept six legions in fighting order; B. G. 2, 19, 2.*

*tuō cōsiliō faciam, I will act in accordance with your plan; Rud. 962. mūnus meā sententiā magnum, a great gift, in my opinion (according to my way of thinking); Off. 3, 33, 121.*

a. So especially, in Ciceronian Latin, *mōre* (*mōribus*) and *cōnsuetūdine*, *according to custom*, *cōsiliō*, (according to) *with a plan*, *sententiā* (*meā*, etc.) (according to) *in* (my, etc.) *opinion*, *lēge*, *by law* (these rarely with a preposition); *iūdicīō* and *animō*, (according to) *in the judgment (of)*, *iussū* (*iniussū* by analogy), *voluntāte*, *rogātū*, *admonitū*, *arbitrātū*, or *concessū*, *by the order, desire, request, advice, decision, or consent (of)*, *accitū* or *missū*, *by the summons or sending (of)* (these without a preposition).<sup>1</sup>

b. In general, Accordance is expressed by *dē* or *ex* with the Ablative.

*quō ex senātūs cōsultō convenit . . . , in accordance with which decree of the Senate it has all the time been proper; Cat. 1, 2, 4.*

## Ablative of the Standard

415. The *Standard* from which one starts in measuring or judging is regularly expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

*quī verbis contrōversiās, nōn aequitāte dīiudicās, who decide controversies according to (= by) words, not according to justice; Caecin. 17, 49. magnōs hominēs virtūte mētīmur nōn fortunā, we measure great men by their high aims, not by their luck; Nep. Eum. 1, 1.*

a. But *ex* is sometimes used. Thus *amicitiās ex commodō aestimāre*, *to judge friendships from the standard of advantage; Sall. Cat. 10, 5.*

## Ablative with a Comparative

416. A *Comparative Adjective* is often followed by the Ablative.

<sup>1</sup> The poets add other words. Thus *imperīō*, *by the order (of)*.

For *lēge* meaning *with the condition*, see 436, b. For *voluntāte*, voluntarily (originally Ablative of Accordance, but in effect expressing Manner, see 445).

But *quam* may always be used, and regularly *is* used if the first of the two things compared is in any case except the Nominative or Accusative.

*vītā cārīor, dearer than life*; Cat. 1, 11, 27.

*audāciōr quam Catilinā, more overweening than Catiline*; Phil. 2, 1, 1.

*tibi, multō maiōrī quam Āfricānus fuit, to you, a much greater man than Africanus was*; Fam. 5, 7, 3.

a. The relative pronoun with definite antecedent is regularly in the Ablative after a Comparative.

*Aenēās, quō iūstior alter nec pietāte fuit nec bellō maior, Aeneas, than whom no man was ever juster in piety or greater in war*; Aen. 1, 544.

b. Comparison may be expressed in poetry by the use of *ante, praeter*, etc.

*ante aliōs immānior, more monstrous than (before) the rest*; Aen. 1, 347.

c. One of the two things compared is often suppressed.

*esse graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, the fate of the Sequani was harder than (the fate) of the rest*; B. G. 1, 32, 4.

d. *Plūs, minus, amplius, and longius* may be used as Comparative Adjectives with an Ablative, or as Adverbs, without effect upon the case.

*utī nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis mīlibus passuum interesset, so that there was not more than five or six miles between*; B. G. 1, 15, 5.

*Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius milia passuum X abesse, that the Sambre was not above ten miles distant from his camp*; B. G. 2, 16, 1.

e. Certain Ablatives are regularly used for brevity in place of clauses. Thus *aequō, expectātiōne, necessariō, opiniōne*.<sup>1</sup> The same usage holds with comparative adverbs.

*nē plūs aequō quid in amīcitiā congerātur, lest more than (what is) right should be heaped upon friendship*; Am. 16, 58.

*longius necessariō, farther than was necessary*; B. G. 7, 16, 3.

**417.** A *Comparative Adverb* is ordinarily followed by *quam*.

*cum possit clārius dicere quam ipse, though he could speak louder than (the leading character) himself*; Caecil. 15, 48.

a. Nouns of *time* are regularly in the Ablative after comparative adverbs.

*longius annō remanēre, to remain more than a year*; B. G. 4, 1, 7.

b. The poets use the Ablative freely with comparative adverbs.

*quam Iūnō fertur terris magis omnibus coluisse, which Juno is said to have fostered more than all other lands (for magis quam terrās omnīs)*; Aen. 1, 15.

## II. THE SOCIATIVE ABLATIVE

### Ablative of Accompaniment, with *cum*<sup>2</sup>

**418.** The Ablative is always used with the Sociative Preposition *cum*, *with*.

<sup>1</sup> Also, in later Latin, *dictō, fidē, solitō, spē, vērō*, and other words.

<sup>2</sup> For summarized statements for all prepositions, see 455-458.



*cum lēgātīs vēnit, came with the ambassadors*; B. G. 4, 27, 2.

*cum febris domum rediit, came home with a fever*; De Or. 3, 2, 6.

*dēsinant obsidēre cum gladiis cūriam, let them cease to invest the senate-house with swords* (in their hands); Cat. 1, 13, 32.

*a.* Cum is regularly put *after* a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, and forms one word with it; thus *mēcum, sēcum, quibuscum*.

*b.* In poetry and later prose, *simul, together with*, is sometimes used with the Ablative. Thus *simul hīs dictīs, (together) with these words*; Aen. 5, 357.

**419.** The Ablative with *cum, with*, is used to express a variety of ideas. The most important are the following:

1. *Union, Agreement, or Companionship*: *cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem cōfirmāre, to make peace with the neighboring states*, B. G. 1, 3, 1; *prūdentiā cum ēloquentiā iungere, to join prudence with eloquence*, Tusc. 1, 4, 7.

2. *Intercourse, Dealing, etc.*: *is ita cum Caesare ēgit, he pleaded with Caesar as follows*; B. G. 1, 13, 3.

3. *Comparison*: *neque hanc cōsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam (esse), and that this manner of living was not to be compared with the other*; B. G. 1, 31, 11.

4. *Contention or Variance*: *cum Germānīs contendunt, they contend with the Germans*; B. G. 1, 1, 4.

#### Ablative of Accompaniment, with or without cum

**420.** In *military language*, Accompaniment after Verbs of coming or going may be expressed by an Ablative *with* or *without cum*.

But *cum must* be used if the Noun stands without a modifier, or with a Numeral.

*cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat pervēnit, arrived with the forces which he had received from Caesar*; B. G. 3, 17, 1.

*eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit, hurries thither with the infantry*; B. G. 3, 11, 5.

*utroque cum equitatū venīret, that both should come with cavalry*; B. G. 1, 42, 4.

*cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire, to go with these five legions*; B. G. 1, 10, 3.

## Ablative Absolute

**421.** An Ablative Noun or Pronoun, with a Predicate word in the same case, may be used in loose connection with the rest of the sentence.

The Predicate may be a Noun, a Participle, or an Adjective.

The Ablative Absolute is (like the English Nominative Absolute, as in "this having been done") strictly a *neutral* construction, telling nothing about the real relation between the facts stated in it and the facts stated in the rest of the sentence. In English, however, we must ordinarily translate so as to *show* these relations. Hence the following headings are convenient:

1. (*Mere*) *Time*: **M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus**, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* (Messala and Piso being<sup>1</sup> consuls); B. G. 1, 2, 1.

2. (*Mere*) *Situation*: **ea inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset**, *had done this without their knowledge* (they not knowing); B. G. 1, 19, 1.

3. *Situation and Time*: **omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt**, *every thing being ready, they* (then) *appoint a day*; B. G. 1, 6, 4.

4. *Situation and Cause*: **mercātoribus iniuriōsius tractātis bella gesserunt**, *waged war when* (and *because*) *our traders had been somewhat rudely treated*; Pomp. 5, 11.

5. *Situation and Opposition*: **id paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit**, *he was unable to take this* (town), *though its defenders were but few*; B. G. 2, 12, 2.

6. *Condition*: **semper existimābitis vivō P. Clōdiō nihil eōrum vōs visūrōs fuisse**, *you will always think that, if Publius Clodius were alive, you would never have seen any of these things*; Mil. 28, 78.

a. *Nisi, quasi, tamquam, velut, etc.*, may be used.

*nisi munitis castris*, *unless the camp were fortified*; B. G. 2, 20, 3.

7. *Means*: **id ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant**, *were crossing this* (river) *by tying together rafts and boats*; B. G. 1, 12, 1.

8. *Manner*: **incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit**, *rushed upon the enemy at full speed* (his horse being speeded); B. G. 4, 12, 6.

a. The later writers often use an Infinitive or a Subordinate Clause as the principal member of an Ablative Absolute; and they also often use a Participle *impersonally*.

*impetrātō ut manērent*, (leave) *being obtained to remain*; Liv. 9, 30, 10.  
*libātō*, *after a libation had been made*; Aen. 1, 737.

---

<sup>1</sup> Note that Latin has no participle corresponding to English "being."

δ. In general, the Ablative Absolute is used only where its noun or pronoun denotes a person or thing mentioned nowhere else in the same clause. Yet exceptions sometimes occur, generally for the sake of clearness or emphasis.

*vōsne ego patiar cum mendicis nūptās mē vivō virīs? shall I suffer you to be the wives of beggar-men while I am alive?* Stich. 132.  
Similarly *turribus excitātis, tamen hās*, B. G. 3, 14, 4.

### Ablative of Attendant Circumstances

**422.** An Ablative Noun with a modifier may be used to express *Situation, Circumstances, or Result*.

The examples fall into two main classes :

I. Expressing Situation (English “with,” “in,” “under”).  
No Preposition is used.

Thus *imperio nostrō, under our sovereignty; aestū magnō, in great heat; parī (magnō, quō, etc.) intervallō, at an equal distance; nullis impedimentis, without baggage; magnō comitatū, with a great retinue; frequentissimō senātū, in a crowded meeting of the senate; tantō conventū, tantā frequentiā, magnō cōsensū, etc.; hōc, hāc, or hīs with various nouns.*

*minus facile eam rem imperio nostrō cōsequi poterant, could less easily attain this under our sovereignty; B. G. 2, 1, 4.*

*hāc cōtione, hōc populō nōn verērer, with an assemblage like this, with a people like this, I should have no fear; Leg. Agr. 2, 37, 101.*

*dicit frequentissimō senātū cōsul, the consul says in a crowded meeting of the senate; Leg. Agr. 1, 8, 26. Cf. Arch. 2, 3; Mil. 24, 66.*

*ubi fidē publicā dicere iussus est, when he had been invited to turn state's evidence (speak with a pledge from the state); Sall. Cat. 47, 1.*

a. To this class probably belong the following Ablatives accompanied by a Genitive of the person, or a Possessive Pronoun: *ductū, imperio, auspiciō, under the lead, authority, or auspices (of); contuberniō, in association (with); voluntate or concessū, with the approval or consent (of).*

b. Rarely, a noun is so used *without* a modifier. Thus *intervallō restitūta, restored after (with) an interval; Leg. Agr. 1, 9, 27.* The use is less rare in poetry. Thus *servitiō enixae, having borne a child in slavery; Aen. 3, 327.*

c. The poets employ the construction in bold combinations. Thus *paribus cūris vestigia figit, wrapped in like cares (with like cares) plants his footsteps; Aen. 6, 159.*

II. Expressing Circumstances or Result (English “with” or “to”). The Preposition, if used, is *cum*. It is

1. Regularly omitted with the most common phrases. Thus *ōminibus, with . . . omens; clamōre, with shouting; plausū, with applause;*

conviciō, *with abuse*; silentiō, *in (with) silence*; pāce or veniā, *with the permission (of)*; commodō or incommodō, *with advantage or disadvantage (to)*; damnō or iactūrā, *with the loss (of)*.

his ōminibus, cum tuā perniciē proficiscere ad impium bellum, *with these omens, and to your ruin, set out to wage your impious war*; Cat. 1, 13, 33.

quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, *as far as he could do so with (resulting) advantage to the commonwealth*; B. G. 1, 35, 4.

exercitum duārum cohortium damnō dēdūcit, *leads his army back with a loss of two cohorts*; B. G. 6, 44, 1.

a. When used without a modifier, these words (except silentiō) generally take cum. Thus cum plausū, Phil. 2, 34, 85; cum clamōre, Verr. 5, 36, 93.

2. Used or omitted indifferently with phrases moderately common.

Thus (cum) periculō, *with danger (to)*; (cum) dolore or aerumnā, *to the grief or sorrow (of)*; (cum) gloriā, *to the glory (of)*; (cum) invidiā, *to the unpopularity (of)*.

vīdī quantō meō dolore, *with what grief to myself did I see . . . !* Phil. 1, 4, 9. (Cf. Cat. 4, 1, 2, *to my grief*.)

quantō cum dolore vīdī! *with what grief did I see . . . !* Marc. 6, 16.

3. Regularly used with the least common phrases.

magnō cum lūctū civitātis simulācrum tollendum locātūr, *to the great grief of the state, a contract is made for the removal of the statue*; Verr. 4, 34, 76. Similarly cum tuā perniciē under II, 1, above.

NOTE to 1-3. The poets and later writers vary the usage for the mere sake of variety. Thus cum bonis ōminibus, Liv. Praef. 13; maiōre perniciē, 21, 35, 1.

#### Ablative of Means or Instrument (Instrumental Ablative)

423. *Means and Instrument* may be expressed by the Ablative.

gladiis pugnātum est, *the battle was fought with swords*; B. G. 1, 52, 4. litteris certior fiēbat, *was informed by (means of) despatches*; B. G. 2, 1, 1. id animō contemplāre quod oculis nōn potes, *contemplate in (with) your mind what you cannot with your eyes*; Dei. 14, 40.

suō sūptū, *at his own expense* (by his expenditure); B. G. 1, 18, 5. magnō dolore addiciēbantur, *were greatly distressed* (were affected with great grief); B. G. 1, 2, 4.

Similarly with ōrnātus, *equipped*, praeditus, *endowed*, onustus, *laden*.

a. Persons are often thought of as Means.

*eā legiōne militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, mūrum perducit,*  
with this legion, and the soldiers who had assembled from the  
province, he constructs a wall; B. G. 1, 8, 1.

*iacent suis testibus,* they are overthrown by means of their own witnesses; Mil. 18, 47.

b. The Ablative of Means probably appears in such phrases as *quid illō fiet?* what will (be made with =) become of him? Att. 6, 1, 14; *sī quid eō factum esset,* if anything should happen to him, Pomp. 20, 59. (By analogy, *quid tē futūrust?* what will become of you? Ph. 137, etc.)

With *faciō*, the Dative of the Indirect Object (365) may also be used. Thus *quid huic hominī faciās?* what is one to do with (to) such a man? Caecin. 11, 30.

c. The poets often use the Ablative of Means to make the governing word imply more than it strictly says ("forced" construction).

*Aeacidae tēlō iacet Hector,* Hector lies (slain) by Achilles' spear; Aen. 1, 99.

d. Means may also be expressed by *per* with the Accusative.

*cōsuluisti mē per litterās,* you consulted me by letter; Phil. 2, 40, 102.

### Ablative of Degree of Difference

424. *Degree of Difference* is expressed by the Ablative.

The construction is freely used with Comparatives and various Adverbs, less freely with Superlatives.

*milibus passuum duobus ultrā eum,* two miles beyond him (beyond by two miles); B. G. 1, 48, 2.

*paucis ante diēbus,* a few days before; Cat. 3, 1, 3.

*quō delictum maius est, eō poena est tardior,* the greater the fault, the slower the punishment (by how much greater . . . , by that much slower . . . ); Caecin. 3, 7; cf. B. G. 1, 14, 1, and Pomp. 20, 59.

*eō minus, quod memoriā tenēret,* the less (so) because he remembered . . . ; B. G. 1, 14, 1.

a. In such examples as *eō minus, quod* . . . , probably both Degree of Difference (424) and Cause (444) were felt by the Romans (by so much the less, because, and on that account, namely because).

### Ablative of Plenty or Want

425. Certain Adjectives and Verbs of *Plenty* or *Want* may take the Ablative.

*erant plēna laetitīa omnia,* everything was full of joy; B. C. 1, 74, 7.

**montem hominibus complēri iussit**, *ordered the mountain to be filled with men*; B. G. 1, 24, 3.

**urbe ērudītissimīs hominibus adfluentī**, *a city overflowing with scholars*; Arch. 3, 4.

**metū suppliciorū carēre**, *to be free from the fear of penalties*; Mil. 2, 5. **omnibus egēre rēbus**, *were in want of everything*; B. C. 3, 32, 4.

*a.* So, in Ciceronian Latin, the adjectives <sup>1</sup> **cōnfertus**, **differtus**, **refertus**, **opīmus**, **inānis**, rarely **plēnus** and **inops**; and the verbs **abundō**, **redundō**, **adfluō**, **circumfluō**, **careō**, **egeō** and its compounds, and the compounds of **-pleō**.

*b.* Some of these words may also take the Genitive of Plenty or Want (**plēnus**, **inops**, and **indigeō** regularly; **egeō**, **compleō**, and **impleō** rarely). See 347, and *b*.

### Ablative of the Route

**426.** The *Route by Which* may be expressed by the Ablative of certain words.

**Aurēliā viā profectus est**, *he set out by the Aurelian road*; Cat. 2, 4, 6. **terrā Macedoniam petit**, *proceeded to Macedonia by land*; Liv. 24, 40, 17. **Padō trāiectus**, *crossing (by) the Po*; Liv. 21, 56, 9. Cf. **fretō trāiēcit**, 22, 31, 7.

*a.* These words are especially **colle**, **flūmine**, **fretō**, **itinere**, **iugō**, **marī**, **ponte**, **portā**,<sup>2</sup> **terrā**, **vadō**, **viā**, and the plurals of most of them. **Adversus** or **secundus** is often added (e.g. B. G. 2, 19, 8, **adversō colle**, *by the hill opposing*, = *up the hill*).<sup>3</sup>

*b.* In general, the Route is expressed by **per** and the Accusative, sometimes even with the above words.

**per angustias et finis Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant**, *had brought their forces through the pass and the territory of the Sequani*; B. G. 1, 11, 1.

*c.* The Ablative of Route often expresses the *Space over Which*, closely approaching the Accusative of Extent of Space (387, I) in meaning.

**tantō spatiō secūtī quantum efficere potuerunt**, *following over as large a space as they could accomplish*; B. G. 4, 35, 3.

<sup>1</sup> Also, in later Latin, **cōpiōsus**, **crēber**, **dīves**, **fētus**, **frequēns**, **opulentus**, and others. Similarly **expers** (with Genitive of Want in Ciceronian Latin; 347) may take the Ablative in later writers (Sall. Cat. 33, 2); and **exhērēs** and **immūnis** (with Objective Genitive in Ciceronian Latin) may take the Ablative of Want.

<sup>2</sup> With **portā** (**portis**), this construction, not that of separation, is regularly used with verbs of motion ("by," not "from").

<sup>3</sup> Later writers use a larger list of words. Thus **agrō**, **angustiis**, **limite**, **finibus**, **litore**, **orā**, **palūde**, **pelagō**, **ripā**, and names of rivers, mountains, countries, and city gates.

d. The poets extend the construction to other words.

*āere lāp̄sa quiētō*, *gliding through the quiet air*; Aen. 5, 216. Cf. *volat per āera magnum* (the regular prose construction), Aen. 1, 300.

*prōspectum pelagō petit*, *seeks an outlook over the deep*; Aen. 1, 181. Similarly *altō prōspiciēns*, *looking out over the deep*; Aen. 1, 126.

### Ablative of Price or Value

427. 1. *Definite* Price or Value *must* be expressed by the Ablative; also *Indefinite* Price or Value, if the word used is a Substantive of serious meaning.

*dēnāriis III aestimāvit*, *valued it at three denarii*; Verr. 3, 92, 215.

*parvō pretiō redēmta*, *bought at (with) a low price*; B. G. 1, 18, 3.

*vēdidit aurō patriam*, *sold his country for gold*; Aen. 6, 621.

2. *Indefinite* Price or Value may be expressed by *either* the Genitive (§56) *or* the Ablative of :

a) Certain Adjectives. Thus *quantī* or *-ō*, *magnī* or *-ō*, *parvī* or *-ō*, *minimī* or *-ō*.

b) Certain Substantives not used with serious meaning. Thus *nihilī* or *-ō*, *zero*, *naucī* or *-ō*, *a p̄ascod*.

"*quantī ēmp̄tae?*" "*Parvō*." "*Quantī ergō?*" "*Octussibus*," "*how much did it cost?*" "*O, not much*." "*How much, then?*" "*Eight pence*"; Sat. 2, 3, 156.

*magnō ēmerat*, *had bought at a high price*; Verr. 3, 30, 71.

*nōn nihilō aestimandum*, *not to be reckoned as worthless*; Fin. 4, 23, 62.

REMARK. The Genitive construction (§56) originally expressed Value, and then was extended to express Price. The Ablative construction originally expressed Price (*means* by which the purchase was made), and then was extended to express Value. The two thus approach each other closely (Genitive of Value or Price, Ablative of Price or Value).

### Ablative of the Penalty or Fine

428. Verbs of *punishing* or *fining* may take an Ablative of the *Penalty* or *Fine*.

*tergō ac capite pūnir̄etur*, *be punished with stripes and death*; Liv. 3, 55, 14.

*multātōs agrīs*, *mulcted of their fields*; B. G. 7, 54, 4.

a. This is the fixed construction for definite sums of money, for fractions, and for expressions of the *class* of punishment (like *chains*, *exile*, *death*).

b. Verbs of *condemning* regularly take a Genitive of the Penalty or Fine; but, by a natural confusion with verbs of *punishing* or *fining*, they also occasionally take the Ablative *capite*, *life*, and the Ablative of multiples ("eightfold," etc.).

### Ablative of the Object, with Certain Verbs

**429.** *Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor, and their compounds take their Object in the Ablative.*

*tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri, to get control of all Gaul; B. G. 1, 2, 2. frui vitā, to enjoy life; Cat. 4, 4, 7.*

*a. A Second Object is sometimes used.*

*populō Rōmānō disceptātōre ūti volō, I wish to employ the Roman people as umpire; Leg. Agr. 1, 7, 23. Similarly isdem ducibus ūsus, B. G. 2, 7, 1.*

*b. In early and later Latin, ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor may take the Accusative, like any other Verb of Transitive force.*

*c. Potior sometimes takes the Genitive in Ciceronian Latin. See 353.*

*d. Epulor, feast, may take the Ablative in poetry, on the analogy of vēscor. dapibus epulāmur opimis, we feast on a rich banquet; Aen. 3, 224.*

### Ablative with opus est and ūsus est

**430.** *1. Opus est and ūsus est, there is need, may be followed by an Ablative of the Thing Needed.*

*quid opus est tortōre? what is the need of an inquisitor? Mil. 21, 57. nunc viribus ūsus (est), now there is need of strength; Aen. 8, 441.*

*a. The construction with ūsus est is rare after early Latin.*

*2. A Participle expressing the Leading Idea of its Phrase (333) is often added to the Noun after opus est. A Participle may also be used impersonally in this construction.*

*nē existumārent sibi perditā rē publicā opus esse, they must not think (said he) that he had need of ruining the commonwealth (of the commonwealth ruined); Sall. Cat. 31, 7.*

*erat nihil cūr properātō opus esset, there was no reason why there must be haste; Mil. 18, 49.*

*a. Opus is also used as a Predicate, especially if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective.*

*quaecumque ad oppugnātiōnem opus sunt, whatever things are necessary for the siege (are a need); B. G. 5, 40, 5.*

*b. By a mixture of constructions, opus may stand in the Predicate, while itself governing an Ablative Participle.*

*sī quid opus factō esset, if anything should be necessary to be done; B. G. 1, 42, 5.*

*c. For the Supine in -ū with opus or ūsus, see 619, 2; for the Infinitive, 565.*

### Ablative with Special Verbs and Participles

**431.** *The Sociative Ablative without cum may be used with certain verbs of exchanging, mixing, accustoming, or joining.*



These are *mūtō*, *commūtō*, and *permūtō*, *exchange*; *misceō*, *commisceō*, and *cōfundō*, *mix*; *adsuēfaciō* and *adsuēscō*, *make* (or *be*) *familiar*; and the Participles *iūctus* and *coniūctus*, *joined*.

*pāce bellum mūtāvit*, *has exchanged war for (with) peace*; Sall. Cat. 58, 15.<sup>1</sup>

*frūsta commixta merō*, *bits of food mixed with wine*; Aen. 3, 633.

*nūllō officiō adsuēfacti*, *not trained in (familiarized with) any duties*; B. G. 4, 1, 9.

*miseria dēdecōre coniūcta*, *misery joined with disgrace*; Phil. 3, 14, 35.

a. All of these words except *mūtō*, *adsuēfaciō*, and *adsuēscō* may also take *cum*.

b. Other constructions also occur. Thus *mūtō* and *commūtō* sometimes take *prō* with the Ablative; *misceō* and *commisceō* sometimes the Dative in poetry; *adsuēfaciō* and *adsuēscō* sometimes the Dative, or *ad* with the Accusative; and the Participles *iūctus* and *coniūctus* sometimes the Dative, especially of a person.

c. Other parts of the verbs *iungō* and *coniungō* regularly take *cum* with the Ablative (419, 1), or, less frequently in prose, the Dative of Relation (362), or *ad* with the Accusative. The poets use the Dative freely.

d. The poetic word *suēscō* takes the Dative. See 363, 2, d).

432. The Ablative is used with *frētus*, *depending upon*, *contineor*, *be made up of*, *comitātus*, *attended*, *stipātus*, *surrounded*.

*frētus vōbis*, *depending upon you*; Pomp. 19, 58.

*nōn vēnis et nervis et ossibus continentur*, (the gods) *are not made of veins and sinews and bones*; N. D. 2, 23, 59.

*aliēnis viris comitāta*, *attended by other women's husbands*; Cael. 14, 34.

*stipātus armātis*, *surrounded by armed men*; Phil. 2, 3, 6.

REMARK. This construction is descended from an Ablative of Means, *frētus* originally meaning *supported* (by), and *contineor* *be held together* (by).

### III. THE LOCATIVE ABLATIVE

#### Locative Ablative with Prepositions<sup>2</sup>

433. Regular Expression of the Place Where. The Ablative is used with *in* and *sub* to express the *Place Where* something *is* or *is done*.

The meaning may be either literal or figurative.

*in silvis abditī latēbant*, *were lying hidden in the woods*; B. G. 2, 19, 6.

*in spē victōriæ*, *in the hope of victory*; B. G. 3, 26, 4.

*tē hortor ut maneās in sententiā*, *I urge you to stand by (remain in) your proposition*; Pomp. 24, 69.

*sub monte cōnsēdit*, *encamped under the mountain*; B. G. 1, 48, 1.

<sup>1</sup> The cases might be interchanged (*pācem bellō*) with the same meaning. Only the context can determine the sense.

<sup>2</sup> For summarized statements for all prepositions, see 455-458.

a. The poets freely omit the preposition **in** with *any* noun, and the later prose-writers follow them to some extent.

**bellum geret Italiā**, *will wage war in Italy*; Aen. 1, 263.

**prōmissis maneās**, *stand by your promises*; Aen. 2, 160.

**sēde regiā sedēns**, *sitting in the royal seat*; Liv. 1, 41, 6.

b. The Accusative is used with **in** and **sub** to express the *Place Whither* something moves. See 381.

c. With a verb of *placing*, the emphasis may lie upon the resulting *Place Where*, and in this case the Ablative is used with **in** and **sub**.

**saxa in mūrō conlocābant**, *were placing stones on the wall*; B. G. 2, 29, 3.

d. **Sub** regularly takes the Accusative when meaning *just before, just after, or about* (381, δ).

e. For the occasional Ablative with **subter** in poetry, see 382, a.

f. For the *Place Where* with names of Towns, Small Islands, etc., see 440.

**434.** The Ablative with **in** is used to express a variety of figurative ideas. The most important are the following :

1. *The Condition or Situation in Which* : **magnō in aere aliēnō**, *greatly in debt*, Cat. 2, 8, 18 ; **Iugurtham in catēnis habitūrum**, *would have Jugurtha in chains*, Sall. Iug. 64, 5. (Cf. 384, 1, and 406, 3.)

2. *The Field in Which* (the idea is close to that of the *Respect in Which*; 441) : **in omnibus vitæ partibus honestus**, *honorable in every department of life*, Font. 18, 41 ; **quid mē in hāc rē facere voluisti?** *what did you want me to do in this matter?* Ph. 291. So regularly with the Gerundive or Gerund (612, IV).

3. *The Person in Whose Case* : **quantō hoc magis in fortissimis cīvibus facere debēmus!** *how much more ought we to do this in the case of our bravest citizens!* Mil. 34, 92.

**435.** The Ablative is regularly used with **super** in the sense of *concerning*, — rarely in its other senses (*upon, at, in addition to*; 383).

**hāc super rē scribam ad tē**, *I will write you on this point*; Att. 16, 6, 1.

a. In poetry the Ablative is sometimes used with **super** in other senses than *concerning*. Thus **fronde super viridī**, *upon a pile of green leaves*, Ecl. 1, 80; **super his**, *in addition to these things*, Sat. 2, 6, 3; **nocte super mediā**, *at dead of night*, Aen. 9, 61.

b. With verbs of *placing*, **super**, *upon*, may take the Ablative. Cf. 433, c.

#### Locative Ablative with or without a Preposition

**436.** With a number of words in very common use, the *Place Where* (literal or figurative) may be expressed by the Ablative either *with* or *without in*.

So especially with *locō*, *parte*, *regiōne*, *spatiō*, *litore*, *cornū*, *operibus*, *parietibus*, *librō*, *numerō*, *statū*, *initio*, *principiō*, *vestigio*, and any Noun modified by *medius*, *tōtus*, *omnis*, *cūctus*, or *ūniversus*; also, in poetic and later Latin, with *mediō* used substantively.

*eō locō*, *in that place*, B. G. 6, 27, 4; and in *eō locō*, B. G. 5, 7, 3.

*apertō ac plānō litore*, *on the open and level shore*, B. G. 4, 23, 6; and

*in litore mollī atque apertō*, *on the smooth and open shore*, 5, 9, 1.

*tōtā Galliā*, *throughout Gaul*, B. G. 5, 55, 3; and *tōtā in Asiā*, Pomp. 2, 7.

*a.* In general, the preposition is more likely to be used when the noun is accompanied by a pronoun or descriptive adjective. But with *medius*, *tōtus*, etc., the preposition is not common.

NOTE. With a verb of *motion*, Ablatives of this class often in effect express *the space over which*; cf. 426, *c.* Thus *tōtā Asiā vagātur*, *wanders (in =) through the whole of Asia*, Phil. 11, 2, 6; *impeditōribus locis secūtī*, *following over somewhat difficult ground*, B. G. 3, 28, 4.

*b.* The following Locative Ablatives are used *without* a preposition in Ciceronian Latin: *dextrā*, *on the right*, *laevā* and *sinistrā*, *on the left*, *corpore*, *on or in the body*, *animō* and *animis*, *in mind* (but in *animō* with *est* and *habēō*), *memoriā*, *in or within the memory*, *linguā*, *in the language*, *nōmine* and *speciē*, *under the name or pretext*, *lēge* and *condiciōne*, *under the condition* (for *lēge*, *by law*, see 414, *a*). Later, *sub*, *under*, is sometimes added to *nōmine*, *speciē*, *lēge*, and *condiciōne*.

*deus inclūsus corpore hūmānō*, *a god inclosed in a human body*; Div. 1, 31, 67.

*patrum nostrōrum memoriā*, *within the memory of our fathers*; B. G. 1, 12, 5.

*memoriā tenētis*, *you remember* (hold in memory); Cat. 3, 8, 19.

*quī ipsoꝝ linguā Celtæ appellantur*, *who in their own language are called Celts*; B. G. 1, 1, 1.

*obsidum nōmine*, *under the name of hostages*; B. G. 3, 2, 5.

### Locative Ablative with Certain Verbs and Participles

437. *Fidō* and *cōfidō*, *trust*, may take the Ablative.

*multum nātūrā loci cōfidēbant*, *they had great confidence in the nature of the country*; B. G. 3, 9, 3.

*a.* *Fidō* and *cōfidō* also take the Dative (362; so regularly of a *person* in Ciceronian Latin).

*b.* *Diffidō*, *distrust*, takes the Dative in Ciceronian Latin, and both the Dative and the Ablative in later writers.

438. 1. The Ablative, generally without *in*, is used with *nitor*, *rely upon*, and *stō* and *cōnstō*, *abide by*.

*dolō niterentur*, *rely upon treachery*; B. G. 1, 13, 6. (With *in*, Mil. 7, 19.)

*si quī eōꝝm dēcrētō nōn stetit*, *if any one does not abide by their decree*; B. G. 6, 13, 6. (With *in*, Fin. 1, 14, 47.)

2. *Adquiescō, take pleasure in*, takes the Ablative with or without *in* with about equal frequency.

*senēs in adulescentium caritate adquiescimus, in old age we take pleasure in being liked by young people*; Am. 27, 101. (Without *in*, Mil. 37, 102.)

a. The Participles *innixus* and *subnixus*, *leaning* or *relying upon*, take the Ablative without a preposition.

*scūtis innixi, leaning upon their shields*; B. G. 2, 27, 1.

*adrogantiā subnixi, relying upon their pride*; De Or. 1, 58, 246.

b. In later Latin, the finite forms of *innitor* (not occurring in Ciceronian Latin), as well as the form *innixus*, may take the Dative, on the principle of 376, or the Ablative, as above. Thus *innititur hastae*, Ov. Met. 14, 665; *incolumitātē inniti*, Tac. 15, 60; *hastā innixus*, Liv. 4, 19, 4; *cūrae innixa*, Quintil. 6, 1, 35.

c. Other verbs of like meaning take a preposition; thus *sī in eō manērent*, B. G. 1, 36, 5. But a poet may omit it, as in *prōmissis maneās*, Aen. 2, 160.

3. The Ablative, regularly with *in*, is used with *cōnstō* and *cōnsistō*, when meaning *depend upon*, and *cōnsistō* when meaning *consist in*.

*monuit victōriam in eārum cohortium virtute cōnstāre, pointed out that victory depended upon the valor of these cohorts*; B. C. 3, 89, 3; cf. B. G. 7, 84, 4. *vita omnis in venātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militaris cōnsistit, their whole life consists in hunting and military pursuits*; B. G. 6, 21, 3.

a. But the Ablative without *in* also occurs.

*cōsteraūm rerum studia et doctrinā et praeceptis et arte cōnstāre, that in other fields intellectual pursuits depend upon principles, precepts, and art*; Arch. 8, 18.

b. *Cōnstō, consist of*, takes the construction of Material. See 406, 4.

4. The Ablative is used with *contentus*, *content*, *satisfied*.

*contentus hac iniquitate nōn fuit, was not content with this iniquity*; Verr. 2, 38, 94.

a. *Contentus* originally meant *self-restrained (in)*. Cf. *in illā cupiditate continēbātur, restrained herself within that desire* (was content with it); Clu. 5, 12.

5. *Intentus* is used with the Ablative (probably Locative) in *aliquō negotiō intentus, deeply engaged in some occupation or other*; Sall. Cat. 2, 9. Commonly it takes the Dative (*stretched toward = intent upon*; see 376), or *ad* or *in* with the Accusative.

#### IV. ABLATIVE CONSTRUCTIONS OF COMPOSITE ORIGIN (FUSION)

##### Ablative of the Time at or within Which

439. *The Time at or within Which* anything is or is done may be expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

*diē septimō pervenit, arrives on the seventh day*; B. G. 1, 10, 5.

*superiōre aestate cognōverat, had learned the previous summer*; B. G. 5, 8, 3.

*bellō vacātiōnēs valent, in time of war, exemptions hold*; Phil. 8, 1, 3.

comitiis, *at the election*; Cat. 1, 5, 11. Similarly with words denoting *games* or *feasts*, as *lūdis*, *gladiatōribus*, *epulis*, *pulvināribus*.

a. The Preposition *in* is regularly used :

1) With a word denoting a *time of life*, unless this is accompanied by a modifier. Thus in *pueritiā*, *in boyhood*, Verr. 1, 18, 47; but *extrēmā pueritiā*, *at the end of boyhood*, Pomp. 10, 28.

2) With a word denoting an *office*, unless this is accompanied by a numeral. Thus in *cōsulātū nostrō*, *in my consulship*, Arch. 11, 28; but *quārtō cōsulātū*, *in his fourth consulship*, Sen. 13, 43.

3) In phrases expressing *situation*. Thus in *tālī tempore*, *in such a state of affairs*, Sall. Cat. 48, 5; in *civili bellō*, *in a civil war*, Phil. 2, 19, 47 (but *secundō Pūnicō bellō*, *in the second Punic war*, Off. 1, 13, 40, because only the *Time at Which* is meant).

4) With a *numeral*. Thus *ter in annō*, *thrice a year*; Rosc. Am. 46, 132.

b. The Time at Which is sometimes expressed by *cum* with the Ablative.

*cum primā lūce in campum currēbat*, *with the first (streak of) light he was running into the forum*; Att. 4, 3, 4.

c. The Time at Which may also be expressed by *ad* or *sub* (in later Latin with *circā* likewise), and the Time within Which by *intrā*, with the Accusative.

*sub occāsum sōlis sē recēperunt*, *toward sunset they retired*; B. G. 2, 11, 6.  
*intrā annōs XIII*, *in fourteen years*; B. G. 1, 36, 7.

#### Rarer Ablative of Duration of Time

440. The Ablative is occasionally used to express *Duration of Time*.  
*tōtā nocte continenter iērun*, *went without break all night*; B. G. 1, 26, 5.  
*quī viginti annīs āfuit*, *who was absent twenty years*; Bacch. 2.

#### Ablative of the Respect in Which

441. The *Respect in Which* the meaning of a Verb or Adjective is to be taken is expressed by the Ablative, regularly without a Preposition.

This Ablative answers the question, *In what? Wherein?*

*cum virtūte omnibus praestarent*, *since they surpassed all in bravery*;  
B. G. 1, 2, 2.

*numerō ad duodecim*, *about twelve in number*; B. G. 1, 5, 2.

*alterō oculō capitur*, *is blinded in one eye*; Liv. 22, 2, 11.

*maiōrēs nātū*, *the elders* (greater in respect of birth); B. G. 2, 13, 2. Similarly with *maximus*, *minor*, and *minimus*, *oldest*, *younger*, *youngest*.

a. The preposition *in* is occasionally used with abstract words. Thus *similem in fraude et malitiā*, *alike in knavery and wickedness*, Rosc. Com. 7, 20. Cf. *mōribus similēs*, *alike in character*, Clu. 16, 46.

b. *In* is regularly used with a pronoun, unless this is a relative. Thus *nōs nōn modo nōn vinci ā Graecis verbōrum cōpiā*, *sed esse in eā etiam superiōrēs*, *that we are not only not surpassed by the Greeks in wealth of vocabulary, but are even superior in this*; Fin. 3, 2, 5.

c. The Respect in Which the meaning of a noun is to be taken must in general be expressed by the Genitive of Application (354), or the Ablative with *in*. Thus *virtūte praestārent* (in example above), but *praestantiam virtūtis* (see 354) or *in virtūte*.

*Apparent Exceptions* occur in a few combinations. Thus *hominēs nōn rē, sed nōmine*, *human beings (= human) not in fact, but in name*; Off. 1, 30, 105.

d. Respect may also be expressed by *ad* with the Accusative. Thus *sitū praeciārō ad aspectum*, *with a site splendid in aspect*; Verr. 4, 52, 117.

### Ablative with *dignus* and *indignus*

442. *Dignus* and *indignus*, *worthy* and *unworthy*, are followed by the Ablative.

*cognitiōne dignum*, *worthy of acquaintance*; Arch. 3, 5.

*suppliciō digni*, *deserving punishment*; Cat. 3, 9, 22.

*indigna homine liberō*, *unworthy of a free man*; Rab. Perd. 5, 16.

a. The poets and later prose writers employ the same construction with *dignor*, *think worthy*. Thus *haud tāli mē dignor honōre*, *I do not deem myself worthy of such an honor*; Aen. 1, 335.

### Descriptive Ablative

443. *Kind* or *External Aspect* may be expressed by the Ablative of a Noun accompanied by a modifier; also, in a few phrases, *Situation* or *Mental Condition*.

The construction may be either appositive or predicative.

C. *Valerium Proculum, summā virtūte adulescentem*, *Gaius Valerius Proculus, a young man of the greatest courage*; B. G. 1, 47, 4.

C. *Gracchus, clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus*, *Gaius Gracchus, a man with a distinguished father, grandfather, and ancestors in general*; Cat. 1, 2, 4.

“*sed quā faciēs?*” “*dicam tibi: macilentō ōre, nāsō acūtō, corpore albō, oculis nigris*,” “*but of what appearance is he?*” “*I’ll tell you: he is a man with a spare face, a sharp nose, white skin, and black eyes*”; Capt. 646.  
*reliquit quōs virōs! quantō aere aliēnō!* *what men he left behind him!*  
*how deep in debt* (in how great debt)! Cat. 2, 2, 4. (Situation.)

equidem cum spē sum maximā, tum maiōre etiam animō, *I for my part am in a state not only of the greatest hope, but of a still greater determination*; Q. Fr. 1, 2, 5, 16. (Mental Condition.)

a. In Ciceronian Latin this Ablative is generally attached to a *class*-name in apposition with the name of the person (as in the first example above). In later Latin, it is more freely attached to the name of the person (as in the second example above).

b. Statūra, fōrma, and corpus, as really expressing the idea of *Kind*, may be used with either the Genitive or the Ablative. Thus *hominēs tantulae statūrae*, *men of such diminutive stature* (= such puny men), B. G. 2, 30, 4; *quā faciē, quā statūrā*, *of what appearance, of what stature*, Phil. 2, 16, 41.

c. Genus is not much used in the Ablative, *modus* never.

d. Groups containing adjectives in -is or the adjective *pār* are almost always in the Ablative. Thus *cōstantiā singulārī*, *of exceptional steadfastness*; Pomp. 23, 68.

### Ablative of Cause or Reason

444. *Cause* or *Reason* may be expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.

*cūris aeger*, *sick with anxiety*; Aen. 1, 208.

*metū relictās urbīs*, *cities abandoned because of fear*; Pomp. 11, 32.

*meā restitūtione laetātus est*, *rejoiced in my return*; Planc. 10, 25.

a. The construction is especially frequent with verbs and adjectives of *taking pleasure, rejoicing, boasting*, or the opposite.<sup>1</sup>

b. The prepositions *dē*, *ex*, and *in* are occasionally used with one or another of these words. Thus *ex vulnere aeger*, *sick from a wound*, Rep. 2, 21, 38; *ex commutātiōne rērum doleant*, *suffer from a change of fortune*, B. G. 1, 14, 5; *ut in hōc sit laetātus, quod . . .*, *so that he took pleasure in the fact that . . .*, Phil. 11, 4, 9.

c. Cause may also be expressed by *ob*, *per*, or *propter* with the Accusative. Thus *ob eas rēs*, *on account of these achievements*, B. G. 2, 35, 4.

d. *Causā* and *grātiā*, common with Genitives (339, d), were themselves originally Ablatives of Cause.

### Ablative of Way or Manner

445. *Way* or *Manner* may be expressed by the Ablative, as follows:

1. With certain *very common* Nouns, by the Ablative without a Preposition. These are especially: *arte*, (*parī*, etc.) *certāmine*, *cōsiliō* (*intentionally*), *cāsū*, *dolō*, *fraude*, *fūrtō*, *iūre*, *iniūriā*, *meritō*, (*hōc*, etc.) *modō* or *mōre*, *ope* and *opibus*, *ordine*, (*hōc*, etc.) *pactō*, *paucis*, *ratione*, *ritū*, *sponte*, *vī* and *viribus*, *viā*, *vitiō*, *voluntāte* (*voluntarily*).

<sup>1</sup> E.g. *angor*, *bacchor*, *dēlector*, *doleō*, *exsiliō*, *exsultō*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *laetor*, *maerēō*, *mē iactō*; and the adjectives *beātus*, *fēlix*, *infēlix*, *laetus*, *maestus*, *miser*.

sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō, *accidentally or by intention*; B. G. 1, 12, 6.

iūre an iniūriā, *rightly or wrongly*; Mil. 11, 31.

aliqūō modō, *some way or other*; Arch. 5, 10.

a. The poets extend the usage. Thus rimīs, *in chinks*, Aen. 1, 123; cumlō, *in a heap*, Aen. 1, 105; cursū, *on the run*, Aen. 5, 265.

2. With other Nouns, if *Concrete*, by the Ablative without a Preposition. nūdō corpore pugnāre, *to fight with the body unprotected*; B. G. 1, 25, 4. aequō animō moriar, *I shall meet death with a calm mind*; Cat. 4, 2, 3. statuit nōn proeliis neque aciē, sed aliō mōre bellum gerundum, *decided that the war must be carried on, not with engagements or in battle array, but in some other manner*; Sall. Jug. 54, 5. pedibus proeliantur, *they fight on foot*; B. G. 4, 2, 3.

3. With other Nouns, if *Abstract*, by the Ablative with cum if no Adjective is used, and either with or without cum if an Adjective is used. sī utrumque cum cūrā fēcerimus, *if we do both things with care*; Quintil.

10, 7, 29.

magnā cum cūrā suōs finīs tuentur, *defend their boundaries with great care*; B. G. 7, 65, 3.

id summā cūrā conquirimus, *this we search for with the greatest care*; Ac. 2, 3, 7.

a. Occasionally, other turns of expression are used. Thus ad (or in) hunc modum, *in this way*; per vim, *by violence*; per locum, *in jest*.

### **Ablative with Verbs meaning *carry, hold, keep, receive, pour, depend***

446. 1. Verbs meaning *carry, hold, keep, or receive*,<sup>1</sup> and Verbs meaning *pour*,<sup>2</sup> may be followed by the Ablative.

quam equis vexerat, *which (legion) he had brought on horseback*; B. G. 1, 43, 2.

castris sēsē tenēbat, *was keeping himself in his camp*; B. G. 3, 17, 5.

oppidīs recipere, *receive them in their towns*; B. G. 2, 3, 3.

vina fundēbat pateris, *was pouring wine from the sacrificial bowls*; Aen. 5, 98.

a. In is occasionally used with some of these words. Thus equus in quō vehēbar, *the horse on which I was riding*, Div. 2, 68, 14; tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent, *storms that kept our men in camp*; B. G. 4, 34, 4.

2. Pendeō, *hang, depend*, takes in or a separative Preposition when used with literal force, and either a Preposition or the bare Ablative when used with figurative force.

ex ūnius vitā pendēre, *hung upon the life of one man*; Marc. 7, 22.

quae spē exiguā pendet, (our safety), *which hangs upon a slight hope*; Flacc. 2, 4.

<sup>1</sup> Ferō, portō, gerō, vehō, sustineō, gestō; mē teneō, mē contineō; accipiō, recipiō.

The Ablatives most used are equō, nāve, castris, vāllō, finibus, oppidō, urbe, portū, rēctō (and their plurals).

<sup>2</sup> Fundō and libō.



## TWO IDEAS SUGGESTED BY A SINGLE ABLATIVE

447. An Ablative may suggest *two ideas* at the same time.  
*superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, trained in (and by) preceding battles;*  
 B. G. 2, 20, 3. (Time and Means.)  
*quōrum adventū Rēmīs studium prōpugnandī accessit, at (and because of)*  
*their coming, the Remi felt fresh energy for the attack;* B. G. 2, 7, 2.  
 (Time and Cause.)  
*tranquillō silet, in calm it lies silent;* Aen. 5, 127. (Time and Situation.)

## PLACE-CONSTRUCTIONS

WITH NAMES OF TOWNS, *domus, rūs, etc.*

448. INTRODUCTORY. A few classes of words were in such constant use to express place-relations that the preposition never became regular with them. These are: Names of Towns and Small Islands, the words for *home* and *country*, and a few others. Though the constructions belong to three different cases, they will be best remembered together.

449. To express the *Place Where*, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Locative, which in the Singular Number of the First or Second Declension is identical with the Genitive, and elsewhere with the Ablative.

*Rōmae cōsulēs, Carthāgine quotannis annuī binī rēgēs creābantur, at*  
*Rome consuls were elected yearly, at Carthage two annual kings;*  
 Nep. Hann. 7, 4.

*nātus Athēnis, born at Athens;* Iuv. 3, 80.

*Cypri visum, seen at Cyprus;* B. C. 3, 106, 1.

a. Similarly *domī, at home, humī, on the ground, bellī and militiae, in war, rūri or rūre, in the country, foris, out of doors, mari, at sea. Terrā, on land* (seldom standing alone) follows the apparent case of *mari*.

*illi domī remanent, the others remain at home;* B. G. 4, 1, 5.

*rūri adsiduus fuit, he was constantly in the country;* Rosc. Am. 29, 81.

*terrā marique, on land and sea;* Cat. 2, 5, 11.

b. A Locative *terrae* is also sometimes used in later Latin; e.g. *sacra terrae cōlāvimus, we hid the sacred objects in the earth;* Liv. 5, 51, 9. Similarly, probably, *sternitur terrae, stretches himself upon the earth;* Aen. 11, 87.

c. *Animī, in mind* (in origin a Locative), and, by analogy, the Genitive *mentis*, are used with verbs and adjectives of Mental Condition to express Respect. Thus *furēns animī, raging in his heart,* Aen. 5, 202; *pendet animī, is uncertain in mind,* Tusc. 4, 16, 35.

d. The poets and some later prose writers use the construction of 449 somewhat boldly. Thus *Crētae cōsidere, to settle in Crete* (a large island), Aen. 3, 161; *Rōmae Numidiaequē, in Rome and Numidia;* Sall. Iug. 33, 4.

**450.** To express the *Place Whither*, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Accusative without a Preposition.

*Rōmam revertisse*, *returned to Rome*; Mil. 23, 61.

*Dēlum vēnit*, *came to Delos*; Verr. 1, 17, 46.

*a.* So sometimes Greek geographical names (as *Bosporum*, Mur. 16, 34), including *Aegyptus*, *Egypt* (N. D. 3, 22, 56).

*b.* Similarly *domum*, *home*,<sup>1</sup> and *rūs*, *to the country*.

*domum reditiōnis spē*, *hope of returning home*; B. G. 1, 5, 3.

*domum rediērunt*, *went home again*; B. G. 1, 29, 3.

*rūs ibō*, *I am going to the country*; Eun. 216.

*c.* Latin expresses the relations of Place with exactness, no matter how many words may be used.

*rēs ad Chrysogonum in castra L. Sullae Volāterrās dēfertur*, *the matter is reported to Chrysogonus in the camp of Lucius Sulla at Volaterrae* (in the Latin, *to . . . to . . . to . . .*); Rosc. Am. 7, 20.

**451.** To express the *Place Whence*, names of Towns and Small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

*Rōmā profectus est*, *set out from Rome*; Mil. 10, 27.

*Dēlō proficiscitur*, *sets out from Delos*; Verr. 1, 18, 46.

*a.* Similarly *domō*, *from home*, *rūre*, *from the country*.

*domō dūxerat*, *he had brought from home*; B. G. 1, 53, 4.

*rūre advenit*, *comes in from the country*; Hec. 190.

*b.* Letters are regularly dated *from* a place. Thus *Nōn. Nov. Brundisiō*, (*from*) *Brindisi*, *November 5*; Fam. 14, 12.

### The Appositive with Names of Towns Where, Whither, or Whence

**452.** When an Appositive like *urbs*, *oppidum*, etc., is to be added to the name of the Town *Where*, *Whither*, or *Whence*, the full expression with the Preposition is regularly used.

*Albae, in urbe opportūnā*, *at Alba, a convenient city*; Phil. 4, 2, 6.

*Tarquiniōs, in urbem flōrentissimā*, *to Tarquinii, a very prosperous city*; Rep. 2, 19, 34.

*Tusculō, ex clārrissimō mūnicipiō*, *from Tusculum, a very splendid town*; Font. 18, 41.

*a.* Exceptions occur. Thus *Antiochiāe, celebrī quondam urbe*, *at Antioch, a once populous city*, Arch. 3, 4; *Capuam, urbem amplissimā*, *to Capua, a very flourishing city*, Leg. Agr. 2, 28, 76.

---

<sup>1</sup> Similarly we say in English "go home," not "go to home."

## Occasional Use of the Preposition with Names of Towns, etc.

**453.** A Preposition may be used with the Name of a Town :

1. To express *the neighborhood in, to, or from which*.

ad Cannās pugnam, *the battle at* (i.e. near) Cannae; Liv. 22, 58, 1.

ad Genāvam pervenit, *arrives before Geneva*; B. G. 1, 7, 1.

ab Zāmā discēdit, *withdraws from the neighborhood of Zama*; Sall. Iug. 61, 1.

a. With a noun, the *Adjective* is frequent to express the *neighborhood in which*. Thus post Cannēsem pugnam, *after the battle at Cannae*; Liv. 23, 1, 1.

2. To express *the point reckoned from or toward*.

ā Bibracte nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, *was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte*; B. G. 1, 23, 1.

3. Occasionally for *sharper contrast*.

ab Ariminō Arrētium mittit, *sends from Rimini to Arezzo*; B. C. 1, 11, 4.

a. But at times the preposition seems to be used simply for the sake of variety (especially in poetry and later prose). Thus et ab Trallibus et ā Magnēsiā et ab Ephesō ad dēdendās urbīs vēnērunt, *(ambassadors) came from Tralles, from Magnesia, from Ephesus, to surrender their cities*, Liv. 37, 45, 1; ab domō, *from home*, Liv. 25, 31, 3.

## Domī, domum, domō, etc., with Modifiers

**454.** 1. Domī, domum, and domō may be modified by a Possessive Genitive or a Possessive Pronoun or Adjective. Thus domī Caesaris, domī meae, domī aliēnae, *at Caesar's house, at my house, at the house of another*.

2. When domus means a house regarded simply as a *building*, a Preposition is regularly used in the above constructions. Thus arma omnia in domum Gallōni contulit, *packed all the arms into the house of Gallonius*; B. C. 2, 18, 2.

3. In the ordinary meaning of *house* or *home*, either the bare case or the Preposition may be used, if the Noun is accompanied by a modifier. Thus domī Caesaris and in domō Caesaris; M. Laecae domum and in M. Laecae domum (Cat. 1, 4, 8).

4. "At a person's house" may also be expressed by apud or ad with the name of the person. Thus apud M. Laecam, *at the house of Marcus Laeca*, Cat. 2, 6, 12; ad M'. Lepidum, *at the house of Manius Lepidus*, Cat. 1, 8, 19.

## SUMMARY OF THE USES OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

**455.** The Accusative is always used with the Prepositions **ad**, **adversus** and **adversum**, **ante**, **apud**, **circā**, **circiter** and **circum**, **cis** and **citrā**, **contrā**, **ergā**, **extrā**, **infrā**, **inter**, **intrā**, **iūxtā**, **ob**, **penes**, **per**, **pōne** and **post**, **praeter**, **prope**, **propter**, **secundum**, **suprā**, **trāns**, **ultrā**, **versus** (380).

*a.* **Propius** and **proximē** may, like **prope**, take the Accusative (380, *b*).

*b.* **Versus** follows its noun. But this is generally preceded by another preposition (**ad** or **in**) unless it is the name of a Town or Small Island (380, *a*).

**456.** The Ablative is always used with the Prepositions **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, and **sine**; **cōram**, **palam**, **prae**, and **prō**; **cum** (405, 407, 418).

*a.* **Procul** and **simul** may take the Ablative in poetry and later prose (405, *c*; 418, *b*).

**457.** 1. The Accusative is used with **in** and **sub** to express the Place *Whither something moves* (381), the Ablative to express the Place *Where something is or is done* (433).

2. The Accusative is regularly used with **subter**, *beneath* (382). In poetry, the Ablative may also be used to express the Place *beneath Which something is or is done* (382, *a*).

3. The Accusative is regularly used with **super** in the sense of *upon*, *at*, or *in addition*, the Ablative in the sense of *concerning* (383, 435).

**458.** 1. **Prīdiē** and **postridiē**, *the day before* and *the day after*, generally take the Accusative (of Time-Relation), but sometimes the Genitive (of Connection, 380, *c*).

2. **Clam**, *secretly*, is regularly an Adverb in Cicero's time, but takes the Ablative once. In early Latin it is either an Adverb, or a Preposition with the Accusative (407, 2).

3. **Palam** is generally an Adverb, but occasionally a Preposition with the Ablative after Cicero's time (407, 1, *a*).

4. **Tenus**, *up to* (postpositive; rare in Cicero's time), generally takes the Ablative, but sometimes the Genitive (407, 3).

## GENERAL FORCES OF THE LATIN MOODS AND TENSES

459. GENERAL INTRODUCTION. 1. The Latin Subjunctive is made up of remains of two moods which in the parent speech had different forms: the Subjunctive, expressing the two distinct ideas of Will and Anticipation (I and II under 462), and the Optative, expressing the five distinct ideas of Wish, Obligation or Propriety, Natural Likelihood, Possibility, and Ideal Certainty (III-VII under 462).

The probable development of these forces of the two moods was as follows:

a) In its earliest use in the parent speech, the Subjunctive probably expressed Will.<sup>1</sup> Next, it was also used to express Anticipation (Expectation, Futurity). Compare English "you will" and "he will," the regular form for the Future, and the (unfortunately) growing use of "I will" in place of "I shall" (the proper Future form), as in "I will be late, if I don't hurry."

b) In its earliest use in the parent speech, the Optative probably expressed Wish (Desire, etc.).<sup>1</sup> Next, it was also used to express something *generally desirable*, i.e. an act that was obligatory or proper in a *class of cases* ("should," "ought," as in "the priest should put on a white robe in sacrificing," the original feeling being "it is desirable that the priest should," etc.). Next, the use of the mood was extended to *individual* cases of obligation or propriety. Next, the mood was employed, just as English "should" and "ought" may be, to express what was *naturally likely* to happen, as in "there should be white violets next week." Next, in cases where there were difficulties in the way, the force of natural likelihood was weakened to that of *possibility* ("may perhaps"). And finally, in cases where the circumstances were strongly favorable, this same force of natural likelihood was strengthened to that of a *certainty of the mind*, i.e. an *ideal certainty* ("would certainly").

2. The Latin Subjunctive inherited all these powers. In addition, several constructions (VIII-XII under 462) arose from two or more sources each (Composite Origin; 315, 3), and others (XIII and XIV under 462) through the influence of one or more constructions upon another (Analogy; 315, 4).

460. Mood is the expression, through the form of the Verb, of certain *attitudes of mind* toward an act or state. Thus:

*adestō, let him be present* (attitude of commanding)

*adsit, may he be present!* (attitude of wishing)

*nō adsit, lest he be present* (attitude of fearing)

*adest, he is present* (attitude of recognizing a fact)

461. In English, mood-ideas are expressed mainly by auxiliaries. Thus, "I *will* go," "you *shall* go," "he *should* go," "he *may* go," "he *would* go," etc. In Latin, they are expressed mainly by the mere *form* (*mood*) of the verb.

a. But many attitudes of mind can be expressed only by special words, combined with an Infinitive, e.g. the attitude of Hesitation, as in *dubitō adesse, I hesitate to be present*; the attitude of Suspicion, as in *suspicio eum adesse, I suspect that he is present*; the attitude of Haste, as in *properō adesse, I hasten to be present*.

b. Certain other ideas can be expressed *either* by the mood *or* by a special word, combined with an Infinitive. Thus one may say either *eat, let him go* (Volitive; 501, 3) or *volō eum ire, I want him to go* (587). In the former, the mood is volitive, in the latter, the meaning of the verb *volō*.

<sup>1</sup> Will has regard to something felt by the speaker to lie within his control; Wish, to something felt to lie outside of his control.

462. The Latin moods, with the principal ideas of which they are the expression, are as follows :

TABLE OF THE PRINCIPAL FORCES OF THE LATIN MOODS

Imperative	Of Peremptory Command (as in <i>work hard, succeed</i> ).
Subjunctive	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>I. Of Will (Volitive Subjunctive, as in <i>I WILL succeed, he SHALL succeed</i>).</p> <p>II. Of Anticipation (Anticipatory Subjunctive, as in <i>until I SHALL succeed, he SHALL succeed, etc.</i>).</p> <p>III. Of Wish (Optative Subjunctive, as in <i>MAY I succeed! MAY he succeed!</i>).</p> </div> </div>
A. Simple	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>IV. Of Obligation or Propriety (as in <i>he SHOULD succeed, meaning it is his duty to succeed</i>).</p> <p>V. Of Natural Likelihood (as in <i>he SHOULD succeed, meaning he is likely to succeed</i>).</p> <p>VI. Of Possibility (Potential Subjunctive, as in <i>perhaps he MAY succeed</i>).</p> <p>VII. Of Ideal Certainty (as in <i>he WOULD succeed</i>).</p> </div> </div>
B. Composite (Fusion)	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>VIII. Of Actuality (Fact) in Consecutive Clauses (as in <i>so that he succeeds</i>).</p> <p>IX. Of Condition (as in <i>if he should succeed</i>).</p> <p>X. Of Proviso (as in <i>let him only succeed, provided he succeeds</i>).</p> <p>XI. Of Request or Entreaty (as in <i>let him do this</i>).</p> <p>XII. Of Consent or Indifference (as in <i>let him do it, he may do it</i>).</p> </div> </div>
C. By Analogy	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>XIII. Of Indirect Discourse (generally no change in English).</p> <p>XIV. By Attraction (generally no change in English).</p> </div> </div>
Indicative	Of Actuality, i.e. Fact (as in <i>he HAS succeeded, is succeeding, etc.</i> ).

a. The Volitive Subjunctive is so named from *volō*, *I will* (cf. English "volition"); the Anticipatory from the English word "anticipate," i.e. *look forward to, expect, foresee*; the Optative from *optō*, *I wish*; the Potential from *possum*, *I can* or *may*. The Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty is so named because, though it asserts just as much as the Indicative does, it does not, like that mood, assert a fact, but only a mental certainty, — a certainty that something *would be* true, or *would have been* true, under conditions that may be imagined.

463. In certain uses the Present and Future Indicative resemble the Subjunctive (571, 572). In certain others, the Present Indicative resembles the Future Indicative (571).

## GENERAL USES OF THE NEGATIVE PARTICLES (FOR REFERENCE)

**464.** 1. The Sentence-Negative for Imperative, Volitive, or Optative ideas is *nē*; for other ideas,<sup>1</sup> *nōn*.

For *nē*, the corresponding *connective* (*and not, nor*) is *nēve* or *neu*; for *nōn*, it is *neque* or *nec*.

a. *Nē* . . . *quidem, nihil, numquam, nēmō, and nullus, not even, nothing, never, etc.*, are used with all kinds of mood-ideas.

Thus, with a Volitive, *nihil fēceris, do nothing*, Att. 7, 8, 2; *numquam sīs, never permit*, Liv. 1, 32, 7; with an Indicative, *nihil fēcit, he did nothing*, Verr. 5, 5, 11; *numquam patiētur, he will never allow (it)*, Phil. 6, 3, 6.

b. *Exceptional Uses with Imperative, Volitive, or Optative ideas.* In Ciceronian Latin *neque* (for *nēve*) occurs, though *after positive expressions* only, as follows: with the Imperative once (*habē . . . nec . . . exīstīmā*, Att. 12, 22, 3); in independent Prohibitions (501, 3) often (*moveor . . . nec . . . putāveris*, Ac. 2, 46, 141); in independent Requests (530, 1) occasionally (e.g. *respuātur nec . . . haereat*, Cael. 6, 14); in dependent Volitive Clauses occasionally (e.g. in the clause of Purpose, *ut . . . praetermittam neque appellem*, Verr. 3, 48, 115).

In poetic and later Latin *neque* is used more freely for *nēve*, and even *after negatives*.

In double Prohibitions, *neque . . . neque . . .*, as well as *nē . . . nēve . . .*, are occasionally employed in all periods (e.g. *neque dēfiat neque supersit*, Men. 221; *neque dēideris nec posueris*, Rep. 6, 23, 25).

c. In poetry after Cicero's time, *nōn* is occasionally used in Wishes in the true Optative (511, 1) without *utinam* (e.g. *nōn intermisceat*, Ecl. 10, 5), and even with the Imperative (e.g. *nōn onerāte*, Ov. A. A. 3, 129).

d. *Nōn* is freely used in all periods to negative the meaning of a single word.

*pauca nūntiāte meae puellae nōn bona dicta, take a brief message, not a kindly one, to my mistress*; Catull. 11, 15.

## 2. But the Negative *changed* in certain constructions:

a) In consequence of the *weakening* of an original force.

Thus the feeling of Volition was weak in many Questions of Volitive origin (503) and wholly disappeared in the Exclamation of Surprise. Hence *nōn* came to be the negative in *all* these Questions or Exclamations.

b) In consequence of the *change* of an original force.

Thus the Optative and Volitive Subjunctives gave rise, in certain kinds of sentences, to the idea of Obligation ("ought," "should"; see 512). But this idea is one of *statement*, and, *as such*, naturally took the negative *nōn* or *neque*. Similarly, the Subjunctive with *utinam* is of Potential descent, and must originally have taken the negatives *nōn* and *neque*; but it came to have the meaning of a Wish and, in consequence, to take *nē* and *nēve* (511, 1).

<sup>1</sup> All these others (in the finite verb) are ideas of Statement (or corresponding Questions), except the Anticipatory idea, which was *originally* one of Statement.

3. On the other hand, an original Negative may *survive* in occasional or even frequent use, *alongside* of a new one.

Thus the original *nē*, as well as *nōn*, is found in Statements of Obligation or Propriety (513, 1), and the original *nōn*, as well as *nē*, in Wishes with *utinam* (511, 1).

## GENERAL FORCES OF THE LATIN TENSES

### A. ORDINARY FORCES

465. Tense is the expression, through the form of the Verb, of *ideas of time*.

466. 1. *Tenses of the Stage*. An act may be represented as *in a certain stage of advancement* at a time which is in mind, namely as completed, in progress,<sup>1</sup> or yet to come. Thus :

*aedificāveram*, *I had built* (act completed)

*aedificābam*, *I was building* (act in progress)

*aedificātūrus eram*, *I was going to build* (act yet to come)

*a*. The Tenses of the Stage may also be called *Tenses of the Situation* (State of Affairs), or *Descriptive Tenses*, since they tell *how things were, are or will be*, at the time which is in mind. These phrases will be used interchangeably.

2. *Aoristic Tenses*. Or, an act may be represented *in summary* (i.e. as a *whole*). Thus :

*aedificāvi*, *I built*

467. 1. An act is generally seen as in a certain stage only *when referred to* some particular time which is in mind. Hence the tenses of the stage are generally *Relative* (i.e. relatively *present*, relatively *past*, or relatively *future*).

*a*. The particular time *with reference to which* an act is seen as in a certain stage may conveniently be called either the Point of Reference or the Point of View.

2. An act thought of as a whole (i.e. aoristically) may be looked at either without, or with, reference to a particular time, i.e. either *Absolutely* or *Relatively*.

*a*. The aoristic tenses of the Indicative are always absolute (examples in 478). The Subjunctive tenses, when used with aoristic force, are sometimes absolute (examples in 478), sometimes relative (examples in 477, *b*).

<sup>1</sup> The phrases *in progress*, *progressive*, *going on*, and *incomplete* all mean substantially the same thing, and will be used interchangeably.



## MEANINGS OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE, IN DETAIL

468. The tenses of the Indicative are as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. The **Present Indicative** represents an act as *in progress at the time of speaking* (Progressive Present). Thus *aedificat, he is building*.

a. The **Present Indicative** may also represent a present act *seen aoristically*. Thus *aedificat, he builds*.

b. The **Present Indicative** may express a permanent truth or custom (Universal Present). Thus *libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, men readily believe what they want to believe*; B. G. 3, 18, 6.

c. For the Historical use of the Present, see 491, 1.

2. The **Imperfect Indicative** represents an act as *in progress at a past time*. Thus *aedificābat, he was building*.

3. The **Future Indicative** represents an act as *in progress at a future time*. Thus *aedificābit, he will be building*.

a. The **Future Indicative** may also represent a future act *seen aoristically*. Thus *aedificābit, he will build*.

4. The **Perfect Indicative**, in the sense of a *Present Perfect*,<sup>2</sup> represents an act as, *at the time of speaking, completed*. Thus *aedificāvit, he has built*.

a. The **Perfect Indicative**, in the sense of a *Past Aorist*,<sup>3</sup> represents a past act *seen aoristically*. Thus *aedificāvit, he built*.

5. The **Past Perfect Indicative** (commonly called Pluperfect) represents an act as, *at a past time, completed*. Thus *aedificāverat, he had built*.

6. The **Future Perfect Indicative** represents an act as, *at a future time, completed*. Thus *aedificāverit, he will have built*.

7. The **Periphrastic Futures** represent acts as, *in the present, past, or future respectively, yet to come*.<sup>4</sup> Thus *aedificātūrus est, erat, or erit, he is, was, or will be, about to build*.

NOTE. Notice that the Present Indicative serves for both the Present Aorist and the Present Progressive (*aedificō, build and am building*); the Future for the Future Aorist and the Future Progressive (*aedificābō, shall build and shall be building*); and the Perfect for the Past Aorist and the Present Perfect (*aedificāvi, built and have built*).

<sup>1</sup> The tenses of the Passive correspond, e.g. *domus aedificābātur, aedificāta erat, aedificanda erat, the house was building, had been built, was going to be built*.

<sup>2</sup> Often called the Perfect Definite.

<sup>3</sup> Often called the Perfect Indefinite, or the Historical Perfect.

<sup>4</sup> The *periphrastic futures* of the Active and Passive, taken together, may conveniently be called the Tenses of Impending Action.

## MEANINGS OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE, IN DETAIL

469. Each Subjunctive tense has the force of *the Indicative tense of the same name*; and, in addition, each has a *future* force. Accordingly,

470. 1. The Imperfect Subjunctive expresses an act as, *at a certain past time*, (1) in progress, or (2) yet to come; the Past Perfect expresses an act as, *at a certain past time*, (1) already completed, or (2) yet to come (and thought of as in a completed state<sup>1</sup>); the Present expresses an act as, *at the present time*, (1) in progress, or (2) yet to come; and the Perfect expresses an act as, *at the present time*, (1) already completed, or (2) yet to come (and thought of as in a completed state<sup>1</sup>).

The Subjunctive has no special tenses for the third great division of time, — the Future, — but uses over again the tenses belonging to the Present, namely, the so-called Present and Perfect.

SUMMARY. The Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive are *tenses of a past point of view*, while the Present and Perfect Subjunctive are *tenses of the present or future point of view*.

a. In Wishes, Conditions, and Conclusions, the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive refer to either the *present* or the *past*, and represent the act as *contrary to fact*. See 510, a; 581, a, remark.

2. The Subjunctive has its *Aorists* also, with the same names as the Aorists of the Indicative, namely, the Perfect and the Present; thus *rogās cūr aedificāverim*, *you ask why I BUILT*; *rogās cūr aedificem*, *you ask why I BUILD*; *aes aliēnum faciō, ut aedificem*, *I am borrowing money, in order that I MAY build*. The Imperfect, too, may be used with aoristic meaning; thus *aes aliēnum fēcī, ut aedificārem*, *I borrowed money, in order that I MIGHT BUILD*.

3. Like the Indicative tenses, the tenses of the Subjunctive have the power of expressing an act or state *relatively* (i.e. as relatively *past*, relatively *present*, or relatively *future* or *subsequent*<sup>2</sup>).

4. The Subjunctive possesses periphrastic forms, corresponding to those of the Indicative, to express an act as, *at a certain time*, yet to come, e.g. *aedificātūrus esset*, or *sit*, *he was, is, or will be, GOING to build*.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the Past Perfect Subjunctive thus fills the place of a *Future Perfect Subjunctive from a past point of view*, and the Perfect Subjunctive the place of a *Future Perfect Subjunctive from a present or future point of view*.

<sup>2</sup> In Consecutive Clauses (519, 3, a; 521, 1, e), the act mostly takes place *after* that which brought it about, i.e. *subsequently*.

*α.* These Periphrastic Futures are used when the other forms would be ambiguous; hence in Indirect Questions of Fact (537), Consecutive Clauses (521), Causal-Adversative Clauses (523), and (generally) *quā*-Clauses after *nōn dubitō* (521, 3, *δ*). Thus: *rogāvit quid factūrus essem*, asked what I was going to do (past situation).  
*rogat* " " *sim*, asks what I am going to do (present situation).  
*rogābit* " " *sim*, will ask what I am (shall then be) going to do (future situation).

#### MEANINGS OF THE TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE

471. The so-called Present Imperative refers to *the immediate future*, the Future Imperative to *the more remote future*.  
*aedificā, build* (now). *cum redieris, aedificātō, build after you return.*

#### MEANINGS OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

472. The tenses of the Infinitive express an act as, at the time of the verb on which they depend, *completed* (Perfect Infinitive), *in progress* (Present Infinitive), or *yet to come* (Future Infinitive). They cannot, of themselves alone, show in which of the three divisions of time the act expressed by them belongs. They are thus purely *relative*.

Present, *aedificāre, to be building*      *aedificārī, to be building* (to be being built)

Perfect, *aedificāvisse, to have built*      *aedificātus esse, to have been built*

Future, *aedificātūrus esse, to be going to (intending to) build*      *aedificātum iri, to be going to be built*

*a.* Like the Indicative and Subjunctive tenses, the tenses of the Infinitive have the secondary power of expressing an act as *prior, contemporaneous, or future* to the time which is in mind.

Thus *dicit sē aedificāvisse*, he says that he has built (he says *aedificāvī, I have built*); *dixit sē aedificāvisse*, he said that he had built; *dicit aedificāre*, he says that he is building (he says *aedificō*); *dixit sē aedificāre*, he said that he was building; *dicit sē aedificātūrum esse*, he says that he shall build (he says *aedificābō, or aedificātūrus sum*); *dixit sē aedificātūrum esse*, he said that he should build.

*b.* These three tenses may also be used aoristically in dependence upon the present tense of a verb of *saying, thinking, or the like*. Thus *dicit sē aedificāvisse*, he says that he built (he says *aedificāvī, I built*).

*c.* For verbs having no Future Infinitive, this form is replaced by *fore* or *futūrum esse* with *ut* and the Subjunctive, in either voice; and the same equivalent *may* be used for the Future Infinitive of any verb.

*magnam in spem veniebat fore uti pertinaciā desisteret, (Caesar) was coming to have great hopes that (Ariovistus) would give up his obstinacy (that it would be the case that he would . . . )*; B. G. 1, 42, 3.

*futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur, (he said) that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be turned away from him*; B. G. 1, 20, 4.

d. The auxiliary *posse* with the Present Infinitive of any verb may form an equivalent for the Future Infinitive.

*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope to be able to master the whole of Gaul (= sēsē potitūros esse spērant, they hope that they will master . . . )*; B. G. 1, 3, 8.

#### MEANINGS OF THE TENSES OF THE PARTICIPLE

**473.** The tenses of the Participle express an act as, at the time of the main verb, *completed* (Perfect Passive Participle), *in progress* (Present Active Participle), or *yet to come* (Future Active and Future Passive Participle). They are thus, like the tenses of the Infinitive (472), purely relative.

Present Active, *aedificāns, building*

Perfect Passive, *aedificātus, built*

Future Active, *aedificātūrus, about to build*

Future Passive, *aedificandus, about to be built*

#### USES OF INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND IMPERATIVE TENSES IN COMBINATIONS OF VERBS

**474. INTRODUCTORY.** 1. The subordinate act generally belongs in *the same temporal scene* with the main act, and so necessarily in the same great division of time with it (*both* in the past, *both* in the present, or *both* in the future). Naturally, it is generally looked at as it was, is, or will be, *at the time of that act*, and so is expressed by a *relative* tense. Hence the facts noted in 476.

2. But the subordinate act *may* belong in a *different division of time* from the main act, or, though belonging in the same division of time, it *may* be looked at *absolutely*, so far as tense is concerned. Hence the facts noted in 478.

3. Rarely, there is a purely mechanical harmony of tenses. See 480.

**475.** Any combination of tenses is possible for which the corresponding combination of *meanings* is possible. In addition, combinations with purely mechanical harmony sometimes occur. The possibilities may be tabulated as follows:

A.	With true tense-force (Indicative or Subjunctive)	{	I.	Acts in Temporal Relation (476)
			II.	Acts not in Temporal Relation (478)
B.	Without true tense-force (Subjunctive only)	{	III.	Tenses in Mechanical Harmony (480)

## I. USUAL COMBINATIONS OF TENSES ("SEQUENCE OF TENSES")

(Acts in temporal relation)

476. A main<sup>1</sup> tense of the past<sup>2</sup> is generally accompanied by a dependent Imperfect or Past Perfect, and a main tense of the present or future by a dependent Present, Perfect, Future, or Future Perfect.<sup>3</sup>

## INDICATIVE

Helvētī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, *the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in prowess, because they engage in almost daily encounters with the Germans*; B. G. 1, 1, 4.

Caesar ālārīs omnīs in cōspectū hostium cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legiōnārīōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, *Caesar placed all his auxiliaries in sight of the enemy, because he was weak in the number of his legionaries as compared with that of the enemy*; B. G. 1, 51, 1.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus, *this, however, is not difficult, since we are so strong in cavalry*; B. C. 3, 86, 4.

hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod antiquitus summa auctōritās erat in Haeduīs, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant, *the latter, since they were not strong in themselves, because in early times the largest influence lay with the Haeduans, had bound the Germans and Ariovistus to themselves*; B. G. 6, 12, 2.

477. These relations between main and subordinate verbs appear not only when the latter are subordinate in form, but also when, though subordinate in *feeling*, they are *independent in form* (paratactic; 227); for the relations are, in fact, relations of thought. And they hold for *Indicatives and Subjunctives alike*.

RELINQUĒBĀTUR ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn POTERANT. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn POSSENT, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum MITTUNT, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs IMPETRĀRENT. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum POTERAT, *there WAS LEFT only the way through the land of the Sequani; and by this, on account of the narrowness of the pass, they WERE UNABLE to go without the consent of the*

<sup>1</sup> I.e. any tense on which another depends.

<sup>2</sup> The tenses of the past, Indicative or Subjunctive (Perfect Aorist, Past Perfect, and Imperfect), are often called "secondary" or "historical," and the tenses of the present or future (Present, Future, Present Perfect, and Future Perfect), "primary."

<sup>3</sup> Since Periphrastic Futures contain an erat, est, etc., this statement includes them.

*Sequani. Failing* (when they WERE UNABLE) *to persuade the latter by themselves, they send* (= SENT) *ambassadors to Dumnorix the Haeduan, in order that, through his intercession, they MIGHT OBTAIN what they wanted of the Sequani. Dumnorix POSSESSED great influence with the Sequani*; B. G. 1, 9, 1-3. (The externally independent *relinquēbātur* and the dependent *poterant* and *possent* alike express a *past situation*, i.e. the situation existing at the time when *mittunt* took place; and *poterat* again expresses situation for the next main act, to which the narrative moves on. *Poterant* and *possent* differ only in mood, being identical in point of tense-meaning. *Impetrārent* expresses an act belonging in the same general temporal scene with the rest, but yet to come, — a *past purpose*).

*quāpropter DĒCERNITE diligenter, ut INSTITUITIS, ac fortiter. HABĒTIS eum cōsulem quī pārēre vestris dēcrētis nōn DUBITET, therefore decide with careful thought, as you HAVE BEGUN, and boldly. You HAVE a consul who HAS no hesitation in following your decisions*; Cat. 4, 11, 24. (*Dēcernite* expresses a command looked at from the *present*; *instituistis, habētis*, and *nōn dubitet* express the *present* situation, under which the act of *dēcernite* is to be performed.)

a. If the meaning is that of Contrariety to Fact (581) the Imperfect and Past Perfect are necessarily employed *after a main verb of any time*, except as shown in 581, b, 2).

*moriar, si magis gauderem, si id mihi accidisset, may I die, if I should be more pleased if it had happened to myself*; Att. 8, 6, 3.

b. The relative tenses of the Indicative all express *situation*; the aoristic tenses of the Indicative do not (467, 2, a).

The Subjunctive tenses, when used with relative force, may express either the idea of situation, or the aoristic idea. Thus, either a situation, or an act seen in summary, may be put as relatively future to a past time.

Thus *ut suppeteret* in B. G. 1, 3, 1 expresses a past-future *situation*; *nē committeret*, B. G. 1, 22, 3, a past-future act seen *aoristically*; *ut nōn possent*, B. G. 3, 15, 3, a subsequent *situation* in the past (in *tense*, *possent* = *poterant*); *ut redintegrārent*, B. G. 2, 27, 1, a result seen *aoristically*, but in *temporal relation* (namely, as *subsequent*) to the time of the main verb. With the last, compare the absolute tense in *ut amiserit*, 478, and the explanation there given.

c. In any expression of thought, the most important acts or states are selected for the principal statements, and expressed by *absolute* tenses (467, 2), which may therefore be called *principal* (or *leading*) tenses. The side-lights upon these principal acts or states are expressed by *relative* tenses (467, 1), which may therefore be called *auxiliary* (or *helping*) tenses. Thus, in the first example above, *mittunt* is a principal *tense*, while *relinquēbātur*, *poterant*, and *possent* are auxiliary tenses.

## II. LESS USUAL COMBINATIONS OF TENSES ("Exceptions to the Sequence")

(Acts *not* in temporal relation)

478. A main tense is sometimes accompanied by a tense belonging to a different division of time, or by an absolute tense belonging to the same division of time.

## INDICATIVE

id hōc facilius iis persuāsīt, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur, *he FOUND it easier to persuade them for the reason that the Helvetians, by the very character of the country, ARE HEMMED in on all sides*; B. G. 1, 2, 3. (Main act in past, while the reason is an ever-present one.)

nunc incipiunt credere fuisse hominēs Rōmānōs hāc quondam continentīā, quod iam nātiōnibus exteris incredibile vidēbātur; *now they BEGIN to believe that there once were Romans possessed of this self-restraint, which thing WAS BEGINNING TO SEEM incredible to foreign nations*; Pomp. 14, 41.

ab senātū impetrātum (est); tantum āfuit ut ex incommodō aliēnō occāsiō peterētur, *the request WAS granted by the senate; so far WERE they from taking advantage of another's dilemma*; Liv. 4, 58, 2. (Āfuit is in the same temporal scene with impetrātum (est), but is looked at absolutely.)

superiōra illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen, ut potuī, tulī, *the earlier things, though they WERE intolerable, I nevertheless BORE, as well as I COULD*; Cat. 1, 7, 18. (The tense of fuērunt is absolute.)

id fēcīt, quod nōluit eum locum vacāre, *he DID this because he DID not wish this territory to lie open*; B. G. 1, 28, 4. (The tense of nōluit is absolute.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

filius pertimuit nē ea rēs mihi nocēret, cum praesertim adhūc stilli poenās dem, *my son FEARED that the affair might do me harm, especially since I AM still PAYING the penalty for my writing*; Fam. 6, 7, 1. (Past fear, with reason still present.)

cuius rei tanta est vīs ut Ithacam sapientissimus vir immortalitāti antepōneret, *so great IS the power of this (love of country) that the wisest of men preferred his Ithaca to immortality*; De Or. 1, 44, 196. (In tense, antepōneret = antepōnēbat.)

ita est mulcātus ut vitam amiserit, *he WAS so maltreated that he LOST his life*; Mil. 14, 37. (Amiserit is in the same temporal scene with est mulcātus, but is looked at absolutely. Similarly ut dēfuerit, B. G. 2, 21, 5.)

cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnatū sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, *though the battle LASTED from the seventh hour till evening, nobody COULD catch sight of an enemy's back*; B. G. 1, 26, 2.

fuit mirificā vigilantīā, qui suō tōtō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit, *he WAS a wonderfully wide-awake man, for in his whole consulship he KNEW no sleep*; Fam. 7, 30, 1.

a. Unrelated tenses are less frequent in Subjunctive than in Indicative clauses, because the bond of thought is generally closer between a Subjunctive clause and the main sentence.

Thus a Purpose necessarily exists *at the time of the main act* which is performed in order to bring it about, and its tense will accordingly be a relative one.

**479.** The combination of a Present with a Past or Future Aorist, or of these with each other, is natural and common.<sup>1</sup>

*illī aliēnum, quia poēta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt, they claim a foreigner, even after his death, because he was a poet; Arch. 9, 19. quid fēcerim, nārrābō, I'll tell you what I did; De Or. 2, 48, 198.*

a. Such a Past Aorist may of course be accompanied by dependent tenses of the Past. The Past Aorist thus often serves as a *bridge of passage* from a past temporal scene to a present one, or *vice versa*.

#### DEPENDENT INDICATIVE

QUAERŌ cūr bona quae POSSIDĒBAT nōn  
VĒNDIDERIT, *my question is why he*  
*DID not sell the goods of which he*  
*was possessed; Quint. 24, 76.*

#### DEPENDENT SUBJUNCTIVE

QUAERĀMUS quae tanta vitia FUERINT  
in ūnicō filiō, quārē is patrī DISPLI-  
CĒRET, *let us INQUIRE what so*  
*great faults there WERE in this only*  
*son, that he WAS obnoxious to his*  
*father; Rosc. Am. 14, 41. Simi-*  
*larly Cat. 3, 9, 21, and often.*

### III. (RARE) MECHANICAL HARMONY OF SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

**480.** A Subjunctive tense is sometimes put, without true tense-meaning, into mechanical harmony with that of a Subjunctive main verb.

This happens especially in the Subjunctive by (Mechanical) Attraction (539), and in Indirect Questions depending upon constructions Contrary to Fact.

*respondērem sī, quem ad modum parātī essēmus, scīrem, I should answer,*  
*if I knew in what fashion we were (i.e. are) prepared; Att. 7, 18, 1.*

#### ALTERNATIVE TENSE-USAGES

**481.** Tenses in Clauses Dependent on a Present Perfect. The Present Perfect covers both the past act and the present result. Hence an act

<sup>1</sup> This is because it is the very nature of the aorists to express an act as it looks *from the present*. The mind, standing at the present, looks easily in either direction.



dependent upon a Present Perfect may be seen *either* in connection with the Past *or* in connection with the Present, and consequently either kind of tense may be used.

THOUGHT MAINLY CONCERNED  
WITH THE PRESENT

haec tibi SCRIPSĪ, quia dē omnibus quae  
mē vel dēlectant vel angunt tēcum  
loqui SOLEŌ, *this I HAVE WRITTEN to  
you, for the reason that I AM in the  
habit (present reason) of talking  
over with you everything that GIVES  
me pleasure or annoyance, (con-  
tinued on the right.)*

rērum nātūra nullam nōbīs DEDIT cogni-  
tīōnem finium, ut illā in rē statuere  
POSSĪMUS, 'quātenus,' *nature HAS  
not equipped us with power to draw  
the line so that we ARE in any  
matter able to determine 'how far';  
Ac. 2, 29, 92. (Present Result;  
that which nature has accomplished  
is not that . . .)*

THOUGHT MAINLY CONCERNED  
WITH THE PAST

deinde, quod dūrum EXISTIMĀBAM tē  
fraudāre voluptāte quam ipse CAPIĒ-  
BAM, *and, secondly, (I have written)  
because it SEEMED to me (reason of  
the time of beginning the writing)  
unkind to cheat you of the pleasure  
which I myself WAS TAKING; Plin.  
Ep. 5, 1, 12.*

mentēs enim hominum audācissimōrum  
scelerātae ac nefāriae nē vōbīs nocēre  
POSSENT, ego PRŌVIDĪ, *for I HAVE  
taken precautions, to the end that the  
wicked and abominable purposes of  
abandoned men SHOULD do you no  
harm; Cat. 3, 12, 27. (Past Aim;  
in what I have done, my purpose  
was . . .)*

#### 482. Permanent Truths in Clauses Dependent on a Verb of the Past.

1. That which is permanently true was of course true in the past, and, if connected in thought with a past act, will generally be seen and stated as it *then was* (i.e. by a tense of past situation).<sup>1</sup>

2. But a permanent truth will occasionally be seen and stated as such (i.e. by a tense of present situation), in spite of its being connected in thought with a past act.<sup>2</sup>

INDICATIVE

(1) Permanent truth in its aspect at a past time (tenses of past situation)  
mōns altissimus impendēbat, *a lofty  
mountain OVERHUNG; B. G. 1, 6,  
1. (It still does, of course, when  
Caesar writes; but that fact is not  
the important one.)*

SUBJUNCTIVE

certior factus est montis quī impen-  
dērent ā maximā multitudīne tenēri,  
*he was informed that the mountains  
which OVERHUNG were held by a  
very large body of men; B. G.  
3, 2, 1. (The tense-meaning of  
impendērent is the same as that of  
impendēbat opposite.)*

<sup>1</sup> E.g. you WERE a kind-hearted fellow: that's why you helped me.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. you ARE a kind-hearted fellow: that's why you helped me.

## (2) Permanent truth in its general aspect (present tenses)

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

id (frumentum) erat perexiguum, quod sunt loca aspera ac montuosa, the grain was very scanty, because the district is rough and mountainous; B. C. 3, 42, 5.	hic, quantum in bellō fortūna possit, cognōsci potuit, at this juncture it was possible to recognize how great is the power of Fortune in war; B. G. 6, 35, 2.
--	--

NOTE. Both the Romans and we of English speech more frequently describe permanent facts of *external* nature by putting them in the same temporal scene with the main act; but we are more likely than the Romans to put permanent facts of *human* nature as always true (present tense).

## TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE DEPENDING UPON AN INFINITIVE

**483.** The Tenses of Subjunctive Clauses depending upon an Infinitive express meaning in the same way as Subjunctive Clauses depending upon Finite Verbs (475-482), and the combinations are accordingly the same.

It should be borne in mind that the Perfect Infinitive, like the Perfect Indicative, may be used either as a Past Aorist or as a Present Perfect.

dicō patefactum esse Pontum, quī antea clausus fuisset, *I say that Pontus was laid open, which before that time had been closed*; Pomp. 8, 20. (The tense of fuisset is relative, the point of view being that of the Past Aorist Infinitive patefactum esse. Cf. hī cum valērent, 476.)

cuius adventū ipso, tametsi ille ad maritimum bellum vēnerit, tamen impetūs hostium repressōs esse intellegunt, *by whose mere arrival, though he came for a war by sea, they know that none the less the attacks of (these) enemies were checked*; Pomp. 5, 13. (The tense of vēnerit is absolute. Cf. cum pugnātum sit, 478.)

id mihi instituisse videntur quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque . . . , *this (custom) they seem to me to have established for the reason that they do not wish their knowledge to be spread abroad, nor . . .*; B. G. 6, 14, 4. (Quod velint is put as a permanent truth in its general aspect. Cf. 482, (2).)

## B. SPECIAL FORCES GAINED BY VARIOUS TENSES

**484.** Tenses of Habitual<sup>1</sup> Action, or of Attempted<sup>2</sup> Action. The tenses expressing action as *going on* (Imperfect, Present, Future) gained also the power of expressing *habitual action* or *attempted action*.

<sup>1</sup> Also called "Repeated" or "Customary."

<sup>2</sup> Also called "Conative."

Carthāgine quotannis binī rēgēs creābantur, at Carthage two kings used to be elected annually; Nep. Hann. 7, 4. (Habitual action.)

quī poenam removet, who is for removing the penalty; Cat. 4, 4, 7. (Attempted action. Similarly faciēbās, you were trying to do; Cat. 1, 5, 13.)

C. Flāminiō restitit agrum Gallicum dividētī, resisted Gaius Flaminius, who was trying to apportion the Gallic territory; Sen. 4, 11. (Attempted action.)

a. But a past habit may be looked at aoristically, and so be expressed by the Past Aorist (Perfect).

maiorēs sic habuerunt, our ancestors held this view; Cato Agr. Intr. 1.

**485.** Expressions of duration of time (e.g. iam diū, iam dūdum, or a noun of time), when added to a tense of action in progress (Imperfect, Present, or Future) show the action to have been *already* going on for the amount of time indicated.

tē iam dūdum hortor, I have long been urging you; Cat. 1, 5, 12.

iam dūdum flēbam, I had long been weeping; Ov. Met. 3, 656.

cum iam amplius hōis sex pugnārētur, when the battle had now been going on for more than six hours; B. G. 3, 5, 1.

sēcum ipse diū volvēns, having pondered for a long time; Sall. Jug. 113, 1.

**486.** 1. The Imperfect may be used to express the discovery of a state of affairs *existing before*.

"quid agitur, Aeschine?" "Them, pater mī, tū hīc erās?" "what's going on, Aeschinus?" "Why, father, were you here?" Ad. 901.

2. The Future may be used to express the discovery of a state of affairs *now existing*.

sic erit, you'll find it so (it will be so); Ph. 801.

**487.** In several verbs the Present Perfect, Past Perfect, and Future Perfect have come to express a present, past, or future *state*. Thus nōvī, (have learned) know, cōnsuēvī, am accustomed, memini, remember, ōdī, hate, coepī, begin, etc. Similarly, sometimes, in other verbs. Thus cōnstitērant, had taken their stand, = were standing; B. G. 1, 24, 3.

**488.** The Perfect of Experience<sup>1</sup> is sometimes used in the place of a general present.

lūdus enim genuit iram, for contests in sport beget hatred (have in the past begotten); Ep. 1, 19, 48.

**489.** The Perfect is sometimes used to indicate an act or state as *no longer existing*.

fuit Ilium, Ilium is no more (Ilium once was); Aen. 2, 324.

<sup>1</sup> Also called the "Gnomic Perfect."

**490. Energetic or Emphatic Perfect.** Tenses of completed action are often employed instead of tenses of incomplete action, to express *haste, thoroughness, or positiveness*. (Cf. English "begone" for "go.")

"rape mē: quid cessās?" "Fēcerō," "hurry me there: why are you so slow?"  
*"I'll do it at once"; Ph. 882.*

perimus, we are dead and buried; Trin. 515. (We have perished. Cf. perieris in 511, 1.)

sit inscriptum in fronte ūniuscuiusque, quid dē rē públicā sentiat, be it written once for all on every man's forehead what are his sentiments with regard to the Commonwealth; Cat. 1, 13, 32.

illōs monitōs volō, I want them to understand well . . . ; Cat. 2, 12, 27.

tē interfectum esse convenit, you ought to be killed and have done with it; Cat. 1, 2, 4. (Interfici would have meant simply be killed. Cf. trucidārī, 582, 3, a.)

neque ego ausim, nor should I for a moment venture; Sat. 1, 10, 48.

nē dubitārīs mittere, do not hesitate at all to send it; Att. 1, 9, 2.

a. In dependent clauses and in the Future Perfect Indicative (except in viderō, videris, etc.) this tense-use mostly passes away, after early Latin. Elsewhere it remains common in Ciceronian and later prose; but in Prohibitions (501, 3) and Softened Assertions (519, 1, δ) the tense seems to have become nearly or quite stereotyped, and must thus have lost much of its original sharpness.

**491. Picturesque Uses of the Tenses.** By the use of tenses properly belonging to the present point of view, a past scene may be brought before the mind as *now existing*, with its events *now* taking place, its purposes *now* entertained, etc., as follows:

1. A past event may be represented as now taking place, or a past situation as now existing (Historical Present<sup>1</sup> or Present Perfect).

quod iussī sunt, faciunt, they do as commanded (what they have been told to do, they do); B. G. 3, 6, 1.

a. The Historical Present is often used, with less vividness, in the *annalistic style*, giving the effect of copying from records made from time to time as the events occurred.

Silvius deinde rēgnat. Is Aenēam Silvium creat, next Silvius reigns. He begets Aeneas Silvius; Liv. 1, 3, 6.

2. In subordinate clauses of any kind, attached to such picturesque tenses, the same effect may be given<sup>2</sup> (e.g. a past purpose may be represented as *now* entertained), or the sober tenses of the past may be employed.

quaecumque ad oppugnatiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur, whatever is needed (picturesque tense) for the siege IS GOT TOGETHER (picturesque tense) at night; B. G. 5, 40, 5.

<sup>1</sup> This use might at any time arise through liveliness of imagination. But it more probably is a survival from an early use (see page 303, footnote).

<sup>2</sup> When the dependent clause precedes, the picturesque tense is less common.

**Dumnorigi** custōdēs pōnit, ut quibuscum loquātur scire possit, *he SETS spies (picturesque) over Dumnorix, that he MAY BE able (picturesque) to learn with whom he IS COMMUNICATING (picturesque)*; B. G. 1, 20, 6.

**Helvētiū** cum id quod ipsi diēbus viginti aegerrimē cōnfecerant, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, *the Helvetians, when they WERE AWARE (sober tense) that what they themselves HAD with the utmost difficulty ACCOMPLISHED (sober tense) in twenty days, he had done in one day, SEND ambassadors to him (picturesque tense)*; B. G. 1, 13, 12.

3. In poetry, a condition and conclusion which are really contrary to fact are sometimes picturesquely presented as still undetermined (i.e. as lying in the future).

**volat Diōrēs**, spatia et si plūra supersint, trānseat prior, *Diores flies along, and were there to be more space, he would be first to cross*; Aen. 5, 325. Cf. the sober cēpissent praemia, nī fūdisset, 5, 232.

**492. Tenses of Rapid Action.** The Past Perfect and the picturesque Present Perfect are occasionally used to indicate the *rapid succession of events*, intervening acts being passed over.

**vixdum dimidium dixeram**, intellēxerat, *hardly had I said the half, he had understood* (= he understood in an instant); Ph. 594.

**intonuēre poli**, *instantly the heavens thunder*; Aen. 1, 90.

**493. Epistolary Tenses.** In letters, acts are sometimes put as they *will appear* to the receiver. Hence the Imperfect or the Past Aorist instead of the Present, and the Past Perfect instead of the Present Perfect.

**haec ego scribēbam hōrā noctis nōnā**: **Milō** campum iam tenēbat. **Mārcellus** candidātus ita stertēbat, ut ego vicinus audīrem, *I am writing (was writing) this at the ninth hour of the night. Milo is already in the field. Marcellus, who is a candidate, is snoring so loud that I hear him next door*; Att. 4, 3, 5. (= scribō, tenet, stertit, audiam.)

a. When the epistolary tenses are used, the expressions of time of course change accordingly. "Yesterday" (heri) becomes "the day before" (pridīe), and "to-day" (hodiē) becomes "that day" (eō diē).

**494.** In general, Latin expresses relations of time more exactly than English.

**quibus ego si ēdictum praetōris ostenderō**, concident, *if I show them the praetor's edict, they will fall*; Cat. 2, 3, 5. (In Latin, more exactly, *shall have shown*, because this act comes first.)

**nihil est maius quam ut faveat orātōri is qui audiet**, *nothing is more important than that the man that hears shall be favorably disposed toward the speaker*; De Or. 2, 42, 178. (In Latin, more exactly, *the man that shall hear, matching the real time of faveat*.)

## THE IMPERATIVE

## 495. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE IMPERATIVE

Command, Advice or Suggestion, Consent or Indifference,  
Request or Entreaty, Prayer (496), Concession, Proviso, Condition (497).

496. The Imperative expresses *Peremptory Command*, *Advice* or *Suggestion*, *Consent* or *Indifference*, *Request* or *Entreaty*, or *Prayer*. The negative is *nē*.

The Present refers to the *immediate* future, the future to some *distinctly future* time, or to *future time in general* (hence regularly used in laws, treaties, and maxims).

*licitor, conligā manūs, licitor, bind his hands*; Liv. 1, 26, 7. (Command.)  
*mihi crēde, obliviscere caedis atque incendiōrum, take my advice, put bloodshed and conflagration out of your mind*; Cat. 1, 3, 6. (Advice.)  
*tibi permittō: posce, I give you permission: ask her in marriage*; Trin. 384. (Consent.)

*dīc sōdēs, tell me, please*; Ep. 1, 16, 31. (Request.)

*audī Iuppiter, hear thou, Jupiter*; Liv. 1, 32, 10. (Prayer.)

*crās petitō, dabitur, ask to-morrow, you shall have it*; Merc. 770.

a. The Imperative is sometimes accompanied by *age* (*agite*), *come*.

*vāde age vocā zephyrōs, come, go and call the breezes*; Aen. 4, 223.

b. *Quīn*, *pray do*, is often prefixed to the Imperative in early Latin. The usage is rare in Cicero, but revives in later Latin. (For the origin of the force of *quīn*, see 545, a, remark.)

*quīn omitte mē, do let me alone*; Ph. 486. Similarly Aen. 4, 547.

*quīn sic attendite, pray look at the matter thus*; Mil. 29, 79.

c. The Future Imperatives *mementō, bear in mind* (e.g. Cat. 2, 3, 5), and *scītō, know* (e.g. Cat. 2, 10, 23), are used in place of the Presents, which are rare or lacking. *Habētō* is used in the sense of *you are to understand* (e.g. Am. 2, 10).

d. The Imperative is not used in Prohibitions except in early Latin, legal Latin, poetry, and (rarely) later prose.

## 497. The Imperative is often used:

1. As a Substantive Sentence (cf. 502, 3, c).

*tū tacētō: hoc optimum est, keep quiet: that is best*; Rud. 1029.

2. In Concessions, Provisos, or Conditions (cf. 532, 529, 504, 1).

*estō: at certē . . . , be it so: yet at any rate . . .*; Heaut. 572. (Concession.)

*spectā, tum sciēs, look, and then you'll know*; Bacch. 1023 (= if you look).

498. Since the Imperative expresses a Direct Command, it cannot be used in Indirect Discourse, but *must be replaced by the Volitive Subjunctive* (Subjunctive of Command, 501, 3, becoming dependent, 538).

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE

## 499. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

## INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES

## Volitive Subjunctive

Resolve (501, 1)	{	Volitive Determinative Clause (502, 1)
Proposal, Suggestion, or Exhortation (501, 2)		Volitive Descriptive Clause (502, 1)
Command or Prohibition (501, 3)		Clause of Plan or Purpose (502, 2)
		Volitive Substantive Clause (502, 3)
		Dependent Clause of Fear or Anxiety (502, 4)
Question of Deliberation or Perplexity, etc. (503)		Commands and Prohibitions in Indirect Discourse (538)
Question or Exclamation of Surprise or Indignation (503)		Dependent Question of Deliberation or Perplexity, etc. (503)
Volitive Condition (504, 1)	{	Generalizing Clause in the Second Person Singular Indefinite (504, 2)
Subjunctive with <i>nē-dum</i> , <i>still less</i> (505)		Clause of Imaginative Comparison with <i>quasi</i> , etc. (504, 3)

## Anticipatory Subjunctive

(No independent uses)	{	Anticipatory Determinative Clause (507, 1)
		Anticipatory Descriptive Clause (507, 1)
		Anticipatory Substantive Clause with <i>ut</i> (507, 2)
		Indirect Question of Anticipation (507, 3)
		Clause of Anticipated Act with <i>antequam</i> or <i>priusquam</i> :
		Act anticipated and <i>prepared for</i> (507, 4, a)
		Act anticipated and <i>forestalled</i> (507, 4, b)
		Act anticipated and <i>insisted upon</i> (507, 4, c)
		Act anticipated and <i>deprecatd</i> (507, 4, d)
		Clause of Anticipated Act with <i>dum</i> , <i>dñec</i> , or <i>quoad</i> (507, 5)
		Past-Future Clauses in general (508; 509)

## Optative Subjunctive

Wish (511, 1)	Optative Substantive Clause (511, 2)
Optative Condition (511, 1, b)	

## Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety

Statement or Question of Obligation or Propriety (513, 1)	{	Dependent Question of Obligation or Propriety (513, 1)
		Clause of Obligation or Propriety with <i>quod</i> , <i>quārē</i> , etc. (513, 2)
		Relative Clause or <i>ut</i> -Clause after <i>dignus</i> , etc. (513, 3)
		Clause with <i>ut</i> after <i>tanti</i> , etc. (513, 4)
		Substantive Clause of Obligation or Propriety (513, 5)

## Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood

Question of Natural Likelihood (515, 1)	{	Clause of Natural Likelihood with <i>quī</i> , <i>quārē</i> , etc. (515, 2)
		Substantive Clause of Natural Likelihood with <i>ut</i> (515, 3)

## INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES

## Potential Subjunctive

Potential Statement or Question (517, 1) { Potential Relative Clause (517, 2)  
Potential Substantive Clause (517, 3)

## Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty

Statement or Question of Ideal Certainty (519, 1) { Determinative Clause of Ideal Certainty (519, 2)  
Softened Statement or Question (519, 1, b) { Descriptive Clause of Ideal Certainty (519, 2)  
Clause of Ideally Certain Result (519, 3)  
Substantive Clause of Ideal Certainty (519, 4)  
Conclusions of Ideal Certainty:  
Less Vivid Future (519, 1, a; 580)  
Contrary to Fact (519, 1, a; 581)

## Subjunctive Constructions of Composite Origin

(No independent uses) { Descriptive Clause of Actuality (Fact) with *qui*, etc., or *cum* (521, 1)  
Clause of Actual Result (Fact) with *ut*, *ut nōn*, or *quān* (521, 2)  
Substantive Clause of Actuality (Fact) with *ut*, *ut nōn*, or *quān* (521, 3, a and b)  
Derivatives of the Descriptive Clause of Fact:  
Restrictive *qui*-Clause (522)  
Causal or Adversative *qui*-Clause (523)  
Descriptive *cum*-Clause of Situation (524)  
Descriptive *cum*-Clause of Situation, with Accessory Causal or Adversative Idea (525)  
Purely Causal or Adversative *cum*-Clause (526)  
Subjunctive Conditions:  
Less Vivid Future (528; 580)  
Contrary to Fact (528; 581)  
Dependent Clause of Proviso (529)  
Substantive Clause of Request (530, 2)  
Subjunctive of Request (530, 1)  
Subjunctive of Consent or Indifference (531, 1) { Substantive Clause of Consent or Indifference (531, 2)  
Concession of Indifference (532, 1) { Concession of Indifference with *quāmvīs* or *quāmlibet* (532, 2)

## Subjunctive Constructions due to the Influence of Other Constructions

Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse in:  
Statements of Fact (535)  
Conditions of Fact (536)  
Questions of Fact (537)  
Commands and Prohibitions (538)  
Subjunctive by Attraction to a Subjunctive or Infinitive Clause (539)  
Subjunctive of Repeated Action (540)  
Generalizing Statement of Fact in Second Singular Indefinite (542)



## I. THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

**500.** The Volitive Subjunctive represents an act or state as *willed* or *wanted*. Hence it is used in expressions of *Demand*, *Intention*, or *Endeavor* (English "*I WILL*," "*you SHALL*," "*you ARE TO*," "*I WANT you to*," etc.). The negative is regularly *nē*.

*a.* In independent sentences, the Volitive Subjunctive expresses the will of *the speaker only*. In dependent clauses, it regularly expresses the will of the subject or agent of the principal clause.

*b.* The Present and Perfect generally express a *present* or *future* demand, intention, or endeavor; the Imperfect and Past Perfect a *past* demand, intention, or endeavor.

NOTE. The *performance* of the act expressed by the Volitive Subjunctive in the literal uses lies in time relatively *future*. In the figurative uses (504-505) the act imaginatively commanded may lie in time *relatively past*, *relatively present*, or *relatively future*.

**501.** The Volitive Subjunctive may be used in independent declarative sentences :

1. To express a *Resolve* for the speaker's own action (rarely, and mainly with *crēdō* or *opīnor*).

*maneam opīnor, I'll stay, I think*; Trin. 1136.

*sed opīnor quiescāmus, but I think I'll stop*; Att. 9, 6, 2.

*a.* The regular construction is the Future Indicative (572).

2. To express a *Proposal*, *Suggestion*, or *Exhortation*.

*vide sī hoc ūtile magis dēputās : ipsum adeam Lesbonicum, see if you think this idea more practical: I will go to Lesbonicus himself*; Trin. 748. (*Adeam* is a Proposal or Suggestion.)

*residāmus, sī placet, we will take seats, if you please* (= let us take seats); Fin. 3, 2, 9. (*Residāmus* is an Exhortation.)

3. To express a *Command* or *Prohibition*.

*sēcēdant improbi, let the ill-disposed withdraw*; Cat. 1, 13, 32.

*nē trānsieris Hiberum ! nē quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis, do not cross the Ebro ! Let there be no interference on your part with the Saguntines*; Liv. 21, 44, 6.

*a.* In Ciceronian and later prose,

1) If addressed to a *general* second person, Commands and Prohibitions are expressed by the Present Subjunctive.

*istō bonō ūtare, dum adsit ; cum absit, nē requirās, use this blessing while you have it ; when it is gone, do not mourn for it*; Sen. 10, 33.

2) If addressed to an *individual* second person (or persons), Commands are expressed by the Imperative; while Prohibitions may be expressed by the Perfect Subjunctive, or, in a roundabout way, by *cavē* with a dependent Subjunctive (502, 3, *b*), *vidē* with a dependent *nē*-clause (502, 3, *a*), or *nōlī* with the Infinitive (586). The Perfect Subjunctive is the most peremptory or emphatic form, and *nōlī* the most courteous.

*hoc facitō, hoc nē fēceris, this do, this do not do*; Div. 2, 61, 127.

*nē dubitāris mittere, do not hesitate to send*; Att. 1, 9, 2.

*cavē ignōscās, cavē tē misereat, beware of forgiving, beware of feeling pity*;

Lig. 5, 14.

*cavē audiam istuc ex tē, don't let me hear that from you (= don't say it)*;

Stich. 37.

*nōlīte dubitāre, do not hesitate (be unwilling to)*; Pomp. 23, 68.

*b*. In early Latin, and in the poetical style, both Imperative and Subjunctive are freely used in any kind of command or prohibition. Cf. 496, *d*.

**502.** The Volitive Subjunctive may be used in dependent clauses:

1. In Relative Clauses, determinative<sup>1</sup> or descriptive.<sup>2</sup>

"*cavē*." . . . "*Quid est quod caveam?*" "*look out.*" "*What is it that I am to look out for?*" Rud. 828. (Determinative.)

*Magō locum mōnstrābit quem insideātis, Mago will show you the place which you are to take for an ambushade*; Liv. 21, 54, 3. (Determinative.)

*saepe stilum vertās, iterum quae digna legī sint scriptūrus, use the eraser often, if you mean to write things that shall be worth reading a second time*; Sat. 1, 10, 72. (Descriptive.)

2. In Clauses of Plan or Purpose,<sup>3</sup> with *quī*, etc.,<sup>4</sup> *quō*, *ut*, or *nē*.  
*equitātum quī sustinēret impetum misit, he sent cavalry who were to check the attack (= to check)*; B. G. 1, 24, 1. (Past Purpose.)

*id quō maiōre faciant animō, that they may do it with greater courage*;

B. G. 7, 66, 6. (Purpose, picturesquely represented as Present.)

*mihi timōrem ēripi; sī est vērus, nē opprimar; sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsīnam, free me of fear; if it is well-founded, that I may not be crushed, but if false, that I may cease to fear*; Cat. 1, 7, 18. (Present Purpose.)

<sup>1</sup> That is, telling *what* person or thing is meant.

<sup>2</sup> That is, telling *what kind of* person or thing is meant (also called "characterizing" clauses).

<sup>3</sup> Such clauses are often called "final"      <sup>4</sup> Any relative may be used. Thus *ubi*, *unde*.

a. A Clause of Purpose may be preceded by an adverb of manner or degree, or by *eō cōnsiliō, eā causā, idcirco*, etc.

*librum petō ā tē ita corrigās nē mihi noceat, I beg of you to correct the book in such a way that it shall not do me harm*; Fam. 6, 7, 6.

*eō cōnsiliō, ut expugnārent, with the plan that they should storm*; B. G. 2, 9, 4.

b. *Quō* is generally used with a comparative, as in B. G. 7, 66, 6 above.

c. A Clause of Purpose is sometimes used parenthetically.

*ac nē longum sit, . . . iussimus, and, to be brief, we ordered . . .* (in order to be brief, I say at once, we ordered); Cat. 3, 5, 10.

### 3. In Substantive Clauses:

a) With verbs of *will* or *endeavor*.<sup>1</sup> The connective, if one is used, is *ut*<sup>2</sup> or *nē*.

*nē filii quidem hoc nostrī rescīscant volō, I want not even our sons to hear of this*; Ph. 819. Cf. *volō ut faciās, Bacch. 989, a.*

*tē hortor ut maneās in sententiā, nēve vim pertimēscās, I urge you to stand by your opinion, and not to fear violence*; Pomp. 24, 69.

*efficiēmus nē nimis aciēs vōbīs cordī sint, we'll see to it that you shall not like the battle-line too well*; Liv. 8, 7, 6.<sup>3</sup>

*vide nē peccēs, see that you don't do a wrong*; Ph. 803.

NOTE 1. The original Volitive force is often lost, so that the clause becomes a mere *verb-noun*.

*poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur, the punishment of being burned alive would follow*; B. G. 1, 4, 1.

NOTE 2. A *nē*-Clause with *videō* or *visō* may suggest a *Possibility*.

*vidē nē tuum fuerit, (see to it that it was not your duty) consider whether it was not your duty* (= possibly it was); Fin. 3, 3, 10. Similarly Pomp. 22, 63.

b) With verbs of *hindrance*, *prevention*, or *check*.<sup>4</sup> The connective is *nē*, *quīn*, or *quōminus*.

<sup>1</sup> Such verbs (or phrases) express: (1) *Will in its simplest form*, e.g. *volō, nōlō, mālō*; (2) *Demand, Command, or Direction*, e.g. *flāgitō, postulō, poscō, imperō, mandō, moneō* and its compounds, *hortor* and its compounds, *ēdicō, dicō, respondeō, scribō, mittō* (*send instructions*), *certiōrem faciō, prōnūtiō*, rarely *iubeō* and *vetō*; (3) *Intention, Plan, Purpose, or Agreement*, e.g. *dēcernō, in animum inducō, animus or cōsiliū est, scīscō, statuō, cēnseō, paciscor, convenit* (*it is agreed*), *placet* (*it is decided*); in its original meaning *is pleasing*, this belongs under c), *iūs est belli*; (4) *Endeavor on One's Own Part*, e.g. *labōrō* and its compounds, *instō, certō, nitor* and its compounds, *videō* and *prōvideō, cūrō, cōnsulō, tendō* and its compounds, *faciō* and its compounds, *cōnsequor* and *adsequor, agō, operam dō, committō, teneō* (*insist*) and *obteneō, est in manū* (*it is in one's power*); (5) *The Giving of an Impulse to Another*, e.g. *moveō, incitō, suādeō* and *persuādeō, impellō, adducō, inducō, cōgō, and subigō*.

<sup>2</sup> *Ut*, when used in substantive clauses, is purely formal, having come in, merely as the opposite of *nē*, from Clauses of Purpose, where it originated. By a natural second step, it was sometimes added to *nē* itself (likewise in clauses of purpose).

<sup>3</sup> *Faciō, efficiō, and perficiō* may be followed by either a Volitive or a Consecutive Clause (§21, 3, a), according as the act is presented as *aimed at*, or as *accomplished*.

<sup>4</sup> (1) *Hindrance, Prevention, Check, or Falling Short*, e.g. *impediō, prohibeō, obstō, obsistō, officiō, deterreo, teneō, facere nōn possum, or nōn possum alone, nōn est in manū, paulum, nōn longē, etc. with abest* (*quīn*); (2) *Avoidance*, e.g. *caveō, vitō, temperō, mō*

Quin is used only after a negative, quōminus after either a negative or a positive, nē generally only after a positive.<sup>1</sup>

quis umquam hoc senātor recūsāvit nē putāret? *what senator ever refused to think this?* Clu. 55, 150. The same verb recūsō, *negatived*, is used with quin in B. G. 4, 7, 3, and with quōminus in B. G. 1, 31, 7.

cave nē negēs, *beware of refusing*; Catull. 61, 152.

dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant, *were deterring them from collecting grain*; B. G. 1, 17, 2.

quin dicant, nōn est: meritō ut nē dicant, id est, *that they shall not say it, is not (in my power): that they shall not say it with reason, that is (in my power)*; Trin. 105. (Ut nē shows that the parallel clause with quin must be Volitive in feeling.)

quin loquar, numquam mē potes dēterrere, *you can never prevent me from speaking (that I shall not speak)*; Amph. 559.

paulum āfuit quin Vārum interficeret, *it lacked but little of his killing Varus (= he was on the point of . . .)*; B. C. 2, 35, 2. Cf. neque longius abesse quin Sabinus ēdūcat, B. G. 3, 18, 4.

NOTE 1. These uses came originally from combinations like recūsō: nē putem, *I refuse: I will not believe*; dēterrere: nē cōferant, *I am deterring them: they shall not collect*; etc. They were then extended to combinations like nōn longē abest quin.

NOTE 2. Cavē, as itself suggesting a negative idea, can be used without nē. Thus cavē mentiāris, *beware of lying*; Mil. 22, 60.

c) With adjectives, and verbs or phrases of adjective force.<sup>2</sup> The connective, if one is used, is ut<sup>3</sup> or nē.

iūs valeat necesse est, *law must prevail*; Sest. 42, 92. (Let law prevail: it is necessary. Cf. tacētō: optimum est, 497, 1.)

reliquum est ut dē felicitāte dicāmus, *it remains for me to discuss the subject of good fortune*; Pomp. 16, 47. (It remains that I am to discuss . . .)

NOTE. These are best called, not Substantive Volitive Clauses, but Substantive Clauses of Volitive Origin; for with most of them the Volitive feeling has faded out.

contineō, mē ēripiō, resistō, repugnō, nōn cūctandum est, *haud dubia rēs vidētur, nulla mora est (these last with quin)*; (3) *Refusal or Hesitation*, e.g. recūsō, dubitō.

<sup>1</sup> The conjunction quin (quī, *whereby*, + ne) meant originally *whereby not*. Quōminus likewise meant *whereby the less, whereby not* (minus being only a weakened negative). In all its uses as a conjunction, quin is employed only after a negative idea, expressed or implied.

<sup>2</sup> Such verbs and phrases represent an action as (1) *good or bad*, e.g. melius est, optimum est; (2) *necessary, seasonable, advantageous, sufficient, remaining to be done, or lacking*, e.g. necessarium est or necesse est, opus est, tempus est, rēfert, interest, satis est, sufficit (but these two mostly with infinitive; 585), reliquum est, relinquitor, restat, sequitur (when meaning *the next thing to do is*), superest, abest; (3) *customary, ūsitātum est, mōs (mōris) est, cōsuētūdō (cōsuētūdinis) est*. Many of these take the Infinitive also (585), some more frequently than the Subjunctive.

<sup>3</sup> Formal ut. See footnote 2, p. 261.

4. In Clauses of Fear or Anxiety. The connectives are *nē*, *lest* or *that*, and *ut* (less frequently *nē nōn*), *lest not*, *that not*.

*nē eius supplicio Diviciaci animum offenderet verēbatur*, *he feared that by punishing him he should offend Diviciacus*; B. G. 1, 19, 2. (Past fear about the future.)

*vereor nē id fēcerint*, *I am afraid that they have done it*; Caecin. 2, 4. (Present fear about the past.)

*vereri videntur ut habeam satis praesidi*, *seem to fear that I have not a sufficient guard*; Cat. 4, 7, 14. (Present fear about the present.)

*timeo nē nōn impetrem*, *I fear I may not get what I ask for*; Att. 9, 6, 6. (Present fear about the future.)

a. *Nē*, *lest*, was originally a mere negative adverb (as in *nē suscenseat*: *timeo*, *he must not be angry*: *I am afraid*, i.e. *I am afraid that he will be angry*). *Nē nōn*, *lest not*, is the natural opposite of *nē*. *Ut*, which means the same as *nē nōn*, probably came into use as the formal opposite of *nē* (footnote 2, p. 261).

b. The original volitive feeling has entirely faded out from the construction.

503. The Volitive Subjunctive may be used in Questions of Deliberation or Perplexity; in Questions asking for Instructions; and in Questions or Exclamations of Surprise or Indignation. The negative is *nōn*.

The Questions may be independent or dependent.

*ōloquar*, *an sileam*? *shall I speak, or shall I keep silence*? Aen. 3, 39.  
*est certum quid respondeam*, *what I shall answer is clear*; Arch. 7, 15.  
*quid Rōmae faciam*? *what shall I do in Rome* (= can I)? Iuv. 3, 41.  
 "scribe." "Quid scribam?" "write." "What shall I write?" Bacch. 731.

*quid faciam imperā*, *command me what to do*; Ph. 223.

"tū nārā." "Scelus! Tibi nārret?" "you tell him." "You rascal! he tell the story under your orders?" Ph. 1000.

*tū rēbus omnibus cōpiōsus sis, et dubitēs!* *you a man provided with everything, — and you hesitate!* Cat. 2, 8, 18.

a. The last example represents the extreme point of development reached by the construction, in which nothing remains either of the interrogative idea or of the original idea of Will.

b. The construction is sometimes introduced by *ut* or *utin*<sup>1</sup> (*utī* plus the interrogative -ne), as in *tū ut umquam tē corrigās*, *the idea of your ever reforming!* Cat. 1, 9, 22.

<sup>1</sup> This type has probably arisen from a Question of Perplexity ("how shall?"). But it may have arisen from a Potential Question ("how can?") or through an ellipsis (e.g. "is it possible that?").

**504.** The Volitive Subjunctive may be used figuratively (negative *nōn*):

1. In Independent Conditions (cf. the Imperative, 497, 2).

*experiātur* : *tēctō recipiet nēmō*, *let him try* : *no one will admit him to his house*; Verr. 2, 10, 26. Similarly *sineret dolor*, Aen. 6, 31. (Individual Condition, Less Vivid Future.)

*mersēs profundō*, *pulchrior ēvenit*, *sink it in the depths, it comes forth fairer*; Carm. 4, 4, 65. (Generalizing Condition, in any time.)

2. In Generalizing Clauses in the Second Person Singular Indefinite, after *sī* or a relative of any kind.

*haec quō diē fēcēris necessāria*, *eadem, sī cotidiē fēcisse tē reputēs*, *inānia videntur*, *multō magis cum sēcesseris*, *these things seem necessary on the day on which you have done them, and yet, if you reflect that you have been doing them day after day, they appear frivolous, and much more so when you have retired into the country*; Plin. Ep. 1, 9, 3. (*Fēcēris*, *reputēs*, and *sēcesseris* are all examples. "You" is in each case "anybody.")

a. This Subjunctive originally expressed a *command of the imagination* ("let"), but it became a mere sign of indefiniteness.

3. In Imaginative Comparisons, with words meaning "as if."<sup>1</sup>  
*est obstandum*, *velut sī ante Rōmāna moenia pugnēmus*, *we must make our stand, as if fighting before the walls of Rome*; Liv. 21, 41, 15.

*metus cēpit*, *velut sī iam ad portās hostis esset*, *fear seized upon them, as if the enemy were already at their gates*; Liv. 21, 16, 2.

a. The tenses of the present (Present and Perfect) are used *if the imagined act is placed in the present or future*, the tenses of the past (Imperfect and Past Perfect) *if it is placed in the past*.

b. The construction probably in the beginning expressed a *command of the imagination* ("imagine us to be fighting," etc.), *without any question about the fact*; and the usage, once established, remained fairly constant.

c. Still it would often be felt that the imagined act was really *contrary to the actual fact* (see Conditions, 581); and accordingly the Imperfect and Past Perfect occur.

*proinde habēbō ac sī scripsissēs . . .*, *I shall regard it as if you had written . . .*; Att. 3, 13, 1. Similarly *quasi nōn nōssēs*, Ph. 388.

**505.** The Subjunctive is used with *nēdum* (rarely *nē*), *still less*.<sup>2</sup>  
*vix intellegere potui* : *nēdum satis sciam quō modō mē tuear*, *I was scarcely able to understand*; *still less do I know how to defend myself*; Liv. 40, 15, 14. Similarly *nē illi temperārent*, Sall. Cat. 11, 8.

<sup>1</sup> Quasi, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut sī, and (less frequently) ac sī and ut sī. Also, in poetic and later Latin, ceu, nōn aliter quam sī, sicutī, velut, perinde ac, etc.

<sup>2</sup> The construction is probably of Volitive origin, but its exact history is not clear.

## II. THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

**506.** The Anticipatory Subjunctive represents an act as *foreseen, expected, looked forward to* (English "shall" in all persons). The negative is *nōn*.

This use of the Subjunctive had died out in independent sentences before the beginnings of the literature.

*a.* The Present and Perfect express a *present* or *future* anticipation, the Imperfect and Past Perfect a *past* anticipation.

The Perfect is thus a Future Perfect for the present or future, the Past Perfect a Future Perfect for the past.

**507.** The Anticipatory Subjunctive is used in dependent clauses as follows :

1. In **Relative Clauses**, determinative or descriptive.

*expectandus erit qui litēs incohēt annus tōtius populi, I shall have to wait for the year that shall (= will) start afresh upon the suits of the whole people; Iuv. 16, 41 (= the coming year. Determinative clause).*

*nunc est ille diēs quom (= cum<sup>1</sup>) glōria maxuma sēsē nōbis ostendat, this is the day when the supreme glory is to (= will) manifest itself to us; Enn. Ann. 414, 4. (This is that expected day. Determinative clause.)*

*nāscētur Troiānus, fāmam qui terminet astris, there will be born a Trojan, who shall (prophetic, = will) make the stars the boundary of his fame; Aen. 1, 286. (A Trojan of what kind? A Trojan that shall. . . . Cf. quae verteret, expressing a past Anticipation, Aen. 1, 20.)*

*a.* The Future Indicative has driven the Anticipatory Subjunctive almost completely out of the determinative clause, and tends to drive it out of the descriptive clause, as in *veniet aetās cum premet*, Aen. 1, 283. Cf. also *qui . . . ferant quōrumque . . . vidēbunt*, Aen. 7, 98.

2. In **Substantive Clauses of Anticipation** :

*a)* With *ut* after verbs of *expecting*.<sup>2</sup>

*nēmō expectet ut aliēnō labōre sit disertus, let no man expect that he will become eloquent through the labor of others; Quintil. 7, 10, 14.*

*mea lēnitās hoc expectāvit, ut id quod latēbat ērumpere, my clemency has waited for that which was concealed to break out; Cat. 2, 12, 27.*

*b)* With *quīn* after verbs of *doubt*, if these are negated.

*haec sī ēnūtiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn gravissimum supplicium sūmat, (says) he does not doubt that, if this be told to Ariovistus, he will inflict the severest punishment; B. G. 1, 31, 15.*

<sup>1</sup> *Cum*, as a relative referring to an antecedent of time, of course has the same constructions as any other relative.

<sup>2</sup> *Expectō, opperior* (and, rarely, *spērō*).

3. In **Indirect Questions**, after verbs of *expecting, knowing, fearing, or anxiety*.<sup>1</sup>

quid hostēs cōsili caperent expectābat, (Crassus) *was waiting (to see) what plan the enemy would form*; B. G. 3, 24, 1. (Past Expectancy.)

nescis quid vesper sērus vehat, *you know not what the shades of evening shall bring forth*; Varro, Sat. Men. 333. (Present Expectancy.)

sīn (eritis secūtī) illam alteram nesciō an amplius mihi negōtī contrahātur, *but if (you follow) the other proposal, I am inclined to think that more trouble will be brought upon me*; Cat. 4, 5, 9. (For the translation, see 537, f.)

a. With *expectō quam mox*, the construction is frequent, even in Cicero.

4. In **Clauses with antequam**,<sup>2</sup> *priusquam*, *citius quam*, *potius quam*, and the like, to represent an act as:

a) Anticipated and *prepared for*.

medicō diligentī, priusquam cōnētūr aegrō adhibēre medicīnam, nātūra corporis cognōscenda est, *a careful physician, before attempting to prescribe medicine for a patient, must look into his general constitution*; De Or. 2, 44, 186.

priusquam ēdūceret in aciem, orātiōnem est exōrsus, *before leading out his men into line of battle, (he) began a harangue*; Liv. 21, 39, 1.

NOTE 1. The formula became a fixed one, and was then used of the regular anticipation of one event by another in the *operations of nature*, although there is in this case no true looking forward.

huius folia priusquam dēcidant, sanguineō colōre mūtantur, *its leaves turn red before falling*; Plin. N. H. 14, 37.

NOTE 2. For the Indicative of an actual event *looked back upon*, see 550, b.

NOTE 3. After Cicero's time the distinction of mood broke down, and the Subjunctive was frequently used of an actual event.

ducentis annis antequam Rōmam caperent, in Italiā Gallī transcendērunt, *two hundred years before they were to take (took) Rome, the Gauls crossed into Italy*; Liv. 5, 33, 5.

b) Anticipated and *forestalled*.

Rōmānus, priusquam forēs portārum obicerentur, velut agmine ūnō inrumpit, *the Romans, before the gates could be closed, rushed in as in a single mass*; Liv. 1, 14, 11.

NOTE. Since an event forestalled is generally one which the main actor tries to make *impossible*, the Anticipatory Subjunctive of *possum* (with the Infinitive) is sometimes used (as in B. G. 6, 3, 2, *priusquam convenire possent*) in place of the simple verb in the Subjunctive (*priusquam convenirent*).

<sup>1</sup> *Expectō, nesciō, timeō*; also the phrases *mihi cūrae est, sollicitus sum*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Ante* and *prius* are often separated from *quam*. (See examples under c.)



c) Anticipated and *insisted upon*.

nōn prius ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam sit concessum, *they do not*  
(= will not) *let the leaders leave the council until the concession is*  
*made*; B. G. 3, 18, 7. Cf. nec prius absistit quam fundat, Aen. 1, 192.

NOTE. To give this meaning the main verb must be negated.

d) Anticipated and *depreciated*.

animam omittunt prius quam locō dēmigrant, *they die sooner than*  
(= rather than) *leave their post*; Amph. 240.

potius quam id nōn fiat, ego dabō, *rather than not have it come off, I'll*  
*give the money myself*; Pseud. 554. Cf. prius quam ut, Lig. 12, 34.

NOTE to a)–d). The Future Perfect Indicative is also used in these constructions (as in *antequam cognōverō*, Sen. 6, 18), the Future Indicative only very rarely in Ciceronian prose (thus *citius quam extorquebit*, Lig. 5, 16; in poetry more commonly, e.g. *ante quam dabitur*, Aen. 9, 115). For the frequent *Present* Indicative in the same general sense, see 571.

5. In Clauses with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, *until*, to represent an act as *looked forward to*.

mānsūrus patruom pater est *dum* adveniat, *your father is going to wait*  
*till your uncle shall arrive*; Ph. 480. (Present Expectation.)

*dum* reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent exspectāvit, *he waited till the other*  
*ships should arrive*; B. G. 4, 23, 4. (Past Expectation.)

a. The Future Perfect Indicative is also used in this sense, the Future Indicative not in Ciceronian prose (poetical example *dōnec dabit*, Aen. 1, 273). For the frequent *Present* Indicative in the same general sense, see 571.

b. For the Indicative of an actual event *looked back upon*, see 550, b.

c. After Cicero's time the distinction broke down, and the Subjunctive was frequently used of an actual event. Cf. 507, 4, n. 3.

*hoc plūribus (diēbus)*, *dōnec* hominēs subiret timendī pudor, *this (took place)*  
*on a number of (days), until men began to be ashamed of being*  
*afraid*; Plin. Ep. 9, 33, 6.

d. *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, meaning *so long as*, take the Indicative (550, b).

508. In general,<sup>1</sup> *all* past-future ideas must, if expressed by a Finite Verb, be in the Anticipatory Subjunctive; for *no other means of expression exists*.

a. There are thus three possible ways of expressing Futurity to the Present, and only one way of expressing Futurity to the Past:

<sup>1</sup> The only exceptions are assertions and conditions expressing an *actual past intention* (periphrastic forms, as in *they were GOING to . . .*; *if they were GOING to*).

## POINT OF VIEW PAST

Anticipatory Subjunctive,  
Imperfect or Past  
(Future) Perfect

## POINT OF VIEW PRESENT

1. Indicative Future or Future Perfect
2. Present Indicative with future force (see 571)
3. Anticipatory Subjunctive, Present or (Future) Perfect

**509.** Accordingly, the Anticipatory Subjunctive of the past is extremely common in constructions<sup>1</sup> in which it would not be used, or *need not* be used, if the point of view were present or future. Thus :

*Past-Future Determinative Clauses :*

*aderat iam annus quō prōcōsulātum Āfricæ sortirētur, the year was now at hand, in which he should draw the proconsulate of Africa as his lot; Tac. Agric. 42.*

*omniñō biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum mētiri oportēret, two days in all were left (before the time) when rations would have to be issued to the army; B. G. 1, 23, 1.*

*Past-Future Conditions :*

*nostrī, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, parātī erant, our men were ready, if they should begin to cross; B. G. 2, 9, 1.*

*erat unum iter, Ilerdam si reverti vellent, alterum, si Tarracōnem peterent, there was one way if they should choose to return to Lerida, another if they should make for Tarragona; B. C. 1, 73, 2.*

*a.* It often happens that such past anticipations are indirect expressions of some one's speech or thought, — i.e. are in Indirect Discourse (534, 2).

*ubi intellēxit diem instāre quō diē frumentum militibus mētiri oportēret, when he saw that the day was at hand on which rations would have to be given out to the soldiers; B. G. 1, 16, 5. (Diem quō oportērēt is to the past what diēs quō oportēbit would be to the present.)*

*Xerxēs prāemium prōposuit qui invēnisset novam voluptātem, Xerxes offered a reward to the man who should invent a new pleasure; Tusc. 5, 7, 20.*

## III. THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

**510.** The Optative Subjunctive represents an act as *wished* or *desired* (English "may," "would that," etc.).

*a.* The Present and Perfect deal with the future, and so express a wish that *may be realized*. The Imperfect and Past Perfect deal with the present and past, and so express a wish *contrary to fact*.

<sup>1</sup> With any relative pronoun, or relative or conditional conjunction.

The Imperfect generally refers to the present, and the Past Perfect to the past. But occasionally the Imperfect (especially in poetry) expresses a past act, and the Past Perfect an act completed in the present.

REMARK. The Imperfect and Past Perfect originally expressed a wish in time *future to a past time*. This is still generally the case in dependent clauses. Thus *optābam ut adesset, I wished that he might be present*.

*b.* The Perfect may express a hope that something *has been done*.

### 511. The Optative Subjunctive is used :

1. In **Wishes**. These may be introduced by **utinam**, and generally *are* so introduced, if in the Imperfect or Past Perfect. The negative is regularly **nē**, but with **utinam** sometimes **nōn**.<sup>1</sup>

*sint beāti, may they be happy!* Mil. 34, 93.

*perieris, may you perish utterly!* Men. 295. (Emphatic Perfect.)

*utinam spem implēverim, I hope I may have fulfilled his expectation;*

Plin. Ep. 1, 10, 3. (Present Perfect.)

*utinam ille omnis sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset! would that he had led out all his forces with him!* Cat. 2, 2, 4.

*obruerent Rutuli tēlis! would that the Rutuli had laid (me) low with their darts!* Aen. 11, 162.

*utinam filii nē dēgenerāssent! would that the sons had not degenerated!* Prov. Cons. 8, 18.

*utinam susceptus nōn essem! would that I had not been allowed to live at birth!* Att. 11, 9, 3.

*a.* In poetry, especially in early Latin, *ut* and *quī*<sup>1</sup> may also be used, the latter in *Imprecations* (Curses) only.

*quī illum dī omnēs perduint! may all the gods confound him!* Ph. 127

*b.* A Wish may be used to express an independent condition.

*mē quoque, quā frātre, mactāssēs, improbe, clāvā! Esset, quam dederās, morte solūta fidēs, would that you had killed me, wretch, with the same club with which you killed my brother! The promise you had given would then have been annulled by death;* Ov. Her. 10, 77.

2. In **Substantive Clauses**, after verbs of *wishing, desiring*, etc.<sup>2</sup> The connective, if one is used, is **ut** or **nē**.

*optēmus ut eat in exilium, let us hope that he is going into exile;* Cat. 2, 7, 16. (Present Wish.)

*fuit optandum Caecinae ut contrōversiae nihil habēret, it was desirable for Caecina to have no controversy;* Caecin. 9, 23. (Past Wish.)

<sup>1</sup> Wishes with *utinam*, *ut*, and *quī* were originally *Potential Questions* ("how might . . . ?"). Hence the original negative was *nōn*.

<sup>2</sup> The commonest of these are *optō*, and, in poetry and later prose, *cupiō*, *vōtū est*.

## IV. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF OBLIGATION OR PROPRIETY

512. The Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety represents an *actas obligatory, proper, or reasonable* (English "ought," "should").

a. The original negative, *nē*, is sometimes still found in *statements* (513, 1), not elsewhere. But, even here, *nōn* became more common, since this is the negative that regularly *belongs* to statements (464, 1, and footnote).

b. The Present expresses a *present* obligation or propriety, the Imperfect and Past Perfect a *past* obligation or propriety, unfulfilled.

513. The Subjunctive of Obligation or Propriety is used:

## 1. In Statements and Questions.

The interrogative words, if used, are *quid*, *quidnī*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, or *cūr*.<sup>1</sup>

*quid facere dēbuiſti? frūmentum nē ēmiſſēs, what ought you to have done?*

*You ought not to have bought the grain; Verr. 3, 84, 195.*

"*nōn ego illi argentum redderem?*" "*Nōn redderēs, "ought n't I to have paid in the money to him?" "You ought not"; Trin. 133.*

*ā lēgibus nōn recedāmus, we should not swerve from the laws; Clu. 57, 155.*

*nōn eō ſis cōſiliō, you should not adopt this opinion; Fam. 9, 16, 7.*

*hunc ego nōn admirer? ought I not to admire a man like this? Arch. 8, 18.*

*quid ego tē invitē, why should I urge you? Cat. 1, 9, 24. (Direct Question of Present Obligation.)*

*nōn vidēō cūr nōn audeam, I don't see why I should not venture; Sen. 21, 77. (Indirect Question of Present Obligation.)*

*cūr dēſpērarent, why (he asked) should they despair? B. G. 1, 40, 4. (Indirect Question of Past Obligation.)*

a. In Statements, this construction seems to be less frequent in tenses of the present than in tenses of the past.

2. In *Dependent Clauses*, with *quod*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *cūr*, or *quīn* (the last only after a negative idea, expressed or implied).  
*nihil est quod pōcula laudēs, there is no reason why you should praise the cups* (nothing with reference to which you ought . . .); *Ecl. 3, 48.*  
*satis eſſe cauſae arbitrābātur quārē in eum animadverteret, he thought there was reason enough why he should punish him; B. G. 1, 19, 1.*  
*quid est quamobrem putēs . . .? what reason is there why you should think . . .? Verr. 2, 20, 49.*

<sup>1</sup> *Quīn*, as in *quīn rogem? why should n't I ask?* *Mil. Gl. 426*, is rarely used in questions of obligation or propriety. In dependent clauses, it is frequent.

3. In Relative Clauses (rarely in clauses with *ut*) after *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, or *idōneus*.

*erit dignior locus illus qui hanc virtutem excipiat?* *will there be any place more worthy to harbor such virtue?* (any place worthier that it should harbor . . . ?); Mil. 37, 101. Similarly *idōneus qui*, Pomp. 19, 57.

*nōn sum dignus ut figam pālum in parietem*, *I am not fit to drive a spike into a wall* (not fit that I should drive); Mil. Gl. 1140.

a. *Quārē*, *quamobrem*, and *cūr* are also occasionally used with *dignus*, etc.  
*nihil enim dignum faciēbat, quārē eius fugae comitem mē adiungerem*, *for he was doing nothing worthy to make me add myself as an associate in his flight* (no worthy thing, on account of which I should . . .); Att. 9, 10, 2.

4. In Clauses with *ut* or *ut nōn* after *tanti*, *worth so much*, and similar expressions.

*est ergo ūlla rēs tanti aut commodum ūllum tam expetendum, ut viri boni et splendōrem et nōmen amittās?* *is anything then worth so much, or is any advantage so desirable, that one should (= ought to) give up the proud distinction of the name of "good man"?* Off. 3, 20, 82.

*nūlla studia tanti ut amicitiae officium dēserātur*, *no studies are so important that friendship's due ought to be withheld*; Plin. Ep. 8, 9, 2.

5. In Substantive Clauses, without connective, or with *nē* (rare) or *quīn* (the latter after a negative idea only).<sup>1</sup>

*multa oportet discat*, *he ought to learn many things*; Quint. 17, 56.

*nūllō modō aequom vidētur quīn quod peccārim potissimum mihi id obsit*, *it does n't seem at all just that my wrongdoing should not damage me rather than any one else*; Trin. 588.

*quārē meditare cēseō*, *wherefore I think that you should consider*; Phil. 2, 37, 95. Similarly (in irony) *vereāminī cēseō*, Cat. 4, 6, 13.

## V. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF NATURAL LIKELIHOOD

514. The Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood represents an act as *likely to take place* (English "should," "might well," "naturally would," etc.). The negative is *nōn*.

a. The Present and Perfect express a natural likelihood in the *present* or *future*; the Imperfect and Past Perfect, a natural likelihood in the *past*.

<sup>1</sup> So with *oportet*, *aequom*, *iustum* or *iūs est*, *mereor*, *decet*, *dēdecet*.

### 515. The Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood is used :

1. In Questions, with *quid*, *quidnī*, *quī* (*how?*), *quārē*, *quamobrem*, or *cūr*.

*quid enim ōdisset Clōdium Milō, segetem ac māteriem suae glōriae?* *why should Milo have hated Clodius, who furnished him the field and the occasion of his glory?* Mil. 13, 35.

*quārē dēsinat esse macer?* *why (under such circumstances) should he cease to be lean?* Catull. 89, 4. (= naturally he would remain lean.)

"*inepta, nescis quid sit āctum?*" "*Quī sciam?*" "*you stupid, don't you know what has taken place?*" "*How should I know?*" And. 791.

2. In Dependent Clauses, with *quī*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *cūr*, *quīn*, or *ut*.

*videō causās esse permultās quae istum impellerent*, *I recognize the existence of a great many causes that would naturally be impelling him;* Rosc. Am. 33, 92. (Natural working in the past.)

*quantumvis quārē sit macer inveniēs, you'll find every reason in the world why he should be lean;* Catull. 89, 6. Cf. *quārē dēsinat*, 515, 1.

*ille erat ut ōdisset accūsātōrem suum, there was (reason) that he should (naturally) hate his accuser;* Mil. 13, 35.

3. In Substantive Clauses with *ut*.

*verī simile nōn est, ut ille homō religiōnī suae pecūniam antepōneret*, *it is not likely that such a man would set money above his conscience;* Verr. 4, 6, 11.

## VI. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

516. The Potential Subjunctive expresses *Possibility* or *Capacity* (English "may," "might," "can," "could"). The negative is *nōn*.

a. The Present and Perfect express a *present* or *future* possibility or capacity, the Imperfect and Past Perfect a *past* possibility or capacity.

517. The Potential Subjunctive is used especially :

1. In Independent Sentences, but only where a negative is implied, or in the Second Person Singular Indefinite, or with *quis*, *aliquis*, *vix*, *facile*, or *forsitan*.

*quis clādem illius noctis fandō explicet?* *who could set forth in words the ruin of that night?* Aen. 2, 361. (Present Capacity; = no one could.)

cuneō hoc agmen disciāās, *with a wedge, one could split this line*; Liv. 22, 50, 9. (Present Capacity.)

ea perītis amnis eius vix fidem fēcerint, *this could scarcely gain any credence at all among those who know this river*; Liv. 21, 47, 5. (Present Capacity, emphatic tense.)

Servius, frāter tuus, facile diceret, hic versus Plautī nōn est, hic est, *your brother Servius could easily say 'That verse is n't Plautus's, this one is'*; Fam. 9, 16, 4. (Past Capacity.)

aliquis dicat mihi, *some one may say to me*; Sat. 1, 3, 19. (Possibility.)

a. But the Future Indicative is much more common with quis and aliquis, as in dīcat aliquis, *some one will say*, Pis. 28, 68.

2. In Relative Clauses, after expressions of *existence* or *non-existence*.<sup>1</sup>

est unde haec fiant, *I have means with which it can be done*; Ad. 122. nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, *there was no means by which they could relieve their starvation*; B. G. 1, 28, 3.

ūnum angustum et difficile, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; *one (way was) narrow and difficult, by which carts could hardly be hauled one at a time*; B. G. 1, 6, 1.

a. The potential feeling of the clause is clearly shown by its parallelism with clauses with possum in the Subjunctive of Actuality (521, 1) with a dependent Infinitive. Thus unde agger comportārī posset (instead of comportārētur), nihil erat reliquum, *there was nothing left from which a rampart could be got together*; B. C. 2, 15, 1; cf. B. G. 2, 25, 1; 4, 29, 4.

3. In Substantive Clauses after fieri potest.

fieri potest ut rēctē quis sentiat, et id quod sentit politē eloqui nōn possit, *it may happen that a man may think correctly, and yet be unable to express his thoughts in a finished manner*; Tusc. 1, 3, 6.

a. This is the only way in Latin of saying "may" or "can," except with possum used personally, or as shown under 517, 1.

## VII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF IDEAL CERTAINTY<sup>2</sup>

518. The Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty declares that, under imagined or imaginable circumstances, something *would take place* (or *would have taken place*), or asks a corresponding

<sup>1</sup> Thus after est, habēō, nōn est, nōn habēō, etc.

These clauses are really *descriptive*, expressing that of which the antecedent is *capable*, or for which it is *available* or *suitable*.

<sup>2</sup> Possibility, Natural Likelihood, and Ideal Certainty (act possible, probable, or ideally certain) often lie close together, so that a given example may seem to belong to

question (English "I should," "you would," "he would," etc.). The negative is *nōn*.

a. The Present and Perfect express an Ideal Certainty in time *future to the present*, the Imperfect and Past Perfect an Ideal Certainty in time *future to a past time*. The Perfect is accordingly a Future Perfect for the present, the Past Perfect a Future Perfect for the past. Thus, *ille id faciat*, *he would do this* (e.g. if he should be called upon); *ille id fecerit*, *he would assuredly do this* (emphatic Perfect).

b. New Force developed by the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive. In addition, the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive gained the power of expressing an ideal certainty *contrary to fact*, the *Imperfect* referring generally to *present* time, and the *Past Perfect* to either *past* or *present* time. Thus *ille id faceret*, *he would be doing this* (e.g. if he had been called upon); *ille id fecisset*, *he would have done this*, now or in the past (e.g. if he had been called upon). For the origin of this force of the tenses, see 581, a, rem.

### 519. The Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty is used :

#### 1. In Statements and Questions.

*ecquis id dixerit? Certē nēmō*, *would anybody dream of saying this? Surely nobody would*; Tusc. 1, 36, 87. (Emphatic Perfect. Act future.)

*ire per ignis et gladiōs ausim*, *I should have courage to go through fire and sword*; Ov. Met. 8, 76.

*nōn ille nōbīs Sāturnālia cōstituisset*, *he would not have appointed the Saturnalia for us, not he*; Cat. 3, 7, 17. (Contrary to fact; for they have been appointed.)

a. A frequent use is in Subjunctive Conclusions. See 574, 580, 581.

b. This Subjunctive is often used merely to *soften a statement*.

*ego quae in rem tuam sint ea velim faciās*, *I should like you to do that which is for your interest*; Ph. 449. (Compare the unsoftened *Syrō ignōscās volō*, *I want you to forgive Syrus*; Heaut. 1066.)

*velītis iubeātisne haec sic fieri?* *would it be your wish and command that this course be taken?* Liv. 22, 10, 2. (Softened Question.)

---

any or all of the three forces. Thus *nēmō crēdat* might mean either *no one could believe*, *no one would be likely to believe*, or *no one would believe*.

At the extremes of their forces, on the other hand, Possibility and Ideal Certainty are widely separated. Thus in *nōn ille nōbīs* under 519, 1, the meaning is not *possibly he would not have appointed* . . . , but *he certainly would not have appointed* . . . , NOT HE.



c. **Virtual Wishes.** The Softened Statements *velim, vellem, mālim, māllem*, with an Infinitive or Volitive Clause attached, are equivalent to a Subjunctive of Wish.

*virum mē nātam vellem, I should like to have been born a man (= would that I had been born a man); Ph. 792. Similarly māllem ēdūxisset, Cat. 2, 3, 5.*

## 2. In Relative Clauses, determinative or descriptive.

*ūnō verbō dīc, quid est quod mē velīs, tell me in a word what the thing is which you would like of me; And. 45. (Determinative.)*

*fēcērunt id servī Milōnis quod suōs quisque servōs in tālī rē facere voluisset, Milo's slaves did just that which, in similar circumstances, any one would have wished his slaves to do; Mil. 10, 29. (Determinative.)*

*nīl est aequē quod faciam lubēns, there is nothing that I should do with so much pleasure; Ph. 565. (Descriptive.)*

*profectus id temporis, cum iam Clōdīus, sī quidem eō diē Rōmā ventūrus erat, redire potuisset, he set out at an hour when Clodius, if he really meant on that day to come to Rome, might already have been (would have been able to be) on his way back; Mil. 10, 28. (Descriptive.)*

## 3. In Clauses of Ideally Certain Result, with *ut* or *ut nōn*.

*adeō variant auctōrēs ut vix quicquam adfirmāre ausus sim, authorities differ so much that I should hardly dare to make any statement at all; Liv. 22, 36, 1. (Present Ideal Certainty about the future.)*

*rēs tamen ab Āfrānīānis hūc erat dēducta, ut, sī priōrēs montis attigissent, ipsī periculum vitārent, impedimenta servāre nōn possent, things, however, had been brought to such a pass by Afranius and his men, that, if they should be the first to reach the hills, they themselves would escape from danger, but would be unable to save their baggage; B. C. 1, 70, 2. (Past-future Ideal Certainty.)*

a. The Descriptive Clause and the Result Clause both express something that *would naturally follow from the character of the antecedent*. Hence they may be called *Consecutive Clauses*.

b. In modern English we have to use the Conjunction "that" (after "such," "so," etc.) to express the full consecutive idea. In Shakespeare's time, the bare Relative "who" or "that" could do this. A comparison will make the feeling of the Latin plainer.

"Who is here so base that would be a bondman?" Shakespeare, *Jul. Caes.* 3, 2.  
*quis est tam impius quī nōn fateātur? who is so impious that (he) would not admit . . . ? Har. Resp. 10, 20.*

## 4. In Substantive Clauses of Ideal Certainty:

a) With *ut* or *ut nōn*, after verbs of *bringing about* or of *existence*.  
*unde fit ut mālim frāterculus esse gigantis, whence it results that I should prefer to be the little brother of a son of the soil; Iuv. 4, 98.*

b) With *quīn* after verbs or phrases of *doubt* or *ignorance*, if these are negated, or imply a negative.<sup>1</sup>

*quod ille sī repudiāset, dubitātis quīn eī vīs esset adlāta?* *if he had refused, do you doubt that violence would have been offered him?*  
Sest. 29, 62. (Here *dubitātis* = *dubitāre nōn potestis*.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE CONSTRUCTIONS OF COMPOSITE ORIGIN (FUSION)

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ACTUALITY (FACT)

**520.** The Subjunctive of Actuality represents an act or state as a fact. The negative is *nōn*.

a. In Subjunctive Clauses of Actuality, the Present expresses either a present or future *situation* or a present or future act seen *aoristically*, the Imperfect either a past *situation* or a past act seen *aoristically*, but *in temporal relation to the main act*. The Past Aorist (Perfect), on the other hand, expresses a past act, etc., seen *absolutely*.

The Present Perfect and Past Perfect express an act as *in a completed state* at a present or past time respectively.

**521.** The Subjunctive of Actuality is used only in dependent clauses *of consecutive nature* (521, 1, e), as follows:

#### 1. In Descriptive Clauses of Actuality (Fact).

Any relative may be used (e.g. *quī, cum, ubi, unde*). *Quīn*,<sup>2</sup> *who . . . not, that . . . not*, may be employed in place of *quī nōn*, etc., but only after a negative idea, expressed or implied.  
*sī quis est tālis quī mē accūset, if there is any one of such a disposition that he blames me;* Cat. 2, 2, 3. (Present state of affairs.)  
*at sunt quī dicant, but there are men that say;* Cat. 2, 6, 12.  
*num quis est tam dēmēns quī arbitrētur? is there any one so mad (who thinks) as to think?* Mil. 28, 78.

<sup>1</sup> So especially after *nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, quis dubitat* (implies "no one doubts"), *num dubium est, nōn ignōrō, quis ignōrat*.

After an affirmative the Infinitive is used (example in 589), and the later writers often use it even after a negative.

<sup>2</sup> This *quīn* is of the same origin as the conjunction *quīn, that not* (footnote 1, p. 262), but is used in place of the declined relatives *quī nōn, quae nōn, or quod nōn*. It may be employed in any construction in which *quī nōn* is possible, e.g. in 519, 2.

is sum, quī istōs plausūs semper contempserim, *I am one that has always despised such applause* (I am such that I have . . .) ; Phil. 1, 15, 37. (Present Perfect.)

nēmō fuit quīn viderit, *there was no one that did not see*; Verr. 5, 54, 140. (Past Aorist, expressing the time absolutely.)

fuit tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, *there was a time when the Gauls surpassed the Germans in courage*; B. G. 6, 24, 1.

in ea tempora nātus es, quibus firmāre animum expedit cōstantibus exemplis, *your life has fallen upon times in which it is well to fortify the mind through examples of firmness* (times such that in them . . .) ; Tac. Ann. 16, 35. (Present state of affairs.)

in id saeculum Rōmulī cecidit aetās, cum iam minor fābulis habērētur fidēs, *the life of Romulus fell upon an age when less credence was given to fables*; Rep. 2, 10, 18. (Past state of affairs.)

erit illud profectō tempus cum tū amicissimī benevolentiam dēsiderēs, *there will surely come a time when you will miss the kindness of a devoted friend*; Mil. 26, 69. (Future state of affairs.)

a. These clauses follow incomplete descriptive words,<sup>1</sup> or negative or indefinite expressions, or questions implying a negative.

NOTE. Because of the kind of words or phrases after which the subjunctive descriptive clause is used, it is *essential*, i.e. it cannot be left out without making the sentence incomplete. Cf. the *free* descriptive clause, 569.

b. The Subjunctive in such descriptive clauses is *always* necessary after a negative, and after words meaning *such* or *so*.<sup>1</sup>

After indefinite positive antecedents,<sup>2</sup> the Indicative (which was the original mood) never was wholly driven out, though the Subjunctive became more common. Thus *sunt multi quī Graecās nōn ament litterās*, Ac. 2, 2, 5, but *sunt multi quī ēripiunt* . . . , Off. 1, 14, 43.

c. These clauses all tell *what kind* of a person or thing is meant; i.e., they are really *complex adjectives*. For the contrasting Determinative Clauses (Indicative), which tell *what* person or thing is meant, see 550.

NOTE. Notice (in the last four examples) that a *time* may be described, as well as anything else, and that the mechanism is the same, except that the temporal relative *cum* may be used, as well as a form of *quī*, for such an antecedent. Thus one may say in *id saeculum quō*, or in *id saeculum cum*.

d. For *maior quam quī*, etc., with the Subjunctive, see 2, c, below.

<sup>1</sup> Tālis, *such*, tantus, *so great*, hic, ille, *is*, or iste, *such*, ūnus or sōlus, *the only one*, or tam, adeō, or ita, *so*, with an adjective.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. *sunt quī, multi sunt quī, quidam sunt quī*.

e. The Descriptive Clause of Actuality, the Clause of Actual Result (see 2, below), and the Substantive Clause of Actuality (see 3, below) all express something that *follows from the character of the antecedent*. Hence these clauses and the clauses derived from them may be called **Consecutive Clauses**. But in the Descriptive Clause of Actuality the original consecutive feeling is often faint, or even non-existent. (So in *sunt qui dicant*, above.)

f. **Quod sciam**, etc. The Subjunctive is used in phrases meaning *so far as I know, so far as I have heard*, etc. (*quod* or *quantum sciam, quod exstet, quod quidem sēserim, quod audierim*, etc.), since these phrases generally follow negative or indefinite words.

*numquam dictum ab illō, quod sciam, never, so far as I know, has it been said by him; Fin. 2, 26, 82.*

2. In **Clauses of Actual Result (Fact)**, with *ut, ut nōn, or quīn*. *Quīn* is used only after a negative idea, expressed or implied.

*neque enim is es, Catilīna, ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocārit, you are not such a man, Catiline, that shame has ever held you back from dishonor; Cat. 1, 9, 22. (Present Perfect.)*

*nec tam sum dēmēns ut nesciam quid sentiātis, nor am I so mad as not to know what you think; Mil. 27, 72.*

*hostium tam parātus (fuit) ad dīmīcandum animus, ut etiam ad galeās induendās tempus dēfuerit, the spirit of the enemy was so ready for battle that time failed even for putting on the helmets; B. G. 2, 21, 5. (Tense aoristic, and absolute.)*

*tanta rerum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī proelium redintegrārent, so great a change was made that our men renewed the fight; B. G. 2, 27, 1. (Tense aoristic, but relative to that of facta est.)*

*mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, a high mountain overhung, so that even a very small number were able to stop the way; B. G. 1, 6, 1. (Tense of past situation.)*

*numquam tam male est Siculīs quīn aliquid facētē dicant, things never go so badly with the Sicilians that they have n't some witty thing to say; Verr. 4, 43, 95.*

*eiusmodī tempus erat ut hominēs impūne occiderentur, the time was such that men were being killed with impunity; Rosc. Am. 29, 80.*

*īis temporibus fuērunt ut eōrum lūctum ipsōrum dignitās cōsōlārētur, (Paullus and Cato) lived in such times that their high position consoled their grief; Fam. 4, 6, 1.*

a. These clauses generally follow incomplete descriptive words<sup>1</sup>; but they may also follow a verb having no modifier, as in the example *mōns impendēbat*, ut . . . above.

b. There is no essential difference between the Descriptive Clause of Actuality and the Clause of Actual Result, when both express the character of a person, thing, or time. E.g. is *sum quī contempserim* of 521, 1, and is *es ut revocārit* of 521, 2, correspond exactly in meaning; as also do *tam dēmēns quī* of 521, 1, and *tam dēmēns ut* of 521, 2.

c. A Comparative with *quam* may be followed by a Consecutive *quī*-or *ut*-Clause of Actuality, with the meaning of *more . . . than such as to . . . , too . . . to*, etc.

*maior sum quam cui possit fortuna nocēre*, *I am too great for fortune to have power to harm me* (greater than one such that fortune is able); *Ov. Met.* 6, 195. Similarly *rēs est visa maior quam ut*, *Liv.* 22, 51, 3.

*nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset*, *the enemy was not farther away than a javelin could be thrown* (than a point such that to it . . . ); *B. G.* 2, 21, 3.

d. *Ita ut* with the Subjunctive may express a Limitation. *Ita ut* may also express the Way by Which, and (*ita*) *ut nōn*, or *quān*, an Act not Accompanying the main act.

*quī ita concēdunt, ut vōbiscum de amōre rēi pūblicae certent*, *who yield only to the extent of vying* (so that they vie) *with you in love for the Commonwealth*; *Cat.* 4, 7, 15.

*ita elūdit ut contendat . . .*, *he escapes by urging . . .* (in such a way that he urges); *Plin. Ep.* 1, 20, 6.

*ingenium ita laudō ut nōn pertimēscam*, *I praise his ability without being overawed by it* (in such a way that I am not overawed); *Caecil.* 13, 44. Similarly *Pomp.* 7, 19.

### 3. In Substantive Clauses of Actuality (Fact):

a) With *ut* or *ut nōn*, after verbs of *bringing about* or of *existence*.<sup>2</sup>

*sed ut possim facit ācta vīta*, *but my past life makes me able* (makes that I am able); *Sen.* 11, 38. (Present state of affairs. In tense, *possim* = *possum*.)

<sup>1</sup> *Tālis*, *such*, *tantus*, *so great*, *hic*, *ille*, *is*, *iste*, *such*, or *tam*, *adeō*, *sic*, or *ita*, *so*, with an adjective or adverb.

When following an incomplete *adverbial* modifier, or a verb without modifier, these clauses describe the character of the *act* or *state* expressed by that verb.

<sup>2</sup> Such verbs (or phrases) express: (1) the *Bringing About* of something, e.g. *faciō*, *efficiō*, *cōficiō*, *perficiō*, *cōgō*, *persuādēō*; (2) a *Conclusion Brought About* (i.e. proved), e.g. *efficitur*, *sequitur*, *relinquitur*, *restat*; (3) a *Fact Occurring or Existing*, e.g. *fit* (*it is brought about, the result is*), *accidit*, *contingit*, *obtingit*, *evenit* (*it happens*), *est* (*it is the case that*), *accēdit* (*it is the case in addition that*), *rārū*, *novū*, and the like with *est* (*it is rarely the case that*, etc.), *tantum abest ut* (*it is so far from being the case that*), *vērū*, *falsū*, and the like with *est* (*it is true or false that*); (4) *Existing Custom*, e.g. *mōs* or *mōris est*, *cōnsuetūdō* or *cōnsuetūdinis est*, *commūne est*.

Verbs like *faciō*, *efficiō*, or *cōgō*, may be followed by either the Volitive Subjunctive (502, 3, a), or the Subjunctive of Actuality, according as the writer or speaker is thinking of an act as to be brought out, or as actually brought about. (Cf. *efficiēmus nē*, under 502, 3, a.)

his rēbus fiēbat,<sup>1</sup> ut minus lātē vagārentur, *the result of this was that their wanderings were over a narrower territory*; B. G. 1, 2, 4. (Past state of affairs. In tense, vagārentur = vagābantur.)

populī Rōmāni hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse, *it was (said he) the way of the Roman people to desire (that it desired) its allies to be magnified in influence, dignity, and honor*; B. G. 1, 43, 8.

NOTE. The Substantive ut-Clause of Actuality is often a mere verb-noun.

id quod ipsi diēbus XX aegerrimē cōfēcērant, ut flūmen trānsirent, *what they themselves had with difficulty accomplished in twenty days, namely, the crossing of the river*; B. G. 1, 13, 2.

b) With quīn, after verbs or phrases of *doubt* or *ignorance*,<sup>2</sup> if these are negatived, or imply a negative.

nōn dubitat quīn brevī sit Troia peritūra, *he does not doubt that Troy will soon fall*; Sen. 10, 31. (Periphrastic Future; see 470, 4, a.)

neque abest suspiciō, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōsciverit, *nor is suspicion lacking that he took his own life*; B. G. 1, 4, 4. (Past Aorist.)

NOTE. The Infinitive also may be used (589), and, after verbs not negatived, always is used until after Cicero's time.

#### NEW MEANINGS DEVELOPED BY THE CONSECUTIVE quī-CLAUSE

##### Restrictive Relative Clause

522. A Subjunctive Relative Clause may be used to *restrict the application of the antecedent*.

omnium ōrātōrum, quōs quidem ego cognōverim, acūtissimum, *the keenest of all orators, at least of such as I have known*; Brut. 48, 180. (So generally with quidem.)

M. Antōnī, omnium ēloquentiāssimī quōs ego audierim, *Marcus Antonius, the most eloquent of all whom I have heard*; Tusc. 5, 19, 55.

a. Without quidem, the Determinative Indicative is much more common; see 550.

##### Causal or Adversative Relative Clause

523. A Relative Clause in the Subjunctive may be used to express *Cause* or *Opposition*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The rise of the meaning of Fact out of Effect (Result) is due to such phrases as effectum est ut, *it has been brought about that*, = *it is now the fact that* . . .

<sup>2</sup> So especially after nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, nōn ignōrō, quis dubitat, num dubium est, quis ignōrat, nōn abest suspiciō.

<sup>3</sup> The word "cause" is used for brevity (here and in 525 and 526) in place of "cause or reason," and the word "opposition" in place of "opposition or contrast."

ferrei sumus, quī quicquam huic negēmus, *we are hard-hearted, that we deny him anything*; Phil. 8, 8, 25 (Causal; = I say hard-hearted because . . .).

illī autem, quī omnia dē rē publicā praeclāra sentirent, negōtium suscēperunt, *and they, since they had only the noblest sentiments toward the state, undertook the task*; Cat. 3, 2, 5. (Causal.)

tum Cethēgus, quī paulō ante aliquid dē gladiis ac sicis respondiasset, repente conticuit, *then Cethegus, although a little before he had made some reply about the swords and daggers, suddenly became silent*; Cat. 3, 5, 10. (Adversative.)

a. As compared with the Tacit Causal or Adversative Clause (Indicative; 569, a) which merely suggests the idea of cause or opposition without calling attention to it, the Subjunctive Clause may be called the **Explicit Causal** or **Adversative Clause**.

b. The Causal quī-Clause is often introduced by ut (utpote), quippe, or praesertim (*as, in fact, especially, etc.*).

magna pars Fidēnātium, ut quī colōnī additī Rōmānis essent, Latīnē sciēbant, *a good many of the people of Fidenae, inasmuch as they had been annexed to the Romans as colonists, understood Latin*; Liv. 1, 27, 9.

## NEW MEANINGS DEVELOPED BY THE CONSECUTIVE cum-CLAUSE

### Descriptive cum-Clause of Situation

524. A Subjunctive cum-Clause may be used to *describe the Situation under Which* the main act took place.

The tenses are necessarily those of past situation (Imperfect or Past Perfect).

#### Original type.<sup>1</sup>

accēpit agrum temporibus iis cum iacērent pretia praediōrum, *he got the land at a time when prices were down*; Rosc. Com. 12, 33.

epistolae tum datae sunt cum ego mē nōn bellē habērem, *the letters were sent at a time when I was not feeling well*; Att. 5, 11, 7.

#### Narrative type.<sup>2</sup>

ipsi ad mē, cum iam dilūcēsceret, dēdūcuntur, *the men themselves were brought to me as day was breaking*; Cat. 3, 3, 6. (Dilūcēsceret is narrated, just as much as dēdūcuntur is.)

<sup>1</sup> These examples are simply additional instances of the kind seen in 521, 1.

<sup>2</sup> Essentially the same thing as the original type, but employed in a new way, namely in narrating.

### 515. The Subjunctive of Natural Likelihood is used :

1. In Questions, with *quid*, *quidnī*, *quī* (*how?*), *quārē*, *quamobrem*, or *cūr*.

*quid enim ōdisset Clōdium Milō, segetem ac māteriem suae glōriae?* *why should Milo have hated Clodius, who furnished him the field and the occasion of his glory?* Mil. 13, 35.

*quārē dēsīnat esse macer?* *why (under such circumstances) should he cease to be lean?* Catull. 89, 4. (= naturally he would remain lean.)

*"inepta, nescīs quid sit āctum?" "Quī sciam?" "you stupid, don't you know what has taken place?" "How should I know?"* And. 791.

2. In Dependent Clauses, with *quī*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *cūr*, *quīn*, or *ut*.

*videō causās esse permultās quae istum impellerent,* *I recognize the existence of a great many causes that would naturally be impelling him;* Rosc. Am. 33, 92. (Natural working in the past.)

*quantumvis quārē sit macer inveniēs,* *you'll find every reason in the world why he should be lean;* Catull. 89, 6. Cf. *quārē dēsīnat*, 515, 1.

*ille erat ut ōdisset accūsātorem suum,* *there was (reason) that he should (naturally) hate his accuser;* Mil. 13, 35.

3. In Substantive Clauses with *ut*.

*verī simile nōn est, ut ille homō religiōnī suae pecūniam antepōneret,* *it is not likely that such a man would set money above his conscience;* Verr. 4, 6, 11.

## VI. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

516. The Potential Subjunctive expresses *Possibility* or *Capacity* (English "may," "might," "can," "could"). The negative is *nōn*.

a. The Present and Perfect express a *present* or *future* possibility or capacity, the Imperfect and Past Perfect a *past* possibility or capacity.

517. The Potential Subjunctive is used especially :

1. In Independent Sentences, but only where a negative is implied, or in the Second Person Singular Indefinite, or with *quis*, *aliquis*, *vix*, *facile*, or *forsitan*.

*quis clādem illius noctis fandō explicet?* *who could set forth in words the ruin of that night?* Aen. 2, 361. (Present Capacity; = no one could.)



cuneō hoc agmen disiciās, *with a wedge, one could split this line*; Liv. 22, 50, 9. (Present Capacity.)

ea perītis amnis eius vix fidem fēcerint, *this could scarcely gain any credence at all among those who know this river*; Liv. 21, 47, 5. (Present Capacity, emphatic tense.)

Servius, frāter tuus, facile diceret, hic versus Plauti nōn est, hic est, *your brother Servius could easily say 'That verse is n't Plautus's, this one is'*; Fam. 9, 16, 4. (Past Capacity.)

aliquis dicat mihi, *some one may say to me*; Sat. 1, 3, 19. (Possibility.)

a. But the Future Indicative is much more common with quis and aliquis, as in dicet aliquis, *some one will say*, Pis. 28, 68.

2. In Relative Clauses, after expressions of *existence* or *non-existence*.<sup>1</sup>

est unde haec fiant, *I have means with which it can be done*; Ad. 122. nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, *there was no means by which they could relieve their starvation*; B. G. 1, 28, 3.

ūnum angustum et difficile, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; *one (way was) narrow and difficult, by which carts could hardly be hauled one at a time*; B. G. 1, 6, 1.

a. The potential feeling of the clause is clearly shown by its parallelism with clauses with possum in the Subjunctive of Actuality (521, 1) with a dependent Infinitive. Thus unde agger comportāri posset (instead of comportārētur), nihil erat reliquum, *there was nothing left from which a rampart could be got together*; B. C. 2, 15, 1; cf. B. G. 2, 25, 1; 4, 29, 4.

3. In Substantive Clauses after fieri potest.

fieri potest ut rēctē quis sentiat, et id quod sentit politē ēloqui nōn possit, *it may happen that a man may think correctly, and yet be unable to express his thoughts in a finished manner*; Tusc. 1, 3, 6.

a. This is the only way in Latin of saying "may" or "can," except with possum used personally, or as shown under 517, 1.

## VII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF IDEAL CERTAINTY<sup>2</sup>

518. The Subjunctive of Ideal Certainty declares that, under imagined or imaginable circumstances, something *would take place* (or *would have taken place*), or asks a corresponding

<sup>1</sup> Thus after est, habeo, nōn est, nōn habeo, etc. These clauses are really *descriptive*, expressing that of which the antecedent is *capable*, or for which it is *available* or *suitable*.

<sup>2</sup> Possibility, Natural Likelihood, and Ideal Certainty (act possible, probable, or ideally certain) often lie close together, so that a given example may seem to belong to

a. The Second Person is almost wholly confined to poetry.

*sis fēlix, be thou propitious*; Aen. 1, 330.

*sī tibi vidētur, dēs ei filiam tuam nūptum, if you approve, give him your daughter in marriage*; Nep. Paus. 2, 3. (Written to a king.)

2. In Substantive Clauses, after verbs or phrases of *Requesting, Begging, Imploring*, etc.<sup>1</sup>

*Dīviciācus Caesarem obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret, Diviciacus began to entreat Caesar not to pass too severe judgment upon his brother*; B. G. 1, 20, 1.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONSENT OR INDIFFERENCE

531. The Subjunctive may be used to express *Consent, Acquiescence, or Indifference* (negative *nē*):

1. In Independent Sentences.

*vīn mē crēdere? Fiat, do you wish me to believe it? So be it*; Ph. 810.  
*moriar nī putō tē mālle ā Caesare cōsulī quam inaurārī, may I die (= I am willing to die) if I don't believe you would rather have Caesar ask your advice than make you a millionaire*; Fam. 7, 13, 1.  
 (Compare the boys' phrase "I hope to die if it is n't true.")  
*sibi habeant arma, they may have their arms*; Sen. 16, 58.

2. In Substantive Clauses, after verbs of *Consent, Acquiescence, or Indifference*.<sup>2</sup>

*huic permisit utī in hīs locīs legiōnem conlocāret, he gave him permission to station his legion in those parts*; B. G. 3, 1, 3.  
*quae iam mēcum licet recognōscās, and these things you may now recall with me (it is permitted that you recall)*; Cat. 1, 3, 6.

532. The Subjunctive may be used to express a *Concession of Indifference* ("Concessive" Subjunctive):

1. In Independent Sentences (negative *nē*).

*nē sit sālē summum malum dolor; malum certē est, grant that pain is not the greatest evil; an evil at any rate it is*; Tusc. 2, 5, 14.

a. This construction, and the dependent form of it in 2, generally express a concession made merely *for the sake of the argument*, and are thus the opposite of the concession of *fact* (Indicative; 556, a).

<sup>1</sup> The most common of the verbs are *rogō, ōrō, precor, obsecrō, impetrō, quaerō, petō*. It is often hard to determine whether in a given Substantive Clause the idea of Request is uppermost, or that of Will (502, 3). The distinction is unimportant, since with verbs of weaker meaning the idea of Will would always tend to *shade into* that of Request.

<sup>2</sup> The most common of these are *concedō, sinō, permittō, licet*.

2. In **Dependent Concessions of Indifference**, with *quamvis* or *quamlibet*, *as much as you please, even though* (negative *nōn*).

*illa quamvis ridicula essent, sicut erant, tamen risum nōn mōvērunt, no matter how amusing this may have been, as in fact it was, nevertheless it didn't raise a laugh; Fam. 7, 32, 3. (Concession of a state of things in the past.)*

*senectūs quamvis nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert eam viriditātem in quā etiam nunc erat Scīpiō, old age, no matter though it be not burdensome, nevertheless takes away the freshness which Scipio still possessed; Am. 3, 11. (Concession in the general present.)*

*a. Concession of Indifference with licet. Licet, it is permitted, is often used as a Conjunction, in a Concession of Indifference.*

*fremant omnēs licet, dicam quod sentiō, the whole world may storm at me, still I will say the thing I think (though the whole world should storm); De Or. 1, 44, 195.*

*b. A Subjunctive Clause with ut, even though, may express a Concession of Indifference.<sup>1</sup>*

*ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimū nāvis posse, then, too, even though everything should turn out contrary to their expectation, (they felt) that they were very powerful in ships; B. G. 3, 9, 6.*

*c. For the Concession of Fact with quamquam, see 556, a. For the same with etsi, tametsi, etc., see 552, 8. For the breakdown of the distinction between quamvis and quamquam, see 541.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE CONSTRUCTIONS DUE TO THE INFLUENCE OF OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS (ANALOGY)

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**533.** When the words or thoughts of any one are reported exactly as spoken or thought, they are said to be in **Direct Discourse**.<sup>2</sup> When they are made to depend on a verb of saying, thinking, etc. (expressed or implied), they are said to be in **Indirect Discourse**.<sup>3</sup>

*a. In Indirect Discourse, the first and second persons generally change to the third (ego to sē, meus to suus, hic and iste to ille, etc.). The same applies to subordinate clauses.*

<sup>1</sup> This *ut* is probably merely the formal opposite of *nē* (cf. p. 261, footnote 2); but the clause *may* originally have been dependent ("granting that").

<sup>2</sup> Also called *Orātiō Rēcta*.

<sup>3</sup> Also called *Orātiō Obliqua*.

**534. 1.** As explained in 589,

*Principal Statements* in Indirect Discourse are expressed by the Infinitive, regularly with a Subject Accusative.<sup>1</sup>

**Dumnorīgem dēsignārī sentiēbat**, (Caesar) *was aware that Dumnorix was meant*; B. G. I, 18, 1. (What Caesar thought was : **Dumnorix dēsignātur**, *Dumnorix is meant*.)

*a.* The Infinitive of Indirect Discourse often follows a verb which does not suggest this idea. The *Infinitive itself* is, in such a case, the *sign* of the idea.

**sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōlēcērunt; nōn minus sē contendere . . .**, *all threw themselves, in tears, at Caesar's feet: they were not less urgent* (they said) . . . ; B. G. I, 31, 2.

*b.* All *Conclusions* (being *Statements*) must go into the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. See especially 581, *b*, 1).

**2.** Subordinate Clauses *representing Indicatives* or *Imperatives* are put in the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. These are:

- I. Subordinate Statements of Fact, including Clauses of Reason with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, or **quandō** (535).
- II. Conditions of Fact (536).
- III. Questions of Fact (537).
- IV. Commands or Prohibitions (538).

*a.* The negative is the same as in corresponding clauses or sentences in Direct Discourse, i.e. **nē** for commands or prohibitions, and **nōn** for all other clauses. (Cf. 464.)

*b.* For comparison, the corresponding Indicative or Imperative forms of *Direct* Discourse will be given for each of the Subjunctive examples.

**535. 1. Subordinate Statements of Fact in Indirect Discourse**

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**vehementer eōs incūsāvit; sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret**, *he rebuked them roundly, (and said) that he would go with the Tenth Legion alone, about which he had no doubt*; B. G. I, 40, 15.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

**cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō**, *I will go with the Tenth Legion alone, about which I have no doubt.*

<sup>1</sup> The construction is mentioned here for convenience; but the *principle* is simply that of 589-593, which see for details and a list of governing verbs.

**a. Informal Indirect Discourse.** The fact that a statement is quoted may be shown by the mood alone, even if there is no verb of saying or thinking in the main sentence.

*cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod frūmentum quod estis polliciti, (give essent polliciti flāgitāre, Caesar was me) the grain which you have dunning the Haedui daily for the promised. grain which (as he reminded them) they had promised; B. G. I, 16, 1.*

**b. Forward-Moving and Parenthetical Relative Clauses of Fact (566 and 567),** since they are additional statements of fact, may be expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Infinitive. In the majority of cases, however, the general mould of the sentence throws such a clause into the Subjunctive. An example of each kind follows:

*nōn sustinēre dēserere officiī suī partis, in quō tamen suō dōlōri modum impōnere, (Cornutus said) that he could not endure to desert the duties of his office; in which, however (= but in this) he set bounds to his own grief; Plin. Ep. 9, 13, 16. scīre sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs dōlōris capere, propterea quod per sē crevisset; quibus opibus ad minuendam grātiā ūteretur, (said) that he knew this to be true, and that no one suffered more grief from the fact, for the reason that (his brother) had grown through his help; which resources he was using to lessen his influence; B. G. I, 20, 2. (Might have been written quibus ūti, which he was using.) Similarly the parenthetical quī diēs futūrus esset; Cat. I, 3, 7.*

**c. An Infinitive construction** is often kept up after a Relative or *quam* depending upon an Infinitive. In such a case, the Infinitive is often expressed but once.

*tē suspicor isdem rēbus quibus mē ipsum commovērī, I suspect that you are troubled by the same things by which I myself am; Sen. I, 1.*

**d. Clauses expressing statements inserted by the narrator himself** are really not a part of the Indirect Discourse, and therefore are expressed by the Indicative.

*nūntiātum est Ariovistum ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, it was announced that Ariovistus was hurrying to take possession of Besançon, which is the largest town of the Sequani; B. G. I, 38, 1.*

## 2. Clauses of Reason with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, in Indirect Discourse

These are mostly only a *particular kind* of statement of fact, distinguished from the others for convenience.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*Caesar respondit eō sibi minus dubitātiōis dari, quod memoriā tenēret . . . , Caesar answered that he felt less hesitation, because he remembered . . . ; B. G. I, 14, 1.*

*grātulāris mihi quod accēperim augurātum, you congratulate me on having been made an augur; Plin. Ep. 4, 8, 1.*

### DIRECT DISCOURSE

*mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod memoriā teneō . . . , I feel less hesitation, because I remember . . .*

*grātulor tibi quod augurātum accēpisti, I congratulate you on having been made an augur.*

**a. Subjunctive of Quoted Reason.** By a kind of informal Indirect Discourse, the Subjunctive is used with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō* to express a reason *given by another than the speaker*.

*supplicatio decreta est, quod Italiam bello liberassem, a thanksgiving was decreed because I had saved Italy from war*; Cat. 3, 6, 15. (This was what the senate said, in passing the decree.)

NOTE 1. To give the *speaker's* reason, the Indicative is used. See 555.

NOTE 2. The speaker may quote a reason as *given or felt by himself at another time*, and will then use the Subjunctive.

NOTE 3. By a natural confusion, *dicō* and *existimō* are sometimes put in the Subjunctive in a *quod*-Clause of Reason.

*redivit quod se oblitum nescio quid diceret, he came back, because he said he had forgotten something* (properly *quod oblitus esset, because, as he said, he had forgotten*); Off. I, 13, 40. Similarly *quod existimarent*, B. G. I, 23, 3.

**b. Subjunctive of Rejected Reason.** The Subjunctive is used with *nōn quod*, *nōn quia*, *nōn quoniam*, *nōn quōd*, *nōn quān*, etc., to express a reason *imagined as possibly given* by some one, but *rejected* by the speaker.<sup>1</sup> The true reason is then sometimes added in the Indicative.

*nōn idcirco eorum usum dimiseram, quod iis suscenserem, sed quod eorum me suppedebat, I had given up my intercourse with them (my books); not that I was angry at them, but because I felt somewhat ashamed of myself in their presence*; Fam. 9, 1, 2.

### 536. Conditions of Fact in Indirect Discourse

#### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*respondit si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum, he answers that if hostages shall be given him by them, he will make peace with them*; B. G. I, 14, 6. (Condition really future to a past time, but picturesquely put as future to the present.)

*eos incusavit: . . . si quos adversum proelium commoveret, hos reperire posse, he rebuked them: . . . (saying) that, if the defeat disheartened any among them, these could ascertain . . .*; B. G. I, 40, 8. (Condition of Fact, in time relatively present to the past point of view.)

#### DIRECT DISCOURSE

*si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, vobiscum pacem faciam, if hostages are (shall be) given me by you, I will make peace with you.* (More Vivid Future Condition; 579, a.)

*si quos adversum proelium commovet, hi reperire possunt, if the defeat disheartens any among you, they can ascertain.* (Condition of Fact in the present; 579.)

<sup>1</sup> This construction, though no longer a Subordinate Statement of Fact, has arisen out of such a statement. <sup>2</sup> Compare with example to the right, and note the changes of person.

**a. Informal Indirect Discourse.** The expression is often informal, the indirectness of the Condition being shown only by the Subjunctive itself.

*sī quid dicere vellet, fēci potestātem, sī quid dicere vis, potestātem habēs,*  
*I gave him an opportunity, if he if you wish to say anything, you*  
*wanted to say anything; Cat. 3, 5, have an opportunity. (Condition of*  
 11. Cf. *qui velint; Aen. 5, 291. Fact in the Present.)*

### 537. Questions of Fact in Indirect Discourse

#### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*Ariovistus respondit . . . ; quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possessionēs venīret? Ariovistus answered . . . ; (asking) what he (Caesar) wanted; why he (Caesar) came into his possessions; B. G. 1, 44, 8.*

#### DIRECT DISCOURSE

*quid tibi vis? quid in meās possessionēs venīs? what do you want? why do you come into my possessions?*

**a.** For Rhetorical Questions of Fact in Indirect Discourse, see 591, a.

**b.** The Indirect Question of Fact in the Subjunctive may be used with *any* verb or expression capable of suggesting the interrogative idea. The underlying principle is the same as in the above.

*quaesivī quid dubitāret, I asked why he hesitated; Cat. 2, 6, 13.*

*incerti, quō fāta ferant, uncertain whither the fates are carrying us; Aen. 3, 7.*

**c.** Indirect Questions are of substantive nature. See the example.

**d.** Note the following usages in Indirect Questions:

1) The Future Indicative is represented by the Periphrastic Future (470, 4, a).

*antequam, ista quō evāsūra sint, viderō, before I see where this is going to turn out; Att. 14, 19, 6. (The question is, quō evādent?)*

2) **Num** does not differ from **-ne** in meaning.

*quaerō num existimēs, I ask whether you think; Clu. 23, 62.*

3) **Ut**, *how*, is freely used.<sup>1</sup>

*docēbat ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, (Caesar) informed him how the Haedui had constantly held the chief position in all Gaul; B. G. 1, 43, 6.*

**e.** Several interrogative phrases may be used as *indefinites*, without effect upon the mood. So especially, in Ciceronian Latin, *nesciō quis* (quō pactō, etc.), *mirē quam*, etc. *nesciō quō pactō erūpit*, *has in some way or other burst forth; Cat. 1, 13, 31.*

**f.** *Nesciō an* in Ciceronian Latin generally implies "I rather think that . . ." (cf. English "I don't know but"; example under 507, 3). In later Latin, it has its original neutral meaning ("I don't know whether . . .").

<sup>1</sup> **Ut** is used also in direct *Exclamations*, but not in direct Questions, except in early Latin and imitations of it.

g. The original Indicative is still sometimes found in Indirect Questions or Exclamations in poetry (especially in early Latin), and in late colloquial prose.

sciō quid dictūras (= dictūra es), *I know what you are going to say*; Aul. 174.

viden ut geminae stant vertice cristae, *see how upon his head the double plumes stand up*; Aen. 6, 779.

### 538. Commands and Prohibitions in Indirect Discourse

#### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

respondit . . . ; cum vellet, congrederetur, *he answered . . . ; when he wanted, let him come on*; B. G. 1, 36, 7.

nūntius vēnit bellum Athēniēnsis indixisse: quārē venire nē dubitāret, *a message came that the Athenians had declared war: wherefore he should not hesitate to come*; Nep. Ages. 4, 1.

a. Verbs of saying like dicō and respondeō may take a Volitive Clause, on the principle of 502, 3, a).

#### DIRECT DISCOURSE

cum volēs, congrederere, *when you want (shall want), come on*.

Athēniēnsēs bellum indixērunt: quārē venire nōli dubitāre, *the Athenians have declared war: wherefore do not hesitate to come*. (For the usage in direct prohibitions, see 501, 3, a.)

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

539. A Dependent Clause attached to a Subjunctive or Infinitive Clause, and conceived as forming an essential part of the thought conveyed by it, is put in the Subjunctive.

cum ita balbus esset, ut eius ipsius artis, cui studēret, primam litteram nōn posset dicere, *though he stammered so much, that he could not pronounce the first letter of the very art that he was studying*; De Or. 1, 61, 260.

mōs est Syrācūsis, ut, si quā dē rē ad senātum referātur, dicat sententiam quī velit, *it is the custom at Syracuse that, when any matter is taken up in the senate, any one that desires speaks*; Verr. 4, 64, 142.

mōs est Athēnis laudārī in cōtiōne eōs quī sint in proeliis interfecti, *it is the custom at Athens to pronounce a public eulogy over those who have fallen in battle*; Or. 44, 151.

quicquid increpuerit, Catilinam timērī, nōn est ferendum, *it is intolerable that, whatever sound is heard, Catiline should have to be feared*; Cat. 1, 7, 18.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION

540. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in subordinate clauses, to express *Repeated Action*.



Any Relative or Conjunction may be used ; but the earliest examples are mostly with *cum*.

*vexillum prōponendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, the flag had to be displayed, which was the signal, when (ever) the soldiers must gather to arms ; B. G. 2, 20, 1. Cf. 5, 19, 2.*

*saepe, cum ipse tē cōfirmāssēs, subitō ipse tē retinēbās, often, when you had nerved yourself, you would suddenly check yourself ; Quinct. 11, 39.*

*quod ubi dīxisset, hastam in finis ēmittēbat, after saying which, (the priest) used to cast a spear into their territory ; Liv. 1, 32, 13.*

*est vulgus cupiēs voluptātum, et, sī eōdem princeps trahat, laetum, the populace is fond of pleasure, and delighted if the chief ruler leads in that direction ; Tac. Ann. 14, 14.*

a. In Cicero's time, the older construction (Indicative ; 579) is much more common than the Subjunctive. After Cicero, the Subjunctive became equally common in tenses of the past, but remained less common in tenses of the present.

#### THE LATER SUBJUNCTIVE WITH QUAMQUAM AND INDICATIVE WITH QUAMVIS

541. After Cicero, *quamquam* and *quamvis* are used with either Indicative or Subjunctive, often without distinction of meaning.

*quamquam movērētur, although he was moved ; Liv. 36, 34, 6.*

*quamvis infestō animō pervēnerās, no matter in how hostile a spirit you had arrived ; Liv. 2, 40, 7. Similarly quamvis dēiēcit, Aen. 5, 541.*

a. For the regular Ciceronian constructions (*quamquam* Indicative, *quamvis* Subjunctive), see 556 ; 532, 2.

b. *Quamvis* and, after Cicero, *quamquam* are often used with other parts of speech than verbs, as in *quamvis retentus*, Plin. Ep. 10, 15 ; *quamquam parcissimus*, 10, 9.

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE GENERALIZING STATEMENT OF FACT IN THE SECOND SINGULAR INDEFINITE

542. A General Statement of Fact is sometimes expressed by a Subjunctive in the *Second Person Singular Indefinite*.

*ubi mortuus sis, ita sis ut nōmen cluet, when you're dead, dead you are in the true sense of the word ; Trin. 496. (The second sis has the force of es.)*

*quī hostēs patriae semel esse coepērunt, eōs cum ā perniciē rei publicae reppuleris, nec vī coercēre nec beneficiō plācāre possis, if men have once begun to be enemies of their country, then, when you have stopped them from destroying the state, you can neither constrain them by force nor reconcile them by kindness ; Cat. 4, 10, 22. (Possis has the force of potes.)*

a. The Indicative is also used in this sense.

## THE INDICATIVE

## 543. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE INDICATIVE

## INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

## DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Statement or Question of Fact (545)  
(Including Conclusions of Fact; 546, 579)

## Essential Clauses, and others derived from them

Determinative Clause of Fact: determining the  
 person or thing, with *quī*, etc. (550 and footnote 2)  
 kind or amount, with *quālis*, *quantus* (550 and ftm.)  
 manner or degree, with *ut* or *quam* (550 and ftm.)  
 time at which, with *quī* or *cum* (550 and *a*)  
 time before which, with *antequam* or *priusquam*  
 (550 and *b*)  
 time after which, with *postquam* (550 and ftm.)  
 time from which, with *ex quō* or *ut* (550 and ftm.)  
 time up to which, with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* (550 and *b*)  
 time during which, with *dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, or *quam diū* (550 and *b*)  
 time included in the reckoning, with *cum* or *quod*  
 (550 and ftm.)

Clause of Equivalent Action, with *quī*, *cum*, etc. (551)

Substantive *quod*-Clause of Fact (552, 1)

*Quod*-Clause of Respect (552, 2)

Substantive *cum*-Clause (553)

## Clauses Less Closely Attached

Clause of Cause or Reason, with *quod*, *quia*, etc. (555)

Adversative Clause of Fact, with *quamquam* (556)

Aoristic Narrative Clause, with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, etc. (557)

Narrative Clause of Situation, with *ubi*, *ut*, or *postquam* (558)

*Dum*-Clause of Situation (559)

Narrative Clause, with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad* (560)

Narrative Clause, with *antequam* or *priusquam* (561)

*Ut*-Clause of Accordance or Reason (562)

*Ut*-Clause of Harmony or Contrast (563)

Parallel *cum . . tum . .* (*not only . . but also . .*) (564)

## Free Clauses

Forward-moving Relative Clause, with *quī*, *cum*, etc. (566)

"*Cum inversum*" (566, *a*)

Parenthetical Clause and "Asides" (567)

Loosely Attached Descriptive Clause (568)

Free Descriptive Clause (569)

Tacit Causal or Adversative Clause (569, *a*)

Independent Conditions of Fact (545, *b*)

Conditions of Fact (570, 579)

544. The Indicative mood represents an act or state as a fact. It may accordingly be used to *state* a fact, to *assume* a fact, or to *inquire* whether something is a fact (negative *nōn*).

vēnit, *he has come* (Declarative)  
 sī vēnit, *if he has come* (Conditional)  
 vēnit? *has he come?* (Interrogative)

a. The Indicative may also be used in Exclamations (cf. 228, 3, a).

## THE INDICATIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

545. The Indicative may be used in independent sentences to *declare* something to be a fact, to *inquire* whether something is a fact, or to *exclaim* about a fact.

fuisti apud Laecam, *you were at Laeca's house*; Cat. 1, 4, 9.

quid tacēs? *why are you silent?* Cat. 1, 4, 8.

a. A Virtual Command or Exhortation may be expressed by an Indicative question with cūr nōn or quīn, *why not?*

quīn cōnsendimus equōs? *why don't we mount our horses?* (= let's mount our horses);

Liv. 1, 57, 7. Similarly quīn exercēmus, Aen. 4, 99.

REMARK. From such uses, quīn gets the force of urgency, and is then used with the Imperative also. See 496, b.

b. An apparently independent statement or question sometimes forms a Condition. negat quis: negō, *somebody says "no": so do I* (= IF somebody says "no"); Eun. 252.

546. A Statement or Question of Fact to which a Condition is attached is called a *Conclusion of Fact*. See 573, 579.

## THE INDICATIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

547. The Indicative may be used in dependent clauses to *declare* (*state*) something as a fact, or to *assume* something as a fact (cf. 228, 3, b).

### A. DEPENDENT STATEMENTS<sup>1</sup> OF FACT

548. Dependent Statements of Fact may be subdivided as follows:

- I. Determinative Clauses of Fact, and constructions derived from them. These, in their very nature, are closely attached to the main sentence (*essential*).
- II. Clauses of Fact less closely attached, but still dependent.
- III. Clauses of Fact loosely attached; in reality dependent only in form.

<sup>1</sup> An indicative declarative clause may either convey information of a fact not hitherto known to the hearer (or reader), or may make use of a fact supposed to be already known by him. The word "statement" covers both these possibilities.

# I. DETERMINATIVE CLAUSES OF FACT, AND DERIVED CONSTRUCTIONS

549. The Indicative is used in closely attached (essential) clauses in the following constructions :

550. **Determinative Clauses of Fact**, determining<sup>1</sup> an antecedent idea of any kind.<sup>2</sup>

*eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat*, with the legion (what legion? The one) which he had with him; B. G. 1, 8, 1.

*et vivēs ita ut vivās*, and you shall live as you are living now (= in that way in which); Cat. 1, 2, 6.

*quī fuit in Italiā temporibus isdem quibus L. Brūtus patriam liberāvit*, who was in Italy at the time at which Lucius Brutus freed his country; Tusc. 4, 1, 2.

*haec Crassī cum ēdita ōratiō est quattuor et trīgintā tum habēbat annōs*, at the time when this oration of his was published, Crassus was thirty-four years old; Brut. 43, 161. Similarly *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit*, B. G. 6, 12, 1.

*sī tum cum lēx ferēbātur in Italiā domicilium habuissent*, if, at the time when the law was being passed, they had had their domicile in Italy; Arch. 4, 7.

*sex annīs ante quam ego nātus sum*, six years before I was born; Sen. 14, 50.

*annō postquam ego nātus sum*, one year after I was born; Sen. 4, 10.

*mānsit in pactō usque ad eum finem, dum iudicēs reiecti sunt*, he stood by the agreement until the judges were rejected (up to that limit, namely until . . . ); Verr. A. Pr. 6, 16.

*ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est*, from the time when the bridge began to be built; B. G. 4, 18, 4. Cf. *ut ērūpit*, Cat. 3, 1, 3.

*quoad potuit, restitit*, as long as he could, he resisted; B. G. 4, 12, 6.

*vicēsimus annus est, cum omnēs scelerāti mē petunt*, it is now the twentieth year (in which) that all malefactors have been attacking me; Phil. 12, 10, 24. Cf. *septima vertitur aetās cum*, Aen. 5, 626.

<sup>1</sup> That is, telling *what* person, thing, time, etc., is meant. The Determinative Clause pieces out an incomplete pronominal word. It is therefore *pronominal* in its nature, as against the Descriptive Clause, which has the force of an *adjective*.

<sup>2</sup> Thus a person or thing (*quī*), kind or amount (*quālis, quantus*), manner or degree (*ut, quam, as*), time which (*quī* or *cum*), time at which (ablative of *quī*, or *cum*), time before which (*antequam* or *priusquam*), time after which (*postquam*), time from or since which (*ex quō* or *ut*), time up to which (*dum, donec, quoad, until*), time during which (*dum, donec, quoad, quam diū, so long as*), time included in the reckoning (*cum* or *quod*).

a. Among the more important constructions of this class is the **Determinative cum-Clause**, as in the fourth and fifth examples.

The majority of the Determinative *cum*-Clauses have their verb in the Perfect (Past Aorist), as in the fourth example. But clauses with the Imperfect or Past Perfect are also found, forming a Determinative Clause of *Situation*, as in the fifth example. (See also 524, d.)

NOTE 1. This very common construction stands in sharp contrast to the *Descriptive cum-Clause* of Situation (Subjunctive; 524). The Indicative *cum-Clause* defines (dates) the time at which the main act took place; the Subjunctive *cum-Clause* describes the time (gives its character).

NOTE 2. A *quī*-clause or *cum*-clause may sometimes, though primarily determinative, convey an accessory idea of description, or cause, or opposition, and *vice versa*.

in eō librō quī est dē tuendā rē familiārī, in that book which deals with the management of the household; Sen. 17, 59. (The speaker primarily tells which of his books he means; but incidentally he describes it.)

an tibi tum imperium hoc esse vidēbātur, cum populī Rōmānī lēgātī capiēbantur? did this seem to you at that time to be an empire, when ambassadors of the Roman people were being taken captive? Pomp. 17, 53.

NOTE 3. **Rhetorical Determinative Clause.** The Determinative *quī*- or *cum*-Clause is sometimes deliberately chosen, for rhetorical effect, where a descriptive, or causal, or adversative clause would be equally natural, or more natural.

This clause is often used to introduce a sentence in a *non-committal* manner, the relation between it and the main verb being left to be discovered when the latter is reached. It may then be called the *Introductory Neutral quī*- or *cum-Clause*.

This latter use is more common with *quī* than with *cum*.

ego sum ille cōsul cui nōn cūria umquam vacua mortis periculō fuit, I am that consul for whom the senate-house has never been free from mortal peril; Cat. 4, 1, 2. (Rhetorical, in place of a descriptive clause, with fuerit, I am one for whom.)

etenim, cum mediocribus multis grātuitō civitātem in Graeciā hominēs imperitiēbant, Rēginōs crēdō, quod scaenicis artificibus largiri solēbant, id huic summā ingenī praeditō glōriā nōluisse, for, when in Greece men were freely granting citizenship to many ordinary persons, the people of Regium, I suppose, were unwilling to bestow upon this man, the possessor of the highest intellectual distinction, that which they were in the habit of bestowing upon stage performers; Arch. 5, 10. (Both the *cum*-clause and the *quod*-clause are introductory and neutral.)

b. Other especially important Clauses of this class are the **Determinative Clauses** with *antequam* or *priusquam*, before, and *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, until or so long as, as in examples six, seven, eight, and ten under 550. In these, the verb states an actual event looked back upon, before which, or until which, etc., the main act took place. They thus stand in sharp contrast to the anticipatory subjunctive clauses with these connectives (507, 4 and 5), which represent acts, not as actual, but as looked forward to.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In the sense of *so long as*, *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, together with *quamdiū*, take an Indicative when referring to future time, unless (509) the main verb is in the past. Thus *quamdiū quisquam erit, qui tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs*, so long as there shall be any one who shall dare to defend you, you shall live; Cat. 1, 2, 6.

c. In the construction of the Time after Which, the **post** of **postquam** sometimes governs a noun. The same idea may also be expressed by an ablative noun of time, with a relative in the same case.

**post diem quārtum** quam est in Britanniam ventum, *three days after they came to England*; B. G. 4, 28, 1.

**diēbus decem**, quibus māteria coepta est comportāri, *within ten days after the material began to be brought together* (within the ten days within which); B. G. 4, 18, 1.

### 551. Clause of Equivalent Action, with **quī**, **quod**, **cum**, or **ubi**.

**errāstis quī spērāstis**, *you were mistaken in hoping*; Leg. Agr. 1, 7, 23.  
(Your hoping was a mistake.)

**cum quiēscunt**, **probant**, *in acquiescing, they approve*; Cat. 1, 8, 2.  
(Their acquiescence is equivalent to approval.)

**bene fēcistī quod libertum in animum recēpistī**, *you have done well in taking your freedman into your good graces again*; Plin. Ep. 9, 24, 1.

### 552. 1. Substantive **quod**-Clause.

**illud mihi occurrit**, **quod uxor ā Dolābellā discessit**, *this (fact) occurs to me, (namely) that Dolabella's wife has left him*; Fam. 8, 6, 1.<sup>1</sup>

**adde quod ingenuās didicisse fidēliter artis ēmolliit mōrēs, nec sinit esse ferōs**, *add that to have learned faithfully the liberal arts refines the manners, nor suffers them to be boorish*; Ov. Pont. 2, 9, 49. Similarly **accēdēbat quod dolēbant**, B. G. 3, 2, 5.

a. A frequent form of the **quod**-Clause is the condensed expression **quid** **quod** . . . ? *what (of the fact) that* . . . ?

**quid quod tē ipse in custōdiam dedistī**? *what of your giving yourself into custody (what of the fact that* . . . )? Cat. 1, 8, 19.

### 2. **Quod**-Clause<sup>2</sup> of Respect ("as to the fact that").

**quod scire vīs quā quisque in tē fidē sit et voluntāte, difficile dictū est dē singulis**, *as to your desiring to know what loyalty and good will this and that man have toward you, it is difficult to say this of individuals* (as to this, namely, that you desire); Fam. 1, 7, 2. Similarly **quod petiēre**, Aen. 2, 180, and (in Indirect Discourse) **quod glōriārentur**, B. G. 1, 14, 4.

a. This clause is only a special form of the one given in 1 above.

<sup>1</sup> When it explains a substantive, as in this example (**illud quod**), the clause is often called "Explicative."

<sup>2</sup> The **quod** of this construction and of 552, 1 was originally a Relative Pronoun. As regards case, it stood in no tangible relation to the verb of its clause. Accordingly it echoed the prevailing case of its antecedent, namely the Nominative-Accusative form.

**553. Substantive cum-Clause<sup>1</sup> (cum meaning *that*).**

*hoc mē beat, quom perduellis vicit, this gives me pleasure, (namely) that he has conquered his enemies; Amph. 644.*

*a.* In Ciceronian Latin, this clause is as regular as the *quod*-Clause (555) with verbs and phrases of *thanking, congratulating, rejoicing, praising*, and the like (cf. English "rejoice that").

*tē, cum istō animō es, satis laudāre nōn possum, I cannot praise you enough for having such resolution; Mil. 36, 99.*

**II. CLAUSES OF FACT LESS CLOSELY ATTACHED, BUT STILL  
REALLY DEPENDENT**

**554.** The Indicative is used, in clauses less closely attached, in the following constructions :

**555.** Clause of Cause or Reason, with *quod, quia, quoniam, quando, because, since*.<sup>2</sup>

*Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occisum ab Helvētiis, concēdendum nōn putābat, Caesar, because he remembered that Lucius Cassius the consul had been killed by the Helvetians, thought that the request should not be granted; B. G. 1, 7, 4.*

*a.* The Subjunctive is used with these words to express a Quoted or Rejected Reason. (Informal Indirect Discourse; see 535, 2, *a* and *b*.)

**556.** Adversative Clause of Fact, with *quamquam* ("although in fact").

*illōs, quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen monitōs volō, although they are enemies, yet I wish them to be well warned; Cat. 2, 12, 27.*

*a.* When this Clause concedes an objection made by an adversary, it becomes a **Concession of Fact** (*although it is true that*). The construction is thus in contrast with that of the Concession of Indifference (Concession for the Sake of the Argument) with *quamvis* (532, 2), which means *no matter how much, even though*, and does not deal with the question whether the thing conceded is true or not.

*b.* For "corrective" *quamquam, etsi, tametsi*, see 310, 7.

<sup>1</sup> This construction has come down from a time when *cum* (earlier form *quom*; cf. *quod*) had not yet gained its temporal force.

<sup>2</sup> The construction with *quod* arose out of the one in 552, 1, through examples like *laetae id quod mē aspexerant, glad with reference to this, namely, that they had seen me* (i.e. *because*); *Hec. 363* (cf. *id maesta est, 388, a*).

**557. Aoristic Narrative Clause, with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*,<sup>1</sup> or *simul* *atque*, and an aorist tense.**

*ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, when the Helvetians were informed of his coming, they sent (send) ambassadors to him; B. G. 1, 7, 3.*

*id ubi vident, mūtant cōsiliū, when they see this, they change their plan; B. C. 2, 11, 2. (Vident is an Historical Present.)*

*a. Less common introductory words or phrases for this clause are ut primum, ut semel, ubi primum, simul, cum primum (primus, prima, etc.).*

**558. Narrative Clause of Situation, with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, or *simul* *atque*, and a tense of past situation (less common).**

*postquam rēs eōrum satis prōspera vidēbātur, when now their affairs seemed in a prosperous condition; Sall. Cat. 6, 3. Cf. B. G. 7, 87, 5.*

**559. Dum-Clause of Situation.** The tense is regularly the *Present*, no matter what the tense of the main Verb may be.  
*dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūtiātum est, while these things were going on, word was brought to Caesar . . . ; B. G. 1, 46, 1.*

*a. Out of the dum-Clause of Situation arises the dum-Clause of the Way by Which. Thus hī dum aedificant, in aes aliēnum incidērunt, while (= by) building houses, these men have fallen into debt; Cat. 2, 9, 20.*

*b. A dum-Clause is often used to express a Situation of which Advantage is to be taken. Thus abite, dum est facultās, escape while there is opportunity; B. G. 7, 50, 6.*

*c. In later Latin, the Imperfect is sometimes used in the dum-Clause of Situation. Thus dum cōficiēbātur, Nep. Hann. 2, 4.*

**560. Narrative Clause with *dum*, *dōnec*, or *quoad*, *until*.** The tense is regularly the *Perfect* (past aorist).

*neque finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equitēs praecipitēs hostis ēgērunt, nor did they stop the pursuit, until the cavalry drove the enemy headlong (= they pursued, and finally . . . ); B. G. 5, 17, 3.*

*a. In such a clause, the verb tells a new fact in the narration just as much as the main verb does. The construction is more common than that of 550, b.*

**561. Narrative Clause with *antequam* or *priusquam*.** The tense is regularly the *Perfect* (past aorist).

---

<sup>1</sup> The form *postea quam* is more frequent in Cicero, *postquam* in Caesar.



neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum pērvēnērunt, *nor did they cease to flee until they came to the Rhine* (= they kept on fleeing, and finally they came . . . ); B. G. I, 53, 1.

a. In such a clause the verb tells a new fact in the narration just as much as the main verb does. The force is possible only when the main verb is negated.

**562. Ut-Clause of Accordance or Reason** (English "as" = "for").

haec ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, *these things were seen from the town, as there was a prospect from Gergovia into the camp*; B. G. 7, 45, 4.

hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita cōnsilia), Trebium retinent, *led by their influence (for the resolutions of the Gauls are quickly taken), their neighbors detain Trebius*; B. G. 3, 8, 3.

**563. Ut-Clause of Harmony or Contrast** (ut . . . ita or sic . . . , as . . . so . . . , or while . . . yet . . . ).

ut magistrātibus lēgēs, ita populō praesunt magistrātūs, *as the laws are superior to the magistrates, so the magistrates are superior to the people*; Leg. 3, 1, 2.

ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer est animus, sic mollis ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est, *while the spirit of the Gauls is quick to undertake war, yet their mind is not sturdy for enduring reverses*; B. G. 3, 19, 6.

**564. Parallel cum and tum** (*while . . . at the same time . . . , not only . . . , but also . . .* ).

cum omnis iuventūs eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat coēgerant, *not only had all the young men gathered there, but they had got together all the ships there had been anywhere*; B. G. 3, 16, 2. (Originally *when . . . at the same time . . .* )

a. A slight emphasis is thrown upon the second member.

b. The presence of the idea of *Contrast* (a sort of *Opposition*) sometimes brings about the use of the Subjunctive (526).

c. When the same verb is meant in both clauses, it is expressed but once. Sometimes no verb at all is used (Adverbial cum . . . tum).

cum illa certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta, tum multō certiōra illa, *not only did these evidences seem very sure, but still surer the following*; Cat. 3, 5, 13.

cum cārum, tum dulce, *not only dear, but sweet*; Cat. 4, 7, 16.

### III. CLAUSES OF FACT LOOSELY ATTACHED; IN REALITY DEPENDENT ONLY IN FORM (FREE CLAUSES)

**565.** The Indicative is used in clauses very loosely attached (in reality completely independent), in the following constructions :

**566.** Forward-moving Relative Clause, with *quī*, *cum*, *ut* (*as*), etc. Such a clause *advances the thought*, just as an independent sentence beginning with *et is*, *et tum*, *et sic*, etc., would do.

*nec hercule, inquit, sī ego Serīphius essem, nec tū sī Athēniēnsis, clārus umquam fuissēs; quod eōdem modō dē senectūte dīci potest, I should never have been renowned, said he, if I were a Seriphian, nor, by Jove, would you have been, if you were an Athenian. Which (= and this) may be said in like manner of old age; Sen. 3, 8. spērāns Pompeium interclūdī posse; ut accidit . . ., hoping that Pompey could be cut off; as (= and this) happened; B. C. 3, 41, 3.*

*litterās recitāstī, quās tibi ā C. Caesare missās dicerēs; cum etiam es argūmentātus, you read a letter, which you said had been sent you by Gaius Caesar; whereupon (= and then) you went so far as to argue . . .; Dom. S. 9, 22.*

*a.* Out of this use arises the common use in which the *cum*-Clause follows the main clause (hence called "*cum inversum*"), and expresses an act that comes in upon an existing state of affairs.

*iam montānī conveniēbant, cum repente cōspiciunt hostīs, already the mountaineers were gathering, when suddenly they see the enemy; Liv. 21, 33, 2. Similarly cum cognōscunt, B. G. 6, 7, 2; cum reddit, Aen. 2, 323.*

**567.** Parenthetical Clauses, and "Asides." A Parenthetical Clause with *quī*, *cum*, *ut*, etc., may be used to insert into a sentence some fact which is of interest by the way. Such clauses are really independent sentences.

Or, a clause with *quī*, *cum*, etc., may insert *between sentences* something which for the moment carries the mind away from the direct progress of the thought. Such "Asides" are really independent sentences.

- *intereā ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finis Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, mūrū perducit, meanwhile he builds a wall running from Lake Lemān, which empties into the Rhone, to Mount Jura, which separates the lands of the Sequani from the Helvetians; B. G. I, 8, 1. (In place of the two words quī we might have had hic lacus and hic mōns.)*

*Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, Gaul, as has been said above, lies to the north; B. G. I, 16, 2. (Parenthetical Clause. In place of ut, we might have had id.)*

*quaestor deinde quadrienniō post factus sum, quem magistrātum gessi cōsulibus Tuditānō et Cethēgō, cum quidem ille admodum senex suāsor lēgis Cinciae dē dōnis et mūneribus fuit, then four years later I was made quaestor, — which office, by the way, I held in the consulship of Tuditānus and Cethegus, — at which time, by the way, he, though very old, was an active promoter of the Cincian law about gifts and bribes; Sen. 4, 10. (Two successive "Asides.")*

NOTE. The forward-moving Clause advances the thought: the Parenthetical Clause and the "Aside" delay it for the moment.

**568. Loosely Attached Descriptive Clause, with quī or cum.** A Descriptive Clause that might have been in the Subjunctive (521, 1) is sometimes purposely *attached loosely*, with the feeling of a forward-moving statement.

*nōn nulli sunt in hōc ōrdine, quī aut ea quae imminent nōn videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent; quī spem Catilinae mollibus sententiis aluērunt, there are a number of men in this body, who either do not see that which is hanging over our heads, or conceal that which they do see; who (= and these) by their half-hearted expressions of opinion have fed the hopes of Catiline; Cat. I, 12, 30. (The first clause is closely attached, the second loosely.) Similarly erat alia vehemēns opiniō, quae animōs pervāserat, Pomp. 9, 23.*

*ūnus et alter diēs intercesserat, cum rēs parum certa vidēbātur, a couple of days had passed, in which (= and in this time) the matter seemed rather indefinite; Clu. 26, 72.*

a. Similar loosely attached Causal or Adversative Clauses occur.

b. This Loosely Attached Descriptive Clause, which might be replaced by the Subjunctive, must be distinguished from the following, in which the Subjunctive *could not be used*, unless an independent sentence with the same meaning would take this mood.

**569. Free<sup>1</sup> Descriptive Clause.** After an antecedent complete in itself, a relative clause (with *quī*, *cum*, etc.) is really an independent statement, and accordingly takes *whatever mood the statement in itself requires*, — generally the Indicative.

*imāgō avi tuī, clārissimī virī, quī amāvit patriam*, *the likeness of your grandfather, a most eminent man, who loved his country*; Cat. 3, 5, 10.

*relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs ire nōn poterant*, *there remained only the way through the country of the Sequani, by which (= and by this) they could not pass without the consent of the Sequani*; B. G. 1, 9, 1.

*dōnec ad haec tempora, quibus nec vitia nostra nec remedia patī possumus, perventum est*, *until we reached the present time, in which we can endure neither our defects nor the remedies applied to them*; Liv. 1, Praef. 9. (*Cum* might have been used, in place of *quibus*.)

NOTE 1. A Descriptive Clause is necessarily a free one when it refers immediately to an antecedent *complete in itself*, e.g. a word denoting a person (as *Cicerō*, *ego*, *tū*); a noun with a determinative or possessive pronoun (as *hic homō*, *hōc tempore*), or the adverb *nunc*. Hence the mood is Indicative in clauses of present situation (*nunc cum*, etc.), unless the idea of *cause* or *opposition* is to be brought out, in which case the Subjunctive is used.

NOTE 2. After an antecedent *not* complete in itself, a Descriptive Clause of Fact *must* be in the Subjunctive (unless it expresses a Condition; 579). The reason for this difference is that the *Subjunctive* Descriptive Clause of Fact is of consecutive origin (521, 1, e), and gets its mood in that way; while the Free Descriptive Clause is *not* of consecutive origin.

a. These free descriptive clauses often *suggest* the causal or adversative idea, and may then be called **Tacit Causal or Adversative Clauses**, in opposition to Explicit Causal or Adversative Clauses (523) in which the *mood calls attention* to the relation.

*ō tē ferreum, quī illius periculīs nōn movēris!* *O you hard-hearted man, who are not moved by his dangers!* Att. 13, 30, 1. (Might have been *quī nōn moveāris*. Cf. *ferreī sumus, quī negēmus* under 523.)

*nisi vērō ego vōbīs cessāre nunc videor, cum bella nōn gerō*, *unless indeed I seem to you to be a laggard in these days, in which I am not carrying on war*; Sen. 6, 18. (Might have been *cum bella nōn geram*, since *I am not carrying on war*.)

<sup>1</sup> Free clauses are clauses that can be left out without making the sentence grammatically incomplete. They are opposed to *essential* (i.e. *necessary*) clauses of various kinds.

## B. DEPENDENT CONDITIONS OF FACT

**570.** The Indicative may be used in Conditions which *assume something to be a fact*.

*Conditions and Conclusions of all kinds are, for convenience, treated together in 573-582.*

## SPECIAL USES OF THE PRESENT, PERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE

**571.** The Freer Present Indicative may be used to express a number of ideas which are *usually, or sometimes, expressed by other moods or tenses*. The negative is *nōn*.<sup>1</sup>

These are especially the ideas of Resolve, Deliberation, Perplexity, etc., Anticipation (with *ūm, dōnec, quoad, antequam, priusquam*, etc.), Consent, Future Condition (with *sī*, etc.), or Vivid Statement about the future or the past (the latter is called the Historical Present; 491, 1).

*quid agō? Rūrsusne procōs inrīsa priōrēs experīar? what am I to do? Am I now, insulted (by Aeneas), to try once more my former suitors? Aen. 4, 534. (Perplexity; cf. 503.)*

*nunc, antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam, now, before I return to the voting, I wish to say a few words about myself; Cat. 4, 10, 20. (Act anticipated and prepared for; cf. 507, 4, a.)*

*sed mihi vel tellūs optem prius ima dehīscat, ante, Pudor, quam tē violō, but I should wish the depths of earth to yawn for me, before I wrong thee, Modesty! Aen. 4, 24. (Act deprecated; cf. 507, 4, d.)*

*sī in eādē mente permanent, ea quae merentur exspectent, if they remain of the same mind, let them expect that which they deserve; Cat. 2, 5, 11. (Future condition; cf. the equivalent sī permanēbunt, Cat. 2, 8, 18.)*

a. Under the influence of the Present, the Present Perfect is sometimes used to express the same ideas, but with greater energy or emphasis (490).

*sī eundem mox in aestimandā fortunā vestrā habueritis, vicimus, militēs, if you have the same (spirit) presently in judging of your own fate, we have already conquered, soldiers; Liv. 21, 43, 2. (Vicimus is energetic.)*

b. In Cicero, the Present Indicative is more common than the Subjunctive after *antequam* and *priusquam*.

<sup>1</sup> These uses have probably come down from a time when only a single set of verb-forms existed, expressing distinctions of person and number, but none of mood or tense. Compare the use of the English verb by a foreigner who has learned only one form.

c. As in the case of the Anticipatory Subjunctive (507, 4, note 1), the formula that came into use in cases of true anticipation was naturally used for the *operations of nature* as well, as in the following:

*membris ūtimur priusquam didicimus cuius ea causā ūtilitātis habēmus, we use our limbs before we have learned for what use we possess them; Fin. 3, 20, 66.*

**572.** The Future Indicative may be used to express a number of ideas which are *generally, or sometimes, expressed by the Subjunctive*. The negative is *nōn*.

These are especially the ideas of Resolve, Exhortation, Command or Prohibition, Deliberation or Perplexity, Surprise or Indignation, Consent or Acquiescence.

*nōn feram, I shall not (= will not) bear it; Cat. 1, 5, 10.*

*sinite instaurāta revisam proelia; nunquam omnēs hodiē moriēmur inultī, let me go back and see the conflict set on foot again. We shall not all die unavenged to-day, ah no; Aen. 2, 668. (Hortatory; = let us not.)*

*referēs ergō haec et nūntius ibis Pēlidae, you will (= shall) report this, then, and will go as a messenger to the son of Peleus; Aen. 2, 526. (Command.)*

*quōs Sidoniā vix urbe revelli rursus ventis dare vēla lubēbō? shall I (= can I), who have with difficulty torn my men from the Sidonian city, again bid them give their sails to the wind? Aen. 4, 545. (Perplexity.)*

*dēdēmus ergō Hannibalem? shall we, then, give up Hannibal? Liv. 21, 10, 11. (Indignation; = surely you don't mean this!) Cf. patiēre? Cat. 1, 11, 27.*

a. In many of these uses, the Future may conveniently be called the *Volitive Future Indicative* (so in the first three examples).

## SUMMARY OF CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

### INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE

**573.** A Conclusion is a *conditioned* statement.

The Condition (Assumption<sup>1</sup>) *assumes* something as true (or realized), and the Conclusion *asserts* something as true (or realized) only *if* the thing assumed is true (or realized).

**574.** Conclusions may be either Statements of *Fact* (Indicative) or Statements of an *Ideal Certainty* (Subjunctive).

The corresponding Conditions will be either Assumptions of *Fact* (Indicative) or *Ideal* Assumptions (Subjunctive).

<sup>1</sup> The word "condition" is convenient, as being in common use. The word *assumption* would more exactly fit the mental operation, would balance the verb *assume*, and would perfectly express the character of the first type (assumption of fact).

## 575. TABLE OF CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

A. Conditions and Conclusions of Fact.	{ In any time. <i>Indicative, in any tense.</i> In future, and so realizable. <i>Present or Perfect Subjunctive.</i>
B. Ideal Conditions and Conclusions.	{ In Present or Past, and so unrealized (contrary to fact). <i>Imperfect or Past Perfect Subjunctive.</i>

576. Any kind of Condition and Conclusion may be used either (1) with individual<sup>1</sup> Meaning, or (2) with generalizing Meaning. The form is in general the same.

a. The only exceptions to this rule are: the Generalizing Condition in the Second Person Singular Indefinite (always Subjunctive; 504, 2), and the Subjunctive of Repeated Action (not yet common in Cicero, and never common in tenses of the present; 540).

577. Conditions may be introduced by a Relative<sup>2</sup> or an equivalent<sup>3</sup> (*Conditional* or *Assumptive* Clauses; 228, 2), or by *sī*, *nisi*, *nī*, or *sīn*. The negative is *nōn*.

a. The tense of the Condition often expresses the act as in a finished state at the time of the tense of the Conclusion. (Cf. 494.)

**Sī, sī nōn, nisi, nī, and sīn. Meanings and Uses.**

578. 1. *Sī* means *in case, if* (cf. *sī-c*, *in that case*).

2. The negative of *sī* is *sī nōn*, *if not*, if a single word is especially negated, or *nisi*, *unless*, if the whole condition is negated.

*sī stāre nōn possunt, corruant, if (these men) are unable to stand, let them fall*; Cat. 2, 10, 21. (*Nōn possunt* = *nequeunt*.)

*dēsillite, inquit, commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere, "leap down, fellow soldiers," he said, "unless you wish to betray the eagle to the enemy"*; B. G. 4, 25, 3.

3. When a *second* Condition is opposed to the first, it is introduced, if positive, by *sīn*, *but if* (Cat. 1, 7, 18); if negative, by *sī nōn*, *if not*

<sup>1</sup> Often called "particular."

<sup>2</sup> The oldest way of expressing a Condition was doubtless by the use of the Relative (the simplest of all connectives), not by *sī*.

<sup>3</sup> Connectives like *cum*, *dum*, *antequam*, *postquam*, *quotiens*, *quotienscumque*, etc.

(B. G. 1, 35, 4), or *sī minus*, *if not, otherwise* (B. G. 2, 9, 4; Cat. 1, 5, 10), the latter being regular where the verb is omitted.

*a. Nisi* is often used ironically of an afterthought. Thus *nisi forte*, *unless perhaps* (Cat. 4, 10, 21); *nisi vērō*, *unless indeed* (Cat. 4, 6, 13).

*b. Nisi* often means merely *except, but*.

*nihil cōgitant nisi caedem*, *they think of nothing but bloodshed*; Cat. 2, 5, 10.

4. *Nī*, *unless*, is sometimes used in place of *nisi*, mainly in the poetical or later style.

5. A Condition may be introduced by *ita*, *eā condiciōne*, etc.

*ita senectūs honesta est, sī sē ipsa dēfendit*, *old age is honorable* (on these terms, namely) *if it defends itself*; Sen. 11, 38.

6. A Condition is often contained in a Noun, an Adjective, a Participle, an Adverb, an Ablative Absolute, etc.

*nūlla alia gēns nōn obruta esset*, *no other race would have failed to be crushed*; Liv. 22, 54, 10. (If it had been any other race, it would have been crushed.)

## CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS, IN DETAIL

### First Class: Conditions and Conclusions of Fact, in Any Time

579. *Conditions and Conclusions of Fact* are expressed by the Indicative. They may be in any time, and so in any tense; and the two parts may also *differ* in tense.

*sī occidī, rēctē fecī*; *sed nōn occidī*, *if I killed him, I killed him justly; but I did not kill him*; Quintil. 4, 5, 13. (Time the same in both.)

*vindicābitis vōs, sī mē potius quam fortūnam meam fovēbātis*, *you will avenge me, if it was I, rather than my fortunes, that you were courting*; Tac. Ann. 2, 71. (Time differing in the two.)

*quotienscumque mē petistī, per mē tibi obstiti*, *as often as your attack has been aimed at me, I have resisted you with my own resources*; Cat. 1, 5, 11. (Generalizing; present perfect tense.<sup>1</sup>)

*neque, cum aliquid mandārat, cōfectum putābat*, *nor, when he had given a commission, did he regard it as executed*; Cat. 3, 7, 16. (Generalizing in a tense of the past.)

*beātus est nēmō, quī eā lēge vivit*, *no man is happy who lives on such terms*; Phil. 1, 14, 35.

*nam cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē absunt, etiamsī inruptiō nūlla facta est, agrī cultūra dēseritur*, *for when an enemy's force is not far off, agriculture is abandoned, even if no incursion has been made*; Pomp. 6, 15.

<sup>1</sup> In order to be generalizing, a sentence needs only to be true of *every case in a given class*, not necessarily of every case *everywhere* and *always*.



NOTE 1. In the generalizing clause, the idea of condition (the *assuming* of something as true) is necessarily always present. This idea regularly takes precedence of all other ideas, — whether descriptive, or causal, or adversative. The real meaning in the last example but one is: IF ANY MAN *lives on such terms, then that man is not happy*; in the last example, IF *an enemy's force is not far off*. (Note the parallelism of *cum* and *etiāmsi*.)

NOTE 2. Yet the *habit* of using the Subjunctive after negative or indefinite antecedents (521, 1, *b*) is so strong that the Romans occasionally did employ it, even in a Generalizing Clause, after such antecedents. So especially with *quī* *quidem* and *quī modo*.

*quī rei pūblīcae sit h. stis, fēlix esse nēmō potest, no man can be happy who is an enemy to th. commonwealth*; Phil. 2, 26, 64. Similarly *quem inrētissēs*, Cat. 1, 6, 13; *quī modo sit*, Cat. 4, 8, 16 (contrast *quī modo audivit*, Dei. 6, 16).

a. The **More Vivid Future Condition and Conclusion** is simply one particular form of the Condition and Conclusion of Fact, in which *both* are in the *future*, as in the examples following:

*sī accelerāre volent, cōsequentur, if they (shall choose to) will make haste, they will overtake him*; Cat. 2, 4, 6.

*quī sibi fidet, dux reget exāmen, the man that shall trust himself will lead and rule the swarm*; Ep. 1, 19, 22. (Generalizing in the future.)

### Second Class: Less Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions

580. *Less Vivid Future Conditions and Conclusions* are expressed by the Present or Perfect Subjunctive (really Future and Future Perfect in meaning).

*quibus ego sī mē restitisse dīcam, nimium mihi sūmam, if I should say that it was I that withstood them, I should be claiming too much*; Cat. 3, 9, 22.

*quī dīcat prō illō 'nē fēceris,' 'nōn fēceris,' in idem incidat vitium, a man who should say 'nōn fēceris' instead of 'nē fēceris' would fall into the same error*; Quintil. 1, 5, 50. (Generalizing, = *any man who . . . , if any man . . .*)

*nihil enim prōficiant, nisi admodum mentiantur, for if they (namely, traders) should fail to lie roundly, they would make nothing*; Off. 1, 42, 150. (Generalizing.)

a. There are thus (counting in the Present Indicative; 571) three ways of expressing a future Condition and Conclusion:

**Less Vivid**: *si veniat, gaudeam, if he should come, I should be glad.*

**More Vivid**: *si veniet, gaudēbō, if he shall come, I shall be glad.*

**With the Freer Present**: *sī venit, gaudēbō, if he comes, I shall be glad.*

**b. Past-Future Condition and Conclusion.** When the point of view is in the *past*, the tenses of the Subjunctive are of course the Imperfect and Past Perfect (really Future and Future Perfect to the past; see 470).

at tum si dicerem, non audirer, *but at that time (it was certain that) I should not be listened to, if I were to speak*; Clu. 29, 80. (For the tense-feeling, compare the *N. Y. Evening Post*, June 16, 1891: "But it was now nearly six o'clock, and it *would* surely be dark before we could scale the heights of Demetrias and return to Volo.")

habebat Tigellius hoc . . . si conlibuisset, ab ovo usque ad mala citaret 'Iō Bacche,' *Tigellius had this habit . . . ; if the fancy were to take him, he would sing 'Ho Bacchus' from soup to pudding*; Sat. 1, 3, 3. (Generalizing.)

NOTE. No distinction of the degree of vividness can be made in *Past Future* Conditions and Conclusions, since only the Subjunctive is here possible (508).

**c. A Past-Future Conclusion may also be expressed by the use of a Past Periphrastic Future form of the Indicative.**

quia, si armentum in speluncam compulisset, vestigia dominum eo deductura erant, boves caudis in speluncam traxit, *because, if he should drive the herd into the cave, their tracks would (were going to) lead their master thither, (Cacus) dragged them into the cave by their tails*; Liv. 1, 7, 5.

quem si tenerent nostri, pabulatione prohiberi hostis videbantur, *and if our men should hold this hill, it seemed that they would keep the enemy from foraging (they seemed to be going to keep . . . )*; B. G. 7, 36, 5.

### Third Class: Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact, in the Present or Past

**581. Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact** are expressed by the Imperfect or Past Perfect Subjunctive.

The Imperfect expresses an *act* or *state* in the present or past (generally in the present), and the Past Perfect a *completed* act, in the present or past.

servi mei si me isto pacto metuerent, domum meam relinquendam putarem, *if even my slaves feared me in this fashion, I should think that I ought to leave my home*; Cat. 1, 7, 17. (Present.)

si hoc optimum factum iudicaret, unius usuram horae gladiatori isti ad vivendum non dedissem, *if I thought this the best course to take, I should not have granted this cutthroat the enjoyment of one hour of life*; Cat. 1, 12, 29. (Si iudicaret refers both to the past and to the present.)

neque diūtius Numidae resistere quīvisset, nī peditēs magnam clādem facerent, *nor would the Numidians have been able to hold out any longer, had not the infantry effected a great slaughter*; Sall. Iug. 59, 3. (Facerent refers to the past.)

praeterita aetās quamvis longa cum efflūxisset, nūlla cōsōlātiō permulcēre posset stultam senectūtem, *when the past, — no matter how long, — was over, no consolation could comfort a fool's (= any fool's) old age*; Sen. 3, 4. (Generalizing: "when" = "in any case in which.")

a. A Conclusion Contrary to Fact may also be expressed by the use of a *Past Periphrastic Future* form of the Indicative (-tūrus fui, eram, etc.).

quōs ego, sī tribūnī mē triumphāre prohibērent, testis citātūrus fui, *whom, in case the tribunes had opposed my celebrating a triumph, I should have summoned as witnesses*; Liv. 38, 47, 4.

REMARK. This construction has arisen out of the true Past-Future construction (*was going to . . . , if . . . should*; see 580, c).

The use of the Imperfect and Past Perfect *Subjunctive* in the more common construction arose in the same way out of the past-future force. Compare *tum sī dicerem, nōn audīrē* (under 580, b), originally meaning *if I were at that time to speak, I should not be heard*, but easily suggesting the meaning *if I HAD at that time spoken, I SHOULD not have been heard*.

b. The Periphrastic Future form supplies a means of expression where the Subjunctive cannot be used, or where a different tense is wanted:

1) A Conclusion Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse is expressed by *fuisse* (very rarely *esse*) *with the Future Participle*, active or passive.

Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, eēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse, *Ariovistus replied: if he himself wanted anything of Caesar, he (Ariovistus) would have come to him*; B. G. 1, 34, 2. (In Direct Discourse, sī quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum venissem.)

2) A Conclusion Contrary to Fact, where a Subordinate Clause in the Perfect Subjunctive is desired, is expressed by *fuerim*, etc., *with a Future Participle*, active or passive.<sup>1</sup>

dīc quidnam factūrus fuerīs, sī eō tempore cēnsor fuissēs, *tell me what you would have done, if you had been censor at that time*; Liv. 9, 33, 7. The Past Perfect may be retained; cf. the tense in 519, 4, b).

NOTE. The tense of the *Condition* Contrary to Fact is never changed under any circumstances. See the examples above.

<sup>1</sup> The growing fondness for the aorist in result clauses makes this construction common in later Latin in Conclusions Contrary to Fact (e.g. *ut, nisi . . . fuisset, repetitūrus fuerit*, Liv. 22, 32, 3).

c. **Highly Improbable Conclusion.** The Imperfect or Past Perfect is sometimes used to express a Conclusion which, since the Condition is contrary to fact, is very *unlikely to be realized*.

quod ego si verbō adsequi possem, istōs ipsōs ēicerem, *if I had it in my power to accomplish this by a word, I should drive out these very men*; Cat. 2, 6, 12.  
This the speaker does not mean to do. (Not *I should have driven out nor I should now be driving out*, but *I should proceed to drive out*.)

d. **Early and Poetic Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact.** In early Latin, Conditions and Conclusions Contrary to Fact may be expressed by the *Present* and *Perfect*; and the poets sometimes employ the construction at a later period.

si ēcastor nunc habeās quod dēs, alia verba praehibeās: nunc quia nihil habēs . . . , *good gracious! if you had anything to give, your language would be different. As it is, since you have n't anything . . .*; As. 188.

dēliciās tuās, nī sint infēgantēs, vellēs dicere, *you would wish to tell of your pleasures, if they were not discreditable*; Catull. 6, 1.

REMARK. This construction is a survival of the earliest type, in use before the Imperfect and Past Perfect Subjunctive came into existence. This earliest type could make no distinction of time.

e. The Indicative Past Perfect, or Imperfect, is sometimes used to represent an act as *sure to have taken place*, except for a certain condition, expressed or implied.

praeclārē vicerāmus, nisi Lepidus recēpisset Antōnium, *we had won a splendid victory, had not Lepidus given Antony shelter (the victory was already won, but . . .)*; Fam. 12, 10, 3.

iam tūta tenēbam, nī gēns crūdēlis ferrō invāsisset, *I should surely have laid hold upon safety (was already laying hold), had not the cruel race attacked me with the sword*; Aen. 6, 358.

### General Notes on Conditions and Conclusions

582. 1. **Mixed Conditions and Conclusions.** Any thinkable combination of types may be employed; or the Conclusion may take the form of a Command, a Wish, a Statement of Obligation, etc.

quae supplicatiō si cum cēteris supplicatiōnibus cōferātur, hoc interest, *if this thanksgiving should be compared with the rest, there is this difference*; Cat. 3, 6, 15. (Condensed for "there is this difference, as would be found, if the comparison should be made.")

si dēferantur et arguantur, pūniendī sunt, *if they should be reported and convicted, they are to be punished*; Plin. Ep. 10, 97.

vincite, si vultis, *have your way, if you will*; B. G. 5, 30, 1.

si amābat, adservāret diēs noctisque, *if he really was in love with her, he should have watched over her day and night*; Rud. 379.

a. The mixed form is especially common where the inherent meaning of the main verb suggests the future idea, as with dēbeō, possum, studeō, volō, etc.

intrāre, si possim, castra hostium volō, *I mean, if I should be successful, to enter the camp of the enemy* (= I shall . . . , if . . . ); Liv. 2, 12, 5.

2. **Loosely Attached Conditions.** A Less Vivid Future Condition may be *loosely attached* to the main clause.

*auscultō, sī quid dicās, I am listening, in case you should have anything to say;*  
Trin. 148. (Future to the present.)

*hanc sī nostrī transirent, hostēs expectābant, the enemy were waiting, in case our men should cross this (swamp);* B. G. 2, 9, 1. (Future to the past.)

a. Such Conditions often suggest the idea "to see whether," or "in the hope that."

b. Out of examples like the last arises the true Indirect Question of Fact with *sī*.

*vide sī quid opis potes adferre, see if you can help;* Ph. 553. (For the mood, see 537, g.)  
*incerta sī Iuppiter velit, uncertain whether it is the will of Jove;* Aen. 4, 110.

*quaesisse sī equitēs evāsissent, asked if the cavalry had escaped;* Liv. 39, 50, 7.

3. **Special Idioms with Verbs or Phrases expressing Obligation, Possibility, and the like, and certain other Phrases made up of a neuter Adjective with *est*, or equivalents:**<sup>1</sup>

a) An *actually existing* Obligation, Possibility, etc., in whatever time, is expressed by an Indicative of the appropriate tense;<sup>2</sup> an Obligation, Possibility, etc., which, in some imagined case, *would* exist, or *would have* existed, by a Subjunctive of the appropriate tense.

In such uses, the Imperfect Indicative expresses an actually existing present Obligation or Possibility not fulfilled, the Perfect an actual past Obligation or Possibility not fulfilled, the Past Perfect an Obligation or Possibility actually existing in past time, and prior to a point which is in mind. The tenses of the Subjunctive, when used with these expressions, are simply those of the regular Subjunctive Conclusion (Less Vivid Future, or Contrary to Fact, as the case may be). Compare the contrasting forms in the following table:

*Examples of Contrasting Uses:*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>possum persequi permulta oblectāmenta rērum rūsticārum, sed . . . , I might treat of a great many pleasures of farm life; but . . . ;</i> Sen. 16, 55. (I HAVE IT in my power to treat.)	<i>sī scieris, scisse tō quis arguere possit ? supposing you to have known, who could prove that you had known ? Fin. 2, 18, 59. (Who, in that case, WOULD have it in his power ?)</i>

<sup>1</sup> So e.g. with *dēbeō, decet, oportet, convenit, possum, licet; aequum, melius, optimum, iustum, pār est; longum, facile, grave est;* the Future Passive Participle with *est*; and *est* with the Descriptive Genitive. Similarly, in poetry, with *tempus est, etc.*

<sup>2</sup> In corresponding expressions in English we inflect the Infinitive to make variations of tense ("I ought to do it," "to have done it," etc.). The Romans inflected the main verb ("it is my duty to do it," "it was my duty to do it," etc.). Thus *id facere dēbui, I ought to have done it.*

But of course the Infinitive may be used in an emphatic tense (490), or *iam pridem* may be added (485), or both, as in *quod iam pridem factum esse oportuit*, which ought LONG AGO to have been done AND DONE WITH; Cat. 1, 2, 5.

## INDICATIVE

quibus vōs absentibus cōsulare dēbētis, *for whose interests you ought to consult in their absence*; Pomp. 7, 18. (It is an actual obligation, open to fulfilment.)

quōs ferrō trucidāri oportēbat, *who ought to be butchered with the sword*; Cat. 1, 4, 9. (It is an actual obligation, unfulfilled.)

melius fuerat prōmissum patris nōn esse servātum, *it would have been better that the father's promise should not be kept*; Off. 3, 25, 94. (It actually was, before the time thought of, the better thing.)

dēlērī tōtus exercitus potuit, si fugientēs persecūtī victōrēs essent, *the entire army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up the fugitives*; Liv. 32, 12, 6. (It was possible to destroy them, but it was not done.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

haec si tēcūm patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat? *if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?* Cat. 1, 8, 19. (Thus English. The Latin idea is, *Would it not in that case be an obligation?*)

quae si diceret, tamen ignōsci nōn oportēret, *if he said this, still it would not be right to forgive*; Verr. 1, 27, 70. (It would in that case still be an obligation.)

nōne melius multō fuisset quētā aetātē trādūcere, *would it not have been much better to spend my life in quiet?* Sen. 23, 82. (It would have been better, in the case supposed in the previous sentence.)

nisi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostiū cōpiāe dēlērī potuissent, *if the soldiers had not been tired out, the entire force of the enemy might have been destroyed*; B. G. 7, 88, 6. (It would in that case have been possible to destroy them.)

NOTE 1. The Indicative may be used, even when accompanied by a Condition Contrary to Fact, if the Conclusion is true *independently* of the Condition.

quodsi Rōmae Cn. Pompeius privātus esset, tamen is erat dēligendus, *now if Gnaeus Pompey were in Rome, and a private citizen, still he would be the right person to choose*; Pomp. 17, 50. (Is the right person as it is, and would be even in the supposed case.)

NOTE 2. Constructions corresponding to the above Indicative types of course occur in Indirect Discourse also.

si alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre, (he said that) *if he had been conscious of any wrongdoing, it would have been easy to be on his guard*: B. G. 1, 14, 2. (He said: "si cōscius fuissem, nōn fuit difficile." Cf. facile fuit quattuor duplicāre, *it would have been easy to double the four*; Div. 2, 18, 42.)

NOTE 3. The poets occasionally *force* the Indicative construction, using it as the equivalent of a Conclusion (sometimes even of a Condition) Contrary to Fact.

si nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus erat, *if it did not cast a different perfume, it were (would be) a laurel tree*; Georg. 2, 132. Similarly Castor erās, Mart. 5, 38, 6.

b) With certain adjectives with *est* (or *sunt*),<sup>1</sup> the Present Indicative is the *fixed idiom* in Ciceronian Latin, as against the Present Subjunctive, which is not used.

*difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam, it would be difficult to maintain this in the case of all* (Latin, "it is difficult"), *but still it is clear what I am to answer*; Arch. 7, 15.

4. A Condition may itself form a Conclusion for another Condition.  
*moriar si magis gaudeam, si id mihi accidisset, may I die if I should take more pleasure if it had happened to myself*; Att. 8, 6, 3.

5. A Condition with *si* or *o si* may express a *Virtual Wish*.<sup>2</sup>  
*si nunc se ille aureus ramus ostendat, if now that golden branch would show itself (= would that . . .)*; Aen. 6, 187.

6. A Condition with *si modo*, *if only*, is equivalent to a Proviso (529). Either mood may be used, according to the feeling.

*opprimi dico patientiam, si modo est aliqua patientia, I assert that (pain) is overcome by endurance, if only there is some endurance*; Tusc. 2, 14, 33.

7. *Si* is sometimes used with the force of *etsi*, *even if* (concessive).  
*non possum, si cupiam, I cannot, even if I should desire*; Verr. 4, 40, 88.

8. *Etsi*, *tametsi*, and *etiamsi*, *even if*, are often equivalent to *although* (Virtual Adversative Clause). Either mood may be used, according to the feeling.

*etsi nondum eorum consilium cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur, though (even if) he did not yet know their plan, still he was suspicious*; B. G. 4, 31, 1.

9. *Si quidem*,<sup>3</sup> *if indeed*, gains the force of *for* or *since* (Virtual Clause of Reason).

*in agris erant tum senatores, si quidem aranti L. Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum, there were senators living in the country at that time; for (if indeed) the news that he had been appointed dictator was brought to Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus while ploughing*; Sen. 15, 56.

10. A Definition may be expressed by an Indicative Clause with *qui* or *cum* (originally simply a generalizing clause; see 576-579).

*vir bonus est is qui prodest quibus potest, nocet nemini, the good man is the one who helps whom he can, and harms nobody*; Off. 3, 15, 64.

*is est triumphus verus, cum bene de re publica meritis testimonium a consensu civitatis datur, that is the true triumph, when those who have deserved well of the state receive evidence of this from the unanimous feeling of its citizens*; Phil. 14, 5, 13.

<sup>1</sup> Thus *longum est, facile est*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, a wish in force, though not in form.

<sup>3</sup> Also written *siquidem*. (In later poetry, sometimes *siquidem*.)

## THE INFINITIVE

## 583. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE

- I. With Adjectives with *est*, and Verbs or Phrases of similar force, as in "it is base to . . ." (585).
- II. With Verbs or Phrases expressing attitude or position with reference to performing an act, as in "I wish to" (586).
- III. With Verbs or Phrases expressing attitude or position toward the performing of an act by another, as in "I wish *you* to" (587).
- IV. With Verbs or Phrases of perceiving, saying, thinking, or knowing, as in "I see that you . . ." (589).
- V. With Verbs or Phrases of feeling, as in "I am glad that you . . ." (594).
- VI. Historical Infinitive (595).
- VII. Exclamatory Infinitive (596).
- VIII. As Subject, Predicate, or Object of certain Verbs, or as an Appositive (597, 1).

584. The Infinitive is in effect a Verbal Noun, capable of standing in various case-relations.

As a Noun, it may have a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun agreeing with it (58, 3; example under 597, 1, *b*).

As a Verb, it may govern Cases, and may itself be modified by an Adverb.

*a.* The negative is *nōn*.

*b.* For the general forces of the tenses, see 472.

*c.* According to the sense intended, the Infinitive may be Active or Passive; it may, or may not, be attended by a Subject Accusative;<sup>1</sup> and, if Passive, it may, or may not, be attended by a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

*d.* In most of its uses, the Infinitive stands to the verb or phrase on which it depends in the Relation of Subject, or Object, or Accusative of Respect. In such examples, it is of Substantive nature (cf. 238).

*e.* In the Future Active and the Perfect Passive Indicative, the auxiliary *esse* is often omitted (164, 7).

---

<sup>1</sup> A classification of the Infinitive on the basis of its having or not having a Subject Accusative is unserviceable, since many verbs may take either construction *without essential difference of meaning*. Thus one may say either *cupio clēmēns esse* or *cupio me esse clēmēntem*.



## A. PROSE USES OF THE INFINITIVE IN ALL PERIODS

## I

585. The Infinitive is used with *Adjectives with est*, and Verbs and Phrases of similar force.<sup>1</sup>

These expressions represent an action as (1) *advantageous* or *important*; (2) *necessary* or *obligatory*; (3) *customary* or *permissible*; (4) *seemly* or *shameful*, *pleasant* or *tiresome*, *easy* or *difficult*,<sup>2</sup> etc., etc.

*commodissimum visum est mittere*, *it seemed most advantageous to send*; B. G. I, 47, 4.

*tempus est abire mē*, *it is time that I should go* (to go is seasonable); Tusc. I, 41, 99.

a. In many phrases, this Infinitive may either have, or not have, a Subject Accusative; thus *tempus est abire* or *tempus est nōs abire*.

b. When the Subject of the Infinitive is indefinite (*one, a man, people*), it is not expressed. But a Predicate Noun or Adjective may nevertheless be used, *belonging in thought* to the indefinite Subject.

*nōn esse cupidum pecūnia est*, *not to be covetous is wealth*; Par. 6, 3, 51.

c. When *licet*, *expedit*, etc., are followed by a Dative and Infinitive, the Predicate of the Infinitive may be in the Accusative, or it may be attracted into the Dative.

*civī Rōmānō licet esse Gādītānum*, *it is permitted to a Roman citizen to be a citizen of Cadix*; Balb. 12, 20.

*mihi neglegenti esse nōn licet*, *I am not allowed to be careless*; Att. I, 17, 6.

d. Such an Infinitive sometimes has a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun in agreement (cf. 58, 3).

*cum vivere ipsum turpe sit*, *when merely to be alive is disgraceful*; Att. I 3, 28, 2.

e. Verbs or phrases of this class suggesting that the action is *wanted* or *urged* may also take a Subjunctive Substantive Clause. So especially *interest*, *rēfert*, *oportet*, *licet*, *necesse*, *opus*, *ūsus*, or *tempus est*, *melius* or *optimum est*. Thus one may say either *tempus est nōs abire* or *tempus est ut abeamus*.

f. Many verbs and phrases of this class *shade into* meanings belonging to the second or the third class. So *tempus est abire* suggests the meaning *I am inclined to go*.

<sup>1</sup> Thus *nefās est*, *it is wrong*, has the same force as *nefāstum est*; *mōs est*, *it is customary*, as *ūsītātum est*; *tempus est*, *it is time*, as *tempestivum est*.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *iuvat*, *expedit*, *ūtile est*, *conducit*, *prōdest*, *rēfert*, *interest*; (2) *necesse* or *necessārium est*, *opus* or *ūsus est*, *tempus est* (*it is seasonable to*, *it is high time that*), *oportet*, *convenit*, *iūs* or *iustum est*, *fās*, *nefās*, or *nefārium est*, *pār*, *rēctum*, *aequum*, *inīquum*, etc., *est*; (3) *mōs* (*mōris*) or *cōnsuetūdō* (*cōnsuetūdinis*) or *ūsītātum est*, *meum* (*tuum*, etc.) *est*, *licet*; (4) *deceat* or *dēdeceat*, *convenit*, *laus est*, *turpe* or *praeclārum est*, *scelus* or *facinus est*, *displicet* (*is disagreeable*), *dēlectat*, *taedet*, *paenitet*, *puget*, *piget*, *rēfert*, *interest*, *iūcundum*, *grātum*, *grave*, *molestum*, *miserum*, *longum est*, *facile* or *difficile est*, *satis* or *satius est*, *optābile*, *bonum* or *malum est*, *vidētur* (*seems best*), *praestat* (*is better*), *est* or *rēs est* with the Genitive (*is the part of*), *propriū est* (*is peculiar to*), etc.

Similarly other words in later Latin. Thus *vincit* (*is better*).

## II

**586.** The Infinitive is used with Verbs or Phrases expressing *attitude* or *position with reference to performing an act*.

The personal verbs of this class express the ideas of (1) *wishing* or *not wishing*; (2) *determining, planning, or endeavoring*; (3) *beginning* or *omitting, persevering* or *ceasing*; (4) *hastening* or *delaying*; (5) *daring, hesitating, fearing*; (6) *knowing how* or *learning how*; (7) *remembering* or *seeming to*; (8) *being accustomed to, having the power to, or being under obligation to*.<sup>1</sup>

The impersonal verbs or phrases express *determination, inclination, or whim*.<sup>2</sup>

*maiōri partī placuit castra dēfendere*, *the majority wanted to defend the camp* (to defend it was pleasing to them); B. G. 3, 3, 4.

*ad hunc lēgātōs mittī placet?* *do we want ambassadors to be sent to such a man as this?* (= *mittere placet?*) Phil. 5, 9, 25.

*eās nātiōnēs adīre volēbat*, *he wished to visit those tribes*; B. G. 3, 7, 1.

*nōlīte dubītāre*, *pray, do not hesitate* (be unwilling to . . .); Pomp. 23,

68. (Courteous Prohibition. See 501, a, 2.)

*mātūrāt proficīscī*, *he makes haste to set out*; B. G. 1, 7, 1.

*dēbēre sē suspicārī*, *he was bound (he said) to suspect*; B. G. 1, 44, 10.

a. With most of the personal verbs of this class, the Infinitive *completely fills out* the meaning (as in *volō ire*, *I wish to go*). Hence it is called the Complementary Infinitive.

b. Some of these verbs may either have, or not have, the Reflexive Pronoun as Subject Accusative.

If such a Subject Accusative is used, a Predicate Noun or Adjective must of course be in the Accusative; if not, it must go back to

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) *volō, mālō, nōlō, cupiō, optō, dēsiderō, sustineō, recūsō*; (2) *statuō, cōstituō, instituō, dēcernō, animum inducō, cōsiliū capiō, cōgitō, meditor, studeō, in animō habeo, dēstinō, parō, cōnor, nitor, mōlior, labōrō, temptō*; (3) *coepi, incipiō, mittō and omitto, neglegō, pergō, perseverō, instō, dēsinō, dēsistō, cessō*; (4) *festinō, properō, mātūrō, contendō, moror, cūctor*; (5) *audeō, dubitō, vereor, metuō, timeō*; (6) *sciō, nesciō, discō*; (7) *memini, recorder, obliviscor, videor (seem)*; (8) *soleō, aduēscō, cōnsuēscō, possum, queō, nequeō, dēbeō*.

Also, in poetic and later Latin (1) *ārdeō, dignor, gaudeō, laetor*; (2) *poscō*; (3) *sūmō*; (4) *praecipitō*; (5) *horreō*; (8) *sufficiō, valeō*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. *certum, dēstinātum, cōsiliū* or in *animō est, venit in mentem, placet, iuvat, libet*.

Also, in poetic and later Latin, *cūra* or *cūrae est, est animus, fert animus, amor* or *cupido est, subit ira, mēns est, spēs est accēnsa*, etc.

the Subject of the main verb for its agreement (generally therefore in the Nominative).

*grātum sē vidēri studet, aims to seem grateful*; Off. 2, 20, 70.

*flerī studēbam doctior, I aimed to become wiser*; Am. 1, 1.

c. Impersonal verbs or phrases of this class suggesting that the action is *wanted* or *urged* may also take a Volitive Substantive Clause (502, 3, a). Thus one may say either *placuit ei lēgātōs mittere* or *placuit ei ut lēgātōs mitteret* (B. G. 1, 34, 1).

d. Most verbs of *wishing* or *not wishing*, when used to express attitude toward performing an act *oneself*, take only the Infinitive (thus *volō*). But *recūsō* may also take the Subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*, or, if negated, with *quōminus* or *quā*; see 502, 3, b). (In Cicero's time only the *negative* form *nōn recūsō*, etc., takes the Infinitive.)

e. Several verbs of *determining*, *planning*, or *endeavoring* take either the Infinitive or the Volitive Subjunctive (502, 3, a). So *cōstituō, labōrō*.

f. The Participle *parātus* may take an Infinitive (thus in B. G. 1, 44, 4) just as any other part of *parō* may do. Later, the Participles of *suēscō, adsuēscō, adsuēfaciō*, and *soleō* (*suētus, adsuētus, adsuēfactus, solitus*) came to be used similarly with the Infinitive. For the large extension of this usage, see 598, 2, c).

g. Several verbs belong both to this class and to the following one; e.g. *placet, volō, cupiō, optō, studeō* (thus "I wish to do a thing," and "I wish *you* to do a thing").

### III

587. The Infinitive is used with certain Verbs expressing *attitude* or *position toward the performing of an act by another*.

Verbs of this class express the ideas of (1) *wishing* or *not wishing*; (2) *commanding* or *impelling*; (3) *permitting, prohibiting, or preventing*; (4) *teaching* or *accustoming*.<sup>1</sup>

*iter patefieri volēbat, he wished the road to be opened*; B. G. 3, 1, 3.

*Pompeius rem ad arma dēdūci studēbat, Pompey's aim was that the matter should be brought to the settlement of arms*; B. C. 1, 4, 4.

*Diviciācum vocārī iubet, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned*; B. G.

1, 19, 3.

*sī hic ōrdō placēre dēcrēverit tē ire in exsilium, if this body should decide it to be its pleasure that you should go into exile*; Cat. 1, 8, 20.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) *volō, mālō, nōlō, cupiō, optō, dēsīderō, studeō, placet*; (2) *iubeō, cōgō*; (3) *patior, permittō* (oftener with *ut*-clause), *sinō, prohibeō, impediō*; (4) *doceō, adsuēfaciō*.

Other verbs also are so used by Cicero or Caesar, but rarely, though freely by the poets; thus *expetō, moneō, admoneō, hortor, faciō* (*cause* or *force*), *suādeō, dēterreō* (in passive), *ēdoceō*.

Others are so used only in poetry and later prose; e.g. (2) *stimulō, poscō, tendō, foveō, invitō, impellō, suādeō, subigō*; (3) *patior*; (4) *mōnstrō* (*show how*), *ēruāliō*.

a. Since verbs used with this meaning imply that something is *wanted* or *desired*, many may also take a Volitive or Optative Substantive Clause (502, 3 and 511, 2).

b. *Imperō*, *command*, regularly takes a Volitive Substantive Clause; but in a few places (as Cat. 1, 11, 27; B. G. 7, 60, 3) it takes an Infinitive of passive form (either true passive or deponent).

*Iubeō*, *order*, and *vetō*, *forbid*, regularly take the Infinitive; but in a few places (as Verr. 2, 67, 16) they take a Volitive Substantive Clause.

c. Many other verbs, of the same general force as those of Class 3, take only the Volitive Substantive Clause (502, 3).

588. The Infinitive may also be used with the *Passive* of many verbs of this class, e.g. with *iubeor*, *prohibeor*, *vetor*.

*arma trādere iussi*, *being ordered to give up their arms*; B. G. 3, 21, 3.

#### IV

589. The Infinitive is used to express a *Statement* after Verbs or Phrases of *perceiving*, *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and the like.

These express or imply the ideas of (1) *seeing*, *feeling*, or *hearing*; (2) *saying*, *proving*, *conceding*, or *denying*; (3) *accusing* or *acquitting*; (4) *thinking*, *believing*, *suspecting*, or *doubting*; (5) *remembering* or *knowing*; (6) *learning* or *informing*; (7) *confessing* or *pretending*; (8) *swearing*, *threatening*, *hoping*, or *promising*.<sup>1</sup>

*biennium satis esse dūxērunt*, *thought two years to be enough*; B. G. 1, 3, 2.

*Caesar sēsē eōs cōnservātūrum (esse) dixit*, *Caesar said that he would leave them unharmed*; B. G. 2, 15, 1.

*memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium occisum (esse) ab Helvētiīs*, *he remembered that Lucius Cassius had been slain by the Helvetians*; B. G. 1, 7, 4.

*quis ignōrābat Q. Pompeium fēcisse foedus?* *who was ignorant that Quintus Pompey had made the treaty?* Rep. 3, 18, 28.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) *videō*, *sentiō*, *audiō*, *manifestum est*, *nōn mē fallit*; (2) *dīcō*, *dēclārō*, *narrō*, *affirmō*, *fāma est*, *dēmōnstrō*, *probō*, *vērūm* or *falsūm est*, *cōnstat*, *concēdō*, *negō*, *convenit*, *it is agreed that*, *sequitur*, *efficitur*, *it is made out that*; (3) *arguō*, *incūsō*, *inimulō*, *dēfendō*; (4) *putō*, *arbitror*, *opīnor*, *statuō* and *cōnstituō* (with Infinitive and Future Passive Participle), *cēnseō*, *existimō*, *iūdicō*, *crēdō*, *dūcō*, *fidō*, *diffidō*, *suspīcor*, *habēō* (in the sense of *understand*), *dubitō*, *mīrum est*, *vērī similē est*; (5) *recordor*, *memini*, etc., *memoriā tenēō*, *intellegō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*, *ignōrō*; (6) *discō*, *inveniō*, *cognōscō*, *ignōrō*, *reperiō*, *certior fiō*, *certiōrem faciō*, *nūntiō* and its compounds, *moneō* (*inform that*), *suādeō* and *persuādeō* (*persuade that*); (7) *fateor*, *cōfiteor*, *āngō*, *simulō*; (8) *iūrō*, *minor*, *spērō*, *spem habēō*, etc., *cōnfidō*, *cōnfīrmō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*.

Other verbs are found in poetry and later Latin, as *prōspiciō*, *repetō*, *mōnstrō*.

a. A number of verbs or phrases may take the Infinitive, if the idea of *saying* or *thinking* is implied, or the Subjunctive, if the idea of *resolving* or *directing* is implied (502, 3); and the two constructions may even be used together. Thus:

cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et . . . undique convenirent, *determined that it was best that all should return to their homes, and . . . should assemble from all sides*; B. G. 2, 10, 4.

590. 1. The Infinitive may also be used with the *Passive* of many verbs of this class, e.g. with *arguor*, *dīcor*, *existimor*, *iūdicor*, *putor*, *videor*. *centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur*, *are said to have a hundred cantons*; B. G. 4, 1, 4.

a. Passive forms compounded with a Participle are generally in the impersonal construction. Similarly *crēditur*, *it is believed*. But *videor* is preferred to *vidētur*.

cui Āpuliam attribūtā esse erat indicātum, *to whom it had been shown that Apulia had been assigned*; Cat. 3, 6, 14.

2. When the main verb is personal, all predicate forms must of course be in the Nominative, if the Subject is.

nōn minōrem laudem exercitus meritus (esse) vidēbātur, *the army seemed to have earned no less praise*; B. G. 1, 40, 5.

591. Such Statements, because made indirectly (see 533, 534, 1), are said to be in Indirect Discourse. *Every Principal Statement in Indirect Discourse is expressed by the Infinitive.*

a. A Rhetorical Question of Fact (236), since it is *equivalent to a Statement of Fact*, is expressed in Indirect Discourse by an Infinitive.

num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse? *could he (he asked) put aside the memory of recent wrongs also?* B. G. 1, 14, 3. (The original num possum? *can I?* really meant nōn possum, *I cannot.*)

NOTE. This usage is confined to questions which originally were in the first or third person.

δ. For the Conclusion Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, see 581, δ, 1).

c. For the occasional Infinitive in a subordinate Indirect Statement, see 535, 1, δ.

d. For the Infinitive after a Relative or quam, see 535, 1, c.

e. For the Infinitive (instead of a Participle) with verbs of seeing or representing, see 605, 1.

592. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse regularly has a Subject; but this is sometimes omitted, especially if it is a Reflexive Pronoun. The omission of *is* is rare.

ignōscere imprudentiae dixit, *said that he forgave their indiscretion*; B. G. 4, 27, 5.

a. When the Subject is thus omitted, the poets sometimes make a Predicate Adjective or Participle agree with the Subject of the main verb.

cēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostis, *saw that he had fallen into the midst of the enemy*; Aen. 2, 377.

**593. Tenses.** The tenses in Indirect Discourse have their regular meanings, as explained in 472, the Perfect Infinitive representing a *relatively past* time, the Present a *relatively present* time, the Future a *relatively future* time. For examples, see 472, *a* and *b*.

*a.* Verbs or phrases of *promising, hoping, swearing, or threatening* look forward to the future, and therefore generally take the Future Infinitive or *posse*, with a Subject Accusative. Yet they sometimes take the Present Infinitive, without a Subject (as generally in English).

*spērat adulescēns diū sē victūrum, the young man hopes to live a long life* (hopes that he will live . . .); Sen. 19, 68.

*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope to be able to master the whole of Gaul*; B. G. 1, 3, 8.

*lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare, ambassadors come, to promise to give hostages*; B. G. 4, 21, 5.

*b.* Verbs of *remembering* may take the Present Infinitive of a personal experience (mere act, without tense-force).

*meministine mē dicere . . . ? do you remember my saying . . . ?* Cat. 1, 3, 7.

## V

**594.** The Infinitive is used with Verbs or Phrases of *feeling*.<sup>1</sup>

These convey the ideas of (1) *pride or wonder*; (2) *joy or grief*; (3) *indignation, complaint, or resignation*.<sup>2</sup>

*mīrābar crēdī, I was surprised that it was believed*; Mil. 24, 65.

*exercitum hiemāre in Galliā molestē ferēbant, took it ill that the army was wintering in Gaul*; B. G. 2, 1, 3.

*a.* The poets and later prose writers apply the construction also to *adjectives* of feeling, e.g. *laetus, maestus, contentus*.

*b.* With most of these verbs and phrases the Infinitive is in origin an Accusative of Respect (e.g. with *doleō, mourn with reference to the fact that*; cf. *id maesta est*, 388, *a*). With others, it is a direct Object or Subject (e.g. it is an Object with *molestē ferō*).

*c.* Most of these verbs and phrases may also take a Substantive *quod*-Clause (555).

<sup>1</sup> Such statements are often said to be in Indirect Discourse.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *glōrior, miror, admiror, dēmīror*; (2) *laetor, gaudeō, doleō, lūgeō, maereō; acerbē, graviter, molestē*, etc., with *ferō*; (3) *indignor, expostulō, fremō, queror, facile patior*.

Also, in poetry and later prose, (1) *laudor* (*be praised for*), (2) *gemō, dēlector*; (3) *tolerō* (*put up with*), etc.

## VI. Historical Infinitive

**595.** In lively narration, the Infinitive may be used in place of an *Indicative, Perfect*<sup>1</sup> or *Imperfect*. Its Subject is in the Nominative.

*hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, at a given signal the enemy rushed down from every side; B. G. 3, 4, 1. (Aoristic.)*

*interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, meanwhile Caesar was dunning the Haedui daily for the corn; B. G. 1, 16, 1. (Situation.)*

*sōlam nam perfidus ille tē colere, for the traitor used to care for you alone; Aen. 4, 421. (Habitual Action.)*

## VII. Exclamatory Infinitive

**596.** The Infinitive, generally with a Subject Accusative, may be used in Exclamations of *surprise, indignation, or regret*. The particle *-ne* is sometimes attached to the emphatic word.

*hoc nōn vidēre! the idea of not seeing this! Fin. 4, 27, 76.*

*mēne inceptō dēsistere! I to give up my purpose! Aen. 1, 37.*

## VIII. As Subject, Predicate, or Object, of Certain Verbs

**597. 1.** The Infinitive is also used, in all periods,

a) As the Subject, Predicate, or Object of Verbs meaning (1) to *be*, (2) to *be fall*, or (3) to *place*.<sup>2</sup>

*vīvere est cōgitāre, to live is to think; Tusc. 5, 38, 111. (= a definition.)*

*nōn cadit invidēre in sapientem, it does not happen to the wise man to feel envy; Tusc. 3, 10, 21.*

*beātō vīvere vōs in voluptātē pōnitīs, you base the happy life on pleasure; Fin. 2, 27, 86.*

b) As an Appositive.

*sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, Catilinam mortē multārī, if I thought this the best course to take, (namely) that Catiline should be put to death; Cat. 1, 12, 29.*

c) After *inter* in the phrase *interest inter*.

*inter valere et aegrōtare nihil interesse, (said) that there was no difference between being well and being ill; Fin. 2, 13, 43.*

2. The Infinitive is occasionally used with *habēō*.

*habēō dicere quem dēīcerit, I can tell whom he cast down; Rosc. Am. 33, 100.*  
*nihil habēō scribere, I have nothing to write; Att. 2, 22, 6.*

<sup>1</sup> With aoristic force.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *est*; (2) *cadit, accidit, contingit*; (3) *pōnō, posuit, situm est*.

## INDICATIVE

quibus vōs absentibus cōsultare dēbētis, *for whose interests you ought to consult in their absence*; Pomp. 7, 18. (It is an actual obligation, open to fulfilment.)

quōs ferrō trucidārī oportēbat, *who ought to be butchered with the sword*; Cat. 1, 4, 9. (It is an actual obligation, unfulfilled.)

melius fuerat prōmissum patris nōn esse servātum, *it would have been better that the father's promise should not be kept*; Off. 3, 25, 94. (It actually was, before the time thought of, the better thing.)

dēlērī tōtus exercitus potuit, sī fugientes persecūtī victōrēs essent, *the entire army might have been destroyed, if the victors had followed up the fugitives*; Liv. 32, 12, 6. (It was possible to destroy them, but it was not done.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

haec sī tēcūm patria loquātur, nōne impetrāre dēbeat? *if your country should thus speak with you, ought she not to prevail?* Cat. 1, 8, 19. (Thus English. The Latin idea is, *Would it not in that case be an obligation?*)

quae sī diceret, tamen ignōscī nōn oportēret, *if he said this, still it would not be right to forgive*; Verr. 1, 27, 70. (It would in that case still be an obligation.)

nōne melius multō fuisset quīetam aetātem trādūcere, *would it not have been much better to spend my life in quiet?* Sen. 23, 82. (It would have been better, in the case supposed in the previous sentence.)

nisi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent, *if the soldiers had not been tired out, the entire force of the enemy might have been destroyed*; B. G. 7, 88, 6. (It would in that case have been possible to destroy them.)

NOTE 1. The Indicative may be used, even when accompanied by a Condition Contrary to Fact, if the Conclusion is true *independently* of the Condition.

quodsi Rōmae Cn. Pompeius privātus esset, tamen is erat dēligendus, *now if Gnaeus Pompey were in Rome, and a private citizen, still he would be the right person to choose*; Pomp. 17, 50. (Is the right person as it is, and would be even in the supposed case.)

NOTE 2. Constructions corresponding to the above Indicative types of course occur in Indirect Discourse also.

sī alicuius iniūriae sibi cōscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre, (he said that) *if he had been conscious of any wrongdoing, it would have been easy to be on his guard*: B. G. 1, 14, 2. (He said: "sī cōscius fuissem, nōn fuit difficile." Cf. facile fuit quattuor duplicāre, *it would have been easy to double the four*; Div. 2, 18, 42.)

NOTE 3. The poets occasionally *force* the Indicative construction, using it as the equivalent of a Conclusion (sometimes even of a Condition) Contrary to Fact.

sī nōn alium iactāret odōrem, laurus erat, *if it did not cast a different perfume, it were (would be) a laurel tree*; Georg. 2, 132. Similarly Castor erās, Mart. 5, 38, 6.



b) With certain adjectives with *est* (or *sunt*),<sup>1</sup> the Present Indicative is the *fixed idiom* in Ciceronian Latin, as against the Present Subjunctive, which is not used.

*difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam, it would be difficult to maintain this in the case of all* (Latin, "it is difficult"), *but still it is clear what I am to answer*; Arch. 7, 15.

4. A Condition may itself form a Conclusion for another Condition.  
*moriar si magis gaudeam, si id mihi accidisset, may I die if I should take more pleasure if it had happened to myself*; Att. 8, 6, 3.

5. A Condition with *si* or *o si* may express a *Virtual Wish*.<sup>2</sup>  
*si nunc se ille aureus ramus ostendat, if now that golden branch would show itself (= would that . . .)*; Aen. 6, 187.

6. A Condition with *si modo*, *if only*, is equivalent to a *Proviso* (529). Either mood may be used, according to the feeling.

*opprimi dico patientiam, si modo est aliqua patientia, I assert that (pain) is overcome by endurance, if only there is some endurance*; Tusc. 2, 14, 33.

7. *Si* is sometimes used with the force of *etsi*, *even if* (concessive).  
*non possum, si cupiam, I cannot, even if I should desire*; Verr. 4, 40, 88.

8. *Etsi*, *tametsi*, and *etiamsi*, *even if*, are often equivalent to *although* (*Virtual Adversative Clause*). Either mood may be used, according to the feeling.

*etsi nondum eorum consilium cognoverat, tamen suspicabatur, though (even if) he did not yet know their plan, still he was suspicious*; B. G. 4, 31, 1.

9. *Si quidem*,<sup>3</sup> *if indeed*, gains the force of *for* or *since* (*Virtual Clause of Reason*).

*in agris erant tum senatores, si quidem aranti L. Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum, there were senators living in the country at that time; for (if indeed) the news that he had been appointed dictator was brought to Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus while ploughing*; Sen. 15, 56.

10. A Definition may be expressed by an Indicative Clause with *qui* or *cum* (originally simply a generalizing clause; see 576-579).

*vir bonus est is qui prodest quibus potest, nocet nemini, the good man is the one who helps whom he can, and harms nobody*; Off. 3, 15, 64.

*is est triumphus verus, cum bene de re publica meritis testimonium a consensu civitatis datur, that is the true triumph, when those who have deserved well of the state receive evidence of this from the unanimous feeling of its citizens*; Phil. 14, 5, 13.

<sup>1</sup> Thus *longum est, facile est*.

<sup>2</sup> That is, a wish in force, though not in form.

<sup>3</sup> Also written *siquidem*. (In later poetry, sometimes *siquidem*.)

## THE INFINITIVE

## 583. SYNOPSIS OF THE PRINCIPAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE

- I. With Adjectives with *est*, and Verbs or Phrases of similar force, as in "it is base to . . ." (585).
- II. With Verbs or Phrases expressing attitude or position with reference to performing an act, as in "I wish to" (586).
- III. With Verbs or Phrases expressing attitude or position toward the performing of an act by another, as in "I wish *you* to" (587).
- IV. With Verbs or Phrases of perceiving, saying, thinking, or knowing, as in "I see that you . . ." (589).
- V. With Verbs or Phrases of feeling, as in "I am glad that you . . ." (594).
- VI. Historical Infinitive (595).
- VII. Exclamatory Infinitive (596).
- VIII. As Subject, Predicate, or Object of certain Verbs, or as an Appositive (597, 1).

584. The Infinitive is in effect a Verbal Noun, capable of standing in various case-relations.

As a Noun, it may have a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun agreeing with it (58, 3; example under 597, 1, *b*).

As a Verb, it may govern Cases, and may itself be modified by an Adverb.

*a.* The negative is *nōn*.

*b.* For the general forces of the tenses, see 472.

*c.* According to the sense intended, the Infinitive may be Active or Passive; it may, or may not, be attended by a Subject Accusative;<sup>1</sup> and, if Passive, it may, or may not, be attended by a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

*d.* In most of its uses, the Infinitive stands to the verb or phrase on which it depends in the Relation of Subject, or Object, or Accusative of Respect. In such examples, it is of Substantive nature (cf. 238).

*e.* In the Future Active and the Perfect Passive Indicative, the auxiliary *esse* is often omitted (164, 7).

---

<sup>1</sup> A classification of the Infinitive on the basis of its having or not having a Subject Accusative is unserviceable, since many verbs may take either construction *without essential difference of meaning*. Thus one may say either *cupiō clēmēns esse* or *cupiō mē esse clēmēntem*.

## A. PROSE USES OF THE INFINITIVE IN ALL PERIODS

## I

585. The Infinitive is used with *Adjectives with est*, and Verbs and Phrases of similar force.<sup>1</sup>

These expressions represent an action as (1) *advantageous or important*; (2) *necessary or obligatory*; (3) *customary or permissible*; (4) *seemly or shameful, pleasant or tiresome, easy or difficult*,<sup>2</sup> etc., etc.

*commodissimum visum est mittere, it seemed most advantageous to send*; B. G. I, 47, 4.

*tempus est abire mē, it is time that I should go* (to go is seasonable); Tusc. I, 41, 99.

a. In many phrases, this Infinitive may either have, or not have, a Subject Accusative; thus *tempus est abire* or *tempus est nōs abire*.

b. When the Subject of the Infinitive is indefinite (*one, a man, people*), it is not expressed. But a Predicate Noun or Adjective may nevertheless be used, *belonging in thought* to the indefinite Subject.

*nōn esse cupidum pecūnia est, not to be covetous is wealth*; Par. 6, 3, 51.

c. When *licet*, *expedit*, etc., are followed by a Dative and Infinitive, the Predicate of the Infinitive may be in the Accusative, or it may be attracted into the Dative.

*civī Rōmānō licet esse Gādītānum, it is permitted to a Roman citizen to be a citizen of Cadix*; Balb. 12, 20.

*mihi neglegenti esse nōn licet, I am not allowed to be careless*; Att. I, 17, 6.

d. Such an Infinitive sometimes has a Neuter Adjective or Pronoun in agreement (cf. 58, 3).

*cum vivere ipsum turpe sit, when merely to be alive is disgraceful*; Att. I, 3, 28, 2.

e. Verbs or phrases of this class suggesting that the action is *wanted* or *urged* may also take a Subjunctive Substantive Clause. So especially *interest*, *rēfert*, *oportet*, *licet*, *necesse*, *opus*, *ūsus*, or *tempus est*, *melius* or *optimum est*. Thus one may say either *tempus est nōs abire* or *tempus est ut abeamus*.

f. Many verbs and phrases of this class *shade into* meanings belonging to the second or the third class. So *tempus est abire* suggests the meaning *I am inclined to go*.

<sup>1</sup> Thus *nefās est*, *it is wrong*, has the same force as *nefāstum est*; *mōs est*, *it is customary*, as *ūsītātum est*; *tempus est*, *it is time*, as *tempestivum est*.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *iuvat*, *expedit*, *ūtile est*, *conducit*, *prōdest*, *rēfert*, *interest*; (2) *necesse* or *necessārium est*, *opus* or *ūsus est*, *tempus est* (*it is seasonable to*, *it is high time that*), *oportet*, *convenit*, *iūs* or *iūstum est*, *fās*, *nefās*, or *nefārium est*, *pār*, *rēctum*, *aequum*, *inīquum*, etc., *est*; (3) *mōs* (*mōris*) or *cōnsuetūdō* (*cōnsuetūdinis*) or *ūsītātum est*, *meum* (*tuum*, etc.) *est*, *licet*; (4) *deceat* or *dēdeceat*, *convenit*, *laus est*, *turpe* or *praeclārum est*, *scelus* or *facinus est*, *displicet* (*is disagreeable*), *dēlectat*, *taedet*, *paenitet*, *puget*, *piget*, *rēfert*, *interest*, *iūcundum*, *grātum*, *grave*, *molestum*, *miserum*, *longum est*, *facile* or *difficile est*, *satis* or *satius est*, *optābile*, *bonum* or *malum est*, *vidētur* (*seems best*), *praestat* (*is better*), *est* or *rēs est* with the Genitive (*is the part of*), *propriū est* (*is peculiar to*), etc.

Similarly other words in later Latin. Thus *vincit* (*is better*).

## II

**586.** The Infinitive is used with Verbs or Phrases expressing *attitude* or *position with reference to performing an act*.

The personal verbs of this class express the ideas of (1) *wishing* or *not wishing*; (2) *determining, planning, or endeavoring*; (3) *beginning* or *omitting, persevering* or *ceasing*; (4) *hastening* or *delaying*; (5) *daring, hesitating, fearing*; (6) *knowing how* or *learning how*; (7) *remembering* to or *seeming* to; (8) *being accustomed to, having the power to, or being under obligation to*.<sup>1</sup>

The impersonal verbs or phrases express *determination, inclination, or whim*.<sup>2</sup>

**maiori partī placuit castra dēfendere**, *the majority wanted to defend the camp* (to defend it was pleasing to them); B. G. 3, 3, 4.

**ad hunc lēgātōs mittī placet?** *do we want ambassadors to be sent to such a man as this?* (= *mittere placet?*) Phil. 5, 9, 25.

**eās nātiōnēs adire volēbat**, *he wished to visit those tribes*; B. G. 3, 7, 1.

**nōlite dubitare**, *pray, do not hesitate* (be unwilling to . . .); Pomp. 23,

68. (Courteous Prohibition. See 501, a, 2.)

**mātūrāt proficiscī**, *he makes haste to set out*; B. G. 1, 7, 1.

**dēbere sē suspicārī**, *he was bound (he said) to suspect*; B. G. 1, 44, 10.

a. With most of the personal verbs of this class, the Infinitive *completely fills out* the meaning (as in **volō ire**, *I wish to go*). Hence it is called the Complementary Infinitive.

b. Some of these verbs may either have, or not have, the Reflexive Pronoun as Subject Accusative.

If such a Subject Accusative is used, a Predicate Noun or Adjective must of course be in the Accusative; if not, it must go back to

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) **volō, mālō, nōlō, cupiō, optō, dēsiderō, sustineō, recūsō**; (2) **statuō, cōstituō, instituō, dēcernō, animum iudicō, cōsiliū capiō, cōgitō, meditor, studeō, in animō habēō, dēstinō, parō, cōnor, nitor, mōlior, laborō, temptō**; (3) **coepī, incipiō, mittō and omittō, neglegō, pergō, perseverō, instō, dēsinō, dēsisitō, cessō**; (4) **festinō, properō, mātūrō, contendō, moror, cūctor**; (5) **audeō, dubitō, vereor, metuō, timeō**; (6) **sciō, nesciō, discō**; (7) **meminī, recordor, obliviscor, videor** (*seem*); (8) **soleō, adsuēscō, cōnsuēscō, possum, queō, nequeō, dēbeō**.

Also, in poetic and later Latin (1) **ārdeō, dignor, gaudeō, laetor**; (2) **poscō**; (3) **sūmō**; (4) **praecipitō**; (5) **horreō**; (8) **sufficiō, valeō**, etc.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. **certum, dēstinātum, cōsiliū** or **in animō est, venit in mentem, placet, iuvat, libet**.

Also, in poetic and later Latin, **cūra** or **cūrae est, est animus, fert animus, amor** or **cupido est, subit ira, mēns est, spē est accēnsa**, etc.

the Subject of the main verb for its agreement (generally therefore in the Nominative).

*grātum sē vidērī studet, aims to seem grateful*; Off. 2, 20, 70.

*flerī studēbam doctior, I aimed to become wiser*; Am. 1, 1.

c. Impersonal verbs or phrases of this class suggesting that the action is *wanted* or *urged* may also take a Volitive Substantive Clause (502, 3, a). Thus one may say either *placuit ei lēgātōs mittere* or *placuit ei ut lēgātōs mitteret* (B. G. 1, 34, 1).

d. Most verbs of *wishing* or *not wishing*, when used to express attitude toward performing an act *oneself*, take only the Infinitive (thus *volō*). But *recūsō* may also take the Subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus*, or, if negated, with *quōminus* or *quā*; see 502, 3, d). (In Cicero's time only the *negative* form *nōn recūsō*, etc., takes the Infinitive.)

e. Several verbs of *determining*, *planning*, or *endeavoring* take either the Infinitive or the Volitive Subjunctive (502, 3, a). So *cōstituō, labōrō*.

f. The Participle *parātus* may take an Infinitive (thus in B. G. 1, 44, 4) just as any other part of *parō* may do. Later, the Participles of *suēscō, adsuēscō, adsuēficiō*, and *soleō* (*suētus, adsuētus, adsuēfactus, solitus*) came to be used similarly with the Infinitive. For the large extension of this usage, see 598, 2, c).

g. Several verbs belong both to this class and to the following one; e.g. *placet, volō, cupiō, optō, studeō* (thus "I wish to do a thing," and "I wish *you* to do a thing").

### III

587. The Infinitive is used with certain Verbs expressing *attitude* or *position toward the performing of an act by another*.

Verbs of this class express the ideas of (1) *wishing* or *not wishing*; (2) *commanding* or *impelling*; (3) *permitting, prohibiting, or preventing*; (4) *teaching* or *accustoming*.<sup>1</sup>

*iter patefieri volēbat, he wished the road to be opened*; B. G. 3, 1, 3.

*Pompeius rem ad arma dēdūci studēbat, Pompey's aim was that the matter should be brought to the settlement of arms*; B. C. 1, 4, 4.

*Dīviciācum vocāri iubet, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned*; B. G.

1, 19, 3.

*sī hic ōrdō placēre dēcrēverit tē ire in exsilium, if this body should decide it to be its pleasure that you should go into exile*; Cat. 1, 8, 20.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) *volō, mālō, nōlō, cupiō, optō, dēsiderō, studeō, placet*; (2) *iubeō, cōgō*; (3) *pattior, permittō* (oftener with *ut*-clause), *sinō, prohibeō, impediō*; (4) *doceō, adsuēficiō*.

Other verbs also are so used by Cicero or Caesar, but rarely, though freely by the poets; thus *expetō, moneō, admonēō, hortor, faciō* (*cause* or *force*), *suādeō, dēterreō* (in passive), *ēdoceō*.

Others are so used only in poetry and later prose; e.g. (2) *stimulō, poscō, tendō, foveō, invitō, impellō, suādeō, subigō*; (3) *pattior*; (4) *mōnstrō* (*show how*), *ērudīō*.

a. Since verbs used with this meaning imply that something is *wanted* or *desired*, many may also take a Volitive or Optative Substantive Clause (502, 3 and 511, 2).

b. *Imperō*, *command*, regularly takes a Volitive Substantive Clause; but in a few places (as Cat. 1, 11, 27; B. G. 7, 60, 3) it takes an Infinitive of passive form (either true passive or deponent).

*Iubeō*, *order*, and *vetō*, *forbid*, regularly take the Infinitive; but in a few places (as Verr. 2, 67, 16) they take a Volitive Substantive Clause.

c. Many other verbs, of the same general force as those of Class 3, take only the Volitive Substantive Clause (502, 3).

**588.** The Infinitive may also be used with the *Passive* of many verbs of this class, e.g. with *iubeor*, *prohibeor*, *vetor*.

*arma tradere iussī*, *being ordered to give up their arms*; B. G. 3, 21, 3.

#### IV

**589.** The Infinitive is used to express a *Statement* after Verbs or Phrases of *perceiving*, *saying*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and the like.

These express or imply the ideas of (1) *seeing*, *feeling*, or *hearing*; (2) *saying*, *proving*, *conceding*, or *denying*; (3) *accusing* or *acquitting*; (4) *thinking*, *believing*, *suspecting*, or *doubting*; (5) *remembering* or *knowing*; (6) *learning* or *informing*; (7) *confessing* or *pretending*; (8) *swearing*, *threatening*, *hoping*, or *promising*.<sup>1</sup>

*biennium satis esse dūxērunt*, *thought two years to be enough*; B. G. 1, 3, 2.

*Caesar sēsē eōs cōservātūrum (esse) dixit*, *Caesar said that he would leave them unharmed*; B. G. 2, 15, 1.

*memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium occisum (esse) ab Helvētiīs*, *he remembered that Lucius Cassius had been slain by the Helvetians*; B. G. 1, 7, 4.

*quis ignōrābat Q. Pompeium fēcisse foedus?* *who was ignorant that Quintus Pompey had made the treaty?* Rep. 3, 18, 28.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. (1) *videō*, *sentiō*, *audiō*, *manifestum est*, *nōn mē fallit*; (2) *dicō*, *dēclārō*, *nārro*, *adfirmō*, *fāma est*, *dēmōnstrō*, *probō*, *vērūm* or *falsūm est*, *cōstat*, *concēdō*, *negō*, *convenit*, *it is agreed that*, *sequitur*, *efficitur*, *it is made out that*; (3) *arguō*, *incūsō*, *inimulō*, *dēfendō*; (4) *putō*, *arbitror*, *opinor*, *statuō* and *cōstituō* (with Infinitive and Future Passive Participle), *cōseō*, *existimō*, *iūdicō*, *crēdō*, *dicō*, *fidō*, *diffidō*, *suspīcor*, *habēō* (in the sense of *understand*), *dubitō*, *mīrum est*, *vērī similē est*; (5) *recordor*, *meminī*, etc., *memoriā tenēō*, *intellegō*, *sciō*, *nesciō*, *ignōrō*; (6) *discō*, *inveniō*, *cognōscō*, *ignōrō*, *reperiō*, *certior fiō*, *certiōrem faciō*, *nūntiō* and its compounds, *moneō* (*inform that*), *suādeō* and *persuādeō* (*persuade that*); (7) *fateor*, *cōfiteor*, *finō*, *simulō*; (8) *iūrō*, *minor*, *spērō*, *spem habēō*, etc., *cōnfidō*, *cōnfirmō*, *polliceor*, *prōmittō*.

Other verbs are found in poetry and later Latin, as *prōspiciō*, *repetō*, *mōnstrō*.

a. A number of verbs or phrases may take the Infinitive, if the idea of *saying* or *thinking* is implied, or the Subjunctive, if the idea of *resolving* or *directing* is implied (502, 3); and the two constructions may even be used together. Thus:

*cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et . . . undique convenient, determined that it was best that all should return to their homes, and . . . should assemble from all sides*; B. G. 2, 10, 4.

590. 1. The Infinitive may also be used with the *Passive* of many verbs of this class, e.g. with *arguor, dicor, existimor, iūdicor, putor, videor*. *centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, are said to have a hundred cantons*; B. G. 4, 1, 4.

a. Passive forms compounded with a Participle are generally in the impersonal construction. Similarly *crēditur, it is believed*. But *videor* is preferred to *vidētur*.

*cui Āpuliam attribūtā esse erat indicātum, to whom it had been shown that Apulia had been assigned*; Cat. 3, 6, 14.

2. When the main verb is personal, all predicate forms must of course be in the Nominative, if the Subject is.

*nōn minōrem laudem exercitus meritus (esse) vidēbātur, the army seemed to have earned no less praise*; B. G. 1, 40, 5.

591. Such Statements, because made indirectly (see 533, 534, 1), are said to be in Indirect Discourse. *Every Principal Statement in Indirect Discourse is expressed by the Infinitive*.

a. A Rhetorical Question of Fact (235), since it is *equivalent to a Statement of Fact*, is expressed in Indirect Discourse by an Infinitive.

*num etiam recentium iniuriarum memoriam dēpōnere posse? could he (he asked) put aside the memory of recent wrongs also? B. G. 1, 14, 3. (The original num possum? can I? really meant nōn possum, I cannot.)*

NOTE. This usage is confined to questions which originally were in the first or third person.

b. For the Conclusion Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, see 581, b, 1).

c. For the occasional Infinitive in a subordinate Indirect Statement, see 535, 1, b.

d. For the Infinitive after a Relative or *quam*, see 535, 1, c.

e. For the Infinitive (instead of a Participle) with verbs of seeing or representing, see 605, 1.

592. The Infinitive in Indirect Discourse regularly has a Subject; but this is sometimes omitted, especially if it is a Reflexive Pronoun. The omission of *is* is rare.

*ignōscere imprudentiae dixit, said that he forgave their indiscretion*; B. G. 4, 27, 5.

a. When the Subject is thus omitted, the poets sometimes make a Predicate Adjective or Participle agree with the Subject of the main verb.

*ēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostis, saw that he had fallen into the midst of the enemy*; Aen. 2, 377.

**593. Tenses.** The tenses in Indirect Discourse have their regular meanings, as explained in 472, the Perfect Infinitive representing a *relatively past* time, the Present a *relatively present* time, the Future a *relatively future* time. For examples, see 472, *a* and *b*.

*a.* Verbs or phrases of *promising, hoping, swearing, or threatening* look forward to the future, and therefore generally take the Future Infinitive or *posse*, with a Subject Accusative. Yet they sometimes take the Present Infinitive, without a Subject (as generally in English).

*spērat adulēscēns diū sē victūrum, the young man hopes to live a long life* (hopes that he will live . . .); Sen. 19, 68.

*tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant, they hope to be able to master the whole of Gaul*; B. G. 1, 3, 8.

*lēgātī veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare, ambassadors come, to promise to give hostages*; B. G. 4, 21, 5.

*b.* Verbs of *remembering* may take the Present Infinitive of a personal experience (mere act, without tense-force).

*meministine mē dicere . . . ? do you remember my saying . . . ?* Cat. 1, 3, 7.

## V

**594.** The Infinitive is used with Verbs or Phrases of *feeling*.<sup>1</sup>

These convey the ideas of (1) *pride or wonder*; (2) *joy or grief*; (3) *indignation, complaint, or resignation*.<sup>2</sup>

*mirābar crēdī, I was surprised that it was believed*; Mil. 24, 65.

*exercitum hiemāre in Galliā molestē ferēbant, took it ill that the army was wintering in Gaul*; B. G. 2, 1, 3.

*a.* The poets and later prose writers apply the construction also to *adjectives* of feeling, e.g. *laetus, maestus, contentus*.

*b.* With most of these verbs and phrases the Infinitive is in origin an Accusative of Respect (e.g. with *doleō*, *mourn with reference to the fact that*; cf. *id maesta est*, 388, *a*). With others, it is a direct Object or Subject (e.g. it is an Object with *molestē ferō*).

*c.* Most of these verbs and phrases may also take a Substantive *quod*-Clause (555).

<sup>1</sup> Such statements are often said to be in Indirect Discourse.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *glōrior, miror, admīror, dēmīror*; (2) *laetor, gaudeō, doleō, lūgeō, maereō; acerbē, graviter, molestē*, etc., with *ferō*; (3) *indignor, expostulō, fremō, queror, facile patior*.

Also, in poetry and later prose, (1) *laudō* (*be praised for*), (2) *gemō, dēlector*; (3) *tolerō* (*put up with*), etc.



## VI. Historical Infinitive

**595.** In lively narration, the Infinitive may be used in place of an *Indicative, Perfect*<sup>1</sup> or *Imperfect*. Its Subject is in the Nominative.

*hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, at a given signal the enemy rushed down from every side; B. G. 3, 4, 1. (Aoristic.)*  
*interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, meanwhile Caesar was dunning the Haedui daily for the corn; B. G. 1, 16, 1. (Situation.)*  
*sōlam nam perfidus ille tē colere, for the traitor used to care for you alone; Aen. 4, 421. (Habitual Action.)*

## VII. Exclamatory Infinitive

**596.** The Infinitive, generally with a Subject Accusative, may be used in Exclamations of *surprise, indignation, or regret*. The particle *-ne* is sometimes attached to the emphatic word.

*hoc nōn vidēre! the idea of not seeing this! Fin. 4, 27, 76.*

*mēne inceptō dēsistere! I to give up my purpose! Aen. 1, 37.*

## VIII. As Subject, Predicate, or Object, of Certain Verbs

**597. 1.** The Infinitive is also used, in all periods,

a) As the Subject, Predicate, or Object of Verbs meaning (1) to *be*, (2) to *befall*, or (3) to *place*.<sup>2</sup>

*vivere est cōgitāre, to live is to think; Tusc. 5, 38, 111. (= a definition.)*  
*nōn cadit invidēre in sapientem, it does not happen to the wise man to feel envy; Tusc. 3, 10, 21.*

*beātē vivere vōs in voluptātē pōnitis, you base the happy life on pleasure; Fin. 2, 27, 86.*

b) As an Appositive.

*sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, Catilinam morte multāri, if I thought this the best course to take, (namely) that Catiline should be put to death; Cat. 1, 12, 29.*

c) After *inter* in the phrase *interest inter*.

*inter valere et aegrōtare nihil interesse, (said) that there was no difference between being well and being ill; Fin. 2, 13, 43.*

2. The Infinitive is occasionally used with *habēō*.

*habēō dicere quem dēiēcērit, I can tell whom he cast down; Rosc. Am. 33, 100.*  
*nihil habēō scribere, I have nothing to write; Att. 2, 22, 6.*

<sup>1</sup> With aoristic force.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. (1) *est*; (2) *cadit, accidit, contingit*; (3) *pōnō, positum or situm est*.

## B. POETICAL AND LATER PROSE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

598. 1. The poets of all periods use the Infinitive freely to express Purpose :

a) With Verbs of *motion*.<sup>1</sup>

nōn Libycōs populāre penātis vēnimus, *we have not come to sack the homes of Libya*; Aen. 1, 527. (Populāre = ut populēmus.)

b) With Verbs of *giving* or *undertaking*.<sup>2</sup>

lōricam dōnat habēre virō, *he gave to the hero a breastplate to possess*; Aen. 5, 260. (Habēre = habendam, 605, 2.)

2. The later poets use the Infinitive freely :

a) As the Object of Verbs of *granting* or *taking away*.<sup>3</sup>

tū dās epulis accumbere dīvom, *thou grantest to recline at the banquets of the gods*; Aen. 1, 79.

b) In place of a Subjunctive Substantive Clause.

celerāre fugam suādet (for ut celeret suādet), *urges her to speed her flight*; Aen. 1, 357.

dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur, *urges that it be brought within the walls*; Aen. 2, 33.

c) With Adjectives, or Participles of adjective force.<sup>4</sup> The later prose-writers follow to a large extent.

certa morī, *determined to die*; Aen. 4, 564.

sī crēdere dignum est, *if the story is worthy of belief*; Aen. 6, 173.

legī dignus, *worthy to be read*; Quintil. 10, 1, 96.

praestantior ciēre, *more skilful in arousing*; Aen. 6, 165.

d) With Nouns denoting *attention* or *opportunity*.

dum praecipitāre potestās, *while there is opportunity for flight*; Aen. 4, 565.

3. The later writers, especially the poets, use the Infinitive occasionally as a mere Substantive depending upon a Verb, or in the Accusative after certain prepositions.

postquam sapere urbī vēnit nostrum, *after this philosophizing of ours came to town*; Persius 6, 38. Cf. habēre ēdocuit, Sall. Cat. 10, 4.

Tityon cernere erat, *one could see Tityos* (it was possible to see); Aen. 6, 595.  
nīl praeter plōrāre, *nothing except to weep*; Sat. 2, 5, 69.

<sup>1</sup> E.g. eō, veniō, abigō.

<sup>2</sup> E.g. dō, dōnō, trādō, ministrō, sūmō.

<sup>3</sup> E.g. dō, tribuō, concēdō, reddō, adimō, ēripīō, perdō.

<sup>4</sup> E.g. doctus, doctior, indoctus, docilis, indocilis; callidus, sollers, sagāx, cantus, prūdēns, peritus, blandus; patiēns, impatiēns; solitus, insolitus; audāx, timidus; cupidus, certus, sciēns, nescius; dignus, aptus, idōneus; impiger, piger, celer, sēgnis; bonus, emicāx, ūtilis, pār, minor; potēns, impotēns.

## THE PARTICIPLE

**599.** The Participle is a Verbal Adjective.

*a.* As an Adjective, it belongs to a Substantive, and agrees with it (**320**).

*b.* As a Verb, it expresses Voice, governs Cases, and may be modified by an Adverb. It also expresses tense-ideas, but only those of completion, progress, or futurity (action *prior*, *contemporaneous*, or *yet to come*; see **473** and **600**).

*c.* The negative is *nōn*.

## Ordinary Tense-Meanings of the Participles

**600.** The ordinary Tense-Meanings of the Participles are as follows :

1. The Present Active Participle represents an act as *going on* at the time of the main verb.

*Cotta pugnāns occīditur*, *Cotta is killed (while) fighting*; B. G. 5, 37, 5.

*Sp. Maelium novis rēbus studentem occīdit*, *killed Spurius Maelius (who was) plotting revolution*; Cat. 1, 1, 3.

*a.* For the use to express attempted action, and the use to express action already for some time in progress, see **484** and **485**.

2. The Future Active Participle represents an act as *intended* or *impending* at the time of the main verb.

*sed nōn est itūrus*, *but he does not intend to go* (is not intending to go);

Cat. 2, 7, 15.

*a.* In Ciceronian prose, the Future Active Participle is almost wholly confined to the Periphrastic Conjugation, as above.

NOTE. The only exceptions are the occasional use of *ventūrus* and *futūrus* as Adjectives (**248**), and a single example expressing Purpose.

3. The Future Passive Participle represents an act as, at the time of the main verb, *necessary*, *proper*, or *intended*.

*aciēs erat instruenda*, *the line of battle had to be formed* (was to be formed); B. G. 2, 20, 1.

*quod multō magis est admirandum*, *which is much more to be wondered at*; Cat. 1, 3, 7.

a. The Impersonal Future Passive Participle with *est* is very common. It governs a Dative or Ablative, if other parts of the verb do.

*militibus dē nāvibus dēsiliendum erat, the soldiers had to leap down from the ships*; B. G. 4, 24, 2.

*resistendum senectūti est, one must resist old age*; Sen. 11, 35.

b. In a few examples, the Future Passive Participle has the force of a present passive.<sup>1</sup>

*volvenda diēs, time rolling on (being rolled on)*; Aen. 9, 7; cf. 1, 269.

4. The Perfect Passive Participle represents an act as *already* completed at the time of the main verb.

*quō proeliō sublātī audācius subsistere coepērunt, (having been) cheered up by this engagement, they began to resist with more spirit*; B. G. 1, 15, 3.

### Occasional Tense-Meanings of the Participles

601. The tense-meaning is sometimes shifted, as follows:

1. The Perfect Passive Participles of a few Deponent or Semi-Deponent Verbs gain naturally a *present meaning*; e.g. *arbitrātus, having come to think*, — and so *thinking*. The use is then extended to other verbs.<sup>2</sup>

*isdem ducibus ūsus Numidās subsidiō oppidānis mittit, employing the same men as guides, he sends the Numidians to the relief of the inhabitants of the town*; B. G. 2, 7, 1. Similarly *complexi*, Cat. 2, 5, 10.

2. The later writers, especially the poets, extend the usage to passive verbs used reflexively<sup>3</sup> (288, 3), and from these to true passive verbs.

*tristēs et tūnsae pectora palmis, sad, and beating their breasts with their hands*;

Aen. 1, 481. (Reflexive use of verb.) Similarly *prōtēcti*, Aen. 2, 444.

*portam conversō cardine torquet, turns the gate upon its revolving hinge*; Aen. 9, 724. (True passive verb.) Similarly *vectōs*, 6, 335; *invectus*, 1, 155.

*servum caesum mediō ēgerat Circō, had driven a slave under the lash (being beaten) through the midst of the Circus*; Liv. 2, 36, 1. (*Caesum* = *being beaten*, instead of *having been beaten*.)

<sup>1</sup> Probably this was the original force. So, e.g., *vir honorandus* may have meant originally *a man honored*, next *a man honorable*, and finally *a man to be honored*.

<sup>2</sup> The most important participles of the kind with which the use arose are *arbitrātus* and *ratus*, *cōfusus*, *diffusus*, *gāvisus*, *solitus*, *veritus*. The most important to which the use was extended later are *amplexus*, *ausus*, *cōnātus*, *complexus*, *ēmēnsus*, *imitātus*, *locūtus*, *pālātus*, *secūtus*, *sōlātus*, *ūsus*. The poets use the idiom with great freedom.

<sup>3</sup> Thus with *abscissus*, *circumfusus*, *conversus*, *effusus*, *percussus*, *prōtēctus*, *tūnsus*.

### Forms Lacking, and how they are Supplied

**602.** 1. Latin has no Perfect *Active* Participle. It therefore cannot directly express such an idea as *having done so and so*.

Indirectly, the idea may be expressed by a clause with *ubi*, etc., or *cum*, by an Ablative Absolute, or by a Perfect Passive Participle attached to the Object of the main verb.

a. But the Perfect Passive Participle of *Deponent* or *Semi-Deponent* Verbs has of course the perfect active meaning (291, a). Thus *cōspicātus*, *having seen*.

2. Latin has no Present Passive Participle. The place of this is supplied by a relative clause, a clause with *ubi*, etc., or *cum*, or *dum*.

### A. COMMON USES OF THE PARTICIPLE IN ALL PERIODS

**603. INTRODUCTORY.** Since the Participle can be attached, directly or indirectly, to any verb, the combination of the two affords a means by which the speaker or writer can present two acts (or states) *together* to his hearer or reader, without in any way indicating what the actual relation of the two acts to each other is. That relation, if any exists, is left for the hearer or reader *to feel*.

Because of this adaptability to easy and condensed expression, the Participle has a wide use in Latin.

**604.** In its most common uses, the Participle is employed :

1. For *compactness*, in place of a coördinate clause.

*Germānī hostīs locō dēpellunt ; fugientīs persequuntur, the Germans dislodge the enemy from their position, and, as these flee, pursue them ;* B. G. 7, 67, 5. (= *illī fugiunt ; Germānī persequuntur*. The enemy flee, and the Germans pursue them. A *new* fact is narrated by *fugientīs*.)

a. The Participle is often used *to repeat* something already stated in a Finite Verb.

*exercitum fundit, fūsum persequitur, he routs the army, and, after routing it, pursues* (pursues it, routed) ; Liv. 1, 10, 4.

2. To express *Situation*,<sup>1</sup> with or without a causal or adversative suggestion.

*occisus est ā cēnā rediēns, was killed on his way back from dinner ;* Rosc. Am. 34, 97. (No relation suggested.)

*stantem urbem reliquit, he left the city still standing ;* Cat. 2, 1, 2. (No relation suggested.)

*illum exercitum contemnō, conlētum ex senibus dēspērātis . . . , I think little of that army, patched up as it is of desperate old men . . . ;* Cat. 2, 3, 5. (Causal relation suggested. *Conlētum* = *quia conlētus est*.)

*ut eum cupientēs tenēre nequeāmus, so that, though we wish to restrain it* (namely, laughter), *we cannot ;* De Or. 2, 58, 235. (Adversative relation suggested.

*Cupientēs = quamquam cupimus or quamvis cupiāmus.)*

---

<sup>1</sup> The Participle never expresses the mere idea of time.

NOTE. The Participle is used abundantly, in either of the above ways (1 and 2), to narrate an Event or a Situation, as preparation for the narration of the main event. It may then be called the **Narrative Participle**.

Thus used, it forms an equivalent for either an Aoristic Narrative Clause with *ubi*, etc. (557) or a Narrative cum-Clause of Situation (524). (There may of course be an *accessory* causal or adversative idea, as in cum-Clauses; 525.)

*ā quō nōn receptus ad mē venīre ausus es, and when he did not take you in, you had the hardihood to come to me; Cat. 1, 8, 19. (Nōn receptus = ubi nōn receptus es, or cum nōn receptus essēs.)*

### 3. To express a *Condition*.

*damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur, the punishment of being burned alive must follow his conviction; B. G. 1, 4, 1. (Must follow, if he should be convicted. Damnātum = sī damnātus esset.)*

*quis potest, mortem metuēns, esse nōn miser? what man, fearing death (= i.e. if he fears death) can help being wretched? Tusc. 5, 6, 15. (Metuēns = qui metuit, or sī metuit. Generalizing Condition; 579.)*

### 4. To express the *Way by Which (Means)*.

*facit amicitia adversās (rēs) partiēns leviōrēs, friendship makes misfortune lighter by dividing it; Am. 6, 22.*

### 5. To express *Manner*.

*flentēs implōrābant, they begged with tears; B. G. 1, 51, 2.*

6. To express an *Act Not Accompanying the main act* (English "without —ing"). A negative must be added.

*miserum est nihil prōficiētem angī, it is a wretched thing to suffer without accomplishing anything; N. D. 3, 6, 14.*

### 7. In place of a *Relative Clause*, as follows :

#### a) In place of a *Determinative Clause* (550).

*sepultūrā occisōrum, the burial of those who had been slain (occisōrum = eōrum qui occisi erant); B. G. 1, 26, 5.*

#### b) In place of a *Descriptive Clause* (521, 1; 569).

*dē bene meritis civibus, regarding citizens who have served you well; Mil. 2, 4.*

#### c) In place of a *Parenthetical Clause* (567).

*mortem igitur omnibus hōis impendentem timēns qui poterit animō cōsistere? if a man fears death, — which at every moment hangs over us, — how can he be steady in mind? Sen. 20, 74. (Impendentem = quae impendet.)*

## B. SPECIAL IDIOMS OF THE PARTICIPLE IN ALL PERIODS

605. The Romans were fond of the use of the Participles with certain kinds of Verbs, as follows :

1. The Present Active Participle with verbs of *seeing, hearing, or representing*.<sup>1</sup>

*vidēre hanc urbem cecidentem, to see this city falling*; Cat. 4, 6, 11.

NOTE. The Infinitive also may be used with these verbs. In the Passive Voice the Infinitive alone is possible, since there is no present passive participle. *quōs vidēō volitāre in forō, whom I see flitting about in the forum*; Cat. 2, 3, 5. *cōstrui ā deō atque aedificāri mundum facit, (Plato) represents the world as being constructed and built by God*; N. D. 1, 8, 19.

2. The Future Passive Participle to express Purpose with verbs of *giving, leaving, or marking* (and many others in poetry).<sup>2</sup>

*hōs Haeduis custodiendōs trādit, these he hands over to the Haedui to be guarded*; B. G. 6, 4, 4.

3. The Perfect Passive Participle (emphatic or energetic; 490) with verbs of *wishing*.

*se probātum voluit, he wished himself well approved*; Caecin. 36, 103.

4. The Perfect Passive Participle with certain verbs of *giving or making*,<sup>3</sup> to represent something as *put into* a completed condition (emphatic or energetic).

*si quī voluptātibus dūcuntur, missōs faciant honōrēs, people who are led by pleasure must give the honors of life a complete dismissal*; Sest. 66, 138.

5. The Perfect Passive Participle with verbs of *having, holding, or possessing*,<sup>4</sup> to represent something as *ready or kept* in a completed condition.

*ducēs comprehēnsōs tenētis, you hold the leaders under arrest*; Cat. 3, 7, 16. *certōs hominēs dēlēctōs ac dēscriptōs habēbat, he had certain men selected and appointed* (= he had selected, etc.); Cat. 3, 7, 16.

a. With *habēō*, the construction approaches closely to that of our English perfect with *have*, which is descended from it.

#### NEW USES OF THE PARTICIPLES IN LATER LATIN

606. In later Latin, the Present Participle may be used to express *Purpose*.

*lēgātī missī (sunt) auxiliū orantēs, ambassadors were sent (asking) to ask for help*; Liv. 21, 6, 2. Similarly *scitantem*, Aen. 2, 114.

a. This use is an extension of a true present use, as in *venerunt auxiliū orantēs, they came asking* (and, of course, to ask) *help*.

<sup>1</sup> The most common are *videō, audiō, faciō, fingō, inducō* (*bring upon the stage*).

<sup>2</sup> The most common are *dō, dēferō, trādō, praebeō, concēdō, relinqūō, dēnotō*.

<sup>3</sup> The most common are *dō, reddō, faciō, cūrō*.

<sup>4</sup> The most common are *habēō, tenēō, possideō*.

**607.** After Cicero's time, the Future Participle, Active or Passive, gains a wide use.

In addition to its older use in the Periphrastic Conjugation, it is employed to express something as *destined, anticipated, or purposed*, or to take the place of a *condition, a conclusion, or a relative clause*.

*sēsē medium iniēcit peritūrus in agmen, and flung himself into their ranks*  
— *to die* (destined to die); Aen. 2, 408.

*sī peritūrus abis, if you are going away to perish*; Aen. 2, 675.

*dā mānsūram urbem, grant a city that shall abide*; Aen. 3, 85.

#### THE PARTICIPLE AS EXPRESSING THE LEADING IDEA OF ITS PHRASE

**608.** The Participle originally expressed the less important idea of the phrase to which it belongs, as in the examples above.

But in three uses the Participle came to express the *leading idea* of the phrase (cf. 333). The English equivalent for it is then a Verbal Noun, governing an Object. These uses are:

1. The Perfect Passive Participle with a Noun, depending on *opus est*. See 430, 2.

2. The Perfect Passive or Present Active Participle with a Noun, depending upon a Preposition, or in the Genitive, or, less frequently, in the Nominative.

*cum dē homine occisō (= dē hominis caede) quaerātur, when there is an investigation about a man killed, i.e. about the killing of a man*; Mil. 3, 8.

*post hanc urbem conditam, since the founding of this city*; Cat. 3, 6, 15.

*ob iram interfecti domini, through anger at the killing of his master*; Liv. 21, 2, 6. (*Interfecti domini = caedis domini*.) Cf. Aen. 2, 413.

*fugiēns Pompeius mirābiliter hominēs movet, Pompey's flight is stirring people up extraordinarily*; Att. 7, 11, 4.

a. The construction is sometimes found in English, mainly in poetry. Cf. Oliver Wendell Holmes: "Our midnight is Thy smile withdrawn."

3. The Future Passive Participle with a Noun.

The Future Passive Participle with a Noun, when used to convey the leading idea in its phrase, receives a *new name*, that of the "Gerundive," and will therefore be treated under that heading. The related *construction* of the Gerund will be treated at the same time.



## THE GERUNDIVE AND THE GERUND

**609.** The Gerundive is the Future Passive Participle, *after it has gained the power of conveying the leading idea in its phrase.*

*in iis libellis quos dē contemnendā glōriā scribunt, in the essays which they write about despising glory (about glory being despised);*<sup>1</sup>

Arch. 11, 26. (*Dē contemnendā glōriā = dē contemptiōne glōriæ.*)

*exercendae memoriae grātiā, for the sake of exercising the memory (for the sake of memory to be exercised);* Sen. 11, 38. (*Exercendae memoriae = exercitātiōnis memoriae.*)

**610.** The Gerundive is thus nearly the equivalent of a Verbal Noun. But it is not yet a *complete* Verbal Noun. Instead of depending directly on the word which governs the phrase, and itself governing the other word of the phrase, as in the English "about despising glory," it is still subordinate to that other word, and has to agree with it (as in *dē contemnendā glōriā*). It is in *thought* the leading word, but not yet *grammatically* so.

Naturally, it came in time to take this one step further, and became a complete Verbal Noun, in the Neuter Gender.

**611.** The Gerund is a *complete verbal noun*.

As a Verb, it has the power, if transitive, of governing a Noun or Pronoun; as a Noun, it is itself governed in case.

NOTE. The Gerundive and Gerund differ from the true Future Passive Participle<sup>2</sup> in four ways:

1. They express the leading idea of their phrase.
2. They convey no idea of necessity or obligation.
3. They are active in feeling, not passive.<sup>3</sup>
4. They accordingly cannot take any construction of the agent.

## COMMON USES OF THE GERUNDIVE AND GERUND IN ALL PERIODS

**612.** The Gerundive and Gerund exist only in the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative cases. The case-uses, so far as they go, are in general the same as those of Nouns.

<sup>1</sup> See 600, 3, 5, and footnote.

<sup>2</sup> The traditional usage, by which the name "Gerundive" is employed instead of the name "Future Passive Participle" is confusing. Obviously, the word Gerundive should be restricted to uses which have exact parallels in uses of the Gerund.

<sup>3</sup> Thus *Carthāgō dēlenda est* means *Carthage must be destroyed (passive)*, while *Carthāginis dēlendae* (Gerundive) means *the hope of destroying Carthage (active)*.

In Ciceronian Latin, the principal uses are as follows :

I. **Genitive.** After any Noun or Adjective that can govern a Genitive *Noun*.

II. **Dative.** After any Adjective or Phrase that can govern a Dative *Noun*; also after certain *official phrases*, and after *sum* or *adsum*.

III. **Accusative.** After *Prepositions*, mainly *ad*; <sup>1</sup> and after Verbs of *arranging*, *contracting*, or *giving a contract*.<sup>2</sup>

IV. **Ablative.** To express *Means*, *Circumstances*, or *Cause*, and after *Prepositions*, mainly *dē*, *ex*, *in*.<sup>3</sup>

*Examples of the four case-uses :*

GERUNDIVE	I. GENITIVE	GERUND
cupiditās bellī gerendī, <i>desire of carrying on war</i> ; B. G. 1, 41, 1. (Objective Genitive; 354.)	hominēs bellandī cupidī, <i>men desirous of fighting</i> ; B. G. 1, 2, 4. (Objective Genitive; 354.)	
neque cōsili habendī (continued on right)	neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, <i>time being given neither for taking counsel nor for seizing their arms</i> ; B. G. 4, 14, 2.	
difficultātēs bellī gerendī, <i>difficulties in carrying on the war</i> ; B. G. 3, 10, 1. (Genitive of Connection; cf. difficultātēs bellī, 339.)	difficultās nāvigandī, <i>difficulty in navigating</i> ; B. G. 3, 12, 5. (Genitive of Connection; 339.)	
praedae (= praedandī) ac bellī inferendī causā, <i>for the sake of plunder and making war</i> ; B. G. 5, 12, 2.	praedandī causā, <i>for the sake of plundering</i> ; B. G. 2, 17, 4.	
II. DATIVE		
locum oppidō condendō cēperunt, <i>they chose a place for founding a town</i> ; Liv. 39, 22, 6. (Dative of Object for Which; cf. 361.)	quem quisque pugnandō locum cēperat, <i>the place that each had taken for fighting</i> ; Sall. Cat. 61, 2. (Dative of Object for Which; cf. 361.)	
sunt nōn nullī acuendīs puerōrum ingenīis nōn inūtilēs lūsūs, <i>there are certain games that are not bad for sharpening the wits of boys</i> ; Quintil. 1, 3, 11. (Dative of Direction; 362.)	aqua fūtilis bibendō, <i>water good for drinking</i> ; Plin. N. H. 31, 59. (Dative of Direction; 362.)	

<sup>1</sup> Rarely with *ante*, *circā*, *ergā*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *propter*, *super*.

<sup>2</sup> *Cūrō* = *have a thing done*, *condūcō* = *take a contract*, *locō* = *give a contract*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Rarely with *cum*, *prō*, *super*.

## GERUNDIVE

cōsul plācandīs diis dat operam, *the consul devotes his attention to appeasing the gods*; Liv. 22, 2, 1. (Dative of Indirect Object; 365.)

(cōsul) comitia cōlēgae subrogandō habuit, *the consul held an election for the appointing of a colleague*; Liv. 2, 8, 3. (Dative after an official phrase; 612, II.)

## GERUND

is cōsensdō finis factus est, *this was made the ending of (for) the taking of the census*; Liv. 1, 44, 2. (Dative of Indirect Object; 365.)

cum solvendō civitatēs nōn essent, *since the states were not equal to paying (not solvent)*; Fam. 3, 8, 2. (Special idiom, after sum or adsum, 612, II.)

## III. ACCUSATIVE

ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīdūi spatium daret, *that he should give them three days' time for accomplishing this*; B. G. 4, 11, 3. (Purpose; cf. 384, 3.)

ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer est animus, *the temper of the Gauls is keen for undertaking wars*; B. G. 3, 19, 6. (Figurative Direction; cf. 384, 2.)

pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat, *he sees to the building of a bridge over the Saône*; B. G. 1, 13, 1.<sup>1</sup>

nūllum sibi ad cognōscendum spatium relinquunt, *leave themselves no time for investigating*; B. G. 7, 42, 1. (Purpose; cf. 384, 3.)

cum hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, *when the enemy had made our soldiers keener for fighting*; B. G. 3, 24, 5. (Figurative Direction; cf. 384, 2.)

## IV. ABLATIVE

loquendī ēlegantia augētur legendīs ōrātōribus et poētīs, *distinction in speech is increased by reading the orators and poets*; De Or. 3, 10, 39. (Means, 423; cf. B. G. 3, 25, 1.)

cum plausum meō nōmine recitandō dedisset, *when (the people) had applauded at the reading of my name*; Att. 4, 1, 6. (Circumstances; 422, 1.)

in eā (voluptāte) spernendā virtūs maximē cernitur, *manliness is best seen in the despising of pleasure*; Leg. 1, 19, 52. (Field in Which, with in; 434, 2.)

(memoria) excolendō augētur, *memory is built up by using it*; Quintil. 11, 2, 1. (Means, 423; cf. B. G. 4, 13, 5.)

imperandō sociīs in tantum adductus periculum, *brought into such danger in (by) directing the allies*; Verr. 1, 27, 70. (Means, becoming Circumstances; 422, 1.)

industria in agendō, *energy in action* (in acting); Pomp. 11, 29. (Field in Which, with in; 434, 2.)

<sup>1</sup> True Gerundive construction; for the leading idea is carried by the grammatically subordinate word faciendum. Compare the contrasting Participial use in 606, 2.

NOTE 1. The Gerundive or Gerund in the Ablative of Means or Circumstances sometimes approaches the force of a Participle. In later Latin, the *Gerund* is frequent with this force.

*aliis fructum libidinum nōn modo impellendō vērūm etiā adiuvandō pollicēbātur*, to others he promised the enjoyment of their lusts, not only urging them but also aiding them; Cat. 2, 4, 8. Cf. *iandō*, Aen. 2, 6; *tuendō*, Aen. 1, 713.

NOTE 2. Rarely, the Gerund is used as an appositive, as in *rēs diversissimās, pārendū atque imperandū*, two very different things, obeying and commanding; Liv. 21, 4, 3.

**613.** Where the phrase contains a Noun or Pronoun, the Gerundive is more common than the Gerund in Ciceronian Latin. But either construction *may* be employed, except as follows:

1. The Gerundive alone is employed in the Dative or after a Preposition. Hence one must say, e.g.: *plācandīs dīs dat operam, ad eas rēs cōficiendās, in voluptāte spernendā*, etc., as above.

2. The Gerund alone is employed:

a) With a Neuter Adjective used substantively.

*artem vērā ac falsā dīiudicandī*, the art of distinguishing true things from false things; De Or. 2, 38, 157. (Not *vērōrum ac falsōrum dīiudicandōrum*, which might be taken to mean of distinguishing true men from false men.)

b) If the verb used is Intransitive.

*homīni cupidō satisfaciendī rei pūblicae*, a man desirous of doing his duty to the commonwealth; Fam. 10, 18, 1.

NOTE. The Deponent Verbs *ūtor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vāscor*, being really transitive in meaning (429, b), can take either construction.

*spem potiundōrum castrōrum*, hope of taking the camp; B. G. 3, 6, 2.

*quārum potiendī spē*, by the hope of gaining which; Fin. 1, 18, 60.

**614.** The Reflexive Genitives *meī*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, and *vestrī* throw an accompanying Gerundive into the same form, without regard to the actual gender or number of the person or persons meant.

*sui opprimendī causā*, for the sake of crushing them; B. G. 1, 44, 10.

REMARK. *Meī*, *nostrī*, etc., were originally Neuter Singular Adjectives used substantively. Hence the usage.

#### RARER CONSTRUCTIONS OF THE GERUND OR GERUNDIVE

##### Objective Genitive with the Gerund

**615.** Occasionally, though rarely in Cicero, the Gerund takes an Objective Genitive, just as an ordinary Verbal Noun may do.

*exemplōrum eligendī potestās*, a chance for the selecting of examples; Inv. 2, 2, 5.  
(= *exemplōrum elēctiōnis potestās*. Cf. *elēctiō verborum*, Or. 20, 68.)

### The Genitive of the Gerundive in Expressions of Purpose

**616.** A Gerundive in the Descriptive Genitive, while strictly depending upon a Noun, may suggest the *purpose* of an act.

*paucōs post diēs quam ad bellum renovandum miserant lēgātōs, pācis petendae orātōrēs miserunt*, a few days after they had sent commanders to renew the war, they sent (ambassadors of the peace-asking kind) ambassadors to ask for peace; Liv. 36, 27, 2.<sup>1</sup>

*cētera in XII minuendī sūmptūs sunt*, the remaining provisions in the Twelve Tables are for the lessening of expense; Leg. 2, 23, 59 (same Genitive, in the predicate). Similarly *cōservandae libertātis*, Sall. Cat. 6, 7.

## THE SUPINE

**617. INTRODUCTORY.** The Supine is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension. It has but two forms in common use, one in *-um* and one in *-ū*. The form in *-um* is an Accusative, expressing an action thought of as the End of Motion (cf. **450**). The form in *-ū* is an Ablative, generally expressing Respect (**441**).

### The Supine in *-um*

**618.** The Supine in *-um* is used to express Purpose after *Verbs of motion*, and a few others *implying* motion, real or figurative.<sup>2</sup>

*lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium*, they send ambassadors to Caesar to ask help; B. G. 1, 11, 3.

*nōn Graiis servitum mātibus ibō*, I shall not go to play the slave to Grecian dames; Aen. 2, 786.

a. The Supine in *-um* may itself be followed by any construction which any other part of the Verb may take, e.g. a Direct Object, a Dative, a Substantive Clause, an Indirect Question, etc.

### The Supine in *-ū*

**619.** The Supine in *-ū* is used:

1. To express Respect with Adjectives,<sup>3</sup> and with *fās* or *nefās*.

<sup>1</sup> Similarly, *nāvēs dēficiendī operis* (the reading of the better family of manuscripts) will be found in many texts in B. G. 4, 17, 10. Cf. *suī commodī*, B. G. 5, 8, 6 (the reading of the same family).

<sup>2</sup> These others are *vocō* and *revocō*, dare and *conlocāre* with *nūptum* (give or place to marry, i.e. in marriage) and *recipiō* with *sessum* (receive to sit, i.e. help to a seat).

Virgil employs the construction with poetic boldness after *fortūnā ūtī* (use our opportunity to) in Aen. 9, 241.

<sup>3</sup> Most frequently with *facilis*, *difficilis*, *gravis*, *mirābilis*, *incrēdibilis*, *honestus*, *turpis*, *ūtilis*, *iucundus*, *optimus*.

The Supines most commonly occurring are *dictū*, *factū*, *audītū*, *visū*, *cognītū*.

*perfacile factū, a very easy thing to do* (in the doing); B. G. 1, 3, 6.

*si hoc fās est dictū, if this is right to say*; Tusc. 5, 13, 38.

a. Some of these Adjectives may also take the Gerund with *ad*, as in *facile ad crēdendum*, Tusc. 1, 33, 78.

2. Occasionally after *opus est, dignus* or *indignus*.

*quod scītū opus est, which it is necessary to know* (which there is need of knowing); Inv. 1, 20, 28.

*nihil dignum dictū, nothing worth mentioning*; Liv. 4, 30, 4.

a. Ordinarily, *opus est* takes the Perfect Passive Participle (430, 2) and *dignus* or *indignus* a Subjunctive *quī-* or *ut*-Clause (513, 3).

NOTE 1. The Supine in *-ū* cannot take a Direct Object; for the thing which is to be done is the *Subject* of the statement. — But an Infinitive of Statement or an Indirect Question sometimes forms an *apparent* Object of the Supine (really the Subject of the main verb).

*difficile est dictū quantō in odiō simus apud exterās nātiōnēs, it is difficult to say how foreign nations hate us* (how much they hate us is difficult to say); Pomp. 22, 65.

## WORD-ORDER

620. INTRODUCTORY. In English, in which there is little inflection, word-order is largely fixed. Thus the idea "Caesar conquered Pompey" can be expressed only in this order ("Pompey conquered Caesar" would mean the opposite). In Latin, in which relations are largely expressed by inflection, there is in the main no *necessary* order. Thus *Caesar Pompeium superāvit*, *Pompeium Caesar superāvit*, and *superāvit Pompeium* Caesar all tell the same fact, and differ only with regard to the emphasis placed upon one part or another.

Emphasis is expressed also by stress and by pitch. But the written sentence cannot indicate these means.

621. Emphasis may be obtained either by putting an important thing before the hearer immediately, or by holding it back for a time, to stimulate his curiosity. Hence,

*The most emphatic places in a sentence, clause, or group, are the first and the last.* The places next these are relatively next in emphasis, and so on.

622. If no *special* emphasis is to be given to any part, the subject and the act are the most important things. Hence they stand first and last respectively. Their modifiers naturally stand near them.

## NORMAL ORDER

623. Accordingly, the *normal*<sup>1</sup> order of the sentence is:

*Subject, modifiers of the subject, modifiers of the verb, verb.*

<sup>1</sup> The words "regular" and "regularly," "general" and "generally" are avoided in most of the following statements; for the actual majority of cases under a given class may perfectly well be on the side of the *rhetorical* order. Cf. 625.

**L. Flaccus et C. Pomptinus praetorēs meritō laudantur, *Lucius Flaccus and Gaius Pomptinus, the praetors, are deservedly praised*; Cat. 3, 6, 14.**

*a.* The normal order of the modifiers of the verb and the verb itself is:

1. Remoter modifiers (time, place, situation, cause, means, etc.).
2. Indirect object.
3. Direct object.
4. Adverb.
5. Verb.

*b.* But this exact order is not common, since there is almost always some special shade of emphasis to disturb it. Cf. 625.

**624.** 1. Adjectives and genitives normally follow their nouns.<sup>1</sup>

*aetās puerilis, the age of boyhood* (the boyish age); Arch. 1, 3, 4.

*dilatationem comitiōrum, the postponement of the election*; Pomp. 1, 1, 2.

*a.* *Ūlus* and *nūllus* normally precede their nouns. Thus *nūllum malum, no evil*; Cat. 4, 7, 15.

*b.* Certain combinations have settled into a stereotyped order. Thus *cīvis Rōmānus, pontifex maximus, rēs pūblica*; *senātūs cōsultum, plēbis scītum, tribūnus plēbis*. The genitive regularly precedes *causā* and *grātiā, for the sake of*.

2. Determinative and intensive pronouns, and adjectives of quantity or precision, normally precede their nouns.

So *hic, is, iste, ille*; *ipse*; *ūnus, duo*, etc.; *omnis, tōtus, ūniversus, cūctus, multus, tantus*; *proximus, superior*,<sup>2</sup> etc.

*hic locus, this place*; Pomp. 1, 2.

*omnis hic locus, this entire place*; Cat. 3, 10, 24.

*ūniversus senātus cēnsuit . . . , the whole senate voted . . .*; Sull. 49, 136.

*a.* *Ille* meaning "the famous" normally follows its noun; but it regularly goes with an adjective or appositive, wherever this may stand.

*Mēdēa illa, the famous Medea*; Pomp. 9, 22.

*Catō ille sapiēns, Cato, the famous sage*; Div. 1, 15, 28.

*sapiēti illi Catōni, the famous sage Cato*; Leg. 2, 2, 5.

3. Possessive and indefinite pronouns, and ordinal numerals, normally follow their nouns.

*avī tuī, of your grandfather*; Cat. 3, 5, 10.

*cāsū aliquō, by some chance*; Cat. 1, 6, 16.

*hōrā quārtā, at the fourth hour*; B. G. 4, 23, 2.

<sup>1</sup> The general idea is given first, and this is then narrowed by a descriptive conception. The same usage has come down in French.

<sup>2</sup> Some of these, e.g. *hic, is, etc.*, form a constituent part of the thought, and so are not easily held in suspense. Others, like *multus* and *tantus*, are naturally emphatic. The same usage has come down in French.

4. Words depending upon a modifier of a noun, or upon a noun accompanied by a modifier, are generally put between the two, the whole being thus tied into a single mass (like an algebraic quantity within brackets).

*infestam rei publicae pestem, a plague dangerous to the state*; Cat. 1, 5, 11.

*duas urbis huic imperio infestissimās, two cities most dangerous to this realm*; Cat. 4, 10, 21.

*complures eiusdem amentiae socios, many associates in the same madness*; Cat. 1, 4, 8.

5. Appositive nouns and appositive adjectives normally follow their substantives.

*Ennius et sapiens et fortis et alter Homerus, Ennius, wise and brave and a second Homer*; Ep. 2, 1, 50.

6. Vocatives normally stand after one or more words.

*quid est, Catilina? How is this, Catiline?* Cat. 1, 5, 13.

7. Interrogative words normally stand first in their clauses.

*quem ignorare arbitraris . . . ? who, think you, is ignorant . . . ?* Cat. 1, 1, 1.

8. Relative pronouns and conjunctions normally stand first in their clauses.

*proximi sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, they are next to the Germans, who live beyond the Rhine*; B. G. 1, 1, 4.

*si te comprehendi iussero, if I have you arrested*; Cat. 1, 2, 5.

a. The conjunctions *-que* and *-ve*, being enclitics, cannot stand first. See 307, 1, b.

b. *Autem*, *enim*, and *verō* follow the first word or phrase. So, generally, does *igitur*, though it sometimes stands first. *Tamen* stands either first, or after an emphatic word.

9. Determinative words referring to something in the preceding sentence stand, like relatives, at the beginning (first word, or in the first phrase).

*ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitatis suscepit. In eo itinere . . . , Orgetorix is chosen to carry out these plans. He (this man) undertook an embassy to the various states. Upon this journey . . .*; B. G. 1, 3, 3.

10. Relative clauses generally follow the phrase containing the antecedent; but often they are inserted into that phrase.

*ad ea castra quae supra demonstravimus contendit, hastens to the camp which I have mentioned above*; B. G. 7, 83, 8.

*ad eas quas diximus munitiones pervenerunt, arrived at the fortifications which I have mentioned*; B. G. 3, 26, 2.

a. For the relative clause preceding its antecedent, see 204, c.



11. Conditions and conditional relative clauses generally precede the main clause, or are inserted in it. They rarely follow.

12. Prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

*a.* Exceptions occur mainly in poetry, mostly with dissyllabic prepositions. Thus *tē propter*, Aen. 4, 320.

*b.* For *mēcum*, *quibuscum*, etc., see 418, *a.*

*c.* For *-que* with monosyllabic prepositions, see 307, 1, *b.*

13. Most adverbs normally stand just before the words they modify.

*tam improbus*, *so worthless*; Cat. 1, 2, 5.

*a.* *Quidem*, *quoque*, *dēnique*, and *dēmum* follow the word they modify. So, generally, *do ferē*, *fermē*, *paene*, and *prope*; *potius* and *potissimum*; and *tantum* in the sense of *only*.

*aequō ferē spatiō*, *at about an equal distance*; B. G. 1, 43, 1.

14. *Nōn* regularly stands just before the word it modifies.

15. The first person precedes the other two, and the second the third.

*sī tū et Tullia valētis*, *ego et suāvissimus Cicerō valēmus*, *if you and Tullia are well, so are my dear boy and I* (in Latin, I and my boy); Fam. 14, 5, 1.

16. *Inquam*, *inquit*, etc., stand after one or more of the quoted words.

*"est vērō," inquam*, *"nōtum quidem signum," "it is indeed," said I*, *"a well-known seal"*; Cat. 3, 5, 10.

## RHETORICAL ORDER

625. But the so-called normal arrangement is really rare, since the speaker or writer generally *has* some special emphasis to put upon some part of the sentence (*rhetorical order*).

This may be effected :

I. By reversing the normal order.

II. By the juxtaposition of like or contrasting words.

III. By postponement to produce suspense.

*Examples* (contrast those in 624, 1-7) :

*lis haec*, *THIS PARTICULAR suit*; Clu. 41, 116.

*nōn est ista mea culpa sed temporum*, *it is not MY fault, but that of the times*; Cat. 2, 2, 3.

*senātus ūniversus iūdicāvit*, *the senate judged*, *TO A MAN*; Clu. 49, 136.

*iacet ille*, *he lies PROSTRATE* (prostrate he lies); Cat. 2, 1, 2.

*latrōnī quae potest inferri iniūsta nex?* *UPON A BRIGAND what death can be inflicted that is not DESERVED?* Mil. 5, 10.

*nōn est saepius in ūnō homine summa salūs periclitanda rei pūblicae, it is not right that a SINGLE person should repeatedly be allowed to endanger the HIGHEST welfare of the commonwealth; Cat. 1, 5, 11.*

*M. Tullī, quid agis? MARCUS TULLIUS, what are you doing? Cat. 1, 11, 27.*

*Q. Maximum senem adulēscēns dīlēxī, I loved Quintus Maximus, in his old age and my youth; Sen. 4, 10.*

*magna dīs immortālībūs habēnda est grātia, GREAT GRATITUDE is due to the immortal gods; Cat. 1, 5, 11.*

a. A double emphasis is of course possible.

*cupiō mē esse clēmentem, my DESIRE is to be MERCIFUL; Cat. 1, 2, 4.*

b. On the other hand, the putting of a word into an emphatic position often throws another into an unusual place *without* special emphasis upon that other.

*vivēs, et vivēs ita ut vivīs, you shall live, and live IN THE SAME WAY AS NOW; Cat. 1, 2, 6. (Ita is emphatic, but the vivēs immediately preceding it merely repeats the first vivēs, without emphasis.)*

c. In the compound tenses, the auxiliary *sum* may, according to the needs of the sentence, be placed anywhere, without emphasis upon itself.

**626.** An emphatic word is often taken out of a dependent clause and put before the connective, especially if it belongs in thought to both the dependent and the main clause.

*servī mehercule mei sī mē istō pactō metuerent, domum meam relinquendam putārem, good heavens! if EVEN MY SLAVES feared ME in this fashion, I should think I ought to leave my home; Cat. 1, 7, 17.*

*Caesari cum id nūtiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, when this had been announced to Caesar, he made (makes) haste to set out from the city; B. G. 1, 7, 1.*

1, 7, 1. Contrast 1, 50, 4, in which the emphasis does *not* lie upon the actor.

a. Sometimes many words of the dependent clause precede the connective.  
*per omnia nive opplēta cum sēgniter agmen incōderet, as the army was marching sluggishly through a country covered with snow; Liv. 21, 35, 7.*

**627.** 1. The Romans liked to separate a group of words consisting of a noun and modifier, by inserting the governing word. The effect is to throw a little more emphasis upon the modifier, by leaving it for the moment in suspense.

*eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, following the same plan; B. G. 1, 5, 4.*

*propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum, since other way they had NONE; B. G. 1, 7, 3. Double emphasis; for nūllum is not only put after iter instead of preceding it (624, 1, a), but is held longer in suspense by the insertion of habērent.*

2. The Romans liked to put pronouns early in a clause, to group them together, and even to insert them into groups with which they have no direct connection.

*huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor, for this war I announce myself as leader ;*  
Cat. 2, 5, 11.

*magnō mē metū liberābis, you will relieve me of great fear ;* Cat. 1, 5, 10.

*a. In Adjurations, per is often separated from its object by a pronoun.*

*per ego hās lacrimās tē orō, by these tears I beseech you ;* Aen. 4, 314.

*b. The groups suus quisque and sibi quisque always take this order.*

3. After neuters and adverbs, the Genitive of the Whole is usually held back for several words.

*dixisti paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae, you said that you were still suffering a little delay ;* Cat. 1, 4, 9.

4. An adjective or pronoun belonging to a noun governed by a monosyllabic preposition is often placed before the preposition.

*quem ad finem? to what limit? Cat. 1, 1, 1.*

*magnō cum dolōre, with great grief ;* Phil. 1, 12, 31.

**628.** When two pairs of words are in contrast with each other, the members may be arranged either in **Parallel Order** or in **Cross Order**.<sup>1</sup>

*puerili speciē, sed senili prūdentiā, of boyish appearance, but of an old man's wisdom ;* Div. 2, 23, 50. (Parallel Order.)

*prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, unless for the life of a man a man's life be paid ;* B. G. 6, 16, 3. (Cross Order.)

**629.** In English the general tendency is to *complete the thought*, as far as possible, as each part of the sentence is spoken or written.

In Latin, on the contrary, the general tendency is to hold first one thing and then another *in temporary suspense* as the sentence moves from part to part.<sup>2</sup> Accordingly,

1. Most kinds of clauses normally precede that which they modify.

*Alcō, precibus aliquid mōtūrum ratus, cum ad Hannibalem noctū trānsisset, postquam nihil lacrimae movēbant, apud hostem mānsit, Alco, thinking that he could accomplish something by entreaties, after going to Hannibal by night, and finding that tears did not move him, remained with the enemy ;* Liv. 21, 12, 4.

<sup>1</sup> Called *chiasmus*, from the Greek letter X, in which the lines are crossed.

<sup>2</sup> It is all-important to bear this in mind in reading. The student should remember that the *chances* are that a given word, phrase, or clause is not explained by anything he has yet reached, but by *something that is yet to come*.

*a.* But when two clauses of a different character modify the same verb, one generally precedes this, and the other follows it.

*his cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōe ad Dumnorigem mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore impetrarent, when they found themselves unable to persuade these people by their own influence, they sent (send) ambassadors to Dumnorix, in order to obtain their wish through his mediation; B. G. 1, 9, 2.*

2. Substantive and consecutive clauses normally follow the word on which they depend.

*persuāsit ut exirent, persuaded them to emigrate; B. G. 1, 2, 1.*

*his rēbus fiēbat ut . . . , the result was, that . . . ; B. G. 1, 2, 4.*

630. A carefully constructed sentence of some length, with suspense kept up until the end, is called a **Period**, and the style is called the **Periodic Style**. See, for example, the sentence **Alcō**, etc., 629, 1; **Caesar** — **utī possent**, B. G. 2, 25, 1–2; and the first two sentences of **Cat. 3, 1**.

*a.* Such a sentence generally requires to be broken up into two or more sentences in English.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC<sup>1</sup>

### A. FIGURES OF SYNTAX

631. 1. **Ellipsis** is the omission of one or more words.

*Aeolus haec contrā, thus Aeolus (spoke) in reply; Aen. 1, 76.*

*a.* The words most commonly omitted are **dīcō**, **loquor**, **agō**, **faciō**. See example under 222, *a*.

2. **Brachylogy** is brevity of expression.

*vir bonus dīci dēlector ego ac tū (dēlectāris), I like to be called a good man, just as you (do); Ep. 1, 16, 32.*

3. **Condensed Comparison** is a form of brachylogy in which a thing is compared with a characteristic, or a characteristic with a thing.

*hārum est cōsimilis capris figūra, their shape is like (that of) goats; B. G. 6, 27, 1.*

4. **Pléonasm** is the use of unnecessary words.

*sic ōre locūta est, thus she spoke with her lips; Aen. 1, 614.*

5. **Hendiadys**<sup>2</sup> is the expression of one complex idea through the use of two nouns connected by a conjunction.

*mōlem et montis altōs, a mass of lofty mountains; Aen. 1, 61.*

<sup>1</sup> A sharp distinction between the two classes is often impossible.

<sup>2</sup> *Ἐν ὁμᾷ δύοιν*, "one thing through two."

6. *Sýnesis* ("sense") is construction according to sense, not according to form. (See 325.)

*pars in fugam effūsī, a part were scattered in flight*; Liv. 27, 1, 12.

7. *Zeúgma* ("joining") is the government of two words by a word which strictly applies to only one of them.

*Danaōs et laxat claustra Sinōn, Sinon unbars the doors and (sets free) the Greeks*; Aen. 2, 258.

8. *Anacolúthōn* ("lack of sequence") is a change of construction in a sentence, by which the first part is left without government.

*nōs omnēs, quibus est aliquis obiectus labōs, omne quod est intereā tempus lucrōst, all of us before whom trouble lies, — (for us) the time between is gain*; Hec. 286. (The nominative construction is not followed out.)

9. *Enállage* is the exchange of one part of speech for another, or of one gender, number, etc., for another.

*populum lātē rēgem, a people sovereign far and wide (rēgem for rēgnantem)*; Aen. 1, 21.

10. *Hypállage* is an exchange of grammatical relations.

*dare classibus austrōs, to give the winds to the fleet (instead of give the fleet to the winds)*; Aen. 3, 61.

11. *Prolépsis*<sup>1</sup> is the use of a word in advance of that which explains it.  
*submersās obrue puppis, (o'erwhelm the sunken ships) o'erwhelm the ships so that they sink*; Aen. 1, 69.

12. *Hýsteron Próteron*<sup>2</sup> is the reversing of the logical order.

*moriamur et in media arma ruāmus, let us die and rush into the midst of arms*; Aen. 2, 353.

13. *Hypébaton* is a change in the natural order of words.

*per omnia tē deōs ōrō, I pray you by all the gods*; Carm. 1, 8, 1.

14. *Anástrophe* ("turning around") is the placing of a preposition after its case. See 624, 12, a.

15. *Tmésis* ("cutting") is the separating of the parts of a compound word.

*quae mē cumque vocant terrae, what lands soever bid me come*; Aen. 1, 610.

<sup>1</sup> Πρόληψις, "taking in advance."

<sup>2</sup> Ὑστερον πρότερον, "the last first."

## B. FIGURES OF RHETORIC

**632.** 1. **Litotes** is the rhetorical softening of an expression by the denial of the opposite idea. The effect is increased emphasis.

*nōn ignāra mali, not ignorant of suffering*; Aen. 1, 630.

2. **Hypérbole** is exaggeration.

*ventis òcior, swifter than the winds*; Aen. 5, 319.

3. **Oxymóron** is the putting together of two apparently contradictory ideas.

*insānientis sapientiae, of a mad wisdom*; Carm. 1, 34, 2.

4. **Irony** is the intentional saying of the opposite of what is really meant.

*bone custōs, excellent guardian (for bad guardian)*; Ph. 287.

5. **Anáphora** is the use of the same or closely similar words in the same place in successive clauses.

*tū flectis amnis, tē vidit insōns Cerberus, thou turnest torrents from their course, on thee Cerberus looked and did no harm*; Carm. 2, 19, 17.

6. **Chiasmus** is the arranging of pairs of words in the opposite order. See example in 628.

7. **Antíthesis** is the setting of contrasting things against each other.

*speciē blanda, reāpse repudianda, in aspect charming, in reality objectionable*; Am. 13, 47.

8. **Synécdoche** is the use of a part for the whole.

*mūcrōne coruscō, with flashing sword (strictly point)*; Aen. 2, 333.

9. **Metónymy** ("shift of name") is the use of a name in place of another to which it is related.

*furit Volcānus, Vulcan* (i.e. the fire) *rages*; Aen. 5, 662.

*tremet puppis, the stern* (i.e. the ship) *trembles*; Aen. 5, 198. (Part for the whole.)  
*aere, with the bronze* (i.e. with the bronze prow); Aen. 1, 35. (Material for the thing made of it.)

10. A **Transferred Epithet** is an epithet not strictly belonging to that to which it is attached, but transferred from something connected with this in thought.

*mare vēlīvolum, the sail-flying sea* (for sail-covered); Aen. 1, 224 ("sail-flying" really applies to the ships, not to the sea).

11. **Climax** ("a ladder") is a steady rise of force.

*nihil agis, nihil moliris, nihil cogitās, quod nōn ego nōn modo audiam sed etiam videam plānēque sentiam, you do nothing, you ATTEMPT nothing, you THINK of nothing, that I fail, I will not merely say to hear of, but even to SEE, and to UNDERSTAND COMPLETELY*; Cat. 1, 3, 8.

12. **Euphemism** is the use of a less disagreeable expression in place of a more disagreeable one.

*si quid accideret Rōmānis, if anything should happen to the Romans (instead of if they should be defeated)*; B. G. 1, 18, 9.

13. **Métaphor** is the figurative use of words.

*sentina rei pūblicae, the dregs of the state*; Cat. 1, 5, 12.

14. **Állegory** is continued metaphor.

*ō nāvis, referent in mare tē novī flūctūs . . . ; fortiter occupā portum, O ship, yet other billows will carry thee out to sea . . . ; be brave and make the port*; Carm. 1, 14, 1. (The ship is the state, the billows the civil wars, etc.)

15. **Símile** is illustration by comparison.

*ac velutī magnō in populō cum coorta est sēditio, gravem si forte virum quem cōspexēre, silent, sic pelagī cecidit fragor, and as, when a riot has broken out among a great rabble, if they chance to see some man of weight, they are hushed, so ceased the tumult of the waters*; Aen. 1, 148.

16. **Aposiopésis** ("silence") is a breaking off in a sentence.

*quōs ego —, sed mōtōs praestat compōnere flūctūs, whom I —, but it is better to calm the angry waves*; Aen. 1, 135.

17. **Apóstrophe** is an impassioned turning aside from the previous form of thought, to address some person or thing.

*citae Mettū in diversa quadrigae distulerant (at tū dictis, Albāne, manēre), the swift chariots had torn Mettus asunder (but thou, O Alban, shouldst have kept thy word)*; Aen. 8, 643.

18. **Personification** is the treating of inanimate things as persons.

*haec si tēcum patria loquātur, if your country should thus plead with you*; Cat. 1, 8, 19.

19. **Alliteration** is the repetition of single sounds, generally consonants.

*vi victa vis, force has been foiled by force*; Mil. 11, 30.

20. **Onomatopéia** is the matching of sound to sense.

*magnō cum murmure montis, with a mighty murmuring of the mountain*; Aen. 1, 55.

21. The **Figūra Etymologica** combines words of kindred origin but different meanings.

*sēnsim sine sēnsū, gradually and imperceptibly*; Sen. 11, 38.

# PART V

## VERSIFICATION

**633.** **Rhythm** is the regular recurrence of sound-groups that take the same amount of time (quantity<sup>1</sup>)

**634.** **Ictus** (from Latin *ictus*, *a blow*) is the natural *stress* or *pulse-beat* which, whenever there is such a regular recurrence of groups of sound, is given to the same place in each group.

*a.* Ictus is simply *stress of voice*. It does not differ in character from word-accent or sense-stress, but is due to a different cause.

**635.** A rhythmical sound-group is called a **Foot**.

**636.** A succession of feet arranged according to a fixed scheme is called a **Verse**.

**637.** The two kinds of feet which the student meets in his earlier reading in Latin are :

The **Dactyl**, or — ∪ ∪ (♩ ♩ ♩), as in *dēsūper*.

The **Spondee**, or — — (♩ ♩), as in *īrae*.

*a.* These two kinds of feet take the same time in pronunciation (namely four units);<sup>2</sup> for the two short syllables in the Dactyl, *together*, occupy as much time in pronunciation as the long syllable. In beating time, accordingly, one would give four beats to either of these feet.

*b.* Two other feet of which the student will need to know the names early are the **Trochee**, or — ∪, as in *īndē* or *prīmus*, and the **Iambus**, or ∪ —, as in *amō* or *dolēns*. In beating time one would give three beats to either of these feet.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin, as in languages spoken to-day, the poet, using in the main the pronunciation of daily speech, so arranged his words that, for any reader, they made rhythm.

Quantity is accordingly not a matter of verse alone, but a matter of *Pronunciation* in general, and is so treated in this grammar (16-40).

<sup>2</sup> The shortest unit of pronunciation is technically called *mora*, *delay*. The ancient Roman grammarians tell us that a long syllable contained two *morae*, and this statement is consistent with what we find in Latin poetry. The same of course holds, in a general way, for prose, though the proportion must have been less exact.



**638.** The word **Metre** strictly means a *measure* in the composition of a verse. But it is more generally used for a *kind* of metrical system, whatever this may be. Thus we might say of a given system "this metre is dactylic."

*a.* The two kinds of metre which the student meets in his earlier reading in Latin are the Dactylic Hexameter and the Dactylic Pentameter.

### The Dactylic Hexameter

**639.** The **Dactylic Hexameter** is made up of six Dactyls or Spondees.

*multā* | *mōle* do|cendus a|pricō | *parcere* | *prātō*; Ep. 1, 14, 30.

*a.* The last foot *must be* a Spondee. The fifth foot *generally* is a Dactyl. The other feet may be either Dactyls or Spondees.

The length of the final syllable of the verse is of no consequence,<sup>1</sup> since there is regularly a slight pause at the end (see 641, n. 3).

The scheme may be thus indicated (the second form showing the relative length of the syllables in musical notation):



Observe that there are *four* beats to the measure, not, as in the English hexameter, three.

*b.* Verses with a spondee in the fifth foot ("spondaic verses") are rare.

*cōstitit* | *atque* ocu|lis Phrygi|a agmina | *circum*|spexit; Aen. 2, 68.

*c.* **Variety of Effect** is produced by the more skilful poets (in this respect Virgil is first) by varying the proportion of dactyls to spondees. An accumulation of dactyls gives an effect of rapidity of action, or of excitement of feeling; while an accumulation of spondees gives the effect of slow or difficult motion, of depression, of fear, etc., etc. Examples of extreme cases follow, the first describing the swift galloping of horses, the second the fearful aspect of the monster Polyphemus:

*Quadrupē*|dante pu|trem soni|tū quatit | *ungula* | *campum*; Aen. 8, 596.

*Mōnstrum* hor|rendum, in|fōrme in|gēns, cui | *lūmen* ad|ēptum; Aen. 3, 658.

<sup>1</sup> The last foot, therefore, though it is convenient to call it a Spondee, will often be made up of a long syllable plus a short (— ∪), i.e. will strictly be a Trochee.

d. The best poets aim not to let many words end with the end of a foot. But in the fifth foot this is not avoided.

urbs an|tiqua fu|it, Tyri|i tenu|ère col|lōnī; Aen. 1, 13.

**640.** 1. **Caesura** ("cutting") is the ending of a word *before* the end of the foot.

a. The word which thus cuts the foot by its ending may be of any length; see *urbs*, *fruit*, *antiqua*, and *tenūere* in the verse above.

There *may* be a caesura in every foot, as in the verse above.

2. **Diaeresis** ("dividing") is the ending of a word *with* the end of the foot (marked ‡). Thus in the first foot of

et soror ‡ et con|iūnx, ū|nā cum | gente tot | annōs; Aen. 1, 47.

a. Diaeresis is thus the opposite of Caesura.

**641.** The **Principal Caesura** (marked ||) commonly called simply *the* Caesura, is a caesura which falls at a natural pause in the verse, not far from the middle.

This natural pause may be for the sake of the sense as well as the sound, or merely for the sound (i.e. for an agreeable breaking of the long verse into parts).<sup>1</sup>

a. The Caesura is called **Masculine**, when it falls after the first syllable of the foot, **Feminine** (from the softer effect), when it falls after the second syllable of the foot. See the principal caesuras under *b*, below.

b. The Principal Caesura is generally in the third foot,<sup>2</sup> less frequently in the fourth.<sup>3</sup>

*In the Third Foot:*

turbine | corripu|it || scopu|lōque in|fixit a|cūtō; Aen. 1, 45.

(The caesura here is masculine.)

ō pas|sī gravi|ōra || da|bit deus | hīs quoque | finem; Aen. 1, 199.

(The caesura here is feminine.)

*In the Fourth Foot:*

Tŷdī|dē, mē|ne Ilia|cīs || oc|cumbere | campīs; Aen. 1, 97.

(The caesura here is masculine.)

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the following verses from Longfellow's *Evangeline*, Part I. In the first, the caesura is for the sense as well as the sound. In the second it is for the sound only.

Columns of pale blue smoke, || like clouds of incense arising.

Sweet was her breath as the breath || of kine that feed in the meadows.

<sup>2</sup> Technically called *penthemimeral*, i.e. after the fifth half.

<sup>3</sup> Technically called *hepthemimeral*, i.e. after the seventh half.

c. Sometimes there are two or even three Caesuras. And it may be impossible to say which is the most important one.

exper|tī ; || revo|cāte ani|mōs, || maes|tumque ti|mōrem ; Aen. 1, 202.

insig|nem || pie|tāte || vi|rum || tot ad|ire la|bōres ; Aen. 1, 10.

NOTE 1. In order not to leave the parts of the verse unbalanced, a caesura in the fourth foot is often accompanied by another in the second foot,<sup>1</sup> as above, or by a diaeresis, with natural pause of sense,<sup>2</sup> in the first or second foot, as in

ast ego || quae dī|vum incē|dō || rē|gīna lo|visque ; Aen. 1, 46.

in pup|pim ferit ; || excuti|tur, || prō|nusque ma|gister ; Aen. 1, 115.

NOTE 2. When a diaeresis with sense-pause falls at the end of the fourth foot, it is called the Bucolic Diaeresis.<sup>3</sup>

dīc mihi, | Dāmoe|tā, || cu|ium<sup>4</sup> pecus ? || An Meli|boē ? Ecl. 3, 1.

NOTE 3. The Romans regularly made a slight pause at the end of a verse, as is shown by the fact that a vowel in that place was ordinarily not slurred (646) into an initial vowel in the next verse.

Carthā|gō Itali|am con|trā || Tibe|rīnaque | longē

Ōstia, | dīves o|pum || studi|isque as|perrima | bellī ; Aen. 1, 12 and 13.

NOTE 4. Hypermetric (i.e. over-measure) Verses. Occasionally a poet puts an *extra syllable* at the end of a verse, slurring it into a vowel beginning the next verse. The slurring is in this case called *Synapheia* ("joining").

iactē|mur, doce|ās : || ig|nārī homi|numque lo|cōrumque  
errā|mus ; Aen. 1, 332.

### The Dactylic Pentameter

642. The Dactylic Pentameter<sup>5</sup> is an hexameter with a pause replacing the second long syllable of the spondee in the third and sixth feet.

a. The Pentameter is regularly used in alternation with the Hexameter. The two together form the *Elegiac Stanza*.<sup>6</sup>

b. In the first half of the Dactylic Pentameter, spondees may be used in place of Dactyls. In the second, only Dactyls are possible.

c. The first half always ends with a long syllable, and this syllable always ends a word.

<sup>1</sup> Technically called *trithemimeral*, i.e. *after the third half*.

<sup>2</sup> Though the words Caesura and Diaeresis *may* apply to any foot (see 640, 1, a), they are ordinarily used of verse-pauses only, as in the present section.

<sup>3</sup> Because especially used by the bucolic (i.e. pastoral) poets.

<sup>4</sup> The first syllable of *cuium* is long, though the vowel is not. (Pronounce *cui-ium*; see 29, 2, a.)

<sup>5</sup> The name, which is ancient, is wrong. The verse is really a twice-clipped Hexameter.

<sup>6</sup> Also called *Elegiac Distich* ("distich" means "containing two verses").

d. The scheme of the Elegiac Stanza is therefore as follows :

{ Hexameter :  $\_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup$   
 { Pentameter :  $\_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \wedge | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \cup | \_ \cup \wedge$   
 { Hexameter : *sponte su|ā car|mēn nume|rōs veni|ēbat ad | aptōs*  
 { Pentameter : *et quod | temptā|bam  $\wedge$  | scribere | versus e|rat  $\wedge$  ; Ov.*  
 Trist. 4, 10, 25-26.

e. Variety of effect is sought, and division of words between feet is made, in the Pentameter, as in the Hexameter (639, c, d).

f. In Ovid, the last word of the Pentameter is generally one of two syllables.

g. In Ovid, the sense is usually complete at the end of each stanza.

**643.** Scanning is the dividing of a verse into feet in reading, without reference to word-accent or sense, as in 645, 1.

#### Relation of Ictus to Accent

**644.** The writers of the Dactylic Hexameter generally made accent and ictus fall together in the last two feet, as in *conderet | urbem* ; Aen. 1, 5.

a. A monosyllabic ending like *prae|ruptus a|quae mōns*, Aen. 1, 105, is rare, and is meant always to produce an unexpected and striking effect.

**645.** With regard to the Roman way of reading the feet in which the ictus fell upon syllables that did not have the accent, there are two opinions, and consequently two systems of reading.

1. **First System.** When accent and ictus fell upon different syllables, the former was completely lost. Thus, in the two following verses from Ennius and Horace, the words ordinarily pronounced *antīquīs*, *austērūm*, and *studiō* are, upon this system, to be pronounced *antīquīs*, *austērūm*, and *studiō* :

*mōribus | antī|quīs rēs | stat Rō|māna vi|rīque ; Enn. Ann. 425.*  
*mōlliter | austē|rūm studi|ō fal|lente la|bōrem ; Sat. 2, 2, 12.*

a. This system of reading ("scanning") was until recently almost universal, and is still the one generally used.

2. **Second System.**<sup>1</sup> When accent and ictus fell upon different syllables, both were heard, the latter being, however, the lighter of the two, so that the essential character of the word was not changed.

a. Similarly *sense-stress* may fall upon a syllable that does not have the ictus.

<sup>1</sup> The one preferred by the authors of this grammar.

b. In the following examples, ictus is represented by a circle (or, if lighter, by a point), while accent and sense-stress are represented by dashes (thus / or ´, the shorter ones indicating lighter stress). Where ictus and accent fall together, only one sign is used.

mōribus | antiq̃uis rēs | stat Rōmāna vi|risque; Enn. Ann. 425.  
molliter | auste|rum studi|ō fal|lente la|bōrem; Sat. 2, 2, 12.

c. The effect of this separation of accent (as well as of sense-stress) from ictus may be illustrated from modern poetry, in which it is fairly frequent, and occasions no trouble to any reader. Examples will be seen in all but the first, second, and fifth of the following verses (in these three, accent and ictus fall together) :

Somewhat | bāck from the | villāge | strēet,  
Stānds | the old-fā|shioned cōun|try-seāt;  
Across | its an|tique pōr|ticō;

Longfellow, *Old Clock on the Stairs*.

Only an | unsēen | prēsence | fīlled the | āir;

Longfellow, *Hawthorne*.

Sō it | is; yet | lēt us | sīng

Hōnor | tō the | old bōw-string; Keats, *Robin Hood*.

Wēll hāth | hé done | who hāth | seīzed hap|pinēss

Hé dōth | wēll tōo, | who keeps | thāt lāw | the mīld

Bīrth-gōd|dess and | the aus|tēre fātes | fīrst gāve;

Matthew Arnold, *Fragment of an Antigone*.

d. As a practical matter in using this system, it is best at first to give a *strong* word-accent, and to try to *avoid* giving verse-ictus. Our mental constitution being what it is, a light verse-pulse (as upon "and" in the last verse from Arnold) will almost inevitably be given; and this is all that ought ever to be given in such a case.

If the pronunciation is truly quantitative (see 36, 37), it will be comparatively easy to keep word-accent as in prose. To this end, it will be a help to the student to read *slowly* and *very tranquilly*, until he has become familiar with the flow of the verse.

## PRONUNCIATIONS TO BE NOTICED, THOUGH NOT PECULIAR TO POETRY

**646. Slurring.**<sup>1</sup> As in daily speech (34, 1), a final vowel or diphthong followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* was slurred or *run into* the vowel of the following word.<sup>2</sup>

This was done so completely that no appreciable extra time was taken, even in the case of a long vowel or diphthong. Only the *quality* of the sound was clearly heard. The resulting *quantity* was entirely that of the initial vowel of the following word.

**647. Hiatus** ("*having the mouth open*") is the opposite of slurring, i.e. it is the giving of a vowel sound *in full* at the end of a word, before an initial vowel or *h*. (It may be marked thus: ×.)

1. It is regularly used in the case of the Interjections *ō*, *āh*, *heu*, *prō*.

*ō* pater, | *ō* × homi|num rē|rumque ae|terna po|testās; Aen. 10, 18.

2. It is occasionally used in other words after the principal caesura, or before a stop, or anywhere before Greek words (rarely otherwise).

et vē|ra inces|sū patu|it deg. × | Ille ubi | mātrem; Aen. 1, 405.

quid struit? | aut quā | spē × ini|mica in | gente mo|rātur? Aen. 4, 235.

tūne il|le Aenē|ās, quem | Dardani|ō × An|chisae; Aen. 1, 617.

**648. Semih hiatus**, or *Half Hiatus*, is the giving of *half* of a long vowel sound (namely a corresponding *short* sound), instead of slurring completely, at the end of a word before an initial vowel, or vowel with *h*.

victor a|pud rapi|dum Simo|enta sut | Ilī|ō | altō; Aen. 5, 261.

a. Ae is the only diphthong that admits Hiatus or Half Hiatus.

**649. Iambic Shortening.** The poets, especially the comic, satiric, and epigrammatic poets, often availed themselves of the tendency in popular speech to shorten a long syllable after an accented short syllable (change of *—* to *—*). See 28, 5, note).

tū cavē | nē minu|ās; tū, | nē ma|ius faci|ās id; Sat. 2, 3, 177. (Cavē for cavē.)

**650. Syncope** ("*cutting-out*") is the omission of a short unaccented vowel.

excide|rant ani|mō; manet | altā | mente re|postum (for repositum); Aen. 1, 26.

<sup>1</sup> Technically called by the Greeks and Romans *Synaloepha*, or *smearing together*. The word *Elision* (*Ēlisiō*) is used only by the *later* Roman Grammarians.

<sup>2</sup> The final vowel, or vowel with *m*, was not cut out.

## PRONUNCIATIONS PECULIAR TO POETRY

**651. Unconscious Compression of Syllables of Extra Length.** It often happens that a syllable, besides containing a long vowel, contains a consonant, or even two consonants, at the end, as in *āc-tus*, *sānc-tus*. A similar thing may happen at the end of a word before another beginning with a consonant, as in *deōs Latiō*, Aen. 1, 6. In daily speech, there was additional length in such cases. In verse, there must have been (as in modern verse in similar cases) an *unconscious compression* of each sound, which would bring the whole into the time belonging to the syllable in the regular march of the verse. This, however, would still leave the vowel perceptibly different from a short vowel.

**652. Occasional Use of Old-fashioned Pronunciations.** The Roman poet occasionally employed pronunciations which, though once in regular use, had passed away in daily speech :

1. In place of the pronunciations *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ibi*, *ubi*, the old pronunciations *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*, might be used (28, 3).

*mūsa mi|hī cau|sās memo|rā, quō | nūmine | laesō; Aen. 1, 8.*

2. In place of such regular pronunciations as *arat*, *videt*, *erat*, *peteret*, *ferar*, *amor*, etc., the old pronunciations *arāt*, *vidēt*, *erāt*,<sup>1</sup> *peterēt*, *ferār*, *amōr*,<sup>2</sup> *pātēr*, etc., might be used (26, note), especially in the caesura.<sup>3</sup>

*quī tene|ant, nam|in|culta vi|dēt, homi|nēsne fe|raene; Aen. 1, 308.*

*Pergama | cum pete|rēt in|conces|sōsque hyme|naeōs; Aen. 1, 651.*

*et dīs | cāra fe|rār et | vertice | sīdera | tangam; Met. 7, 61.*

*omnia | vincit A|mōr: et | nōs cē|dāmus A|mōrī; Ecl. 10, 69.*

3. In the Third Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative Active an old penult with short *e* (-*ērunt*) is occasionally used by the poets.<sup>4</sup>

*obstipu|ī, stetē|runtque co|mae et vōx | faucibus | haesit; Aen. 2, 774.*

**653. Employment of Pronunciations Coming into Use in Daily Speech.** Common speech tended to shorten the *i* before -*us* in Pronominal Genitives (21, note). The poets sometimes take advantage of this pronunciation.

*ūnīus | ob no|xam et furi|ās A|lācis O|līeī; Aen. 1, 41.*

**654. Lengthening of Syllables Short in Daily Speech.**<sup>5</sup> In the first place ("thesis")<sup>6</sup> of any foot, a syllable which had never regularly been

<sup>1</sup> Similarly *subiūt*, Aen. 8, 363, but for a different reason (152, 3, note). Virgil uses these long forms in -*t* only in the first syllable ("thesis") of the second, third, or fourth foot.

<sup>2</sup> *Puēr* of Ecl. 9, 66, which never had the long *e* in speech, is to be explained by 654.

<sup>3</sup> This usage is technically called *Diástole*, or "*drawing out*."

<sup>4</sup> Technically called "*Systole*," or "*drawing together*," i.e. shortening.

<sup>5</sup> The accented part of the foot. The remainder is called the "*arsis*."

long in daily speech might be lengthened.<sup>1</sup> This happens especially with the enclitic *-que*, and the endings *-a*, *-er*, *-is*, *-us*, and *-ur*.<sup>2</sup>

līmīna|quē lau|rusque de|ī, tō|tusque mo|vērī; Aen. 3, 91.

dōna de|hinc au|rō gravi|ā sec|tōque ele|phantō; Aen. 3, 464.

per ter|ram, et ver|sā pul|vīs in|scribitur | hastā; Aen. 1, 478.

et di|repta do|mūs et | parvī | cāsus I|ūlī; Aen. 2, 563.

litora | iactē|tūr odi|is Iū|nōnis a|cerbae; Aen. 1, 668.

**655. Separation of a Mute from a Following Liquid.** The mute may be pronounced with the preceding vowel, adding a unit to the time, instead of being pronounced, as usually, in the same impulse with the liquid (14.2, note).

aut tere|brāre ca|vās ute|rī et temp|tāre la|teb|rās; Aen. 2, 38. (Contrast tum levis | haut ul|trā late|brās iam | quaerit i|māgō; Aen. 10, 663.)

**656. 1. Consonantal i and u Pronounced as Vowels.** Consonantal i and u may be pronounced more fully, becoming vowels (2).

nunc mare | nunc silu|ae (— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ^); Epod. 13, 2. (Siluae for silvae.)

**2. Vowels i and u Pronounced as Consonants.** The vowels i and u may be compressed, thus becoming consonants (2). This pronunciation throws the preceding consonant back into the preceding syllable, and makes that syllable long, even if in ordinary pronunciation it is short.

aedifi|cant sec|tāque in|texit | ab-iete | costās; Aen. 2, 16. (Pronounce *ab-yete*.)

cōnūb|iō iun|gam stabi|li propri|amque di|cābō; Aen. 1, 73. (Pronounce cōnūb|yō.)

**657. Inventions of New Pronunciations.** For a few words that had to be used in poetry, but were difficult or impossible in their ordinary pronunciation, a new one might be devised. Thus Virgil has *Āsiae* in Aen. 3, 1, but *Āsia* in 7, 701; *Ītaliā* in 1, 2, but *Ītalī* in 1, 109; *Prīamidēn* in 6, 494, but *Prīamēia* in 2, 403.

**658. Contraction of Vowels.**<sup>3</sup> Difficult words are sometimes made possible to use through the contraction of two vowels. Thus *Īlioneī* in Aen. 1, 120; *alveō* in 6, 412; *sciō* in 3, 602; *dēhinc* in 1, 131 (contrast *dōna de|hinc* in 3, 464).

**659. Tmesis** ("cutting in two"). A poet often obtains variety, and sometimes can employ a word not otherwise possible to use, by cutting a compound into two parts. Thus *hāc celebrāta tenus* (*hāctenus celebrāta*), Aen. 5, 603; *super ūnus eram* (*supereram* would be impossible in the Dactylic Hexameter); Aen. 2, 567.

<sup>1</sup> Most of the syllables so lengthened come before a natural pause, generally the caesura.

<sup>2</sup> Occasionally also with *-ul*, *-ut*, *-it*, as in *procūl*, Aen. 8, 98; *capūt*, 10, 394; *facit*, Ecl. 7, 23.

<sup>3</sup> Technically called Synizēsis, or Synaeresis, a taking-together.



# PART VI

## APPENDIX

### THE ROMAN CALENDAR

**660.** The Romans divided time, as we do, by years, months, days, and hours.

**661.** A given year as date was indicated either:

1. By the names of the consuls in the Ablative Absolute with *cōn-sulibus* (see first example in **421**); or, less commonly

2. By the number of the year as reckoned from the supposed date of the founding of the city (753 B.C.).

*annō trecentēsimō quīnquāgēsimō post Rōmam conditam, in the three hundred and fiftieth year after the founding of Rome*; Rep. I, 16, 25.

a. To convert to our reckoning, subtract from 754 (upon the principle explained in footnote 4 below). Thus the date in the example above is  $754 - 350 = 404$ .

**662.** The months were *Iānuārius*, *Februārius*, *Mārtius*, *Aprīlis*, *Maius*, *Iūnius*, *Iūlius*, *Augustus*, *September*, *Octōber*, *November*, *December*.<sup>1</sup>

a. The names *Iūlius*, *July*, and *Augustus*, *August*, were first given under Augustus, in honor respectively of Julius Caesar and Augustus himself. Before this time these months were called respectively *Quīntilis* and *Sextilis*.<sup>2</sup>

**663.** After the reform of the Calendar by Julius Caesar in 46 B.C., the number of days assigned to the various months was as now.

**664.** Days were reckoned from three fixed points in the month: the Kalends, or first day, and the Nones and Ides, respectively the seventh and fifteenth days in March, May, July, and October, the fifth and thirteenth in the other months<sup>3</sup> (*Kalendae*, *Nōnae*,<sup>4</sup> *Idūs*, abbreviated *K.* or *Kal.*, *Nōn.*, *Id.*).

<sup>1</sup> Originally adjectives. Thus (*mēnsis*) *Iānuārius*.

<sup>2</sup> The Roman year originally began with March. Hence the old names of *Quīntilis* (fifth month), and *Sextilis* (sixth), and the names of the remaining months (*September*, the seventh month, *Octōber*, the eighth, *November*, the ninth, *December*, the tenth).

<sup>3</sup> Before the reform of the calendar, March, May, July, and October were reckoned as of 31 days each, February of 28, and the rest of 29. The greater length of the first-mentioned months is the reason why the Nones and the Ides were put correspondingly later in them.

<sup>4</sup> So called because it was the ninth day, by the Roman way of reckoning (which includes the day reckoned *10*), before the Ides. Thus the 7th is the ninth day back in the row 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15.

**665.** The various days of the month are reckoned as such and such a day *before* one of these fixed points. The day immediately before the fixed points was so named, namely *prīdiē* (*Kalendās*, *Nōnās*, or *īdūs*), *the day before* (*the Kalends*, etc.). Other days were designated by their number before the fixed points, both days being counted in the reckoning. Thus, while January 31 was *prīdiē Kal. Feb.* (the day before the first of February), January 30 was *diēs tertius ante Kal. Feb.* (the third day back in the row — 30, 31, 1). The case is similar with the days before the Nones or Ides.

Hence the rule for changing a modern date (except the day immediately before a fixed point, or *prīdiē*) is :

1. For days before the Nones or Ides, add one to the date of the Nones or Ides in the given month, and subtract the given number.

Thus Jan. 2 = 5 (date of Nones in Jan.) + 1 - 2 = the 4th day before *Nōn. Iān.*

2. For days before the Kalends, add two<sup>1</sup> to the number of days in the month concerned, and subtract the given number.

Thus Jan. 28 equals 31 + 2 - 28 = the 5th day before *Kal. Feb.*

**666.** The grammatical form for the Kalends, Nones, and Ides as dates is the Ablative of the Time at Which (439). Thus *Kalendās Februāriis*, (on) *February 1st*.

**667.** For the other days two forms are in common use. Thus :

Jan. 29 = *quārtō (diē ante) Kal. Feb.* = *IV Kal. Feb., or*

Jan. 29 = *ante diem quārtum Kal. Feb.* = *a. d. IV Kal. Feb.*

a. The second way is perhaps descended from an original *ante (diē quārtō) Kalendās Februāriās*, *before (namely on the fourth day) the Kalends of February*. The Ablative would easily pass over to the Accusative, in consequence of its position immediately after *ante*.

**668.** The second of these forms is the more common. It is thought of as one word, so that *ex*, *in*, or *ad* may be used before it. Thus "from January 29 to November 3" = *ex a. d. IV Kal. Feb. usque ad a. d. III Nōn. Nov.*

**669.** In leap year an extra day was inserted after Feb. 24 (*a. d. VI Kal. Mārt.*), which was called *the sixth day over again*, i.e. *a. d. bissextum Kal. Mārt.* Hence leap year was called *annus bissextilis*. After this day the reckoning went on as usual.

<sup>1</sup> This is because one has to reckon in not only the last day of the month, but also the first of the next (*Kalendae*). Hence the days reckoned are 28, 29, 30, 31, 1, so that 28 is the fifth day back.

a. Before the reform, the year (355 days) was short of the true year. To make up for the difference, an extra month (*mēnsis intercalāris*) of varying length (27 or 28 days), was inserted by the Pontifices after the 23d of February, the rest of February being then omitted.

**670.** 1. The day was divided into two sets of twelve hours each, one running from sunrise to sunset, the other from sunset to sunrise. Thus the first hour is *hōra prima* (at night *hōra prima noctis*), the second, *hōra secunda*, the third, *hōra tertia*, etc. But it is often impossible for us to tell whether, for a given hour, the Romans meant at the *end* of that hour (*hōra prima* = seven o'clock), or *within* that hour (*hōra prima* = between six and seven).

a. The hours differed greatly in length at different times in the year.

2. In camp the night was divided into four watches of three Roman hours each (*vigilia prima, secunda, tertia, quārta*).

## 671.

## CALENDAR

DAYS OF OUR MONTH	MARCH, MAY, JULY, OCTOBER	JANUARY, AUGUST, DECEMBER	APRIL, JUNE, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER	FEBRUARY
1	Kal.	Kal.	Kal.	Kal.
2	a.d. VI Nōn.	a.d. IV Nōn.	a.d. IV Nōn.	a.d. IV Nōn.
3	a.d. V "	a.d. III "	a.d. III "	a.d. III "
4	a.d. IV "	prid. "	prid. "	prid. "
5	a.d. III "	Nōn.	Nōn.	Nōn.
6	prid. "	a.d. VIII Īd.	a.d. VIII Īd.	a.d. VIII Īd.
7	Nōn.	a.d. VII "	a.d. VII "	a.d. VII "
8	a.d. VIII Īd.	a.d. VI "	a.d. VI "	a.d. VI "
9	a.d. VII "	a.d. V "	a.d. V "	a.d. V "
10	a.d. VI "	a.d. IV "	a.d. IV "	a.d. IV "
11	a.d. V "	a.d. III "	a.d. III "	a.d. III "
12	a.d. IV "	prid. "	prid. "	prid. "
13	a.d. III "	Īd.	Īd.	Īd.
14	prid. "	a.d. XIX Kal.	a.d. XVIII Kal.	a.d. XVI Kal.
15	Īd.	a.d. XVIII "	a.d. XVII "	a.d. XV "
16	a.d. XVII Kal.	a.d. XVII "	a.d. XVI "	a.d. XIV "
17	a.d. XVI "	a.d. XVI "	a.d. XV "	a.d. XIII "
18	a.d. XV "	a.d. XV "	a.d. XIV "	a.d. XII "
19	a.d. XIV "	a.d. XIV "	a.d. XIII "	a.d. XI "
20	a.d. XIII "	a.d. XIII "	a.d. XII "	a.d. X "
21	a.d. XII "	a.d. XII "	a.d. XI "	a.d. IX "
22	a.d. XI "	a.d. XI "	a.d. X "	a.d. VIII "
23	a.d. X "	a.d. X "	a.d. IX "	a.d. VII "
24	a.d. IX "	a.d. IX "	a.d. VIII "	a.d. VI "
25	a.d. VIII "	a.d. VIII "	a.d. VII "	a.d. V[VI] "
26	a.d. VII "	a.d. VII "	a.d. VI "	a.d. IV[V] "
27	a.d. VI "	a.d. VI "	a.d. V "	a.d. III[IV] "
28	a.d. V "	a.d. V "	a.d. IV "	prid.Kal.[III] "
29	a.d. IV "	a.d. IV "	a.d. III "	[prid. Kal.]
30	a.d. III "	a.d. III "	prid. "	(The forms in brackets are for leap year.)
31	prid. "	prid. "		

## ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES

## ROMAN MEASURES OF MONEY AND WEIGHT

**672.** The original unit of weight and value was the *as*, a mass of copper, weighing nearly one pound, or *libra*. This was divided into twelve ounces (*ūnciae*).

The following table shows the more important fractions :

Ounces		Ounces	
$\frac{1}{2}$ <i>sēmiūncia</i> ( <i>sēmis</i> = a half)		7 <i>septūnx</i> ( <i>septem ūnciae</i> )	
1 <i>ūncia</i>		8 <i>bessis</i> or <i>bes</i>	
2 <i>sextāns</i> (a sixth)		9 <i>dōdrāns</i> ( <i>dēquadrāns</i> , a fourth off)	
3 <i>quadrāns</i> (a fourth); also <i>terūncius</i>		10 <i>dēxtāns</i> ( <i>dēsextāns</i> , a sixth off)	
4 <i>triēns</i> (a third)		11 <i>deūnx</i> ( <i>deūncia</i> , an ounce off)	
5 <i>quīncūnx</i> ( <i>quīnque ūnciae</i> )		12 <i>as</i> (of money, <i>libra</i> of weight)	
6 <i>sēmis</i> or <i>sēmissis</i> (a half)			

**673.** 1. For any kind of thing, these terms may be used to express fractions having 12 for a denominator. Thus  $\frac{1}{6}$  = *sextāns*,  $\frac{5}{12}$  = *quīncūnx*,  $\frac{2}{3}$  = *dōdrāns*.

2. Fractions having 1 for a numerator may be indicated by an ordinal with or without *pars*. Thus  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *dīmidia* or *dīmidia pars* (also *dīmidium*),  $\frac{1}{3}$  = *tērtia* or *tertia pars*.<sup>1</sup>

3. Fractions having a denominator greater by 1 than the numerator may be indicated by a cardinal number with *partēs*. Thus  $\frac{2}{3}$  = *duae partēs*.

4. Other fractions are indicated by the cardinal for a numerator and the ordinal for a denominator. Thus  $\frac{2}{5}$  = *duae quīntae*.

5. Fractions may also be indicated by addition. Thus  $\frac{3}{4}$  = *dīmidia et quārta* ( $\frac{1}{2}$  +  $\frac{1}{4}$ ).

6. Proportions in inheritances are indicated by any of these forms, with *ex*. Thus *hērēs ex asse* (Plin. Ep. 5, 1, 9), *heir to the whole*; *hērēs ex parte quārta* (*ibid.*), *heir to a fourth*; *hērēs ex triente*, *heir to a third*, etc.

**674.** The *as* was reduced till, at the close of the Second Punic War, it weighed but one ounce. Its value was then a little less than two cents (or about 1*d.* English).

**675.** 1. Other coins were the *sēstertius*, a small silver coin, the *dēnārius*, a larger silver coin, and the *aureus* or gold piece. The sum of a thousand sesterces was called *sēstertium* (originally a Genitive Plural, "of sesterces"). The word *nummus* ("coin") is often attached to *sēstertius* or *aureus*. When used alone, *nummus* stands for *sēstertius*. The table is as follows :<sup>1</sup>

$2\frac{1}{2}$ <i>assēs</i>	= 1 <i>sēstertius</i> <sup>2</sup> (a little more than 4 cents, or 2 <i>d.</i> English money).
4 <i>sēstertiī</i>	= 1 <i>dēnārius</i> <sup>3</sup> (a little more than 16 cents, or 8 <i>d.</i> English money).
25 <i>dēnāriī</i>	= 1 <i>aureus</i> (about \$4, or 17 <i>s.</i> English money).
1000 <i>sēstertiī</i>	= 1 <i>sēstertium</i> (about \$42.50, or £8 10 <i>s.</i> English money).

<sup>1</sup> Since values frequently changed, a table can be only approximate.

<sup>2</sup> *Sēmis tertius*, the third part a half, i.e. two whole numbers +  $\frac{1}{2}$ .

<sup>3</sup> *Dēnārius*, a piece of money containing ten *assēs* (*dēnī*); cf. "tenpence."

2. The reckoning of money was by the sesterce and its multiples, as follows:

a) Up to 2000, by sesterces. Thus *trigintā sēstertii*, 30 sesterces; *trecenti sēstertii*, 300 sesterces.

b) From 2000 to 1,000,000, by *thousands* of sesterces, i.e. by *sēstertia*. The numeral used was generally the distributive (*sometimes* the ordinal). Thus: *bina (duo) sēstertia*, 2000 sesterces.

c) From 1,000,000 upwards, by *hundreds of thousands* of sesterces, i.e. by *centēna milia sēstertium*.<sup>1</sup> The numeral used was the adverb. Thus *decies centēna milia sēstertium* = ten times 100,000 = 1,000,000.

But the words *centēna milia* are generally omitted, and sometimes even the word *sēstertium*. Thus *decies sēstertium*, or simply *decies*, = 1,000,000.

3. The sign HS was used for either a *sēstertius* or a *sēstertium*, the difference being ordinarily shown by the use of cardinal and distributive numerals respectively. With an abbreviation in Roman numerals, a straight mark drawn above means *sēstertia*. Thus:

HS XXX = *trigintā sēstertii*, 30 sesterces

HS XXX̄ = *tricēsima sēstertia*, 30,000 sesterces

## 676.

## ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH

4 digiti ("finger-breadths")	= 1 palmus ("palm")
4 palmi	= 1 pēs (11.6 inches)
2½ pedēs	= 1 gradus ("step")
2 gradūs	= 1 passus ("pace") <sup>2</sup>
1000 passūs	= mille passūs or mille passuum ("mile")

a. A *stadium* (from a Greek word) was an eighth of a Roman mile (a little less than our furlong).

b. The unit of measure of land was a *iūgerum* (translated *acre*, but really a little less than  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an acre), an area of 240 by 120 feet.

## 677.

## ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY

*Liquid Measure*

1½ cyathi <sup>3</sup>	= 1 acētābulum
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmīna
2 hēmīnae	= 1 sextārius (about a pint)
6 sextārii	= 1 congius
4 congii	= 1 urna
2 urnae	= 1 amphora
20 amphorae	= 1 culleus

*Dry Measure*

1½ cyathi	= 1 acētābulum
2 acētābula	= 1 quārtārius
2 quārtārii	= 1 hēmīna
2 hēmīnae	= 1 sextārius
8 sextārii	= 1 sēmōdius
2 sēmōdii	= 1 modius (about a peck)

a. A *sextārius* (pint) thus contained 12 cyathi ( $\frac{3}{2} \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$ ).

<sup>1</sup> *Sēstertium* is here a true genitive plural.

<sup>2</sup> One double pace, that is, one easy step with each foot, or a little less than 5 feet. Hence *mille passūs*, or *mille passuum* = a little less than one English mile. (The Roman mile has been estimated at 4851 feet. The English mile = 5280 feet.)

<sup>3</sup> *Cyathus* meant originally *small ladle*.

## ROMAN NAMES

**678.** 1. The Roman regularly had three names: the **praenōmen**, or *first name* (our "given name"), the **nōmen**, or *principal name*, and the **cognōmen**, or *additional name*. Thus:

praenōmen   nōmen   cognōmen  
Mārcus   Tullius   Cicerō

a) The **praenōmen** indicates the individual, the **nōmen** the **gēns**, or largest unit of related persons (our "last name"), the **cognōmen**, the family, or smaller unit of related persons.

b) The **nōmen** always ends in **-ius**. Thus **Tullius**, **Cornēlius**, **Iūlius**.

c) The **cognōmen** originally indicated some personal peculiarity. Thus **Scaevola**, *left-handed*, **Cicerō**, *chick-pea*, or *wart*, **Balbus**, *lisp*ing. But of course these names lost all personal application as they were passed down, just as have our names **White**, **Brown**, **Armstrong**, etc.

2. A second cognomen was sometimes added to commemorate an achievement. Thus **Cornēlius Scīpiō Africānus** (*conqueror of Africa*).

a. From the Fourth Century, this was often called an **agnōmen**.

3. The **praenōmina**, with their abbreviations, are:

A. Aulus	L. Lūcius	Q. Quintus
App. Appius	M. Mārcus	Sex. Sextus
C. Gāius	M'. Manius	Ser. Servius
Cn. Gnaeus	Mām. Māmercus	Sp. Spurius
D. Decimus	N. Numerius	T. Titus
K. Kaesō	P. Pūblius	Ti(b). Tiberius

4. An adopted son took the name of the adoptive father, adding his own gentile name in the form of an adjective in **-ānus**. Thus **L. Aemilius Paulus**, being adopted by **P. Cornēlius Scīpiō**, became **P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus**.

a. But irregular methods ultimately came into fashion. Thus when **Pliny the Younger**, whose name had been **P. Caecilius Secundus**, was adopted by his uncle **C. Plinius Secundus**, instead of taking the name **C. Plinius Secundus Caecilianus** (as by the older usage he would have done), he took the name **C. Plinius Caecilius Secundus**.

5. Women had no **praenōmina**, but were called by the feminine form of the name of the **gēns**. Thus the daughter of **Mārcus Tullius Cicerō** was called **Tullia**. If there were two daughters, they were distinguished as the "elder" and the "younger" (thus **Tullia Maior**, **Tullia Minor**). If there were other daughters, the later-born were called "third" (**Tertia**), "fourth" (**Quārta**), etc.

## HIDDEN QUANTITY

**679.** List of words containing a long vowel before two or more consonants. Omitted are :

- 1) Words containing *ns*, *nf*, *nx*, *nct*, before which the vowel is always long. See 18.
- 2) Verbs in *-scō*, in all but three of which the vowel before the suffix is long. See 23, 4.
- 3) Shortened Perfect forms in *-āsse*, *-ēsse*, *-isse*, *-āstī*, *-ēstī*, *-istī*, etc., in which the vowel before *s* is always long. See 163, 1, and footnote 1.
- 4) Nominatives in *-x*, *-ps*, *-bs*, before which the vowel is long if long in the other cases, as *lēx*, Gen. *lēgis*; *Cyclōps*, Gen. *Cyclōpis*; *plēbs*, Gen. *plēbis*.
- 5) Derivatives in *-ātrum*, *-ābrum*, etc. See 23, 2.
- 6) Compounds, derivatives, and parallel formations of words containing a long vowel. See 22, 24. Thus *ōrnō* implies *ōrnāmentum*, *lūxus* implies *lūxuria*, *āctum* implies *āctus* (*-ūs*), *āctiō*, *āctor*, etc.
- 7) Proper names and rare words.

But several words belonging under 5), 6), or 7) are, for greater convenience, included in the list.

āctum, āctiō, etc.	crābrō	fūrtim, fūrtum	lēmna
Adrāstus	Crēssa	fūstis	lēmnicus
Āfrica Āfri, etc.	cribrum		Lēmnos
Alcēstis	crispus	geōgraphia	lentiscus
Ālēctō	crūsta, crūstum	geōrgicus	libra
alīptēs		glōssārium	lictor
Amāzōn	dēlūbrum		lūbricus
anguilla	dēriptum	Hellēspontus	lūctus
Aquillius	dēxtāns	hibiscum	lūstrum, <i>expiation</i>
arātrum	Diēspiter	hillae	lūstrō
ārdeō, ārsī, etc.	digladior	hōrnus	lūxi
āthla	digredior	hōrsus	lūxus, <i>luxury</i>
āthlētēs	dōdrāns	Hymētus	Lycūrgus
ātrium	dolābra		
Ātrius		Īlyria	mālle, etc.
	ēbrius	inlūstris	Mānlius
bārdus	ēriptum, etc.	intrōrsus	Mārcellus
Bēdriacum	ēscā	involūcrum	Mārcus
bēstia	Esquiliae	Iōlcus	Mārs
bimēstris	Etrūscus	istōrsus	Mārsī
bovillus	existimō	iūglāns	māssa
Būthrōtum		iūrgō	mercēnnārius
	fāstus, <i>court-day</i>	iūstus	Mētrōdōrus
candēlābrum	favilla	iūxtā	mētrōpolis
catēlla, <i>chain</i>	fēstus		mille
catillus	fixī, fixum	lābrum, <i>basin</i>	milvus
chīrūrgus	flābrum	lāmna	Mōstellāria
cicātrix	-fixī, -fictum	lāpsus	mūcrō
Cīncius	flūctus	lārdum	mūscus
clātri	flūxi, flūxus	Lārs	
Clytēm(n)ēstra	fōrma	lārva	Nārnia
Cnōssus	frāctum, frāgmen	lātrīna	nārō
comēstum	-frīxi	lātrō, <i>bark</i>	nāsturclum
cōmptum, etc.	frūctus	lavābrum	nefāstus
cōntiō	frūstrā	lavācrum	nīxus
corōlla	frūstum	lēcūm (from <i>legō</i> )	nōlle, etc.

nōndum	plōstellum	rixa	tāctum, etc.
nōngentī	Pōlliō	rōscidus	Tartēssus
nōnne	Polymēstor	Rōscius	Tecmēssa
Nōrba	pōsca	rōstrum	tēctum, etc.
nūllus	prāgmaticus	Rōxānē	Telmēssus
nūndinae	Prāxitelēs	rūctō, rūctus, etc.	Tēmos
nūntiō, nūntius	prēndō	rūsum	tēxi
nūptum, nūptiae	primōrdium	rūsticus	theātrum
nūtriō, nūtrix	princeps		Thrēssa
Oenōtria	priscus	Sārsina	Tillius
ōlla	prīstinus	scēptrum	trāxi
Onchēstus	Procrūstēs	sēgnis	tristis
Opūs, Opūntis	prōmptum, etc.	sēmēstris	
ōrca	prōrsum	sēmūncia	ūllus
orchēstra	prōsper, prōsperus	sēcūncia	ūncia
ōrdior	prōstibulum	Sesōstris	ūndecim
ōrdō	Pūblicola	sēsqui-	ūsūrpō
ōrnō	pūblicus	sēstertius	
ōscitāns	Pūblius	Sēstius	vāllum, vāllus
ōsculum, ōsculor	pulvillus	Sēstos	vāsculum
Ōstia	pūrgō	simulācrum	vāstus
ōstium	pūstula	sistrum	Vēctis
ovillus	quārtus	sōbrius	vēgrandis
Ōxus	quīncūnx	Sōcratēs	Vēlābrum
pāctum (from pangō)	quīndecim	sōlstitium	Venāfrum
palimpsēstus	quīnquātrūs	sōspes	vēndō
palūster	quīnque, quintus	sōspita	vērnus
pāstillus	Quīntiliānus, Quīn-	stāgnum	vēstibulum
pāstum, pāstor, etc.	tus	stilla	vēstīgium
pēgma	quōrsum	strūxi, strūctum, etc.	vixi, victus
periclitōr		sublūstris	villa
Permēssus	rāstrum	suillus	villum
Phoenīssa	reāpse	sūmptum, etc.	vīndēmia
pīstum, pīstor, etc.	rēctum, rēctor, etc.	sūrculus	Vipsānius
plēctrum	rēgnū	sūrsus	viscus
	rēxi	Sūtrium	Xenophōn, -ōntis



## CATALOGUE OF VERBS

Most verbs of the First and Fourth Conjugations with principal parts of the usual type are omitted; and of the Denominatives of the Second Conjugation and the Inchoatives only a few are given. Compounds are not noted unless they present some irregularity in formation, or a change in the form of the root-syllable (see 41, 42). In such cases the variation is shown under the simple verb. Some compounds are also given separately with cross references to the simple verb, but generally only at the beginning of the list (compounds of *ad* and *con*), by way of illustration. A prefixed hyphen indicates that the form occurs only in compounds (not necessarily in all compounds).

Forms which are unusual and may well be omitted by a student in memorizing the principal parts are inclosed in ( ). Some very rare forms are omitted entirely. Perfect forms in *-iī* beside *-īvī* are not ordinarily noted. For the forms making up the Principal Parts, especially the fourth, see 150. When the Future Active Participle does not follow the formation of the Perfect Passive Participle (182), it is added in ( ). Forms inclosed in [ ] indicate the derivation or formation. The abbreviations Dep., Def., Impers., Irreg. are used for Deponent, Defective, Impersonal, and Irregular.

*abdō*, see *dō*.

*abiciō*, see *iaciō*.

*abigō*, see *agō*.

*abluō*, see *-luō*.

*abnuō*, see *-nuō*.

*aboleō*, *destroy*, *abolēre*, *abolēvī*, *abolitum*.

*abolēscō*, *vanish*, *abolēscere*, *abolēvī*.

*abripīō*, see *rapīō*.

*abscidō*, see *caedō*.

*abstineō*, see *teneō*.

*accendō*, see *-cendō*.

*accidō*, see *cadō*.

*accidō*, see *caedō*.

*accipiō*, see *capiō*.

*accumbō*, see *-cumbō*.

*acuō*, *sharpen*, *acuere*, *acuī*, *acūtum*.

*addō*, see *dō*.

*adficiō*, see *faciō*.

*adfligō*, see *-fligō*.

*adgredior*, see *gradior*.

*adhibeō*, see *habeō*.

*adiciō*, see *iaciō*.

*adigō*, see *agō*.

*adimō*, see *emō*.

*adipīscor*, see *apīscor*.

*adliciō*, see *-liciō*.

*adluō*, see *-luō*.

*adnuō*, see *-nuō*.

*adolēscō*, see *alēscō*.

*adquirō*, see *quaerō*.

*adsideō*, see *sedeō*.

*agnōscō*, see *nōscō*.

*agō*, *move*, *agere*, *ēgī*, *āctum*. So *circum-agō*, *per-agō*, *praeter-agō*, *sat-agō*. But *ab-igō*, *ab-igere*, *ab-ēgī*, *ab-āctum*; so *ad-igō*, *amb-igō*, *ex-igō*, *prōd-igō*, *red-igō*, *sub-igō*, *trāns-igō*. Note also *cōgō*, *cōgere*, *coēgī*, *co-āctum*; *dēgō*, *dēgere*.

*aiō*, *say*. Def. 198, 1.

*albeō*, *be white*, *albēre* [*albus*].

*albēscō*, *become white*, *albēscere*.

*alēscō*, *grow up*, *alēscere*. *co-alēscō*, *co-alēscere*, *co-aluī* (old *cōlēscō*, *cōlēscere*, *cōluī*); *ad-olēscō*, *grow up*, *ad-olēscere*, *ad-olēvī*, *ad-ultum*; *ex-olēscō*, *ex-olēscere*, *ex-olēvī*, *ex-olētum*; *in-olēscō*, *sub-olēscō* in Pres. Syst. only. See also *obsolescō*.

*algeō*, *be cold*, *algēre*, *alsī*.

*algēscō*, *get cold*, *algēscere*, *alsī*.

**alō**, *nourish*, alere, alui, altum (alitur mostly late).

**ambiō**, see **eō**.

**amicio**, *wrap about*, amicare, amictum. (Perf. rare, amiciui, amixi.)

**amō**, *love*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**amplector**, see **-plector**.

**angō**, *choke*, angere.

**aperiō**, *open*, aperire, aperui, apertum.

**apiscor**, *attain*, apisci, aptus sum. Dep. ad-ipiscor, ad-ipisci, ad-eptus sum; so ind-ipiscor, red-ipiscor.

**arceō**, *confine*, arcere, arcui. Cpds.

-erceō, -ercere, -ercui, -ercitum.

**arcessō** (sometimes accersō), *send after*, arcessere, arcessivi, arcessitum.

**ardeō**, *blaze*, ardere, arsi, arsurus.

**ardescō**, *blaze up*, ardescere, arsi, (ex)-arsurus.

**areō**, *be dry*, arere.

**arēscō**, *become dry*, arēscere, (ex)-arui.

**arguō**, *make known*, arguere, argui (argutus, Adj.).

**arō**, *plough*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

**arripiō**, see **rapio**.

**ascendō**, see **scandō**.

**ascribō**, see **scribō**.

**aspergō**, see **spargō**.

**aspiciō**, see **-spiciō**.

**attineō**, see **teneō**.

**attingō**, see **tangō**.

**audeō**, *audere*, ausus sum. Semi-Dep.

(Perf. Subj. ausim, 163, 5.)

**audiō**, *hear*, audire, audiui, auditum.

**auferō**, see **ferō**.

**augeō**, *increase*, augere, auxi, auctum.

**avē**, *hail*. Def. 200.

**balbütio**, *stammer*, balbutire.

**bibō**, *drink*, bibere, bibi, pōtum.

**blandior**, *coax*, blandiri, blanditus sum.

Dep. [blandus].

**cadō**, *fall*, cadere, cecidi, cāsurus.

Cpds. -cidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum.

**caedō**, *cut*, caedere, cecidi, caesum.

Cpds. -cidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum.

**caleō**, *be warm*, calere, calui, calitūrus.

**calēscō**, *grow warm*, calēscere, -calui.

**candēō**, *be bright*, candere, candui.

**candēscō**, *grow bright*, candēscere, -candui.

**cānēō**, *be gray*, cānere [cānus].

**cānēscō**, *grow gray*, cānēscere, cānui.

**canō**, *sing*, canere, cecini (Partic. supplied by cantātum from cantō).

Cpds. -cinō, -cinere, -cinui (rarely -cecinī).

**capessō**, *seize eagerly*, capessere, capessivi, capessitum [capiō, 212, 4].

**capiō**, *take*, capere, cēpi, captum. So ante-capiō. But in other cpds.

-cipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.

**careō**, *be without*, carere, carui, caritūrus.

**carpō**, *pluck*, carpere, carpsi, carptum.

Cpds. -cerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsi, -cerptum.

**caveō**, *take care*, cavere, cāvi, cautum. **cedo**, *give*. Def. 200.

**cēdō**, *depart*, cedere, cessi, cessum.

**-cellō**, *rise*, -cellere (celsus, Adj.).

Ante-, ex-, prae-, re-.

**-cendō**, *burn*, -cendere, -cendi, -censum [\*candō; cf. candeō]. Ac-, in-, suc-

**cēnsēō**, *rate*, *think*, cēnsere, cēnsui, cēnsus.

**cernō**, *separate*, *decide*, cernere, crēvi, -crētum (certus, Adj., rarely Partic.).

**cieō**, *stir up*, ciere, civi, citum. But ac-ciō, ac-ciere, ac-civi, ac-citum;

other cpds. vary between -ciō, -ciere, -citum, and -cieō, -ciere, -citum.

**cingō**, *gird*, cingere, cinxī, cinctum.

**clāreō**, *be bright*, clāre [clārus].

**clārēscō**, *grow bright*, clārēscere.

**claudēō**, *limp*, claudere (also claudō, claudere) [claudus].

**claudō**, *shut*, claudere, clausi, clausum.

Cpds. -clūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum.

**clepō**, *steal*, clepere, clepsi (rare verb).

**clueō**, *be said*, cluere (rare verb).

coepī, *began*, coeptum (early Latin coepiō, coepere). Def. 199, 2.

coerceō, see arceō.

cognōscō, see nōscō.

cōgō, see agō.

colō, *cultivate*, colere, coluī, cultum.

combūrō, see ūrō.

comminīscor, *devise*, comminīscī, commēntus sum. Dep. [men- in meminī, etc.].

cōmō, *comb*, cōmere, cōmpsi, cōmptum [emō].

comperiō, see -periō.

compescō, *restrain*, compescere, compescuī.

complector, see -plector.

compleō, see -pleō.

comprimō, see premō.

concidō, see cadō.

concidō, see caedō.

concinō, see canō.

concupiō, see capiō.

conclūdō, see claudō.

concupiscō, *long for*, -cupiscere, -cupivī, -cupitum [cupiō].

concutiō, see quatiō.

condō, *establish*, condere, condidī, conditum [cf. dō]. Perf. of abs-condō, abs-condī.

cōnficiō, see faciō.

cōnfiteor, see fateor.

cōnfringō, see frangō.

congrēdior, see gradior.

congruō, *agree*, congruere, congrui [con-gruō; cf. in-gruō].

coniciō, see iaciō.

cōnivēō, *blink*, cōnivēre (cōnīxī, cōnīvī, rare).

conquīrō, see quaerō.

cōnspiciō, see -spiciō.

cōnstituō, see statuō.

cōnsulō, *consult*, cōnsulere, cōnsulū, cōnsultum.

contineō, see teneō.

contingō, see tangō.

coquō, *cook*, coquere, coxi, coctum.

corripō, see rapiō.

crēdō, *believe*, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum [cf. dō].

crepō, *rattle*, crepāre, crepui (crepāvī rare), crepitum.

crēscō, *grow*, crēscere, crēvī, crētum.

cubō, *recline*, cubāre, cubui (cubāvī rare), cubitum.

cūdō, *strike*, cūdere, -cūdī, -cūsum.

-cumbō, *recline*, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum. Ac., con-, etc.

cupiō, *desire*, cupere, cupivī, cupitum.

currō, *run*, currere, cucurri, cursum.

In cpds. Perf. -cucurri and -curri, the latter more common.

dēbeō, see habeō.

decet, *it is fitting*, decēre, decuit. Impers.

dēfendō, see -fendō.

dēgō, see agō.

dēlēō, *destroy*, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum.

dēmō, see emō.

dicō, *say*, dicere, dixī, dictum. Imperat.

dic, 164, 1.

diribeō, see habeō.

discō, *learn*, discere, didici.

discutiō, see quatiō.

distinguō, see stinguō.

dīvidō, *divide*, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum.

dō, *give*, dare, dedi, datum. Irreg. 197. So circum-dō, satis-dō, etc.

But ab-dō, ab-dere, ab-didī, abditum; so ad-dō, con-dō, crēdō, dē-dō, dī-dō, ē-dō, in-dō, ob-dō, per-dō, prō-dō, red-dō, sub-dō, trā-dō, vēn-dō; in these is contained also, in part, another verb -dō, meaning *put*, and related to faciō.

doceō, *teach*, docēre, docui, doctum.

doleō, *suffer*, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus.

domō, *tame*, domāre, domuī, domitum.

dormiō, *sleep*, dormīre, dormīvī, dormītum.

dūcō, *lead*, dūcere, dūxī, ductum. Imperat. dūc, 164, 1.

edō, *eat*, ēsse, ēdī, ēsum (but com-ēstum beside com-ēsum). Irreg. 198.

**ōdō**, see **dō**.

**egēō**, *want*, *egēre*, *egui*. Ind-igeō, ind-igēre, ind-igui [ind., 51, 9].

**ēliciō**, see -**liciō**.

**ēmineō**, *project*, *ēminēre*, *ēminui* [cf. *ēminus*].

**emō**, *take*, *buy*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *ēemptum*.

Co-emō, inter-emō or inter-imō, per-emō or per-imō, ad-imō, dir-imō, ex-imō, red-imō. Cf. also *dēmō*, *take away*, *dēmere*, *dēmpsī*, *dēmp-tum*; so *cōmō*, *prōmō*, *sūmō*.

**ēō**, *go*, *īre*, *īi* (*īvi*), *itum*. Irreg. 194.

So in cpds., except *ambiō*, *go around*, *ambīre*, *ambīvī*, *ambītum*.

**ēsuriō**, *be hungry*, *ēsurire*, *ēsuritūrus* [edō, 212, 3].

**excellō**, see -**cellō**.

**excutiō**, see **quatiō**.

**exerceō**, see **arceō**.

**exolēscō**, see **alēscō**.

**experior**, see -**perior**.

**explōdō**, see **plaudō**.

**extinguō**, see -**stinguō**.

**exuō**, *take off*, *exuere*, *exui*, *exūtum* [ex-uō; cf. ind-uō].

**facessō**, *fulfil*, *depart*, *facessere*, *facessivī* (*facessi*), *facessitum* [faciō, 212, 4].

**faciō**, *make*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factum*. Imperat. *fac*, 164, 1; *faxō*, *faxim*, 163, 5. For passive, see **fiō**. So *benefaciō*, *cale-faciō*, etc., 31, 3; 218, 3. But in prepositional cpds. -*ficiō*, -*ficere*, -*fēcī*, -*fectum*.

**fallō**, *deceive*, *fallere*, *fefellī* (*falsus*, Adj.). Re. Perf. *re-fellī*. [\**fal-nō*, 168, D.]

**farcīō**, *stuff*, *farcire*, *farsī*, *fartum* (*farctum* rare). Cpds. -*ferciō* or -*farcīō*, -*fertum*.

**fateor**, *confess*, *fatēri*, *fassus* sum. Dep. Cpds. -*fitēor*, -*fitēri*, -*fessus* sum.

**faveō**, *favor*, *favere*, *fāvī*, *fautum*.

**fendō**, *strike*, *fendere*, *fendī*, -*fēns* sum.

■ **Dē**, *of*.

**feriō**, *strike*, *ferire*.

**ferō**, *carry*, *ferre*, *tulī* (*tetuli*), *lātum*.

Irreg. 193. So cpds., e.g.

ad-ferō, at-tulī, al-lātum (*ad-lātum*);

au-ferō, abs-tulī, ab-lātum;

cōn-ferō, con-tulī, con-lātum (*col-lātum*);

dif-ferō, dis-tulī, di-lātum;

ef-ferō, ex-tulī, ē-lātum;

in-ferō, in-tulī, in-lātum;

of-ferō, ob-tulī (*rarely obs-tulī*), ob-lātum.

re-ferō, re-ttulī (43, 1), re-lātum (*rel-lātum*).

**ferveō**, *boil*, *fervere* (*fervī*, *ferbuī* rare), (*fervō*, *fervere*, poetical).

**fidō**, *trust*, *fidere*, *fisus* sum. Semi-Dep.

**figō**, *fix*, *figere*, *fixī*, *fixum*.

**findō**, *split*, *findere*, *fidi*, *fissum*.

**figō**, *mould*, *ingere*, *finxī*, *factum*.

**finiō**, *finish*, *finire*, *finivī*, *finitum* [*finis*].

**fiō**, *ferī*, *factus* sum, used as passive of *faciō*. Irreg. 195.

**flectō**, *turn*, *flectere*, *flexī*, *flexum* [*flec-tō*, 168, E].

**fleō**, *weep*, *flere*, *flēvī*, *flētum*.

-**figō**, *dash*, -*figere*, -*fixī*, -*factum*.

Ad, cōn-, etc.

**flō**, *blow*, *flare*, *flāvī*, *flātum*.

**flōreō**, *bloom*, *flōrere*, *flōrui* [*flōs*].

**fluō**, *flow*, *fluere*, *fluxī* (*fluxus*, Adj.).

**fodiō**, *dig*, *fodere*, *fōdī*, *fossum*.

(*for*), *speak*, *fāri*, *fātus* sum. Def. 198, 3.

**foveō**, *warm*, *cherish*, *fovēre*, *fōvī*, *fōtum*.

**frangō**, *break in pieces*, *frangere*, *frēgī*, *frāctum*. Cpds. -*fringō*, -*fringere*, -*frēgī*, -*frāctum*.

**fremō**, *growl*, *fremere*, *fremui*.

**frendō**, *crush*, *frendere*, *frēsūm* (*fresum*).

**fricō**, *rub*, *fricāre*, *fricuī*, *frictum* (*fricātum*).

**frigeō**, *be cold*, frigēre.

**frigescō**, *grow cold*, frigēscere, -frīxi.

**fruo**, *enjoy*, fruī, fructus sum (fruitūrus). Dep.

**fugiō**, *flee*, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus.

**fulciō**, *support*, fulcīre, fulsi, fultum.

**fulgeō**, *flash*, fulgēre, fulsi (fulgō, fulgere, poet.).

**fundō**, *pour*, fundere, fūdī, fūsum.

**fungor**, *perform*, fungī, fūctus sum.

Dep.

**furō**, *rage*, furere.

**gaudeō**, *rejoice*, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum.

Semi-Dep.

**gemō**, *groan*, gemere, genuī.

**gerō**, *carry*, gerere, gessi, gestum.

**gignō**, *beget*, gignere, genuī, genitum [gi-gn-ō, 168, B].

**gliscō**, *swell*, gliscere.

**gradior**, *step*, gradi, gressus sum. Dep.

Cpds. -gredior, -gredi, -gressus.

**habeō**, *hold*, habēre, habuī, habitum.

Cpds. -hibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum. Cf. also praebeō (rarely prae-hibeō), praebe-re, prae-buī, prae-bitum ; dēbeō (from dē-hibeō), dēbe-re, dē-buī, dē-bitum.

**haereō**, *stick*, haerēre, haesi, haesūrus.

**hauriō**, *drain*, haurīre, hausī, haustum (hausūrus). (Imperf. haurībant, 164, 4.)

havē, see avē.

**hebeō**, *be blunt*, hebēre.

**hiscō**, *gape*, hiscere [hi].

**horreō**, *bristle*, *be afraid*, horrēre, horruī.

havē, see avē.

**hebeō**, *be blunt*, hebēre.

**hiscō**, *gape*, hiscere [hi].

**horreō**, *bristle*, *be afraid*, horrēre, horruī.

**iaceō**, *lie*, iacēre, iacuī.

**iaciō**, *throw*, iacere, iēcī, iactum. So super-iaciō. But in other cpds.

-iciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum. For the length of the first syllable in cpds., see 30, 1.

**ici**, *struck*, ictum (īcō, icere, early Latin).

**imbuō**, *wet*, imbuerē, imbuī, imbūtum.

**immineō**, *project*, imminēre [cf. ē-mineō].

**indigeō**, see egeō.

**indulgeō**, *be kind*, indulgēre, indulsi.

**induō**, *put on*, induere, induī, indūtum [ind-uō ; cf. ex-uō].

**ingruō**, *fall upon*, ingruere, ingruī [in-gruō ; cf. con-gruō.]

**inquam**, *say*. Def. 198, 2.

**inveterāscō**, *become fixed*, -āscere, -āvi [in-veterō, vetus].

**iubeō**, *order*, iubēre, iussi, iussum.

**iungō**, *join*, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum.

**iuvō**, *aid*, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum (iuvātūrus, but ad-iūtūrus).

**lābor**, *slip*, lābi, lāpsus sum. Dep.

**laccēsō**, *excite*, laccessere, laccēsivī, laccēsītum [laciō ; cf. -liceō].

**laedō**, *hurt*, laedere, laesi, laesum. Cpds. -līdō, -līdere, -līsī, -līsūm.

**lambō**, *lick*, lambere (lambuī rare).

**languēō**, *be weak*, languēre.

**languēscō**, *become weak*, languēscere, languī.

**largior**, *lavish*, largīri, largītus sum. Dep. [largus.]

**lateō**, *lie hid*, latēre, latuī.

**lavō**, *bathe*, lavāre, lāvī, lautum or lōtum (rarely lavātum). (Early and poet. lavō, lavere.) Ē-lavō. Cf. also -luō.

**legō**, *collect*, *read*, legere, lēgī, lēctum.

So ad-legō, inter-legō, prae-legō, re-legō, sub-legō, trāns-legō ; pel-legō or per-legō (also pel-ligō, per-ligō).

But intel-legō, intel-legere, intel-lēxī, intel-lēctum, and so neg-legō (rarely Perf. intellēgī, neglēgī) ;

dī-ligō, dī-ligere, dī-lēxī, dī-lēctum ; col-ligō, col-ligere, col-lēgī, col-lēctum, and so dē-ligō, ē-ligō, sē-ligō.

**libet** (early lubet), *it is pleasing*, libēre, libuit or libitum est. Impers.

**liceō**, *be for sale*, licēre, licuī.

**liceor**, *bid*, licēri, licītus sum. Dep.

**licet**, *it is permitted*, **licēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est**. Impers.

**-liciō**, *lure*, **-licere**, **-lexi**, **-lectum**. [**\*laciō**; cf. **laccessō**.] So **ad-liciō**, **in-liciō**, **pel-liciō** (**per-liciō**). But **ē-liciō**, **ē-licere**, **ē-licui**, **ē-licitum**.

**lingō**, *lick*, **lingere**, **linxi**, **linctum**.

**linō**, *besmear*, **linere**, **lēvi**, **litum**.

**linquō**, *leave*, **linquere**, **liqui**, **-lictum**.

**liqueō**, *be fluid*, **liqueŕe**, **licui**.

**liquor**, *be fluid*, **liqui**. Dep.

**loquor**, *speak*, **loqui**, **locūtus sum**. Dep.

**lūceō**, *be light*, **lūcēre**, **lūxi** [**lūx**].

**lūdō**, *play*, **lūdere**, **lūsi**, **lūsum**.

**lūgeō**, *mourn*, **lūgēre**, **lūxi**.

**luō**, *loose, atone for*, **luere**, **luī**.

**-luō**, *wash*, **-luere**, **-luī**, **-lūtum** [**lavō**].

Ab-, ad-, con-, etc.

**madeō**, *be wet*, **madēre**, **madui**.

**maereō**, *grieve*, **maerēre**.

**mālō**, *prefer*, **mālle**, **mālui** [**volō**]. Irreg. 192.

**mandō**, *chew*, **mandere**, **mandi**, **mānsum**.

**maneō**, *remain*, **manēre**, **mānsi**, **mānsum**.

**medeor**, *remedy*, **medēri**. Dep.

**meminī**, *remember*. Def. 199, 1.

**mentior**, *deceive*, **mentīri**, **mentītus sum**. Dep.

**mereō**, *deserve*, **merēre**, **merui**, **meritum**; also Dep. **mereor**.

**mergō**, *dip*, **mergere**, **mersi**, **mersum**.

**mētior**, *measure*, **mētīri**, **mēnsus sum**. Dep.

**metō**, *mow*, **metere**, **messui**, **messum**.

**metuō**, *fear*, **metuere**, **metui**.

**micō**, *shake*, **micāre**, **micui**. So **ē-**, **inter-**; but **dī-micō**, **-āre**, **-āvi** (**-ui** rare), **-ātum**.

**mingō**, *make water*, **mingere**, **mīnxi**, **mictum**.

**minuō**, *lessen*, **minuere**, **minui**, **minūtum**.

**miscēō**, *mix*, **miscēre**, **miscui**, **mixtum**.

**misereor**, *pity*, **miserēri**, **miseritus sum** (**miseritus**). Dep.

**miseret**, *excites pity in*, **miseruit**. Impers.

**mittō**, *send*, **mittere**, **misī**, **missum**.

**molō**, *grind*, **molere**, **molui**, **molitum**.

**monēō**, *advise*, **monēre**, **monui**, **monitum**.

**mordeō**, *bite*, **mordēre**, **momordi**, **morsum**.

**morior**, *die*, **mori** (sometimes **moriri**, 165, 1), **mortuus sum** (**moritūrus**). Dep.

**moveō**, *move*, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**.

**mulceō**, *stroke*, **mulcēre**, **mulsi**, **mulsum**.

**mulgeō**, *milk*, **mulgēre**, **mulsi**, **mulsum**.

**nānciācor**, *get*, **nānciāci**, **nactus** or **nānctus sum**. Dep.

**nāscor**, *be born*, **nāsci**, **nātus sum**. Dep. **necō**, *slay*, **necāre**, **necāvi** (**necui** rare), **necātum**. **E-necō** (**ē-nicō** rare), **ē-necāre**, **ē-necui**, **ē-nectum** (**ē-nicāvi**, **ē-necātum** rare).

**necō**, *bind*, **nectere**, **nexui** (**nexi**), **nexum** [**nec-tō**, 168, E].

**neglegō**, see **legō**.

**neō**, *spin*, **nēre**, **nēvi**.

**nequeō**, see **queō**.

**ninguit** (**ningit**), *it snows*. Impers.

**niteō**, *shine*, **nitēre**, **nitui**.

**nītor**, *lean on*, **strive**, **nīti**, **nīxus** or **nīsus sum**.

**nō**, *swim*, **nāre**, **nāvi**.

**noceō**, *harm*, **nocēre**, **nocui**, **nocitum**.

**nōlō**, *will not*, **nōlle**, **nōlui** [**volō**]. Irreg. 192.

**nōscō** (early **gnōscō**), *know*, **nōscere**, **nōvi**, **nōtum**. (For **nōsse**, **nōram**, etc., see 163, 2.) So **inter-**, **per-**, **prae-**, **ignōscō**; but **agnitum** from **agnōscō** (also **ad-gnōscō**) and **cognitum** from **cognōscō**.

**nūbō**, *veil*, **marry**, **nūbere**, **nūpsi**, **nūptum**.

**-nuō**, *nod*, **-nuere**, **-nuī**. Ab-, ad- (**an-**), **in-**, **re-**.

**obliviscor**, *forget*, oblivisci, oblitus sum. Dep.

**oboediō**, *obey*, oboedire, oboedivī, oboeditum.

**obsolescō**, *wear out, go out of use*, obsolescere, obsolesvī, obsolesitum [alēscō or soleō, or both].

**occulō**, *hide*, occulere, occulvī, occultum [\*celō; cf. cēlō, cēlāre].

**ōdī**, *hate*, ōsūrus. Def. 199, 1.

**oleō**, *smell*, olēre, oluī.

**operiō**, *cover*, operire, operuī, operitum.

**oportet**, *it is necessary*, oportēre, oportuit. Impers.

**opperior**, see -perior.

**ōrdior**, *begin*, ōrdiri, ōrsus sum. Dep.

**orior**, *arise*, oriri, ortus. Dep. Pres.

Syst., except Infīn., usually of Third Conj., 165, 1.

**paciscor**, *bargain*, pacisci, pactus sum.

Dep. dē-peciscor, dē-pectus, or dē-paciscor, dē-pactus.

**paenitet**, *it repents*, paenitēre, paenituit. Impers.

**palleō**, *be pale*, pallēre, palluī.

**pandō**, *open*, pandere, pandī, passum or pāsum. Dis-pendō or dis-pandō, dis-pessum or dis-pāsum; ex-pandō, ex-pāsum (ex-passum).

**pangō**, *fix*, pangere, pānxī and pēgī, pāctum. Also Perf. pepigī, agree; cf. paciscor. Cpds. -pingō, -pingere, -pēgī, -pāctum.

**parcō**, *spare*, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus. Com-percō (com-parcō), com-persī.

**pāreō**, *appear*, pārēre, pārū.

**pariō**, *bring forth*, parere, peperī, partum (paritūrus).

**partior**, *divide*, partiri, partitus sum. Dep. [pars.]

**parturiō**, *be in travail*, parturire, parturivī [pariō, 212, 3].

**pāscō**, *feed*, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum.

**pateō**, *be open*, patēre, patuī.

**patior**, *endure*, pati, passus sum. Dep. per-petior, per-petī, per-pessus.

**paveō**, *fear*, pavēre, pāvī.

**paviō**, *strike*, pavire.

**pectō**, *comb*, pectere, pexī, pexum [pectō, 168, E].

**pellō**, *strike*, pellere, pepulī, pulsum [\*pel-nō, 168, D]. In cpds. Perf. -pulī; re-ppulī (43, 1) from re-pellō.

**pendeō**, *hang down*, pendēre, pependī. In cpds. Perf. -pendī, Partic. prō-pēnsūm.

**pendō**, *weigh*, pendere, pependī, pēnsūm. In cpds. Perf. -pendī.

**percellō**, *cast down*, -cellere, -culī, -culsum.

**perdō**, *destroy*, perdere, perdidī, perditum [dō].

**pergō**, see regō.

**-periō**, **-perior** :

com-periō, *learn*, -perire, -peri, -pertum.

com-perior, *learn*, -periri, -pertus sum. Dep.

ex-perior, *try*, -periri, -pertus sum. Dep.

op-perior, *await*, -periri, -pertus sum. Dep.

re-periō, *find*, re-perire, re-pperi (43, 1), re-pertum.

**petō**, *seek*, petere, petivī or petiī, petitum.

**piget**, *it grieves*, pigēre, piguit or pigitum est. Impers.

**pingō**, *paint*, pingere, pīnxī, pictum.

**pīnsō**, *pound*, pīnsere, pīnsuī (pīnsiī), pīstum (pīnsitum).

**placeō**, *please*, placēre, placuī, placitum. Com-placeō, per-placeō, but dis-pliceō.

**plangō**, *strike*, plangere, plānxī, plāncitum.

**plaudō**, *clap*, plaudere, plausī, plausum. Ap-plaudō, circum-plaudō, but ex-plōdō, sup-plōdō.

**plectō**, *plait*, plectere, plexī, plexum [plec-tō, 168, E].

-plector, *embrace*, -plectī, -plexus sum.  
Dep. Am-, circum-, com-.

-pleō, *fill up*, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.  
Com-, ex-, im-, etc.

plīcō, *fold up*, plīcāre, -plīcāvī or -plīcuī,  
-plīcātum or -plīcītum.

pluit, *it rains*, pluere, pluit and plūvit.  
Impers.

polleō, *be powerful*, pollēre.

polliceor, see liceor.

polluō, *soil*, polluere, polluī, pollūtum  
[cf. luēs].

pōnō, *place*, pōnere, posuī, positum  
[\*po-s(i)nō].

porriciō, *offer in sacrifice*, porricere,  
porrectum [iaciō; form influenced  
by porrigō].

poscō, *demand*, poscere, poposci.

possideō, see sedeō.

possum, *be able*, posse, potuī. Irreg. 191.

potior, *become master of*, potīrī, potītus  
sum. Dep. [potis.] Pres. Syst., ex-  
cept Infin., usually of Third Conj.,  
165, 1.

pōtō, *drink*, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtum  
(pōtātum).

praebeō, see habeō.

prandeō, *lunch*, prandēre, prandī, prān-  
sum.

prehendō, *seize*,prehendere,prehendī,  
prehēsum, and prēndō, prēndere,  
prēndī, prēnsūm [prae-hendō, pre-  
hendō (p. 9, footnote), prēndō].

premō, *press*, premere, pressī, pressum.  
Cpds. -primō, -primere, -pressī, -pres-  
sum.

proficiscor, *set out*, proficiscī, profec-  
tus sum. Dep. [faciō.]

profiteor, see fateor.

prōmineō, *project*, prōminēre, prōminuī  
[cf. ē-mineō].

prōmō, *produce*, prōmere, prōmpsi,  
prōmptum [emō].

pudet, *it shames*, pudēre, puduit or  
puditum est. Impers.

pūcō, *prick*, pūgere, pūpugī, pūnc-  
tum. In cpds. Perf. -pūcxi.

quaerō, *seek*, quaerere, quaesivī, quae-  
situm. Cpds. -quīrō, etc.

quaesō, *beseech*, quaesumus. Def. 200.  
quatiō, *shake*, quater, —, quassum.

Cpds. -cutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum.

queō, *can*, quīre, quivī, quitum, 194, c.  
queror, *complain*, querī, questus sum.  
Dep.

quiēscō, *become quiet*, quiēscere, quiēvī  
(quiētus, Adj.).

rādō, *scrape*, rādere, rāsī, rāsūm.

rapiō, *seize*, rapere, rapuī, raptum.  
Cpds. -ripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum.

For sur-ripiō early Latin has sur-  
rupiō, Perf. surrupuit and surruit.

regō, *direct*, regere, rēxī, rēctum. Cpds.

-rigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum. But

pergō (\*per-(ri)gō), pergere, per-rēxī,  
per-rēctum; surgō (early sur-rigō),

surgere, sur-rēxī, sur-rēctum; rarely  
porgō beside por-rigō.

reminiscor, *remember*, reminiscī. Dep.  
[meminī.]

reor, *think*, rērī, ratus sum. Dep.

rēpō, *creep*, rēpere, rēpsi.

rīdeō, *laugh*, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsūm.

rigēō, *be stiff*, rigēre, riguī.

rōdō, *gnaw*, rōdere, rōsī, rōsum.

rudō, *roar*, rudere.

rumpō, *break*, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum.

ruō, *tumble down*, ruere, ruī, -rutum  
(ruitūrus).

saepiō, *hedge in*, saepīre, saepsi, saep-  
tum.

salīō, *leap*, salīre, saluī. Cpds. -siliō,  
-silīre, -siluī (early -sului; late -siliī,  
-silivī).

salvē, *hail*. Def. 200.

sanciō, *ratify*, sancīre, sānxi, sānctum.

sapiō, *taste of*, *be wise*, sapere, sapivī.  
Cpds. -sipiō, etc.

sarciō, *repair*, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum.

scabō, *scrape*, scabere, scābī (rare verb).

scalpō, *scrape*, scalpere, scalpī, scalp-  
tum.



**scandō, climb, scandere.** Cpds. -scendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum.  
**scindō, tear, scindere, scidī, scissum.**  
**sciō, know, scire, scivī, scitum.** (Imperf. scibam, Fut. scibō, 164, 4, 5.)  
**sciscō, approve, sciscere, scivī, scitum.**  
**scribō, write, scribere, scripsī, scriptum.**  
**sculpō, carve, sculpere, sculpsī, sculptum.**  
**secō, cut, secāre, secuī, sectum.**  
**sedeō, sit, sedēre, sedī, sessum.** Circum-sedeō, super-sedeō; but in other cpds. -sideō, -sidēre, -sedī, -sessum.  
**sentiō, feel, sentīre, sēnsī, sēsum.**  
**sepeliō, bury, sepelīre, sepelivī, sepultum.**  
**sequor, follow, sequī, secūtus sum.** Dep.  
**serō, sow, serere, sēvī, satum.** Cpds. -serō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm [\*si-sō, 168, B, a].  
**serō, entwine, serere, -seruī, sertum.**  
**serpō, creep, serpere, serpsi.**  
**sido, sit down, sidere, -sedī (-sidi), -sessum.**  
**sileo, be still, silēre, siluī.**  
**sinō, permit, sinere, sivi or siī, situm.** (Perf. Subj. sīrīs, sirit beside sierīs, siverīs; 163, 5.)  
**sistō, set, sistere, stitī, statum.**  
**soleō, be wont, solēre, —, solitus sum.** Semi-Dep.  
**solvō, release, solvere, solvī, solūtum [luō].**  
**sonō, sound, sonāre, sonuī, sonātūrus (sonō, sonere, rare).**  
**sorbeō, suck in, sorbēre, sorbuī (rarely -sorpsi).**  
**spargō, scatter, spargere, sparsī, sparsum.** Cpds. -spergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum.  
**spernō, scorn, spernere, sprēvī, sprētum.**  
**-spiciō, spy, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [speciō, a rare verb].** Aspiciō (ad-), circum-, cōn-, etc.  
**splendeō, shine, splendēre.**  
**spondeō, promise, spondēre, sponpondī, spōnsum.** In cpds. Perf. -spondī.

**spuō, spit, spuere, -spuī, -spūtum.**  
**statuō, set, statuere, statuī, statūtum [status].** Cpds. -stituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.  
**sternō, spread out, sternere, strāvī, strātum.**  
**stertō, snore, stertere, -stertuī.**  
**stinguō, prick, put out, stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum.** Distinguō, ex-, etc.  
**stō, stand, stāre, steti, stātūrus.** In cpds. Perf. -stitī, e.g. prae-stiti, re-stiti, etc.; but anti-steti, circum-steti, super-steti. Partic. prae-stitum and prae-stātum.  
**strepō, make a noise, strepere, strepuī.**  
**strideō, hiss, stridēre, stridī.** Also stridō, stridere.  
**stringō, bind tight, stringere, strīnxi, strictum.**  
**struō, heap up, struere, strūxī, strūctum.**  
**studeō, be eager, studēre, studuī.**  
**stupeō, be dazed, stupēre, stupuī.**  
**suadeō, advise, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum.**  
**suēscō, become used, suēscere, suēvī, suētum.**  
**sūgō, suck, sūgere, sūxī, sūctum.**  
**sum, be, esse, fui.** Irreg. 153.  
**sūmō, take, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum [emō].**  
**suō, sew, suere, suī, sūtum.**  
**surgō, see regō.**  
**taceō, be silent, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum.** Cpds. -ticeō, etc.  
**taedet, it disgusts, taedēre, taesum est.** Impers.  
**tangō, touch, tangere, tetigī, tāctum.** Cpds. -tingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum.  
**tegō, cover, tegere, tēxi, tēctum.**  
**temnō, scorn, temnere, -tempī, -temptum.**  
**tendō, stretch, tendere, tetendī, tentum (late tēsum, but extēsum, ostēsum common beside extentum, ostentum).** In cpds. Perf. -tendī.  
**teneō, hold, tenēre, tenuī.** Cpds. -tineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

tergeō, *wipe*, tergēre, tersi, tersum (tergō, tergere rare).

terō, *rub*, terere, trīvī, tritum.

terreō, *frighten*, terrēre, terrui, territum.

texō, *weave*, texere, texui, textum.

timeō, *be afraid*, timēre, timui.

tinguō (tingō), *wet*, tinguere, tinxī, tinctum.

tollō, *lift*, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum. [\*tol-nō, 168, D.]

tondeō, *shear*, tondēre, —, tōnsum. Perf. of at-tondeō, at-tondī; of dē-tondeō, dē-tondī (dē-totondī rare).

tonō, *thunder*, tonāre, tonui (at-tonitus, Adj.). Usually impers.

torqueō, *twist*, torquēre, torsi, tortum.

torreō, *dry up*, torrēre, torruī, tostum.

trahō, *draw*, trahere, trāxī, tractum.

tremō, *tremble*, tremere, tremui.

tribuō, *assign*, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum.

trūdō, *shove*, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum.

tueor, *watch*, tuērī, tūtus sum. Dep.

tumeō, *be swollen*, tumēre.

tundō, *pound*, tundere, (tutudī), tūsum or tūsum. Perf. re-ttudi (43, 1) from re-tundō.

ulciscor, *avenge*, ulciscī, ultus sum. Dep.

urgeō, *push*, urgēre, ursi.

ūrō, *burn*, ūrere, ussi, ustum. Note amb-ūrō and (formed after this) comb-ūrō.

ūtor, *use*, ūti, ūsus sum. Dep.

vādō, *go*, vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum.

valeō, *be strong*, valēre, valui, valitūrus.

vehō, *carry*, vehere, vexī, vectum.

vellō, *tear*, vellere, velli (vulsi), vulsum.

vēndō, *sell*, vëndere, vëndidī [vēnum + dō].

vēneō, *be sold*, vēnīre, vēniī [vēnum + eō].

veniō, *come*, venīre, vēni, ventum.

vereor, *revere*, verērī, veritus sum. Dep.

vergō, *slope*, vergere.

verrō, *sweep*, verrere, verri, versum. Early vorrō, etc.

vertō, *turn*, vertere, verti, versum. Early vortō, etc. Dep. re-vertor has Perf. re-verti.

vēscor, *feed upon*, vēcī. Dep.

vesperāscō, *become evening*, vesperāscere, vesperāvi [vesper].

vetō, *forbid*, vetāre, vetui, vetitum. Early votō, etc.

videō, *see*, vidēre, vidī, vīsum.

vigeō, *be strong*, vigēre, vīguī.

vinciō, *bind*, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctum.

vincō, *conquer*, vincere, vīci, victum.

visō, *look after*, visere, visī, vīsum.

vīvō, *live*, vīvere, vīxī, -vīctum.

volō, *wish*, velle, volui. Irreg. 192.

volvō, *roll*, volvere, volvi, volūtum.

vomō, *vomit*, vomere, vomui, vomitum.

voveō, *vow*, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum.

# INDEX

The references are to sections, unless the page (p.) is mentioned. The principal abbreviations used are: aor. = aorist or aoristic; cl. = clause; constr. = construction; cpd. = compound; compar. = comparative; dep. = dependent; det. = determinative; descr. = descriptive; end. = ending; expr. = expressed; fn. = footnote; imper. = imperative; imperf. = imperfect; ind. = indirect; n. = note; narr. = narrative; opt. = optative; partic. = participle; reg. = regularly; subj. = subjunctive; vol. = volitive; w. = with; wh. = which.

ā, ab, abs, in cpds., 51, 1; use, 405 and 4, 406, 1, 2, 408.  
 Ablative, *Form*: abl. sing., decl. III, in -e or -i, 75, a, 88, 2; of adjs., 118, 1; in advs., 126, 1, 3, 4; abl. pl., decl. I, in -abus, 66, 4; decl. IV, in -ubus, 97, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 404.  
 Absolute tenses, 467, 2, 477, b, c.  
 Absolute use of trans. verb, 289, a.  
 Abstract nouns, form, 206, 2, 4, 207, 2; defined, 240, 5; w. concrete meaning, *ib.*, a; pl. of, 103, n., 240, 5, b.  
 Absurd question, w. an, 236.  
 -abus, in decl. I, 66, 4.  
 ac, see atque.  
 Accent, 31-33; in verse, 645.  
 Accompaniment, abl. of, 418-420.  
 Accordance, abl. of, 414; ut-cl. of, 562.  
 Accusative, *Form*: acc. sing. end., 62, 1, n.; in -im, 75, a, 88, 1; in -a in Greek nouns, 95, examples; acc. pl. in -is, 75, a, 88, 3, 118, 4; acc. as adv., 126, 5, 6, 7; acc. pl. neut. of adj. of decl. III, 118, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 379.  
 "Accusing," constrs. w., 342, 343, 397, 1.  
 Acquiescence, how expr., see Consent.  
 Act anticipated, antequam, etc., w. subj., 507, 4, a-d; w. indic., *ib.*, n., 571.  
 Action, nouns of, 206, 2, 3.  
 Active, see Voice.  
 Actuality (fact), subj. of, 520, 521.  
 ad, form in cpds., 51, 2; w. acc., 380, 364, 6; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
 adeō, meaning, 302, 7; adeō ut, 521, 2, a.  
 -ades, suffix, 207, 3.  
 Adjectives, *Form*: decl. I and II, 110-112; decl. III, 113-118; comparison, 119-123; pronom. adj., 112, 143; derivation of, 208-210; numerals, 130-133; verbal adjs., 146. *Syntax*: adj. defined, 221; used w. force of advs., 245; as substs., 249, 250; pred., 230; comparison of, 241; denoting a part, 244; agreement of, 320; case w. nihil, aliquid, etc., 346, a; neut. pl. of, w. gen., 357.  
 admonēō, constr. w., 351.

Adverbs, *Form*: 124-127, 293; compar., 128, 129; numeral advs., 133. *Syntax*: 294-295; forces in comparison, 300; two comparatives, 301.  
 Adverbial accusative, p. 209, fn. 2; clauses, 239; prefixes, 51, 218, 1.  
 Adversative conjunctions, 310.  
 Adversative idea, expr. by abl. absolute, 421, 5; by partic., 604, 2; by qui-cl. w. subj., 523, w. indic., 569, a; by cum-cl. w. subj., 525, 526; w. indic., 569, a; by quamquam-cl. w. indic., 556.  
 Aenēās, decl., 68.  
 aequē ac, 307, 2, a; w. si, w. subj., 504, 3.  
 Agency, nouns of, 80, 1, 206, 1.  
 Agent, expr. by abl. w. ab, 406, 1; by dat., 373.  
 Agreement, of nouns, pronouns, adjs., and participles, 316-327; of pred. depending on infin. w. putor, videor, etc., 590, 2; poetic nom. in pred. of infin. for acc., 592, a; agreement of verbs, 328-332; agreement w. antecedent of rel., 328, 1, a.  
 aiō, conj., 198, 1; ain, form, 231, 1, b, n. 3.  
 aliquis, aliqui, decl., 142, 2; use, 276, 2.  
 aliter atque (ac), 307, 2, a.  
 alius, decl., 112, a; meaning, 279; as recipr. pron., 265; w. atque or ac, 307, 2, a.  
 Alliteration, 632, 19.  
 Alphabet, 1.  
 alter, decl., 112, a, c; meaning, 279, 1, 2; as recipr. pron., 265.  
 Alternative questions, 234.  
 amb-, am-, 51, 3, 218, 1, b.  
 ambō, decl., 131, 2, n.; use, 277.  
 amō, conj., 155.  
 amplius, w. abl., or without effect on case, 416, d.  
 an, 234; in absurd questions, 236.  
 Anacoluthon, 631, 8.  
 Analogy, working of, 315, 4.  
 Anáphora, 632, 5.  
 Anástrophe, 631, 14.  
 Anchísēs, decl., 118.  
 Andromachē, decl., 68.  
 Animals, gen. of names of, 59, 2.  
 animi, in mind, 443, c.

Answers, forms of. 222, 223.

ante, form in cpds. 51. 4; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376; in expressions of time, w. acc., 380, example, or abl., 424, example: as adv., 303, c.

Antecedent, defined, 281. a: omission of, 284, 1; incomplete, 521, 1. a: repeated, 284, 4; attracted to rel., *ib.*, 5, 327.

Antepenult, 31, 2.

antequam or priusquam, w. subj., 507, 4, a-d; w. fut. perf. or fut. indic., *ib.*, n.; w. pres. indic., 571; w. past tenses of indic., 550, b.

Anticipation, expr. by subj., 506-509; by fut. perf. or fut. indic., 507, 4, n. to a-d; by pres. indic., 571.

Anticipatory subjunctive, 506-509.

Aoristic tenses, 466, 2, 467, 2; of indic., 468, n.; of subj., 470, 2.

"Apodosis," see Conclusion, 572-582.

Application, gen. of, 354.

"Appositive genitive," 341.

Appositive words, 317, 2; agreement of, 319, I, 320, II; w. names of towns where, whither, whence, 452; attracted by dat., 326, 3; often put w. a rel., 327; acc. in apposition to a sentence, 395; nom. instead of voc., 401; position of, 624, 5.

apud, w. acc., 380, 454, 4.

Arsis, p. 351, ftn. 5.

Article, lacking in Latin, 221, c.

-as, old gen. sing. in, 66, 1.

-asce, verbs in, 168, F, a, 212, 2.

Asides, qui, cum, etc., in, 567.

"Asking," see "Inquiring" and "Requesting."

Aspirates, 6, 5, 11, 12, 14, 2, n.

Assimilation of consonants, 49-51.

Association of ideas, 315, 2.

Asyndeton, 306, I, a.

at, at enim, etc., 310, 1, a-c.

atque or ac, 307, 2; choice of forms, *ib.*, 3, c; used w. Idem, alius, etc., *ib.*, 2, a.

atque, 310, 3.

Attempted action, tenses of, 484.

Attendant circumstances, abl. of, 422.

Attraction, agreement of prons., adjs., and partic. by, 326, 1-5; of verb by, 332; adj. attracted into rel. cl., 284, 7; appositive attracted into rel. cl., 327; subj. by attraction, 539.

Attributive words, 317, 1; agreement, 320, I, audeo, semi-depon., 161.

audiō, conj., 159; w. cum-cl., 524, a; w. partic., 605, 1; w. infin., *ib.*, n.

aut, 308, 1, 3, a; correlative, 309.

autem, 310, 2, a, b; position, 624, 8, b.

Auxiliary and principal tenses, 477, c.

Auxiliary verb, 153, 164, 8.

belli, in war, 449, a.

bene, compar., 129.

bona, decl. 110; compar., 122.

bis, decl., 92.

Brachylogr., 631, 2.

Bucolic diacresis, 641. c. n. 2.

Caesar, decl. 80. 3; Caesaris, pl., 163, a.

Caesura, 640, 641; masc. and fem., 641, a.

Calendar, 660-671.

Calends, Kalendae, 664.

"Can," "could," how expr., see Capacity.

Capacity, expr. by potential subj., 516.

517; by possum w. infin., 506.

caput, decl. 76, 77. 5; gen. of penalty,

345; abl. of penalty, 423, b.

Cardinal numbers, 130, 131.

Cases, form. 61. 62; endings, 63-64; earliest meanings of, 334.

causa, on account of, case, 444, d; w. gen., 339, d; w. gerundive, 612, I.

Causal-adversative qui- or cum-cl. in subj.,

523, 525, 526; in indic., 569, a.

Cause or reason expr. by abl., 444; by abl.

absolute, 421, 4; by prep. phrases, 444,

b, c; by subj. qui- or cum-cl., 523, 525,

526; by indic. qui- or cum-cl., 569, a;

by cl. w. quod, quia, quoniam, or quando,

555; by nom. quia, non quod, etc., w. subj.,

535, 2, b; by partic., 604, 2.

cave, in prohibitions, 501. 3, a, 2), 502, 3,

b; without ne, *ib.*, n. 2; w. short -e,

28, 2, b).

-c(e), particle, 32, n. 33. 133. 2. c.

cēlō, constrs. w., 393.

censeō, w. vol. cl., 502. 3, a; w. cl. of obligation or propriety, 513. 5; w. infin., 559.

cētera, acc. of respect, 389, a.

ceteri, meaning, 379, 1, a.

"Characteristic" and "characterizing clause," see Descriptive clause.

Charge, gen. of, 342.

Chiasmus, 628.

circā, circum, circiter, w. acc., 380; as advs., 303, c.

circum-, form in cpds., 51, 5; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. acc., 386, 391, 2; w. dat., 376.

Circumstances or situation, expr. by abl., 422; by abl. absolute, 421; by partic.,

604, 2; by cum-cl., 524, 525.

cis and citrā, w. acc., 380.

citerior, compar., 123.

Cities, gen. of names of, 58, 2.

clam, adv., or prep. w. abl. or acc., 458, 2.

Clause, definitions: principal or dep. (subordinate), 224, 1; coordinate, 225; det., p. 260, ftn. 1; descr., p. 260, ftn. 2; conditional, 228, 2; free, p. 302, ftn.; subst., 238; adv., 239; individual and generalizing, 576, 577.

Climax, 632, 11.

coepi, conj., 199, 2; voice of infin. w., *ib.*

Cognate acc., see Kindred meaning, 396.

- cognōvi* etc., force of tenses, 487.  
*cōgō*, w. acc., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a); w. infin., 587; w. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, a).  
 Collective noun, 240, 3; agreement w., 325, 331, 1.  
*com-*, see *con-*.  
 Combinations of tenses, usual, 476, 477; less usual, 478; mechanical harmony of subj. tenses, 480; tenses depending on pres. perf., 481; permanent truths depending on past tenses, 482.  
 Command, expr. by imper., 496, 501, 3, b; by subj., 501, 3, a, b; by fut. indic., 572; in ind. disc., 538.  
 Common nouns, 240, 2.  
 "Common" syllable, 28, 5, n.  
*commonefaciō*, *commoneō*, constr. w., 351.  
*communis*, w. either gen. or dat., 339, c.  
 Comparative, case constrs. w., 416, 417; w. *quam* and *quī-* or *ut-cl.*, 521, 2, c.  
 Comparatives, decl., 116, 118; formation, see Comparison.  
 Comparison: of adjs., formation, 119-123; forces of degrees, 241, 1-4; two compar., 242; comparison of advs., 128-129; forces of degrees, 300; two compar., 301.  
 Comparison, imaginative, w. *quasi*, etc., and subj., 504, 3.  
 Complementary infinitive, defined, 586, a.  
 Complex sentence, 223, 3.  
 Composition of words, 213-218; quantity in cpds., 24; accent in, 31, 3; vowel-change in, 42; assimilation of prep. in, 50, 51; redupl. perf. of cpds., 173, D, a.  
 Composition or material, gen. of, 349.  
 Compound sentence, 223, 2.  
 Compounds of verb and prep., w. dat., 376, 377; w. dat. and acc., 376, a; w. acc., 391, 2; w. dat. or acc., *ib.*, a.  
*con-*, *com-*, form in cpds., 51, 6; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
 "Conative action," tenses of, 484.  
 Concern, dat. of, 366.  
 Concession of indifference, expr. by imper., 497, 2; by subj., 532, 1; by subj. cl. w. *quāvis* etc., 532, 2.  
 Concessive, see Concession, and Adversative.  
 Conclusions, see Conditions.  
 Concrete nouns, 240, 4.  
 Concrete object for *wh.*, dat. of, 361.  
 "Condemning," gen. w., 342, 343.  
 Condensed comparison, 631, 3.  
 Conditional sentence or cl., 228, 2, 577; see also Conditions.  
 Conditions and conclusions, generalizing and individual distinguished, 576; three types, 575-581; in ind. dis., 534, 1, b, 536.  
*cōnfidō*, w. dat., 362, II; w. abl., 437.  
*coniciō*, quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
 Conjugation of verbs, 54, 145-201; of sum, 153-154; conj. distinguished, 148; first conj., 156; second, 156; third, 157; fourth, 159; of depon., 180; periphr., 162; peculiarities in, 163-165; variation between conj., 165; of irreg. verbs, 190-197; of defect. verbs, 198-200; of impers. verbs, 201.  
 Conjunctions, origin, 125; defined, 304; coördinating, 305 and I; copulative, 307; disjunctive, 308; advs., 310; inferential, 311; subordinating, 312.  
 Connection, gen. of, 339.  
*cōnsciūs*, gen. w., 354; dat. w., 363, 1, b).  
 Consecutive clauses defined, 519, 3, a, 521, 1, e; of ideal certainty, 519, 2, 3; of actuality, 521, 1-3.  
 Consent, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 531, 1, 2; by indic., 571, 572.  
*cōnsistō*, constrs. w., 438, 3.  
 Consonants, 2; classif., 6-8, 12; pronunc., 11; changes of, 47-49; stems in, 74, A, 75-86.  
*cōnstituō*, w. vol. subj. or infin., 586 and e.  
*cōnstō*, constrs. w., 438, 1, 3, a, b.  
 Construction, defined, 314, 3.  
*cōnsuēvi* etc., force of tenses, 487.  
*cōnsulō*, w. dat. or acc., 367.  
 "Contention," w. cum and abl., 419, 4; w. dat., 363, 2, c); w. acc., 397, 2.  
*contentus*, w. abl., 438, 4.  
*contrā*, w. acc., 380; w. *atque* (ac), 307, 2, a.  
 Contraction of vowels, 45; quantity resulting from, 19; of vowels, in poetry, 658.  
 Contrast, *ut-cl.* of, *while* . . . (*yet*), 563.  
 Coördinate clauses, 225.  
 Coördinate sentences, 223, 2.  
 Coördinating conjunctions, 305-311.  
 Copula, 230, a.  
 Copulative compounds, 216, 1.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 307, 309.  
*cōram*, abl. w., 407, 1.  
 Corrective aut, *sive*, vel, 308, 3, a; *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, 310, 7.  
 Correlatives, 144.  
 Countries, gen. of names of, 58, 2.  
*crēdō*, w. dat., 362, II; w. acc., 364, 3.  
*cui*, pronunc., 10, a, 140, a.  
*cuius*, pronunc., 29, 2, a, 140, a.  
*cum*, prep., in cpds., 51, 6; w. soc. abl., 418; *mēcum*, etc., *ib.*, a; ideas expr. by, 419.  
*cum-clauses*: descr. cl. of ideal certainty, 519, 2; of actuality, 521, 1; descr. cl. of situation, 524; of situation, w. caus. or advs. idea, 525; purely caus. or advs. cl., 526; of repeated action, 540; determining a time, 550 and a; of the time included in the reckoning, 550 and ftn. 2; of equivalent action, 551; subst., 553; aor. narr. cl. (*cum primum*), 557, a; cum . . . *tum* . . ., 564; cum in forward-moving cl., 566; "cum inversum," *ib.*, a; parenthetical cl. and "asides," 567; loosely attached descr. cl., 568; free descr. cl., 569; *tacit caus.* or *advs.* cl., *ib.*, a.

- general conditions, 577, ftn. 3; see also examples, 579, 581.
- cupiō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. gen., 352, 3; w. subj., 511, 2; w. infin., 586, 587.
- cūr*, w. subj. of obligation, 513, 1, 2; of natural likelihood, 515, 1, 2.
- cūrō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a); w. gerundive, 612, III.
- Customary action, tenses of, 484.
- Dactyl, 637; dactylic hexameter, 639; dactylic pentameter, 642.
- Dates, how expr., 664-669.
- Dative, *Form*: sing., decl. IV, in -ū, 97, 2; decl. V, in -ēi or -ei, 100, 1; in -ē, *ib.*, 2; pl., decl. I, in -ābus, 66, 4; decl. IV, in -ubus, 97, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 559.
- dē*, in cpds., 24, 2.
- dē*, w. abl., 405, 406, 3, 4; for gen. of whole, 346, e; w. verbs of separation, 408.
- dēbeō*, moods and tenses of, 582, 3; w. infin., 586.
- decet*, w. acc., 390, a; w. subj., 513, 5; w. infin., 585.
- Declarative sentence or clause, 228, 1.
- Declension, 54, 55; the five decls. of nouns, 63; endings, 64; I, 65-68; II, 69-73; III, 74-95; IV, 96-98; V, 99-101; nouns variable in, 107; of adjs., 110-118; of comparatives, 116; of partics., 117; of numerals, 131; of prons., 134-142.
- Defective nouns, 102-104, 106; defect. compar., 123; verbs, 198-201.
- "Defining" genitive, 341.
- Degree, acc. of, 387.
- Degree, cl. determining the, 550, and ftn. 2.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 424.
- Degrees of comparison, 119.
- Deliberation, expr. by subj., 503; by pres. indic., 571; by fut. indic., 572.
- Demand, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a).
- "Demonstrative," see Determinative.
- Denominative verbs, p. 98, ftn. 1, 211; of conj. I, 211, 1, 212, n., 166, 1, 2; of conj. II, 211, 3, 167, 1, c; of conj. III, 211, 4, 168, *H*, 1; of conj. IV, 211, 2, 169, 1.
- Dentals, 7, 2, 12; changes of, 49, 4, 5, 8, 10.
- Dependent clause, 224, 1 and a.
- Dependent compounds, 216, 3.
- Deponent verbs, defined, 145, 160; originally reflexive, 288, 3, b; voice meanings of, 291, a-d; perf. pass. partic. of, w. act. meaning, 602, 1, a.
- Deprecated act, w. *antequam*, etc., and subj., 507, 4, d); w. indic., 571.
- "Depriving," abl. w., 408.
- Derivation of nouns and adjectives, 203-210; derivatives, primary and secondary, 203; vowel-quantity in, 23, 2.
- Descent*, words denoting, 207, 3.
- Descriptive compounds, 216, 2.
- Descriptive genitive, 355; abl., 443; tenses, 466, 1, a; descr. cl. defined, p. 260, ftn. 2; clauses: see synopses, 499, 543.
- Desideratives, 212, 3.
- Desire, see Wish, 511, 1.
- dēspērō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. acc., 391, 1.
- dēterior*, comparison, 123.
- Determinative cl., p. 260, ftn. 1; see synopses, 499, 543.
- Determinative-descriptive pronouns, decl., 137, 138; distinctive meanings of *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*, and of *tālis*, *tantus*, *tot*, 271.
- deus*, decl., 71, 5.
- Diaeresis, bucolic, 641, c, n. 2.
- Diastole, 654, ftn. 3.
- dic*, imper., 164, 1.
- dicō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a); w. infin., 589; in subj. in cl. of reason, 535, 2, a, n. 3.
- Didō*, decl., 95, b.
- diēs*, decl., 99; gen. 101.
- "Difference" or "aversion," abl. w., 412; poetic dat. w., 363, 2, c).
- difficilis*, comparison, 120, 2, a.
- dignus*, w. abl., 442; w. subj. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in -ū, 619, 2; w. infin., 598, 2, c).
- Diminutive adjectives, 207, 1.
- Diphthongs, 5; pronunc. in Latin, 10.
- Direct discourse, explained, 533.
- Direct object, acc. of, 390, 391.
- Direct reflexive, 262, 1.
- Direction or relation expr. by dat., 362, I-III; w. ad, in, etc., 384, 2; poetic dat. of direction in space, 375.
- dis*-, 24, 1, 51, 7, 218, 1, b.
- Disjunctive conjunctions, 308, 309.
- "Distance," see Extent of space, acc., 387, I, and degree of difference, abl., 424.
- Distich, elegiac, 642, a, ftn. 6.
- Distributive numerals, 133; used for cardinals, 247.
- Distributive pronouns, 142, 278.
- diū*, comparison, 129.
- doceō*, constr. w., 393 and b, 1).
- domus*, decl., 97, 5; *domi*, loc. form, 71, 6; gen., 98, a; of place where, whither, whence, 449-451; w. modifiers, 454.
- dōnec*, see *dum*.
- Double consonants, 11.
- "Double questions," 234.
- "Doubt," w. *quā*, 519, 4, b); 521, 3, b).
- "Dubitative subjunctive," see Deliberation.
- dubitō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, b); w. antic. subj., 506, 2, b); of ideal certainty, 519, 4, b); of actuality, 521, 3, b); w. infin., 586.
- dūc*, imper., 164, 1.
- dūm*, *dūis*, *dūit*, etc., 197, a.
- dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, w. antic. subj., 507, 5; w. fut. perf. or fut. indic., *ib.*, a; w. pres. indic., 571; determining time up to wh., 550 and b; narr. cl. w., 560; determining time during wh., 550 and b; *dum*-cl. of

- situation, **559**; replacing pres. pass. partic., **602**, 2; subj. dum cl. of proviso, **529**.  
*dummodo*, in cl. of proviso, **529**.  
*duo*, decl., **131**, 2.  
 Duration of time, expr. by acc., **387**, II; by *per* and acc., *ib.*, *a*; by abl., **440**.
- ē*, prep., see *ex*.  
*ecquis?* decl., **141**, *b*; use, **275**, 6.  
*edō*, conj., **196**; *edim*, *edis*, etc., **196**, *a*.  
*efficiō*, w. vol. cl., **502**, 3, *a*; w. cl. of fact, **521**, 3, *a*.  
 "Effort," w. vol. cl., **502**, 3, *a*.  
*ego*, w. gen., **347**; w. abl., **425**, *a*.  
*ego*, decl., **134**; *egomet*, *ib.*, *d*.  
*eius*, pronunc. and quantity, **29**, 2, *a*; **137**, *a*; *eius modī*, descr. gen., **355**.  
*Elegiac stanza*, **642**, *a*.  
*Elision*, see *Slurring*.  
*Ellipsis*, **631**, 1.  
 Emphasis, obtained by order, **625-628**.  
 Emphatic future-perfect, **490** and *a*.  
 Emphatic perfect, **490**.  
*Enallage*, **631**, *g*.  
 Enclitics defined, **33**, 1; quantity of, **28**, 2, *d*; question of accent before, **32**, *n*.  
 "End of motion," expr. by prep. w. acc., **385**; by poetic dat., **375**.  
*Endeavor*, expr. by vol. subj., **500**.  
 Endings, inflectional, origin, **203**, ftn. 2; of nouns, **64**; of verbs, **151**.  
 Energetic or emphatic perf., **490**.  
*enim*, meaning and position, **311**, 6.  
*Entreaty*, expr. by imper., **496**; by subj., **530**.  
*eō*, conj., **194**.  
*eō . . . quō*, of degree of difference, **424**.  
*Epistolary tenses*, **493**.  
*equidem*, use of, **257**, *a*.  
 Equivalent action, cl. of, **551**.  
*ergā*, w. acc., **380**, **364**, 7.  
*ergō*, **311**, 1; w. gen., **339**, *d*.  
*-escō*, verbs in, **168**, *F*, *a*, **212**, 2.  
*esse*, often omitted, **584**, *e*.  
 Essential part, see *Attraction*.  
*est* and noun, dat. of reference w., **366**, *a*; *est*, w. potential descr. cl., **517**, 2; w. descr. cl. of ideal certainty, **519**, 2; of actuality, **521**, 1; w. subst. cl. of actuality, **521**, 3, *a*; w. infin., **598**, 3.  
*et*, **307**, 1, *a*, *c*; = *etiam*, **302**, 2 and *b*; *et . . . et*, *et . . . neque*, *neque . . . et*, **309**.  
*etenim*, **311**, 6, *a*.  
 Ethical dative, **372**.  
*etiam*, in answers, **332**, 1; meaning and position, **302**, 2; often added to *sed* or *verum*, **310**, 4, *b*.  
*etiāmsi* and *etsi*, = *although*, **582**, 8.  
*etsi*, "corrective," **310**, 7.  
*Euphemism*, **632**, 12.  
*ex* or *ē*, in cpds., **51**, 8; choice of forms, **405**, *b*; w. abl., **405**, **406**; of point of view, **406**, 2; w. verbs of separation, **408**.  
 "Exchanging," w. abl., **431**.  
 Exclamation, acc. of, **399**; nom. of, *ib.*, *a*; infin. of, **596**.  
 Exclamatory sentence, **228**, 3; questions, **503**.  
 Exhortation, expr. by vol. subj., **501**, 2; by fut. indic., **572**.  
 Explanatory genitive, **341**.  
 Explicative quod-cl., p. 296, ftn.  
 Explicit causal or adversative quī- or cum-cl., **523**, *a*, **526**.  
*exspectō*, w. antic. subj., **507**, 2; w. infin., **593**, *a*.  
 Extent of space, acc. of, **387**; abl. of, **426**, *c*.  
*exterus*, exterior, *extrēmus*, **123**.  
*extrā*, w. acc., **380**.  
*fac*, imper., **164**, 1.  
*facilis*, comparison, **120**, 2; w. supine in -u, **619**, 1; w. ad and gerundive, *ib.*, *a*.  
*faciō*, accent of cpds. of, **31**, 3; non-prep. forms, **218**, 3; w. vol. subj., **502**, 3, *a*; w. cl. of actuality, **521**, 3, *a*; w. infin., **587**, ftn. 1, **605**, 1, *n*.  
 Fact, indic. of, **462**, **544**; subj. of, in consec. cls., **520**, **521**, 3, *a*, *b*.  
 "Factitive object," see *Result produced*.  
*falsus*, comparison, **123**, *a*.  
*famēs*, abl., *famē*, **88**, 5.  
*familiās*, **66**, 1.  
*fārī*, conj., **198**, 3.  
*fās*, indecl., **106**, 2; *fās est*, w. infin., **585**; *fās* w. supine, **619**, 1.  
*faxō*, *faxim*, **163**, 5.  
 Fear, subj. cl. of, **502**, 4.  
 Feminine caesura, **641**, *a*.  
 Feminines, see *Gender*.  
*fer*, imper., **164**, 1.  
*ferē*, *fermē*, position of, **624**, 13, *a*.  
*ferō*, conj., **193**; dat. w., **365**; w. infin., **594**.  
 -*ficus*, comparison of cpds. in, **120**, 3.  
*fiō*, **161**; w. dat., **362**, II; w. abl., **437**.  
*fidus*, comparison, **123**, *a*.  
 Field in which, expr. by in w. abl., **434**, 2.  
 Fifth declension, **99-101**.  
 Figurative use of cases, moods, etc., **315**, 1.  
 Figures of syntax, **631**; of rhetoric, **632**.  
*filia*, decl., **66**, 4.  
*filius*, gen. and voc., *filii*, **71**, 3.  
 "Final clauses," p. 260, ftn. 3.  
 Final consonants, changes in, **49**, 13.  
 "Fine," abl. of, **428**.  
*finis*, decl., **87**, **88**, 2, *d*; sing. and pl., **105**.  
 Finite forms of verb, defined, **146**.  
*fiō* etc., quantity of i in, **21**, 1; conj., **195**; defect. cpds. w., **195**, *a*; abl. w., **423**, *b*.  
 First conjugation, **148**, **155**; pres. stem, **166**; denom., **211**, 1.  
 First declension of nouns, **65-68**.  
 First and second declension of adjectives, **110-112**.  
 "Fitness," adjs. of, w. dat., **382**, w. ad., **384**, 2, *a*.

- flāgitō**, cases w., 393 and *b*, 2).  
**Foot**, defined, 635.  
**forās**, adv., 126, 7, n.  
**fore**, **forem**, etc., 154, 1, 2.  
**fore** or **futūrum** ut . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
**Forestalled** act, in subj. w. **antequam** or **priusquam**, 507, 4, *b*).  
**"Forgetting," "remembering," and "recalling,"** constra. w., 350.  
**foris**, out of doors, 449, *a*.  
**Formal** ut, p. 261, ftn. 2.  
**Formation** of verb-stems, 166-184; of words, 202-218.  
**forsitan**, w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
**Forward-moving** clauses, 566.  
**Fourth** conjugation, 159; pres. stem, 169.  
**Fourth** declension, 96-98.  
**Free** clause, defined, p. 302, ftn.; free descriptive clause, 569.  
**Freer** neuter accusative modifiers, 397.  
**Frequentatives**, 166, 2, 212.  
**Fricatives**, 6, 3, 12.  
**frūgi**, compar., 122; as adj., p. 190, ftn. 2.  
**frūr**, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
**ful**, etc., for **sum**, etc., as auxiliaries, 164, 8.  
**Fullness**, adjs. of, 209, 2; see **Plenty**.  
**fungor**, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
**Fusion**, explained, 315, 3.  
**Future** conditions, more vivid, 579, *a*; less vivid, 580; past-fut., 508, 509, 580, *b*, *c*.  
**Future**, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 172; in *-ibō*, 164, 5; meanings of tense, 468, 3 and *a*, 484, 485, 486, 2; special uses, 572; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, 470, 1, 4 and *a*, 508; INFINITIVE: meaning of tense, 472 and *a*, *b*; active, *form*, 178, 3; passive, *form*, *ib.*; PARTICIPLE: active, verbal adj., 146; in periphr. conjs., 162; *form*, 182; meaning of tense, 600, 2; passive, verbal adj., 146; in periphr. conj., 162; in conjs. III and IV, 164, 2; *form*, 184; meaning of tense, 600, 3 and *b*.  
**Future** perfect, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 163, 5, 164, 6, 174, 2; meaning, 468, 6; as emphatic fut., 490; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, p. 244, ftn. 1.  
**Futures**, periphr., see **Periphrastic**.  
**futūrum** esse ut . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
**futūrus**, as adj., 248.  
**gaudeō**, 161; w. acc., 397, 2; w. abl., 444, *a*; w. infin., 594; w. quod-cl., 555.  
**Gender**, 56-59; decl. I, 67; decl. II, 72; decl. III, 94 (summary), 78, 81, 84, 86, 89, 91, 2; decl. IV, 98; decl. V, 101; nouns variable in, 108.  
**General** "truths" or "customs," expr. by pres., 468, 1, *b*.  
**Generalizing** clause, 576; indic., 579 and ftn.; subj. in 2d sing. indef., 504, 2.  
**Generalizing** pronouns, 282; the same used w. merely indef. meaning, 283.  
**Genitive**, *Form*: sing., decl. I, in *-ās*, 66, 1; in *-āi*, *ib.*, 2; decl. II, in *-i* of nouns in *-ius*, *-ium*, 71, 2, 3; in *-iī* of adjs. in *-ius*, 110, *a*; of pronom. adjs., 112; decl. IV, *-i*, 97, 4, 5; decl. V, in *-eī*, *-eī*, and *-i*, 100, 1, 2, 3; pl., decl. I, in *-um*, 66, 3; decl. II, in *-um*, 71, 4; of *ducenti*, etc., in *-um*, 131, 4; decl. III, in *-um* and *-ium*, 75; in adjs., 118, 1; decl. IV, in *-ūm*, 97, 3. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 338.  
**Gerund**, *Form*, 184.  
**Gerundive** and **gerund**, nature of, 609-611; common uses, 612, 613; gend. of gerundive, w. *mei* *nostrī*, etc., 614; rarer uses, 615, 616.  
**"Gnomic** perfect," 488.  
**Grammatical** gender, 56, *b*.  
**grātiā**, w. gen., 339, *d*; of gerundive, 612, 1.  
**"Greek** accusative," see **Acc.** of respect.  
**Greek** nouns, decl. I, 68; decl. II, 73; decl. III, 95.  
**Growth** of meanings in constructions, 315.  
**Gutturals**, 7, 3, 12; changes of, 49, 2, 3; stems in, 76, 77, 1.  
**habeō**, w. potential cl., 517, 2; w. infin., 597, 2; w. perf. pass. partic., 605, 5.  
**habētō**, tense, how used, 496, *c*.  
**Habitual** action, tenses of, 484.  
**haereō**, constr. w. p. 193, ftn.  
**Harmony**, ut-cl. of, 563.  
**haud**, use of, 297 and *a*.  
**havē**, see *avē*.  
**Hendiadys**, 631, 5.  
**"Hesitating"** w. *nē*, *quān*, or *quōminus*, 502, 3, *b*; w. infin., 586.  
**Heteroclitics**, 107.  
**Heterogeneous** nouns, 108.  
**Hexameter**, dactylic, 639.  
**Hiatus**, 647.  
**hic**, quantity, 30; decl., 138, 1; *hoc*, quantity, 30; *huius*, *huic*, pronunc., 10, *d*, 138, *b*; meaning and uses of *hic*, 271-273; *hic* . . . *ille*, "the former" . . . "the latter," 274, 2; as indefinites, *ib.*, *b*.  
**hic**, adv., quantity, 25, 1; *form*, 127, 7.  
**Hidden** quantity, 16, n. 2; list, 679.  
**hiem**(p)s, 49, 7; decl., 83, 4.  
**Highly** improbable future conclusion, 581, *c*.  
**hinc** . . . *illinc*, 406, 2, first example.  
**Hindrance**, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*).  
**Historical** infinitive, 595.  
**"Historical** perfect," 468, 4, *a*, ftn. 3.  
**Historical** present, 491, 1.  
**"Historical"** tenses, p. 247, ftn. 2.  
**hoc**, see *hic*.  
**"Hoping,"** constr. w., 593 and *a*.  
**"Hortatory"** subjunctive, see 501, 2.  
**hortor**, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587.



- humī**, loc., 71, 6, 449, *a*.  
**humilis**, comparison, 120, 2.  
**Hypallage**, 631, 10.  
**Hypératon**, 631, 13.  
**Hyperbole**, 632, 2.  
**Hypermetric verse**, 641, *c*, n. 4.  
**Hýsteron próteron**, 631, 12.
- I**, letter, 1, *a*, n.; consonantal *i*, 11.  
**i**, consonantal, sometimes becomes vowel in poetry, 656, 1; vocalic, sometimes becomes consonantal in poetry, 656, 2.
- i-stems**, 87-89.  
**-ia**, suffix, 207, 2.  
**iaciō**, cpds. of, spelling, and quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
**iam**, compared w. **nunc**, 302, 4, 5.  
**iam diū**, **iam pridem**, etc., w. tenses of action in progress, 485.  
**Iambic shortening**, 28, n., 649.  
**Iambus**, 637, *b*.  
**-ībam**, imperf. indic. of conj. IV, 164, 4.  
**-ībō**, fut. of conj. IV, 164, 5.  
**Ictus**, 634; relation to accent, 644, 645.  
**id quod**, 325, *a*, n. 2.  
**Ideal certainty**, subj. of, 518, 519.  
**idem**, decl., 137; use, 270; w. **quī** or **atque**, *ib.*; w. dat., 363, 2, *e*.  
**Identifying pronoun**, see **idem**.  
**Ides**, **Idūs**, 664; use in dating, 665-671.  
**idōneus**, comparison, 121; w. dat., 362; w. **ad** and acc., 364, 6; w. **quī** or **ut**, 513, 3.  
**Idūs**, *gend.*, 98, *a*. See also **Ides**.  
**iēns**, pres. act. partic. of **eō**, 183.  
**-ier**, infin. in, 164, 3, 178, 2.  
**igitur**, position of, 311, 2.  
**"Illative" conjunctions**, 311.  
**ille**, decl., 138, 1; meaning and uses, 271-274, 1; **hic . . . ille . . .**, 274, 2; **ille** w. descr. **quī-cl.**, 521, 1; w. **ut-cl.**, 521, 2, *b*; position of **ille**, 624, 2.  
**illic**, decl., 138, 2, *c*.  
**illic**, adv., quantity of final syllable, 25, 1; accent, 32, 1.  
**Imaginative comparison**, cl. of, 504, 3.  
**immō**, 233.  
**immūnis**, w. gen., 354; w. abl., p. 224, ftn. 1.  
**Imprative**, endings of, 151, *b*.  
**Imperative**, synopsis of uses, 495; tenses of, 496; imper. of command, advice, etc., *ib.*; w. **quīn**, *ib.*, *b*; in prohibitions, *ib.*, *d*; replaced by vol. subj. in ind. disc., 538.  
**Imperfect**, meanings common to all forms: of progressive action, 466, 1 and ftn., 470, 1; of habitual action, 484; of attempted action, *ib.*; w. **iam diū**, etc., 485; **INDICATIVE**: *form*, 171; in **-ībam**, 164, 4, 171, n.; meaning, 468, 2; of discovery, 486, 1; epistolary, 493; **SUBJUNCTIVE**: *form*, 175, *a*; original meanings: progressive, 470, 1; aor., 477, *b*; in cls. of result, *ib.* and 521, 2, examples; in wishes, 510, *a*; in conditions and conclusions, 581; imperf. contrary to fact retained in any combination of tenses, *ib.*, n.  
**imperō**, w. dat., 362; w. dat. and acc., 364, 4; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587, *b*.  
**Impersonal verbs**, 201, 287; verbs in pass. w. dat., 364, 2; impers. constr., generally preferred w. certain pass. infins., 580, 1, *a*.  
**impetrō**, w. subj. cl., 530, 2.  
**imus**, *lowest part of*, 244.  
**in**, form in cpds., 51, 9; w. acc., 380, 381, 385; w. abl., 433, 434; use w. abl. of time, 439, *a*; w. abl. of respect, 441, *a-c*; often or reg. omitted w. abl. of certain words, 436; freely omitted by poets, 433, *a*; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
**in-**, negative prefix, 214, 2.  
**Inchoatives** ("Inceptives"), 212, 2; perf. of, 188, *F*, ftn.  
**Incomplete action**, tenses of, 466, 1, ftn.  
**Indeclinable nouns**, 106, 2; *gend.* of, 58, 3.  
**"Indefinite antecedents"**, 521, 1, *a*.  
**Indefinite idea distinguished from generalizing**, 283.  
**Indefinite pronouns**, list of, 142, 276.  
**Indefinite second person in conditions**, 504, 2, 576, *a*; in general statement of fact, 542; w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
**Indefinite subject**, 286.  
**Indefinite value**, 356.  
**Indicative**, general force of, 462, 544; tenses of, 468; tenses w. verbs and phrases of possibility, obligation, etc., 582, 3, *a*; general uses, see synopsis, 543; pres., pres. perf., and future, in special uses, 571, 572.  
**Indifference**, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 531; concession of, expr. by imper., 497, 2; by subj., 532, 1; w. **quamvis**, *ib.*, 2; w. **licet**, *ib.*, *a*; w. **ut**, *ib.*, *b*.  
**indigeō**, w. gen., 347, *a*; w. abl., 425, *a*.  
**Indignation**, expr. by subj., 503; by fut. indic., 572; by infin., 596.  
**indignus**, w. abl., 442; rarely w. gen., 354, *c*, example; w. subj. rel. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in **-ū**, 619, 2.  
**Indirect discourse**, defined, 533, 589, 591; prons. and persons in, 533, *a*; **INFINITIVE** in ind. disc.: tenses, 593; list of verbs and phrases governing, p. 318, ftn.; principal statements in infin., 534, 1, 591; constrs. of, may be used w. verbs not suggesting ind. disc., 534, 1, *a*, 535, 1, *a*, 536, *a*; subord. cls. in, 534, 2, 535-538.  
**Indirect object**, dat. of, 365 and *a*.  
**Indirect questions**, of fact, 537 and ftn.; fut., how expr. in, 470, 4, *a*; indic. in, 537, *g*; antic. subj. in, 507, 3.  
**"Indirect reflexive"**, 262, 2.  
**Individual condition**, see **Condition**.  
**Indo-European speech**, 46, ftn. 1; forces of cases in, 334; of moods, 458.  
**indulgeō**, w. dat., 362; w. acc., 364, 4.

Inferential conjunctions, 311.

inferior, comparison, 123.

infimus, lowest part of, 244.

Infinitives, *Form*, 178. *Syntax*: synopsis of uses, 583; gender, case relations, etc., 584; tenses, 472; in ind. disc., 534, 1, 591; tenses w. verbs of swearing, etc., 593, a; w. verbs of remembering, *ib.*, b; w. verbs of obligation, propriety, etc., p. 311, ftn. 2; energetic or emphatic perfs., 490; list of verbs taking ind. disc., p. 318, ftn.; ordinary uses: dependent, 585-594, 597, independent, historical, 595, exclamatory, 596; poetical and later prose uses, 598; special points: complementary infin., 586, a; omission of subject in ind. disc., 592; w. *parātus*, *suētus*, etc., 586, f; w. verbs of seeing, hearing, or representing, 605, 1, n.; in rel. cls., 535, 1, b; after *quam*, *ib.*, c.

Inflection, defined, 54.

Informal indirect discourse, subj. of, 535, 1, a, 536, a.

Infra, w. acc., 380.

innixus, abl. w., 438, 2, a; dat. w., *ib.*, b.

inops, w. gen., 347, a; w. abl., 425, a.

inquam, conj., 198, 2; position of, 624, 16.

"Inquiring," two acc. w., 393; indirect question w., 537, b.

Inquiry for instructions, in subj., 503; in indic., 571, 572.

"Inseparable prepositions," see 218, 1.

insidiae, pl. only, 104, 4; dat. w., 363, 1, a).

instar, gen. w., 339, d.

Instrument, abl. of, 423.

Instrument or means, ends. denoting, 206, 6.

"Instrumental ablative," 61, b, 423.

"Integral part," see Subj. by attraction.

Intensive pronoun, see ipse.

Intensives (meditatives), 212, 4.

Intention, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a), b), and ftns.; by fut. act. partic., 607.

intentus, cases w., 438, 5.

inter, form in cpds., 51, 10; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376; inter *sē*, etc., 266.

interclūdō, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 2.

interdīcō, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 3.

"Interest," dat. of, see Reference, dat. of, 366-369.

interest, cases w., 345; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, c); w. infin., 585.

interior, comparison, 123.

Interjections, 221, 313.

Interrogative pronouns, 141, 275.

Interrogative sentence, see Questions.

intrā, w. acc., 380.

Intransitive, see Voice and Verbs.

Intransitive verbs, passive of, 201, c, 290, a.

-iō, verbs in, of conj. III, 158, 168, 1.

ipse, decl. 139; use, 267-269; agreement of, 268; as reflex., 263, 264; *meus ipsius*, etc., 339, b.

irī, in fut. infin. pass., 178, 3.

Irony, 632, 4.

Irregular nouns of decl. III, 92.

Irregular verbs, 170; conj. of, 190-197.

is, decl., 137; meaning and uses, 271-274; sometimes instead of *sē*, 262, 2, a; w. *qui*-cl., det. 550; descr., 521, 1; w. *ut*-cl., 521, 2, b.

-is, acc. pl. in, 75, a, 88, 3, 118, 4.

-iscō, inchoatives in, 212, 2, 168, F, a.

Islands, gen., 58, 2; constrs. of place w., 449-451.

iste, decl., 138, 2; meaning, 271, 274, 4.

ita, in answers, 232, 1; *ita ut* or *nē*, w. vol.

subj., 502, 2, a; *ita ut*, *ut nōn*, etc., 521, 2,

d; *ita ut*, of way by wh., *ib.*; *ita sī*, 578, 5.

itaque, accent, 32, 2, n.; use, 311, 3.

iter, decl., 80, 6.

"Iterative" subj., see Repeated action.

Iterative verbs, see Frequentatives, 212, 1.

-itō, frequentatives in, 212, 1.

iubeō, w. acc., 397, 1; w. infin., 587; w. subj., *ib.*, b; iubeor, w. infin., 588.

iūgerum, decl., 107, 2; as measure, 676, b.

-ium, gen. pl. in, 64, 88, 4, 91, 1, 118, 1.

iungō, constr. w., 431, c.

Iuppiter, decl., 92.

iūrātus, having sworn, 161, 290, a, 4).

iūs, decl., 86, 1; iūs est, w. cl. of obligation,

513, 5; iūs est bellī, w. vol. cl., cf. 502, 3, c), and ftn.

-ius, pronom. gen., quantity of i in, 21, 2,

112, n.; -ius in gen. in poetry, 653.

-ius, suffix, 210, 1, 215, 2; gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 71, 2, 3; of adjs. in,

110, a.

iussū, abl. only, 106, 1; case, 414, a.

iuvenis, decl., 88, 4; compar., 122, 123, b.

iūxtā, w. acc., 380.

-ivī, perf. contracted, 173, A; short forms of, 163, 1, 3.

J, letter, 1, n.

Judging, person, in dat., 370.

"Jussive," see Votive subjunctive.

Juxtaposition, in cpds., 214, 3, 218, 2.

K, letter, 1, a.

Kindred meaning, acc. of, 396.

"Knowing," w. infin., 589.

Labials, 7, 1, 12; changes of, 49, 8, 10; stems in, 76, 77, 1, 90.

laetor, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 2; w. abl., 444, a; w. infin., 594.

laetus, w. force of adv., 245; w. abl., 444, a.

Leading idea not in principal noun, 333.

Leap year, calendar for, 669, 671.

lēgs, by law, 414, a; under the condition, 436, b.

Length, measures of, 676.

Lengthening in poetry, 664; see also 652.

Less vivid future condition and conclusion, **580**.

liber, decl., **111**; constr. w., **411**, *a*, *b*.

liberi, pl. only, **104**, *4*; gen. pl. of, **71**, *4*, *b*).

liberō, *acquit*, w. gen., **342**; w. abl., **408**, *3* and exc. *1*.

licet, conj., **201**; w. dat., **362**; w. subj., **531**, *2*; = *although*, **532**, *2*, *a*; w. infin., **585**; w. pred. dat., *ib.*, *c*.

"Likeness," adjs. of, w. dat., **362**, *III*; w. gen., **339**, *c*.

linguā, as loc. abl., **436**, *b*.

"Linguals," see *Dentals*.

Liquids, **6**, *1*; stems in, **79-81**.

litore, w. and without in, **436**.

Litotes, **632**, *1*.

Local point of view, dat. of, **370**, *a*.

Locative, *Form*, **61**, *b*; decl. I, **66**, *5*; decl. II, **71**, *6*; decl. III, **93**; in pron. advs., **127**, *7*; domi, humi, etc., **449**, *a*; locative of names of towns, etc., **449**; appositive to, in abl. w. prep., **452**.

Locative ablative, **334**, *2*.

locō, w. gerundive, **612**, *III*.

locus, pl. of, **108**, *2*; locō, locis, in abl. w. or without prep., **436**.

longius, w. abl., or without effect on case, **416**, *d*; w. abl. of noun of time, **417**, *a*.

longum est, etc., mood, **582**, *3*, *b*).

Loosely attached descr. cl. w. quī, etc., **568**.

m, final, in slurring, **34**, **646**.

magis, use in compar., **121**.

magnopere, magis, maximē, compar., **129**.

magnus, compar., **122**; magni, -ō, of value or price, **356**, *1*, **427**, *2*, *a*).

Main (or principal) sentence or cl., **224**, *1*, maior, w. nātū, **441**; w. quam quī or ut, **521**, *2*, *c*.

maius, pronunc., **29**, *2*, *a*.

male, quantity of *e*, **28**, *2*, *c*); compar., **129**.

mālō, conj., **192**; w. vol. cl., **502**, *3*, *a*); w. infin., **586**, **587**; mālīm, māllem, w. subj., = *a wish*, **519**, *1*, *c*.

malus, compar., **122**.

manēō, *abide by*, constr. w., **438**, *2*, *c*.

Manner, expr. by abl., **445**; by ad, in, or per w. acc., *ib.*, *3*, *a*; by abl. absolute, **421**, *8*; by partic., **604**, *5*.

Masculine caesura, **641**, *a*.

Material, gen. of, **349**; may be expr. by ex (poetic dē) w. abl., **406**, *4*; prep. may be omitted in poetry, *ib.*, *a*.

Material, suffix denoting, **209**, *1*.

mātūrus, comparison, **120**, *a*.

maximē, use in comparison, **121**.

maximī, gen. of value or price, **356**, *1*.

"May," "might," expr. by potential subj., **516**, **517**; by possum w. infin., **586**.

Means, expr. by abl., **423**; by abl. absolute, **421**, *7*; persons as means, **423**, *a*.

"Measure of difference," see **424**.

Measures of money, weight, etc., **672-677**.

mēcum, **418**, *a*.

Meditatives, **212**, *4*.

medius, *the middle of*, **244**; w. abl. noun, **436** and *a*.

mei, gen. of ego, reg. objective, **254**, *a*.

melior, decl., **116**.

memini, conj., **199**; case-constrs. w., **350** and *a*; w. infin., **589**; force of tenses, **199**, *1*, **487**; mementō, **496**, *c*.

memor, **117**, *b*, **118**, *1*, *a*, *2*); w. gen., **354**.

-men, -mentum, suffixes, **206**, *3*.

Mental action, obj. of, in gen., **350**, **351**.

-met, particle, **134**, *d*.

Metaphor, **632**, *13*.

Metonymy, **632**, *9*.

Metre, defined, **638**.

metuō, w. dat. or acc., **367**; w. subj. cl. w. nō or ut, **502**, *4*; w. infin., **586**.

meus, decl., **136**, *a*; voc. mī, *ib*.

mī, dat. of ego, **134**.

Middle voice, p. **158**, *ftn.*; w. acc., **390**, *b*.

mihī, quantity of final *i*, **28**, *n*, **134**, *a*);

mihī, in poetry, *ib.*, **652**, *1*.

miles, final syll., **30**, *3*, **49**, *4*; decl., **76**.

militiae, *in war, in the field*, **449**, *a*.

mille, **131**, *3*; use, **131**, *3*, *4*.

minimē, compar., **129**; in answers, **232**, *2*.

minimī, -ō, of value, **356**, *1*; **427**, *2*, *a*).

minor nātū, **441**; minōris, of value, **356**, *1*.

minus, comparison, **129**; w. abl., or without effect on case, **416**, *d*; w. abl. of nouns of time, **417**, *a*.

miror, conj., **160**; rare gen. w., **352**, *3*.

misceō, constrs. w., **431** and *a*, *b*.

miserer, miserescō, w. gen., **352**, *2*.

miseret, acc. and gen. w., **352**, *1*, **390**, *a*.

Mixed conditions and conclusions, **582**, *1*.

Mixed stems, **74**, *C*, **90**, **91**.

"Modest (softened) statements," **519**, *1*, *b*.

modo, short -o, **28**, *4*; in cl. of proviso, **529**.

monēō, conj., **156**; w. neut. acc., **397**, *1*;

w. vol. cl., **502**, *3*, *a*); w. infin., **587**.

Money, Roman, **672-675**.

Monosyllables, quantity of, **25-28**.

Moods, **145**; mood-sign of subj., **175**;

mood defined, **460**; table of forces, **462**;

general sketch of historical relations, **459**.

Months, names of, **662**; gend., **58**, *1* and *a*.

mora, p. **344**, *ftn.* *2*.

mōre, of accordance, **414**, *a*; of manner, **445**, *1*.

More vivid future condition and conclusion, **579**, *a*.

mōs est, w. vol. subj., **502**, *3*, *c*); w. subj. cl. of actuality, **521**, *3*, *a*); w. infin., **585**.

Motion toward, see *Place whither*, **386**.

multi sunt quī, subj. or indic. w., **521**, *1*, *b*.

Multiplicatives, **133**.

multum, *much*, **126**, *6*, *n*, **387**, *III*; comparison, **129**.

tergeō, *wipe*, tergēre, tersī, tersum (tergō, tergere rare).

terō, *rub*, terere, trīvī, trītum.

terreō, *frighten*, terrēre, terruī, territum.

texō, *weave*, texere, texuī, textum.

timeō, *be afraid*, timēre, timuī.

tinguō (tingō), *wet*, tinguere, tinxī, tinctum.

tollō, *lift*, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum.

[\*tol-nō, 168, D.]

tondeō, *shear*, tondēre, —, tōnsum.

Perf. of at-tondeō, at-tondī; of dē-tondeō, dē-tondī (dē-totondī rare).

tonō, *thunder*, tonāre, tonuī (at-tonitus, Adj.). Usually impers.

torqueō, *twist*, torquēre, torsi, tortum.

torreō, *dry up*, torrēre, torruī, tostum.

trahō, *draw*, trahere, trāxī, tractum.

tremō, *tremble*, tremere, tremuī.

tribuō, *assign*, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum.

trūdō, *shove*, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum.

tueor, *watch*, tuērī, tūtus sum. Dep.

tumeō, *be swollen*, tumēre.

tundō, *pound*, tundere, (tutudī), tūsum or tūsum. Perf. re-ttudi (43, 1) from re-tundō.

ulciscor, *avenge*, ulciscī, ultus sum. Dep.

urgeō, *push*, urgēre, ursī.

ūrō, *burn*, ūrere, ussī, ustum. Note amb-ūrō and (formed after this) comb-ūrō.

ūtor, *use*, ūtī, ūsus sum. Dep.

vādō, *go*, vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum.

valeō, *be strong*, valēre, valuī, valitūrus.

vehō, *carry*, vehere, vexī, vectum.

vellō, *tear*, vellere, vellī (vulsī), vulsum.

vēndō, *sell*, vēndere, vēndidī [vēnum + dō].

vēneō, *be sold*, vēnīre, vēnī [vēnum + eō].

veniō, *come*, venīre, vēnī, ventum.

vereor, *revere*, verērī, veritus sum. Dep.

vergō, *slope*, vergere.

verrō, *sweep*, verrere, verri, versum. Early vorrō, etc.

vertō, *turn*, vertere, vertī, versum. Early vortō, etc. Dep. re-vertor has Perf. re-vertī.

vēscor, *feed upon*, vēscī. Dep.

vesperāscō, *become evening*, vesperāscere, vesperāvi [vesper].

vetō, *forbid*, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum. Early votō, etc.

videō, *see*, vidēre, vidī, vīsum.

vigēō, *be strong*, vigēre, vīguī.

vinciō, *bind*, vincīre, vīnxī, vīctum.

vīncō, *conquer*, vīncere, vīcī, vīctum.

vīsō, *look after*, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum.

vīvō, *live*, vīvere, vīxī, -vīctum.

volō, *wish*, velle, voluī. Irreg. 192.

volvō, *roll*, volvere, volvī, volūtum.

vomō, *vomit*, vomere, vomuī, vomitum.

voveō, *vow*, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum.

# INDEX

The references are to sections, unless the page (p.) is mentioned. The principal abbreviations used are: aor. = aorist or aoristic; cl. = clause; constr. = construction; cpd. = compound; compar. = comparative; dep. = dependent; det. = determinative; descr. = descriptive; end. = ending; expr. = expressed; ftn. = footnote; imper. = imperative; imperf. = imperfect; ind. = indirect; n. = note; narr. = narrative; opt. = optative; partic. = participle; reg. = regularly; subj. = subjunctive; vol. = volitive; w. = with; wh. = which.

- ā, ab, abs, in cpds., 51, 1; use, 405 and *a*, 406, 1, 2, 408.
- Ablative, *Form*: abl. sing., decl. III, in -e or -i, 75, *a*, 88, 2; of adjs., 118, 1; in advs., 126, 1, 3, 4; abl. pl., decl. I, in -ābus, 66, 4; decl. IV, in -ubus, 97, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 404.
- Absolute tenses, 467, 2, 477, *b*, *c*.
- Absolute use of trans. verb, 289, *a*.
- Abstract nouns, form, 206, 2, 4, 207, 2; defined, 240, 5; w. concrete meaning, *ib.*, *a*; pl. of, 103, n., 240, 5, *b*.
- Absurd question, w. an, 236.
- ābus, in decl. I, 66, 4.
- ac, see atque.
- Accent, 31-33; in verse, 645.
- Accompaniment, abl. of, 418-420.
- Accordance, abl. of, 414; ut-cl. of, 562.
- Accusative, *Form*: acc. sing. end., 62, 1, n.; in -im, 75, *a*, 88, 1; in -a in Greek nouns, 95, examples; acc. pl. in -is, 75, *a*, 88, 3, 118, 4; acc. as adv., 126, 5, 6, 7; acc. pl. neut. of adj. of decl. III, 118, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 379.
- "Accusing" constrs. w., 342, 343, 397, 1.
- Acquiescence, how expr., see Consent.
- Act anticipated, antequam, etc., w. subj., 507, 4, *a*-*d*); w. indic., *ib.*, n., 571.
- Action, nouns of, 206, 2, 3.
- Active, see Voice.
- Actuality (fact), subj. of, 520, 521.
- ad, form in cpds., 51, 2; w. acc., 380, 364, 6; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.
- adeō, meaning, 302, 7; adeō ut, 521, 2, *a*.
- adēs, suffix, 207, 3.
- Adjectives, *Form*: decl. I and II, 110-112; decl. III, 113-118; comparison, 119-123; pronom. adj., 112, 143; derivation of, 208-210; numerals, 130-133; verbal adjs., 146. *Syntax*: adj. defined, 221; used w. force of advs., 246; as substs., 249, 250; pred., 230; comparison of, 241; denoting a part, 244; agreement of, 320; case w. nihil, aliquid, etc., 346, *a*; neut. pl. of, w. gen., 357.
- admonet, constr. w., 351.
- Adverbs, *Form*: 124-127, 293; compar., 128, 129; numeral advs., 133. *Syntax*: 294-295; forces in comparison, 300; two comparatives, 301.
- Adverbial accusative, p. 209, ftn. 2; clauses, 239; prefixes, 51, 218, 1.
- Adversative conjunctions, 310.
- Adversative idea, expr. by abl. absolute, 421, 5; by partic., 604, 2; by qui-cl. w. subj., 523, w. indic., 569, *a*; by cum-cl. w. subj., 525, 526; w. indic., 569, *a*; by quamquam-cl. w. indic., 556.
- Aenēas, decl., 68.
- aequē ac, 307, 2, *a*; w. si, w. subj., 504, 3.
- Agency, nouns of, 80, 1, 206, 1.
- Agent, expr. by abl. w. ab, 406, 1; by dat., 373.
- Agreement, of nouns, prons., adjs., and particls., 316-327; of pred. depending on infin. w. putor, videor, etc., 590, 2; poetic nom. in pred. of infin. for acc., 592, *a*; agreement of verbs, 328-332; agreement w. antecedent of rel., 328, 1, *a*.
- aiō, conj., 198, 1; ain, form, 231, 1, *b*, n. 3.
- aliquis, aliqui, decl., 142, 2; use, 276, 2.
- aliter atque (ac), 307, 2, *a*.
- alius, decl., 112, *a*; meaning, 279; as recipr. pron., 265; w. atque or ac, 307, 2, *a*.
- Alliteration, 632, 19.
- Alphabet, 1.
- alter, decl., 112, *a*, *c*; meaning, 279, 1, 2; as recipr. pron., 265.
- Alternative questions, 234.
- amb-, am-, 51, 3, 218, 1, *b*.
- ambō, decl., 131, 2, n.; use, 277.
- amō, conj., 155.
- amplius, w. abl. or without effect on case, 416, *d*.
- an, 234; in absurd questions, 236.
- Anacolúthon, 631, 8.
- Analogy, working of, 315, 4.
- Anáphora, 632, 5.
- Anástrophe, 631, 14.
- Anchisēs, decl., 68.
- Andromachē, decl., 68.
- Animals, gen. of names of, 59, 2.
- animi, in mind, 449, *c*.

- Answers, forms of, **232, 233**.  
**ante**, form in cpds., **51, 4**; w. acc., **380**;  
 cpds. of, w. dat., **376**; in expressions of  
 time, w. acc., **380**, example, or abl., **424**,  
 example; as adv., **303, c**.  
 Antecedent, defined, **281, a**; omission of,  
**284, 1**; incomplete, **521, 1, a**; repeated,  
**284, 4**; attracted to rel., *ib.*, **6, 327**.  
 Antepenult, **31, 2**.  
 antequam or priusquam, w. subj., **507, 4**,  
*a-d*); w. fut. perf. or fut. indic., *ib.*, n.;  
 w. pres. indic., **571**; w. past tenses of  
 indic., **550, b**.  
 Anticipation, expr. by subj., **506-509**; by  
 fut. perf. or fut. indic., **507, 4, n. to a-d**);  
 by pres. indic., **571**.  
 Anticipatory subjunctive, **506-509**.  
 Aoristic tenses, **466, 2, 467, 2**; of indic.,  
**468, n.**; of subj., **470, 2**.  
 "Apodosis," see Conclusion, **573-582**.  
 Application, gen. of, **354**.  
 "Appositive genitive," **341**.  
 Appositive words, **317, 2**; agreement of,  
**319, 1, 320, II**; w. names of towns where,  
 whither, whence, **452**; attracted by dat.,  
**326, 3**; often put w. a rel., **327**; acc. in  
 apposition to a sentence, **395**; nom. in-  
 stead of voc., **401**; position of, **624, 5**.  
 apud, w. acc., **380, 454, 4**.  
 Arsip, p. 351, ftn. 5.  
 Article, lacking in Latin, **221, e**.  
 -as, old gen. sing. in, **66, 1**.  
 -ascō, verbs in, **168, F, a, 212, 2**.  
 Asides, qui, cum, etc., in, **567**.  
 "Asking," see "Inquiring" and "Request-  
 ing."  
 Aspirates, **6, 5, 11, 12, 14, 2, n**.  
 Assimilation of consonants, **49-51**.  
 Association of ideas, **315, 2**.  
 Asyndeton, **305, 1, a**.  
 at, at enim, etc., **310, 1, a-c**.  
 atque or ac, **307, 2**; choice of forms, *ib.*,  
**3, c**; used w. *idem*, *alius*, etc., *ib.*, **2, a**.  
 atqui, **310, 3**.  
 Attempted action, tenses of, **484**.  
 Attendant circumstances, abl. of, **422**.  
 Attraction, agreement of prons., adjs., and  
 partic., by, **326, 1-5**; of verb by, **332**;  
 adj. attracted into rel. cl., **284, 7**; ap-  
 positive attracted into rel. cl., **327**; subj.  
 by attraction, **539**.  
 Attributive words, **317, 1**; agreement, **320, I**.  
 audeō, semi-depon., **161**.  
 audiō, conj., **169**; w. cum-cl., **524, a**; w.  
 partic., **605, 1**; w. infin., *ib.*, n.  
 aut, **308, 1, 3, a**; correlative, **309**.  
 autem, **310, 2, a, b**; position, **624, 8, b**.  
 Auxiliary and principal tenses, **477, c**.  
 Auxiliary verb, **153, 164, 8**.  
 bonus, decl., **110**; compar., **122**.  
 bōs, decl., **92**.  
 Brachylogy, **631, 2**.  
 Bucolic diaeresis, **641, c, n. 2**.  
 Caesar, decl., **80, 3**; Caesarēs, pl., **103, n**.  
 Caesura, **640, 641**; masc. and fem., **641, a**.  
 Calendar, **660-671**.  
 Calends, Kalendae, **664**.  
 "Can," "could," how expr., see Capacity.  
 Capacity, expr. by potential subj., **516**,  
**517**; by possum w. infin., **586**.  
 caput, decl., **76, 77, 5**; gen. of penalty,  
**343**; abl. of penalty, **428, b**.  
 Cardinal numbers, **130, 131**.  
 Cases, form, **61, 62**; endings, **62-64**; ear-  
 liest meanings of, **334**.  
 causā, on account of, case, **444, d**; w. gen.,  
**339, d**; w. gerundive, **612, 1**.  
 Causal-adversative qui- or cum-cl., in subj.,  
**523, 525, 526**; in indic., **569, a**.  
 Cause or reason expr. by abl., **444**; by abl.  
 absolute, **421, 4**; by prep. phrases, **444**,  
**526, c**; by subj. qui- or cum-cl., **523, 525**,  
**526**; by indic. qui- or cum-cl., **569, a**;  
 by cl. w. quod, quia, quoniam, or quādo,  
**555**; by nōn quia, nōn quod, etc., w. subj.,  
**535, 2, b**; by partic., **604, 2**.  
 cavē, in prohibitions, **501, 3, a, 2**, **502, 3**,  
**503, 2, b**; without nē, *ib.*, n. 2; w. short -e,  
**28, 2, b**.  
 -c(e), particle, **32, n.**, **33, 138, 2, c**.  
 cēio, constrs. w., **393**.  
 cēseō, w. vol. cl., **502, 3, a**; w. cl. of obliga-  
 tion or propriety, **513, 5**; w. infin., **569**.  
 cētera, acc. of respect, **389, a**.  
 cēteri, meaning, **279, 1, a**.  
 "Characteristic" and "characterizing  
 clause," see Descriptive clause.  
 Charge, gen. of, **342**.  
 Chiasmus, **628**.  
 circā, circum, circiter, w. acc., **380**; as  
 advs., **303, c**.  
 circum-, form in cpds., **51, 5**; w. acc., **380**;  
 cpds. of, w. acc., **386, 391, 2**; w. dat.,  
**376**.  
 Circumstances or situation, expr. by abl.,  
**422**; by abl. absolute, **421**; by partic.,  
**604, 2**; by cum-cl., **524, 525**.  
 cis and citrā, w. acc., **380**.  
 citerior, compar., **123**.  
 Cities, gen. of names of, **58, 2**.  
 clam, adv., or prep. w. abl. or acc., **458, 2**.  
 Clause, definitions: principal or dep. (sub-  
 ordinate), **224, 1**; coördinate, **225**; det.,  
 p. 260, ftn. 1; descr., p. 260, ftn. 2; con-  
 ditional, **228, 2**; free, p. 302, ftn.; subst.,  
**238**; adv., **239**; individual and general-  
 izing, **576, 577**.  
 Climax, **632, 11**.  
 coepi, conj., **199, 2**; voice of infin. w., *ib.*  
 Cognitive acc., see Kindred meaning, **396**.

belli, in war, **449, a**.

bene, compar., **129**.

- cognōvi* etc., force of tenses, 487.  
*cōgō*, w. acc., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. infin., 587; w. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, a).  
 Collective noun, 240, 3; agreement w., 325, 331, 1.  
*com-*, see *con-*.  
 Combinations of tenses, usual, 476, 477; less usual, 478; mechanical harmony of subj. tenses, 480; tenses depending on pres. perf., 481; permanent truths depending on past tenses, 482.  
 Command, expr. by imper., 496, 501, 3, b; by subj., 501, 3, a, b; by fut. indic., 572; in ind. disc., 538.  
 Common nouns, 240, 2.  
 "Common" syllable, 28, 5, n.  
*commonefaciō*, *commoneō*, constr. w., 351.  
*communis*, w. either gen. or dat., 339, c.  
 Comparative, case constr. w., 416, 417; w. *quam* and *qui-* or *ut-cl.*, 521, 2, c.  
 Comparatives, decl., 116, 118; formation, see Comparison.  
 Comparison: of adjs., formation, 119-123; forces of degrees, 241, 1-4; two compar., 242; comparison of advs., 128-129; forces of degrees, 300; two compar., 301.  
 Comparison, imaginative, w. *quasi*, etc., and subj., 504, 3.  
 Complementary infinitive, defined, 586, a.  
 Complex sentence, 223, 3.  
 Composition of words, 213-218; quantity in cpds., 24; accent in, 31, 3; vowel-change in, 42; assimilation of prep. in, 50, 51; redupl. perf. of cpds., 173, D, a.  
 Composition or material, gen. of, 349.  
 Compound sentence, 223, 2.  
 Compounds of verb and prep., w. dat., 376, 377; w. dat. and acc., 376, a; w. acc., 391, 2; w. dat. or acc., *ib.*, a.  
*con-*, *com-*, form in cpds., 51, 6; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
 "Conative action," tenses of, 484.  
 Concern, dat. of, 366.  
 Concession of indifference, expr. by imper., 497, 2; by subj., 532, 1; by subj. cl. w. *quamvis* etc., 532, 2.  
 Concessive, see Concession, and Adversative.  
 Conclusions, see Conditions.  
 Concrete nouns, 240, 4.  
 Concrete object for wh. dat. of, 361.  
 "Condemning," gen. w., 342, 343.  
 Condensed comparison, 631, 3.  
 Conditional sentence or cl., 228, 2, 577; see also Conditions.  
 Conditions and conclusions, generalizing and individual distinguished, 576; three types, 575-581; in ind. dis., 534, 1, b, 536.  
*cōnfidō*, w. dat., 362, II; w. abl., 437.  
*coniciō*, quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
 Conjugation of verbs, 54, 145-201; of *sum*, 153-154; conjs. distinguished, 148; first conj., 155; second, 156; third, 157; fourth, 159; of depon., 160; periphr., 162; peculiarities in, 163-165; variation between conjs., 165; of irreg. verbs, 190-197; of defect. verbs, 198-200; of impers. verbs, 201.  
 Conjunctions, origin, 129; defined, 304; coordinating, 305 and 1; copulative, 307; disjunctive, 308; advers., 310; inferential, 311; subordinating, 312.  
 Connection, gen. of, 339.  
*cōnsciūs*, gen. w., 354; dat. w., 363, 1, b).  
 Consecutive clauses defined, 519, 3, a, 521, 1, e; of ideal certainty, 519, 2, 3; of actuality, 521, 1-3.  
 Consent, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 531, 1, 2; by indic., 571, 572.  
*cōnsistō*, constrs. w., 438, 3.  
 Consonants, 2; classif., 6-8, 12; pronunc., 11; changes of, 47-49; stems in, 74, A, 75-86.  
*cōnstituō*, w. vol. subj. or infin., 586 and e.  
*cōnstō*, constrs. w., 438, 1, 3, a, b.  
 Construction, defined, 314, 3.  
*cōnsuēvi* etc., force of tenses, 487.  
*cōnsulō*, w. dat. or acc., 367.  
 "Contention," w. cum and abl., 419, 4; w. dat., 363, 2, c; w. acc., 397, 2.  
*contentus*, w. abl., 438, 4.  
*contrā*, w. acc., 380; w. *atque* (ac), 307, 2, a.  
 Contraction of vowels, 45; quantity resulting from, 19; of vowels, in poetry, 568.  
 Contrast, *ut-cl.* of, *while* . . . (*yet*), 563.  
 Coördinate clauses, 225.  
 Coördinate sentences, 223, 2.  
 Coördinating conjunctions, 305-311.  
 Copula, 230, a.  
 Copulative compounds, 216, 1.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 307, 309.  
*cōram*, abl. w., 407, 1.  
 Corrective *aut*, *sive*, vel, 308, 3, a; *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, 310, 7.  
 Correlatives, 144.  
 Countries, gen. of names of, 58, 2.  
*crēdō*, w. dat., 362, II; w. acc., 364, 3.  
*cui*, pronunc., 10, d, 140, a.  
*cuius*, pronunc., 29, 2, a, 140, a.  
*cum*, prep., in cpds., 51, 6; w. soc. abl., 418; *mecum*, etc., *ib.*, a; ideas expr. by, 419.  
*cum*-clauses: descr. cl. of ideal certainty, 519, 2; of actuality, 521, 1; descr. cl. of situation, 524; of situation, w. caus. or advers. idea, 525; purely caus. or advers. cl., 526; of repeated action, 540; determining a time, 550 and a; of the time included in the reckoning, 550 and ftn. 2; of equivalent action, 551; subst., 553; aor. narr. cl. (*cum primum*), 557, a; cum . . . tum . . . , 564; cum in forward-moving cl., 566; "cum inversum," *ib.*, a; parenthetical cl. and "asides," 567; loosely attached descr. cl., 568; free descr. cl., 569; tacit caus. or advers. cl., *ib.*, a;

- general conditions, 577, ftn. 3; see also examples, 579, 581.
- cupiō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. gen., 352, 3; w. subj., 511, 2; w. infin., 586, 587.
- cūr*, w. subj. of obligation, 513, 1, 2; of natural likelihood, 515, 1, 2.
- cūrō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. gerundive, 612, III.
- Customary action, tenses of, 484.
- Dactyl, 637; dactylic hexameter, 639; dactylic pentameter, 642.
- Dates, how expr., 664-669.
- Dative, *Form*: sing., decl. IV, in -ū, 97, 2; decl. V, in -ēi or -ei, 100, 1; in -ē, *ib.*, 2; pl., decl. I, in -ibus, 66, 4; decl. IV, in -ibus, 97, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 359.
- dē*, in cpds., 24, 2.
- dē*, w. abl., 405, 406, 3, 4; for gen. of whole, 346, *c*; w. verbs of separation, 408.
- dēbeō*, moods and tenses of, 582, 3; w. infin., 586.
- deceat*, w. acc., 390, a; w. subj., 513, 5; w. infin., 585.
- Declarative sentence or clause, 228, 1.
- Declension, 54, 55; the five decls. of nouns, 63; endings, 64; I, 65-68; II, 69-73; III, 74-95; IV, 96-98; V, 99-101; nouns variable in, 107; of adjs., 110-118; of comparatives, 116; of partics., 117; of numerals, 131; of prons., 134-142.
- Defective nouns, 102-104, 106; defect. compar., 123; verbs, 198-201.
- "Defining" genitive, 341.
- Degree, acc. of, 387.
- Degree, cl. determining the, 550, and ftn. 2.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 424.
- Degrees of comparison, 119.
- Deliberation, expr. by subj., 503; by pres. indic., 571; by fut. indic., 572.
- Demand, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a).
- "Demonstrative," see Determinative.
- Denominative verbs, p. 98, ftn. 1, 211; of conj. I, 211, 1, 212, n., 166, 1, 2; of conj. II, 211, 3, 167, 1, *c*; of conj. III, 211, 4, 168, *H*, 1; of conj. IV, 211, 2, 169, 1.
- Dentals, 7, 2, 12; changes of, 49, 4, 5, 8, 10.
- Dependent clause, 224, 1 and a.
- Dependent compounds, 216, 3.
- Deponent verbs, defined, 145, 160; originally reflexive, 288, 3, *b*; voice meanings of, 291, a-d; perf. pass. partic. of, w. act. meaning, 602, 1, a.
- Deprecated act, w. *antequam*, etc., and subj., 507, 4, a; w. indic., 571.
- "Depriving," abl. w., 408.
- Derivation of nouns and adjectives, 203-210; derivatives, primary and secondary, 203; vowel-quantity in, 23, 2.
- Descent*, words denoting, 207, 3.
- Descriptive compounds, 216, 2.
- Descriptive genitive, 355; abl., 443; tenses, 466, 1, a; descr. cl. defined, p. 260, ftn. 2; clauses: see synopses, 499, 543.
- Desideratives, 212, 3.
- Desire, see *Wish*, 511, 1.
- dēspērō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. acc., 391, 1.
- deterior, comparison, 123.
- Determinative cl., p. 260, ftn. 1; see synopses, 499, 543.
- Determinative-descriptive pronouns, decl., 137, 138; distinctive meanings of *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*, and of *tālis*, *tantus*, *tot*, 271.
- deus*, decl., 71, 5.
- Diaeresis, bucolic, 641, *c*, n. 2.
- Diastole, 654, ftn. 3.
- dīc*, imper., 164, 1.
- dīcō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. infin., 589; in subj. in cl. of reason, 535, 2, a, n. 3.
- Didō*, decl., 95, *b*.
- diēs*, decl., 99; gen. 101.
- "Difference" or "aversion," abl. w., 412; poetic dat. w., 363, 2, *c*.
- difficilis*, comparison, 120, 2, a.
- dignus*, w. abl., 442; w. subj. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in -ū, 619, 2; w. infin., 598, 2, *c*.
- Diminutive adjectives, 207, 1.
- Diphthongs, 5; pronunc. in Latin, 10.
- Direct discourse, explained, 533.
- Direct object, acc. of, 390, 391.
- Direct reflexive, 262, 1.
- Direction or relation expr. by dat., 362, I-III; w. ad. in, etc., 384, 2; poetic dat. of direction in space, 375.
- dis*-, 24, 1, 51, 7, 218, 1, *b*.
- Disjunctive conjunctions, 308, 309.
- "Distance," see Extent of space, acc., 387, I, and degree of difference, abl., 424.
- Distich, elegiac, 642, a, ftn. 6.
- Distributive numerals, 133; used for cardinals, 247.
- Distributive pronouns, 142, 278.
- diū*, comparison, 129.
- docēō*, constr. w., 393 and *b*, 1).
- domus*, decl., 97, 5; *domi*, loc. form, 71, 6; gen., 98, a; of place where, whither, whence, 449-451; w. modifiers, 454.
- dōnec*, see *dum*.
- Double consonants, 11.
- "Double questions," 234.
- "Doubt," w. *quā*, 519, 4, *b*; 521, 3, *b*.
- "Dubitative subjunctive," see Deliberation.
- dubitō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*; w. antic. subj., 506, 2, *b*; of ideal certainty, 519, 4, *b*; of actuality, 521, 3, *b*; w. infin., 586.
- dūc*, imper., 164, 1.
- duim*, *duis*, *duit*, etc., 197, a.
- dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, w. antic. subj., 507, 5; w. fut. perf. or fut. indic., *ib.*, a; w. pres. indic., 571; determining time up to wh., 550 and *b*; narr. cl. w., 560; determining time during wh., 550 and *b*; *dum*-cl. of



- situation, 559; replacing pres. pass. partic., 602, 2; subj. dum-cl. of proviso, 529.  
*dummodo*, in cl. of proviso, 529.  
*duo*, decl., 131, 2.  
 Duration of time, expr. by acc., 387, II; by per and acc., *ib.*, *a*; by abl., 440.
- ē*, prep., see *ex*.  
*ecquis*? decl., 141, *b*; use, 275, 6.  
*edō*, conj., 196; *edim*, *edīs*, etc., 196, *a*.  
*efficiō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. cl. of fact, 521, 3, *a*.  
 "Effort," w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*.  
*egeō*, w. gen., 347; w. abl., 425, *a*.  
*ego*, decl., 134; *egomet*, *ib.*, *d*.  
*eius*, pronunc. and quantity, 29, 2, *a*; 137, *a*; *eius modī*, descr. gen., 355.  
*Elegiac stanza*, 642, *a*.  
 Elision, see Slurring.  
 Ellipsis, 631, 1.  
 Emphasis, obtained by order, 625-628.  
 Emphatic future-perfect, 490 and *a*.  
 Emphatic perfect, 490.  
 Enallage, 631, *g*.  
 Enclitics defined, 33, 1; quantity of, 28, 2, *a*; question of accent before, 32, *n*.  
 "End of motion," expr. by prep. w. acc., 385; by poetic dat., 375.  
 Endeavor, expr. by vol. subj., 500.  
 Endings, inflectional, origin, 203, ftn. 2; of nouns, 64; of verbs, 151.  
 Energetic or emphatic perf., 490.  
*enim*, meaning and position, 311, 6.  
 Entreaty, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 530.  
*eō*, conj., 194.  
*eō . . . quō*, of degree of difference, 424.  
 Epistolary tenses, 493.  
*equidem*, use of, 257, *a*.  
 Equivalent action, cl. of, 551.  
*ergā*, w. acc., 380, 364, 7.  
*ergō*, 311, 1; w. gen., 339, *d*.  
*-escō*, verbs in, 168, *F*, *a*, 212, 2.  
*esse*, often omitted, 584, *e*.  
 Essential part, see Attraction.  
*est* and noun, dat. of reference w., 366, *a*; *est*, w. potential descr. cl., 517, 2; w. descr. cl. of ideal certainty, 519, 2; of actuality, 521, 1; w. subst. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*; w. infin., 598, 3.  
*et*, 307, 1, *a*, *c*; = *etiam*, 302, 2 and *b*; *et . . . et*, *et . . . neque*, *neque . . . et*, 309.  
*etenim*, 311, 6, *a*.  
 Ethical dative, 372.  
*etiam*, in answers, 232, 1; meaning and position, 302, 2; often added to *sed* or *verum*, 310, 4, *b*.  
*etiāmi* and *etsi*, = *although*, 582, 8.  
*etsi*, "corrective," 310, 7.  
 Euphemism, 632, 12.  
*ex* or *ē*, in cpds., 51, 8; choice of forms, 405, *b*; w. abl., 405, 406; of point of view, 406, 2; w. verbs of separation, 408.
- "Exchanging," w. abl., 431.  
 Exclamation, acc. of, 399; nom. of, *ib.*, *a*; infin. of, 596.  
 Exclamatory sentence, 228, 3; questions, 503.  
 Exhortation, expr. by vol. subj., 501, 2; by fut. indic., 572.  
 Explanatory genitive, 341.  
 Explicative quod-cl., p. 296, ftn.  
 Explicit causal or adversative qui- or cum-cl., 523, *a*, 526.  
*exspectō*, w. antic. subj., 507, 2; w. infin., 593, *a*.  
 Extent of space, acc. of, 387; abl. of, 426, *c*.  
*exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus*, 123.  
*extrā*, w. acc., 380.
- fac*, imper., 164, 1.  
*facilis*, comparison, 120, 2; w. supine in -u, 619, 1; w. ad and gerundive, *ib.*, *a*.  
*faciō*, accent of cpds. of, 31, 3; non-prep. forms, 218, 3; w. vol. subj., 502, 3, *a*; w. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587, ftn. 1, 605, 1, *n*.  
 Fact, indic. of, 462, 544; subj. of, in conseq. cls., 520, 521, 3, *a*, *b*.  
 "Factitive object," see Result produced.  
*falsus*, comparison, 123, *a*.  
*famēs*, abl., *famē*, 88, 5.  
*familiās*, 66, 1.  
*fārī*, conj., 198, 3.  
*fās*, indecl., 106, 2; *fās est*, w. infin., 585; *fās* w. supine, 619, 1.  
*faxō*, *faxim*, 163, 5.  
 Fear, subj. cl. of, 502, 4.  
 Feminine caesura, 641, *a*.  
 Feminines, see Gender.  
*fer*, imper., 164, 1.  
*ferē*, *fermē*, position of, 624, 13, *a*.  
*ferō*, conj., 193; dat. w., 365; w. infin., 594.  
 -*ficus*, comparison of cpds. in, 120, 3.  
*fidō*, 161; w. dat., 362, II; w. abl., 437.  
*fidus*, comparison, 123, *a*.  
 Field in which, expr. by in w. abl., 434, 2.  
 Fifth declension, 99-101.  
 Figurative use of cases, moods, etc., 315, 1.  
 Figures of syntax, 631; of rhetoric, 632.  
*filia*, decl., 66, 4.  
*filius*, gen. and voc., *filii*, 71, 3.  
 "Final clauses," p. 260, ftn. 3.  
 Final consonants, changes in, 49, 13.  
 "Fine," abl. of, 428.  
*finis*, decl., 87, 88, 2, *d*; sing. and pl., 105.  
 Finite forms of verb, defined, 146.  
*fiō* etc., quantity of i in, 21, 1; conj., 195; defect. cpds. w., 195, *a*; abl. w., 423, *b*.  
 First conjugation, 148, 155; pres. stem, 166; denom., 211, 1.  
 First declension of nouns, 65-68.  
 First and second declension of adjectives, 110-112.  
 "Fitness," adjs. of, w. dat., 362, w. ad., 364, 2, *a*.

- agito**, cases w., 393 and *b*, 2).  
**Foot**, defined, 635.  
**foras**, adv., 126, 7, n.  
**fore**, **forem**, etc., 154, 1, 2.  
**fore** or **futurum ut** . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
**Forested** act, in subj. w. **antequam** or **priusquam**, 507, 4, *b*).  
**"Forgetting," "remembering," and "recalling,"** constra. w., 360.  
**foris**, out of doors, 449, *a*.  
**Formal ut**, p. 261, ftn. 2.  
**Formation of verb-stems**, 166-184; of words, 202-218.  
**forsitan**, w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
**Forward-moving clauses**, 566.  
**Fourth conjugation**, 159; pres. stem, 169.  
**Fourth declension**, 96-98.  
**Free clause**, defined, p. 302, ftn.; free descriptive clause, 569.  
**Freer neuter accusative modifiers**, 397.  
**Frequentatives**, 166, 2, 212.  
**Fricatives**, 6, 3, 12.  
**frugi**, compar., 122; as adj., p. 190, ftn. 2.  
**fruo**, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
**fui**, etc., for sum, etc., as auxiliaries, 164, 8.  
**Fullness**, adjs. of, 209, 2; see **Plenty**.  
**fungor**, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
**Fusion**, explained, 315, 3.  
**Future conditions**, more vivid, 579, *a*; less vivid, 580; past-fut., 508, 509, 580, *b*, *c*.  
**Future, INDICATIVE: Form**, 172; in *-ibo*, 164, 5; meanings of tense, 468, 3 and *a*, 484, 485, 486, 2; special uses, 572; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, 470, 1, 4 and *a*, 508; INFINITIVE: meaning of tense, 472 and *a*, *b*; active, *form*, 178, 3; passive, *form, ib.*; PARTICIPLE: active, verbaladj., 146; in periphr. conjs., 162; *form*, 182; meaning of tense, 600, 2; passive, verbaladj., 146; in periphr. conj., 162; in conjs. III and IV, 164, 2; *form*, 184; meaning of tense, 600, 3 and *b*.  
**Future perfect, INDICATIVE: Form**, 163, 5, 164, 6, 174, 2; meaning, 468, 6; as emphatic fut., 490; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, p. 244, ftn. 1.  
**Futures**, periphr., see **Periphrastic**.  
**futurum esse ut** . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
**futurus**, as adj., 248.  
**gaudeo**, 161; w. acc., 397, 2; w. abl., 444, *a*; w. infin., 594; w. quod-cl., 555.  
**Gender**, 56-59; decl. I, 67; decl. II, 72; decl. III, 94 (summary), 78, 81, 84, 86, 89, 91, 2; decl. IV, 98; decl. V, 101; nouns variable in, 108.  
**General "truths" or "customs,"** expr. by pres., 468, 1, *b*.  
**Generalizing clause**, 576; indic., 579 and ftn.; subj. in 2d sing. indef., 504, 2.  
**Generalizing pronouns**, 282; the same used w. merely indef. meaning, 283.  
**Genitive, Form:** sing., decl. I, in *-as*, 66, 1; in *-ai*, *ib.*, 2; decl. II, in *-i* of nouns in *-ius*, *-ium*, 71, 2, 3; in *-ii* of adjs. in *-ius*, 110, *a*; of pronom. adjs., 112; decl. IV, *-i*, 97, 4, 5; decl. V, in *-ei*, *-ei*, and *-i*, 100, 1, 2, 3; pl., decl. I, in *-um*, 66, 3; decl. II, in *-um*, 71, 4; of *ducenti*, etc., in *-um*, 131, 4; decl. III, in *-um* and *-ium*, 75; in adjs., 118, 1; decl. IV, in *-um*, 97, 3. **Syntax:** see synopsis, 338.  
**Gerund, Form**, 184.  
**Gerundive and gerund**, nature of, 609-611; common uses, 612, 613; gend. of gerundive, w. *mei nostri*, etc., 614; rarer uses, 615, 616.  
**"Gnomic perfect,"** 488.  
**Grammatical gender**, 56, *b*.  
**gratia**, w. gen., 339, *d*; of gerundive, 612, I.  
**"Greek accusative,"** see Acc. of respect.  
**Greek nouns**, decl. I, 68; decl. II, 73; decl. III, 95.  
**Growth of meanings in constructions**, 315.  
**Gutturals**, 7, 3, 12; changes of, 49, 2, 3; stems in, 76, 77, 1.  
**habeo**, w. potential cl., 517, 2; w. infin., 597, 2; w. perf. pass. partic., 605, 5.  
**habeo**, tense, how used, 496, *c*.  
**Habitual action**, tenses of, 484.  
**haere**, constr. w., p. 193, ftn.  
**Harmony, ut-cl. of**, 563.  
**haud**, use of, 297 and *a*.  
**habe**, see *ave*.  
**Hendiadys**, 631, 5.  
**"Hesitating,"** w. *ne*, *quin*, or *quominus*, 502, 3, *b*; w. infin., 586.  
**Heteroclitics**, 107.  
**Heterogeneous nouns**, 108.  
**Hexameter**, dactylic, 639.  
**Hiatus**, 647.  
**hic**, quantity, 30; decl., 138, 1; *hoc*, quantity, 30; *huius*, *huic*, pronunc., 10, *d*, 138, *b*; meaning and uses of *hic*, 271-273; *hic* . . . *ille*, "the former" . . . "the latter," 274, 2; as indefinites, *ib.*, *b*.  
**hic**, adv., quantity, 25, 1; *form*, 127, 7.  
**Hidden quantity**, 16, n. 2; list, 679.  
**hiem(p)s**, 49, 7; decl., 83, 4.  
**Highly improbable future conclusion**, 581, *c*.  
**hinc** . . . *illinc*, 406, 2, first example.  
**Hindrance**, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*).  
**Historical infinitive**, 595.  
**"Historical perfect,"** 488, 4, *a*, ftn. 3.  
**Historical present**, 491, 1.  
**"Historical" tenses**, p. 247, ftn. 2.  
**hoc**, see *hic*.  
**"Hoping,"** constr. w., 593 and *a*.  
**"Hortatory" subjunctive**, see 501, 2.  
**hortor**, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*); w. infin., 587.

- humī**, loc., 71, 6, 449, *a*.  
**humilis**, comparison, 120, 2.  
**Hypallage**, 631, 10.  
**Hyperbaton**, 631, 13.  
**Hyperbole**, 632, 2.  
**Hypermetric verse**, 641, *c*, n. 4.  
**Hýsteron próteron**, 631, 12.
- I**, letter, 1, *a*, n.; consonantal *i*, 11.  
**i**, consonantal, sometimes becomes vowel in poetry, 656, 1; vocalic, sometimes becomes consonantal in poetry, 656, 2.  
**i**-stems, 87-89.  
**-ia**, suffix, 207, 2.  
**iaciō**, cpds. of, spelling, and quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
**iam**, compared w. **nunc**, 302, 4, 5.  
**iam diū**, **iam pridē**, etc., w. tenses of action in progress, 485.  
**Iambic shortening**, 28, n., 649.  
**Iambus**, 637, *b*.  
**-ibam**, imperf. indic. of conj. IV, 164, 4.  
**-ibō**, fut. of conj. IV, 164, 5.  
**Ictus**, 634; relation to accent, 644, 645.  
**id quod**, 325, *a*, n. 2.  
**Ideal certainty**, subj. of, 518, 519.  
**idem**, decl., 137; use, 270; w. **quī** or **atque**, *ib.*, *b*; w. dat., 363, 2, *e*).  
**Identifying pronoun**, see **idem**.  
**Ides**, **Idūs**, 664; use in dating, 665-671.  
**idōneus**, comparison, 121; w. dat., 362; w. ad and acc., 364, 6; w. **quī** or **ut**, 513, 3.  
**Idūs**, *gend.*, 98, *a*. See also **Ides**.  
**iēns**, pres. act. partic. of **eō**, 183.  
**-ier**, infin. in, 164, 3, 178, 2.  
**igitur**, position of, 311, 2.  
**"Illative" conjunctions**, 311.  
**ille**, decl., 138, 1; meaning and uses, 271-274, 1; **hic . . . ille . . .**, 274, 2; **ille** w. descr. **qui-cl.**, 521, 1; w. **ut-cl.**, 521, 2, *b*; position of **ille**, 624, 2.  
**illīc**, decl., 138, 2, *c*.  
**illīc**, adv., quantity of final syllable, 25, 1; accent, 32, 1.  
**Imaginative comparison**, cl. of, 504, 3.  
**immō**, 233.  
**immūnis**, w. *gen.*, 354; w. *abl.*, p. 224, ftn. 1.  
**Imperative**, endings of, 151, *b*.  
**Imperative**, synopsis of uses, 495; tenses of, 496; imper. of command, advice, etc., *ib.*; w. **quīn**, *ib.*, *b*; in prohibitions, *ib.*, *d*; replaced by vol. subj. in ind. disc., 538.  
**Imperfect**, meanings common to all forms: of progressive action, 466, 1 and ftn., 470, 1; of habitual action, 484; of attempted action, *ib.*; w. **iam diū**, etc., 485; **INDICATIVE**: *form*, 171; in **-ibam**, 164, 4, 171, n.; meaning, 468, 2; of discovery, 486, 1; epistolary, 493; **SUBJUNCTIVE**: *form*, 175, *a*; original meanings: progressive, 470, 1; aor., 477, *b*; in cls. of result, *ib.* and 521, 2, examples; in wishes, 510, *a*; in conditions and conclusions, 581; imperf. contrary to fact retained in any combination of tenses, *ib.*, n.  
**imperō**, w. dat., 362; w. dat. and acc., 364, 4; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587, *b*.  
**Impersonal verbs**, 201, 287; verbs in pass. w. dat., 364, 2; impers. constr., generally preferred w. certain pass. infins., 580, 1, *a*.  
**impetrō**, w. subj. cl., 530, 2.  
**imus**, lowest part of, 244.  
**in**, form in cpds., 51, 9; w. acc., 380, 381, 385; w. *abl.*, 433, 434; use w. *abl.* of time, 439, *a*; w. *abl.* of respect, 441, *a-c*; often or reg. omitted w. *abl.* of certain words, 436; freely omitted by poets, 433, *a*; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
**in-**, negative prefix, 214, 2.  
**Inchoatives** ("Inceptives"), 212, 2; perf. of, 188, *F*, ftn.  
**Incomplete action**, tenses of, 466, 1, ftn.  
**Indeclinable nouns**, 106, 2; *gend.* of, 58, 3.  
**"Indefinite antecedents"**, 521, 1, *a*.  
**Indefinite idea** distinguished from generalizing, 283.  
**Indefinite pronouns**, list of, 142, 276.  
**Indefinite second person** in conditions, 504, 2, 576, *a*; in general statement of fact, 542; w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
**Indefinite subject**, 286.  
**Indefinite value**, 356.  
**Indicative**, general force of, 462, 544; tenses of, 468; tenses w. verbs and phrases of possibility, obligation, etc., 582, 3, *a*; general uses, see synopsis, 543; pres., pres. perf., and future, in special uses, 571, 572.  
**Indifference**, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 531; concession of, expr. by imper., 497, 2; by subj., 532, 1; w. **quamvis**, *ib.*, 2; w. **licet**, *ib.*, *a*; w. **ut**, *ib.*, *b*.  
**indigeō**, w. *gen.*, 347, *a*; w. *abl.*, 425, *a*.  
**Indignation**, expr. by subj., 503; by fut. indic., 572; by infin., 596.  
**indignus**, w. *abl.*, 442; rarely w. *gen.*, 354, *c*, example; w. subj. rel. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in **-ū**, 619, 2.  
**Indirect discourse**, defined, 533, 589, 591; prons. and persons in, 533, *a*; **INFINITIVE** in ind. disc.: tenses, 593; list of verbs and phrases governing, p. 318, ftn.; principal statements in infin., 534, 1, 591; constrs. of, may be used w. verbs not suggesting ind. disc., 534, 1, *a*, 535, 1, *a*, 536, *a*; subord. cls. in, 534, 2, 535-538.  
**Indirect object**, dat. of, 366 and *a*.  
**Indirect questions**, of fact, 537 and ftn.; fut., how expr. in, 470, 4, *a*; indic. in, 537, *g*; antic. subj. in, 507, 3.  
**"Indirect reflexive"**, 262, 2.  
**Individual condition**, see **Condition**.  
**Indo-European speech**, 46, ftn. 1; forces of cases in, 334; of moods, 469.  
**indulgeō**, w. dat., 362; w. acc., 364, *a*.

Inferential conjunctions, 311.

Inferior, comparison, 123.

*Infimus*, lowest part of, 244.

*Infinitives*, *Form*, 176. *Syntax*: synopsis of uses, 583; gender, case relations, etc., 584; tenses, 472; in ind. disc., 534, 1, 591; tenses w. verbs of swearing, etc., 593, a; w. verbs of remembering, *id.*, b; w. verbs of obligation, propriety, etc., p. 311, ftn. 2; energetic or emphatic perfs., 490; list of verbs taking ind. disc., p. 318, ftn.; ordinary uses: dependent, 585-594, 597, independent, historical, 596, exclamatory, 596; poetical and later prose uses, 598; special points: complementary infin., 586, a; omission of subject in ind. disc., 592; w. *parātus*, *suētus*, etc., 586, f; w. verbs of seeing, hearing, or representing, 606, 1, n.; in rel. cls., 536, 1, b; after *quam*, *id.*, c.

Inflection, defined, 54.

Informal indirect discourse, subj. of, 535, 1, a, 536, a.

*Infra*, w. acc., 380.

*innixus*, abl. w., 438, 2, a; dat. w., *id.*, b.

*inops*, w. gen., 347, a; w. abl., 425, a.

*inquam*, conj., 198, 2; position of, 624, 16.

"Inquiring," two acc. w., 393; indirect question w., 537, b.

Inquiry for instructions, in subj., 503; in indic., 571, 572.

"Inseparable prepositions," see 218, 1.

*insidiæ*, pl. only, 104, 4; dat. w., 363, 1, a).

*instar*, gen. w., 339, d.

Instrument, abl. of, 423.

Instrument or means, ends denoting, 206, 6.

"Instrumental ablative," 61, b, 423.

"Integral part," see Subj. by attraction.

Intensive pronoun, see *ipse*.

Intensives (meditatives), 212, 4.

Intention, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a), b), and ftns.; by fut. act. partic., 607.

*intentus*, cases w., 438, 5.

inter, form in cpds., 51, 10; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376; inter *sē*, etc., 266.

*interclūdō*, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 2.

*interdicō*, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 3.

"Interest," dat. of, see Reference, dat. of, 366-369.

interest, cases w., 345; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, c); w. infin., 585.

interior, comparison, 123.

Interjections, 221, 313.

Interrogative pronouns, 141, 275.

Interrogative sentence, see Questions.

*intrā*, w. acc., 380.

Intransitive, see Voice and Verbs.

Intransitive verbs, passive of, 201, c, 290, a.

-*idō*, verbs in, of conj. III, 158, 168, 1.

*ipse*, decl. 139; use, 267-269; agreement of, 268; as reflex., 263, 264; *meus ipsius*, etc., 339, b.

*iri*, in fut. infin. pass., 178, 3.

Irony, 632, 4.

Irregular nouns of decl. III, 92.

Irregular verbs, 170; conj. of, 190-197.

*is*, decl., 137; meaning and uses, 271-274;

sometimes instead of *ē*, 262, 2, a; w. *qui*-cl., det. 550; descr., 521, 1; w. *ut*-cl., 521, 2, b.

-*is*, acc. pl. in, 75, a, 88, 3, 118, 4.

-*iscō*, inchoatives in, 212, 2, 168, F, a.

Islands, *gend.*, 58, 2; constrs. of place w., 449-451.

*iste*, decl., 138, 2; meaning, 271, 274, 4.

*ita*, in answers, 232, 1; *ita ut* or *nē*, w. vol.

subj., 502, 2, a; *ita ut*, *ut nōn*, etc., 521, 2,

d; *ita ut*, of way by *wh.*, *id.*; *ita sī*, 578, 5.

*itaque*, accent, 32, 2, n.; use, 311, 3.

*iter*, decl., 80, 6.

"Iterative" subj., see Repeated action.

Iterative verbs, see *Frequentatives*, 212, 1.

-*itō*, frequentatives in, 212, 1.

*iubeō*, w. acc., 397, 1; w. infin., 587; w.

subj., *id.*, b; *iubeor*, w. infin., 588.

*iūgerum*, decl., 107, 2; as measure, 676, b.

-*ium*, gen. pl. in, 64, 88, 4, 91, 1, 118, 1.

*iungō*, constr. w., 431, c.

*Iuppiter*, decl., 92.

*iūrātus*, having sworn, 161, 290, a, 4).

*iūs*, decl., 86, 1; *iūs est*, w. cl. of obligation,

513, 5; *iūs est bellī*, w. vol. cl., cf. 502, 3,

c), and ftn.

-*ius*, pronom. gen., quantity of *i* in, 21, 2,

112, n.; -*ius* in gen. in poetry, 653.

-*ius*, suffix, 210, 1, 215, 2; gen. and voc.

sing. of nouns in, 71, 2, 3; of adjs. in,

110, a.

*iussū*, abl. only, 106, 1; case, 414, a.

*iuvenis*, decl., 88, 4; compar., 122, 123, b.

*iūxtā*, w. acc., 380.

-*ivī*, perf. contracted, 173, A; short forms of, 163, 1, 3.

J, letter, 1, n.

Judging, person, in dat., 370.

"Jussive," see *Volitive subjunctive*.

Juxtaposition, in cpds., 214, 3, 218, 2.

K, letter, 1, a.

Kindred meaning, acc. of, 396.

"Knowing," w. infin., 589.

Labials, 7, 1, 12; changes of, 49, 8, 10;

stems in, 76, 77, 1, 90.

*laetor*, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 2; w. abl.,

444, a; w. infin., 594.

*laetus*, w. force of adv., 245; w. abl., 444, a.

Leading idea not in principal noun, 333.

Leap year, calendar for, 669, 671.

*lēge*, by law, 414, a; under the condition, 436, b.

Length, measures of, 676.

Lengthening in poetry, 654; see also 652.

- Less vivid future condition and conclusion, 580.  
 liber, decl., 111; constr. w., 411, *a*, *b*.  
 liberī, pl. only, 104, 4; gen. pl. of, 71, 4, *b*).  
 liberō, *acquit*, w. gen., 342; w. abl., 406, 3 and exc. 1.  
 licet, conj., 201; w. dat., 362; w. subj., 531, 2; = *although*, 532, 2, *a*; w. infin., 585; w. pred. dat., *ib.*, *c*.  
 "Likeness," adjs. of, w. dat., 362, III; w. gen., 339, *c*.  
 linguā, as loc. abl., 436, *b*.  
 "Linguals," see *Dentals*.  
 Liquids, 6, 1; stems in, 79-81.  
 litore, w. and without in, 436.  
 Litotes, 632, 1.  
 Local point of view, dat. of, 370, *a*.  
 Locative, *Form*, 61, *b*; decl. I, 66, 5; decl. II, 71, 6; decl. III, 93; in pron. advs., 127, 7; domi, humi, etc., 449, *a*; locative of names of towns, etc., 449; appositive to, in abl. w. prep., 452.  
 Locative ablative, 334, 2.  
 locō, w. gerundive, 612, III.  
 locus, pl. of, 108, 2; locō, locis, in abl. w. or without prep., 436.  
 longius, w. abl., or without effect on case, 416, *d*; w. abl. of noun of time, 417, *a*.  
 longum est, etc., mood, 582, 3, *b*).  
 Loosely attached descr. cl. w. qui, etc., 568.  
 m, final, in slurring, 34, 646.  
 magis, use in compar., 121.  
 magnopere, magis, maximē, compar., 129.  
 magnus, compar., 122; magni, -ō, of value or price, 356, 1, 427, 2, *a*).  
 Main (or principal) sentence or cl., 224, 1.  
 maior, w. nātū, 441; w. quam qui or ut, 521, 2, *c*.  
 maius, pronunc., 29, 2, *a*.  
 male, quantity of *e*, 28, 2, *c*); compar., 129.  
 mālō, conj., 192; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*); w. infin., 586, 587; mālim, māllem, w. subj., = a wish, 519, 1, *c*.  
 malus, compar., 122.  
 maneō, *abide by*, constr. w., 438, 2, *c*.  
 Manner, expr. by abl., 445; by ad. in, or per w. acc., *ib.*, 3, *a*; by abl. absolute, 421, 8; by partic., 604, 5.  
 Masculine caesura, 641, 1.  
 Material, gen. of, 349; may be expr. by ex (poetic *dē*) w. abl., 406, 4; prep. may be omitted in poetry, *ib.*, *a*.  
 Material, suffix denoting, 209, 1.  
 mātūrus, comparison, 120, 1.  
 maximē, use in comparison, 121.  
 maxi, gen. of value or price, 356, 1.  
 "May," "might," expr. by potential subj., 516, 517; by possum w. infin., 586.  
 Means, expr. by abl., 423; by abl. absolute, 421, 7; persons as means, 423, *a*.  
 "Measure of difference," see 424.  
 Measures of money, weight, etc., 672-677.  
 mēcum, 418, *a*.  
 Meditatives, 212, 4.  
 medius, *the middle of*, 244; w. abl. noun, 436 and *a*.  
 mei, gen. of ego, reg. objective, 254, *a*.  
 melior, decl., 116.  
 meminī, conj., 199; case-constrs. w., 350 and *a*; w. infin., 589; force of tenses, 199, 1, 487; mementō, 496, *c*.  
 memor, 117, *b*, 118, 1, *a*, 2); w. gen., 354.  
 -men, -mentum, suffixes, 206, 3.  
 Mental action, obj. of, in gen., 350, 351.  
 -met, particle, 134, *d*.  
 Metaphor, 632, 13.  
 Metonymy, 632, 9.  
 Metre, defined, 638.  
 metuō, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. subj. cl. w. nē or ut, 502, 4; w. infin., 586.  
 meus, decl., 136, *a*; voc. mi, *ib*.  
 mi, dat. of ego, 134.  
 Middle voice, p. 158, ftn.; w. acc., 390, *b*.  
 mihi, quantity of final i, 28, n., 134, *a*; mihi, in poetry, *ib.*, 652, 1.  
 miles, final syll., 30, 3, 49, 4; decl., 76.  
 militiae, *in war, in the field*, 449, *a*.  
 mille, 131, 3; use, 131, 3, 4.  
 minimē, compar., 129; in answers, 232, 2.  
 minimi, -ō, of value, 356, 1; 427, 2, *a*).  
 minor nātū, 441; minōris, of value, 356, 1.  
 minus, comparison, 129; w. abl., or without effect on case, 416, *d*; w. abl. of nouns of time, 417, *a*.  
 miror, conj., 160; rare gen. w., 352, 3.  
 misceō, constrs. w., 431 and *a*, *b*.  
 misereor, miserescō, w. gen., 352, 2.  
 miseret, acc. and gen. w., 352, 1, 390, *a*.  
 Mixed conditions and conclusions, 582, 1.  
 Mixed stems, 74, C, 90, 91.  
 "Modest (softened) statements," 519, 1, *b*.  
 modo, short-o, 28, 4; in cl. of proviso, 529.  
 moneō, conj., 166; w. neut. acc., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*); w. infin., 587.  
 Money, Roman, 672-675.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 25-28.  
 Moods, 145; mood-sign of subj., 175; mood defined, 460; table of forces, 462; general sketch of historical relations, 459.  
 Months, names of, 662; gen., 58, 1 and *a*.  
 mora, p. 344, ftn. 2.  
 mōre, of accordance, 414, *a*; of manner, 445, 1.  
 More vivid future condition and conclusion, 579, *a*.  
 mōs est, w. vol. subj., 502, 3, *c*); w. subj. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*); w. infin., 585.  
 Motion toward, see *Place whither*, 385.  
 multi sunt qui, subj. or indic. w., 521, 1, *b*.  
 Multiplicatives, 133.  
 multum, *much*, 126, 6, n., 387, III; comparison, 129.

- mutus**, comparison, 122; denoting a part, 244.  
**Mute** and liquid, pronounced in same syll., 14, 2, n.; separated in poetry, 665.  
**Mutes** or stops, 6, 4, 12; mute stems, 76.
- nam**, use, 311, 6.  
**-nam**, interrogative enclitic, 231, 2, n.  
**Names**, Roman, 678; in adoption, *ib.*, 4.  
**namque**, 311, 6, a.  
**Narrative** clause, subj., w. *cum*, 524; indic., w. *ubi*, etc., 557; of situation, w. *same*, 558; w. *dum*, *dōnec*, etc., 560; w. *antequam* or *prīusquam*, 561; narr. partic., 604, 2, n.  
**Nasalized** vowels, 4, 3; before *ns*, 11, 18; before *-m*, 34, 2.  
**Nasals**, 6, 2, 12; changes, 49, 9; stems in, 82-84; pres. w. inserted *n*, 168, C.  
**nātū**, abl. only, 106, 1; w. *maior*, etc., 441.  
**Natural** gender, 56, a.  
**Natural** likelihood, subj. of, 514, 515.  
**nct**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**ne-**, prefix, 24, 3.  
**-ne**, encl., interrog., 33; added to forms in *-ce*, 138, 2, d; shortened to *n*, 28, n., 231, n. 3; use and position, 231, 1, b; *-ne* . . . *an*, 234; *-ne* . . . *-ne*, *ib.*, b; w. exclamatory infin., 696.  
**nē**, *surely*, 302, 8.  
**nē**, *not, lest*, general statement of use, 464, 1; fitting changed meaning, *ib.*, 2; details: w. *imper.*, 496; w. subj., see especially prohibitions, 501, 3; cl. of purpose, 532, 2; in vol. subst. cl., *ib.*, 3; in cl. of fear, *ib.*, 4; in wishes, 511, 1; in opt. subst. cl., *ib.*, 2; sometimes in statements of obligation or propriety, 512, a.  
**nē nōn**, in cl. of fear, 502, 4.  
**nē** . . . *quidem*, *not even*, w. all moods, 464, 1, a; simply adds emphasis, 238, 2, a.  
**"Nearness"**, see dat. of relation, 362.  
**nec**, see *neque*.  
**nec enim**, 311, 6, b.  
**necesse est**, w. vol. subj. cl., 502, 3, c; w. infin., 535.  
**neque**, alternative in questions, 234, a.  
**nēdum**, *still less*, w. subj., 505.  
**Negative** particles, see *nē* and *nōn*; two negatives, 298, 2.  
**nēmō**, 106, 3; for *nūllus*, 276, 9, c, d.  
**nēquam**, compar., 122.  
**neque**, *nec*, and *not*, 464, 1; choice of forms, 307, 3, c; correl., 309.  
**nesciō**, w. infin., 586, 589; *nesciō an*, 537, f; *nesciō quis*, *quō pactō*, etc., 276, 4; same not affecting mood, 537, e.  
**neuter**, pronunc., 10, b; decl., 112, a; use, 273, 9; meaning in pl., *ib.*, a.  
**Neuter** acc. as adv., 126, 6, n., p. 209, ftn. 2.  
**Neuter** adj. as pred. w. nouns of any gend., 325, c; *neut. pl. w. gen.*, 357.  
**Neuters**, see *Gender*.
- nēve**, *neu*, 301, 3; use w. moods, see *nē*.  
**nf**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**nī**, use, 578, 4.  
**nihil** (or *nil*, quantity, 25, 1, 45), indecl., 106, 2; *as* acc. of degree, 387, III; constr. of adjs. w., 346, a; *nihil reliquū*, etc., 340, a; *nihil abest quin*, 502, 3, b; *nihil est quod*, *quārē*, etc., 513, 2.  
**nihili**, descr. gen., 355, a; *nihili*, -ō, of value or price, 356, 2, 427, 2, b).  
**nisi**, *nisi si*, *forte*, etc., 577, 578; *nisi w. abl. absolute*, 421, 6, a; meaning *except* or *but*, 578, 3, b).  
**nitor**, w. *abl.*, 438, 1.  
**nōli** in prohibitions, 501, 3, a, 2).  
**nōlō**, conj., 192; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. infin., 586, 587.  
**Nominative**, *Form*: decl. III, p. 36, ftn., 75, 77, 1, 80, 83, 86, n., 87, 92, n.; decl. IV, 96; decl. V, 99. *Syntax*: as subject, 335; as attributive, appositive, or pred., 317-321; in exclamations, 399, a; for voc., 401.  
**nōn**, general statement of uses, 464, 1.  
**nōn modo** . . . *sed nē* . . . *quidem*, 299.  
**nōn nēmō** and **nōn nūllus**, 276, 6 and a.  
**nōn quia**, etc., w. subj., 535, 2, b).  
**Nones**, *Nōnae*, 664; use in dating, 665-671.  
**nōne**, interrog. particle, 231, 1, c).  
**nōs** = *ego*, *noster* = *meus*, 259.  
**nostrī**, objective, *nostrum*, gen. of the whole, 134, b, 254, a.  
**Nouns**, gender, 56-59; number, 60; cases, 61-62; decl., 63-108; used only in sing., 103; only in pl., 104; w. different meaning in sing. and pl., 105; defect in case-forms, 106; variable in decl., 107; variable in gend., 108; deriv. of, 203-207; classification of cpds., 214; verbal nouns, 146; noun defined, 221; kinds of, 240; as adjs., *ib.*, 2, b; appos., 319, 1; pred., *ib.*, II.  
**nōvi**, etc., force of tenses, 487.  
**ns**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**nūlla causa est cūr**, *quārē*, *quin*, etc., cf. 513, 2.  
**nūllus**, decl., 112, a; use, 276, 9 and b).  
**num**, interrog. particle, 231, 1, d; in indirect questions, 537, d, 2).  
**Number**, in nouns, 60; in verbs, 145; nouns used only in sing., 103; only in pl., 104; with difference in meaning, 105; in agreement, 318-332.  
**Numerals**, 130-133; uses, *ib.*, and 247.  
**numquis**, decl., 141, b, n.; use, 276, 1.  
**nunc**, compared w. *iam*, 302, 4, 5.  
**nūper**, comparison, 129.  
**nx**, length of vowel before, 18.
- ō sī**, in virtual wish, 582, 5.  
**ob**, form in cpds., 51, II; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.

- "Obeying," w. dat., 362.  
**obiciō**, quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
**Object**, concrete obj. for wh., w. dat., 361;  
 ind. in dat., 365; direct in acc., 390,  
 391; obj. cls., see Substantive clauses.  
**Objective genitive**, 364.  
**Obligation**, expr. by subj., 512, 513; by  
 fut. pass. partic., 600, 3; by same used  
 impersonally, *id.*, *a*; moods and tenses in  
 verbs of, 582, 3; in ind. disc., *id.*, *a*, n. 2.  
**Obligation or propriety**, subj. of, 512, 513  
**Oblique cases**, 61, *a*.  
**obliviscor**, constrs. w., 350.  
**Obstructed consonants**, 14, 2, *b*, 37.  
**ōciōr**, comparison, 123.  
**ōdī**, meaning of tense, 199, 1, 487.  
**Omission of verb**, 222, *a*, 631, 1, *a*; of sub-  
 ject, 257, 285; of antecedent, 284, 1.  
**Onomatopœia**, 632, 20.  
**Open syllables**, 14, *a*; open vowels, 3.  
**opiniōne**, after compar., 416, *e*.  
**oportet**, moods and tenses of, 582, 3; w.  
 subj. cl., 513, 5; w. infin., 585.  
**oppidum**, in appos. to names of towns, 452.  
**Opposition**, see Adversative.  
**Optative**, *Form*, 175, n.; opt. subj., uses,  
 510, 511.  
**optimum est**, moods w., 502, 3, *c*), 585.  
**optō**, w. opt. cl., 511, 2; w. infin., 586, 587.  
**opus est**, w. abl., 430, 1; of partic., *id.*, 2;  
 w. supine in -ū, 619, 2; w. vol. cl., 502,  
 3, *c*); w. infin., 585; *opus* as pred., 430,  
 2, *a*, *b*.  
**ōrātiō obliqua**, see indirect discourse, 533.  
**ōrātiō recta**, see direct discourse, 533.  
**Ordinals**, 130, 131; w. *quisque*, 278, 2, *c*).  
**Origin**, abl. of, 413; w. *ab* or *ex*, *id.*, *a*, *b*.  
**ōrō**, w. two accs., 393; w. subj. cl. 530, 2.  
**Orthography**, 52.  
**Oxymoron**, 632, 3.
- paene**, position of, 624, 13, *a*.  
**paenitet**, cases w., 352, 1; mood w., 585.  
**palam**, as adv., or w. abl., 407, 1, *a*.  
**Palatals**, 7, 3.  
**pār**, quantity in, 25, 1; cases w., 339, *c*.  
**Parallel cum . . . tum**, 564.  
**Parallel order**, 628.  
**Parataxis** defined, 227; paratactic uses,  
 imper., 497, 2; subj., 504, 1, 511, 1, *b*,  
 530, 1, 532, 1; indic., 545, *b*.  
**parātus**, constrs. w., 384, 2, *a*, *b*, 586, *f*.  
**"Pardoning," w. dat.**, 362.  
**Parentage or origin**, constr., 413.  
**Parenthetical cl.**, 567; partic., =, 604, 7, *c*).  
**pars**, 91, 1, *a*; *parte*, in loc. abl., 436; *par-*  
*tem*, acc. of respect, 388.  
**Part**, idea of, denoted by adjs., 244.  
**Participles**, *Form*, pres. act., 183; decl.,  
 117, 118; fut. act., 182; perf. pass.,  
 179; fut. pass., 184. *Syntax*: nature,  
 599; used as adjs., 248; w. adv. force,  
 245; as subst., 249, 250; used imperson-  
 ally in abl. absolute, 421, 8, *a*; perf.  
 pass. modified by adv. or adj., 250, 2, n.;  
 perf. pass. w. act. meaning, 290, *a*, 4);  
 w. pres. force, 601; agreement, 320;  
 carrying leading idea, 333, 608; tenses,  
 meanings of, 600, 601; of attempted  
 action, 484; w. *iam diū*, etc., 485; voice-  
 meanings, 146; of deponents and semi-  
 deponents, 291; lacking perf. act. and  
 pres. pass. partic., how supplied, 602;  
 fut. pass. w. occasional pres. pass. force,  
 600, 3, *b*; common uses, 604; special  
 idioms, 605; new uses in later Latin,  
 606, 607.  
**Particles**, defined, 221, *d*.  
**"Particular conditions,"** see 576 and ftn.  
**partior**, conj., 160.  
**Partitive apposition**, 319, 1, *a*.  
**"Partitive genitive,"** p. 183, ftn.  
**Parts of speech**, 63; defined, 221.  
**parum**, comparison, 129.  
**parvus**, comparison, 122; *parvi* or -ō, of  
 value or price, 356, 1, 427, 2, *a*).  
**Passive**, see Voice.  
**Past aorist**, indic., 468, 4, *a*; subj., 470, 2.  
**Past-future expressions**, periphr. indic. and  
 antic. subj., 508 and ftn.; dep. past-fut.  
 cls. necessarily in antic. subj., *id.*; past-fut.  
 condition and conclusion, in subj.,  
 580, *b*; in periphr. fut. indic., *id.*, *c*.  
**Past perfect**, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 174, 1;  
 meaning, 468, 5; of rapid succession of  
 events, 492; epistolary, 493; instead of  
 subj. contrary to fact, 581, *e*; SUBJUNC-  
 TIVE: *form*, 175, *c*; meaning, 470, 1;  
 in wishes, 510, *a*; in conditions and  
 conclusions, 581.  
**Patronymics**, Greek, 207, 3.  
**Penalty**, gen. of, 343; abl. of, 428.  
**penes**, w. acc., 380.  
**Pentameter**, dactylic, 642.  
**Penult**, 31, 2.  
**per**, form of, in cpds., 51, 12; as prefix,  
 218, *a*; w. acc., 380; of persons as means,  
*id.*, *d*; of duration of time, 387, 11, *a*;  
 of route, 426, *b*; of cause, 444, *c*; of  
 manner, 445, 3, *a*.  
**-per**, enclitic particle, 127, 9.  
**Peremptory command**, expr. by imper., 496.  
**Perfect**, INDICATIVE: *Form*, perf. system  
 of, 147, *B*; ends., 161, *a*; short forms  
 of, 163; types of, 173; pass., 164, 8;  
 meanings, 468, 4 and *a*; tenses of dep.  
 verb w., 476, 479, 481; perf. of experi-  
 ence ("gnomic"), 488; of act or state  
 no longer existing, 489; energetic perf.,  
 490; picturesque, 491, 1; of rapid suc-  
 cession of events, 492; *nōvi*, *memini*,  
*ōdī*, *coepi*, etc., 199, 487; SUBJUNCTIVE:  
*form*, 175, *b*; confusion w. fut. perf.  
 indic. forms, 164, 6; in -*sim*, 163, 5,

- meanings of tense, 469, 470; in result-cl., 478, 521, 2, examples; INFINITIVE: *form*, 178, 1-3; w. *esse* omitted, 164, 7; meaning of tenses, 472; in ind. disc., 534, 589, 591; PARTICIPLE: *form*, 179, 180; meaning of tenses, 473, 600, 601; perf. w. verbs of wishing, 605, 3. Perfect definite, see Perfect indicative. Period, definition of, 630. Periphrastic conjugation, 162; peculiarities in, 163-165; periphr. fut. tenses, of indic., 468, 7; of subj., 470, 4; when used in general, *ib.*, *a*; periphr. fut., in ind. questions, 537, *d*, 1; in conclusions, indic., subj., or infin., 580, *c*, 581, *a*, *b*. Permanent truths, tenses of, in combination w. other tenses, 482. *permittō*, w. subj., 531, 2; w. infin., 587. Perplexity, question of, in subj., 503; in pres. indic., 571; in fut. indic., 572. Person, 147; order of mention of the three persons, 624, 15; person judging, dat. of, 370; persons as agents, 406, 1; as means through wh., w. *per*, 380, *d*; as means by wh., w. *abl.*, 423, *a*. Personal construction in passive voice, *prohibeo*, *puto*, etc., 590, 1. Personal endings of verbs, 151, 152. Personal pronouns, decl., 134; use, 254; of third pers., how replaced, 255; when expr., when omitted, 257; pl. of dignity, 259; as reflex., 260, *a*. Personification, 632, 18. *persuadeō*, w. dat., 362; w. dat. and acc., 364, 4; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*. *pertaesum est*, constr. w., see *taedet*, 352, 1. *petō*, cases w., 393, *c*; w. subj., 530, 2. Phonetic changes, 41-51. Phrase, defined, 224, 2, *b*. Picturesque tenses, 491. *piget*, w. acc. and gen., 352, 1; w. infin., 585. Place, adjs. denoting, 210, 3. Place where, whither, or whence, reg. expr. by preps., 433, 385, 408, 1 and *a*, 2 and *a*; poets may omit, 433, *a*, 385, *c*, 410, 2; repeated relations all expr. (ad *Chrysogonum ad castra*, etc.), 540, *c*; constr. of names of towns, domus, rūs, etc., 440-453. "Placing," w. in and *abl.*, 433, *c*. Plan, how expr., 502, 2. Plants, gen. of names of, 58, 2. "Pleasing," w. dat., 362. Plenty and want, gen. of, 347; *abl.* of, 425. Pléonasm, 631, 4. Pluperfect, see Past perfect. Plural, wanting, 103; pl. only, 104; of dif. meaning from sing., 106. *plūs*, comparison, 122; *plūs*, w. *abl.* or without effect on case, 416, *d*; *plūris* and *plūrimi*, gen. of value or price, 356, 1. Point of reference for tenses, 467, 1, *a*. Point of view, expr. by *ab* or *ex*, 406, 2. *pōne*, w. acc., 380. *por-*, prefix, 51, 13; 218, 1, *b*. "Position, length by," see 29, 3. Positive degree, 119; wanting, 123. Possession, dat. of, 374 and *a*. Possessive compounds, 216, 4. Possessive genitive, 339; in pred., 346. Possessive pronouns, *Form*, 136; use, 254; of 3d pers., how replaced, 256; when expr., when omitted, 258; in pl. of dignity, 259; as reflexive, 260, *a*; poss. pron. preferred to gen. of personal, 339, *a*. Possibility, expr. by potential subj., 516, 517; by *possum* w. infin., 586; moods and tenses in verbs of, 582, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., *ib.*, n. 2. *possum*, conj., 191; moods and tenses of, in conclusions, 582, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., *ib.*, n. 2; *possum* w. infin., 586; *posse* w. pres. infin. = fut. infin., 472, *d*. *post*, w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376; as adv., 303, *c*; see also *ante*. *posteaquam*, w. indic., 557, 558. *posterior*, defect. comparison, 123. *postquam*, w. indic. det. cl., 550; replaced by a noun w. *quam* or the *abl.* of *quī*, *ib.*, *c*; w. narr. cl., 557, 558. *postrēmus*, the last to, 243. *postridiē*, w. gen. or acc., 380, *c*. *postulō*, cases w., 393, *b*, 2; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*. Potential subjunctive, 516, 517. *potestās*, w. infin., 598, 2, *d*. *potior*, w. *abl.*, 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; w. gen., *ib.*, *c*; in gerundive constr., 613, n. *potior*, defect. adj., comparison, 123. *potissimum*, 302, 6; position, 624, 13, *a*. *potius*, comparison, 129; meaning, 302, 6; position, 624, 13, *a*; *potius quam*, w. subj., 507, 4, *d*. *prae*, sometimes shortened, p. 9, *ftn.*; w. *abl.*, 407, 1; cpds. of, w. dat., 376. *praecepta*, decl., 117, *b*; w. adv. force, 245. *praesertim*, w. *quī* or *cum*, 523, *b*, 526, *a*. *praestōlor*, w. dat. or acc., 364, 5. *praesum*, conj., 190, 191; w. dat., 376. *praeter*, w. acc., 380; w. infin., 598, 3; cpd. of, w. acc., 386, *a*. *praetervēhor*, w. acc., 386, *a*. Prayer, expr. by imper., 496. Predicate, defined, 229, 230, 317, 3; pred. verb, 317, 3, *a*; omission of, 222, *a*; pred. acc., 392, *a*; poss. gen. in, 340; agreement of pred., 318-332, agreeing w. subject of main verb, 590, 2, 592, *a*; pred. attracted by dat., 326, 3, 585, *c*. Prefixes, adv., spelling, 51; lists, 218. Prepositions, *Form*, 126; assimilation in cpds., 51. *Syntax*: definition, 221, 303; origin and early use, *ib.*, *a*; cpds. of, taking dat., 376; taking acc., 391, 2; taking dat. or acc., *ib.*, *a*; taking two



- cognōvī** etc., force of tenses, **487**.  
**cōgō**, w. acc., **397, 1**; w. vol. cl., **502, 3, a**);  
 w. infin., **587**; w. cl. of actuality, **521, 3, a**).  
**Collective noun**, **240, 3**; agreement w.,  
**325, 331, 1**.  
**com-**, see **con-**.  
**Combinations of tenses**, usual, **476, 477**;  
 less usual, **478**; mechanical harmony  
 of subj. tenses, **480**; tenses depending  
 on pres. perf., **481**; permanent truths  
 depending on past tenses, **482**.  
**Command, expr. by imper.**, **496, 501, 3, b**;  
 by subj., **501, 3, a, b**; by fut. indic., **572**;  
 in ind. disc., **538**.  
**Common nouns**, **240, 2**.  
 "Common" syllable, **28, 5, n**.  
**communefaciō**, **commoneō**, constr. w., **351**.  
**communis**, w. either gen. or dat., **339, c**.  
**Comparative**, case constrs. w., **416, 417**;  
 w. **quam** and **quī**-or **ut**-cl., **521, 2, c**.  
**Comparatives**, decl., **116, 118**; formation,  
 see **Comparison**.  
**Comparison**: of adjs., formation, **119-123**;  
 forces of degrees, **241, 1-4**; two compar.,  
**242**; comparison of advs., **128-129**;  
 forces of degrees, **300**; two compar., **301**.  
**Comparison**, imaginative, w. **quasi**, etc.,  
 and subj., **504, 3**.  
**Complementary infinitive**, defined, **586, a**.  
**Complex sentence**, **223, 3**.  
**Composition of words**, **213-218**; quantity  
 in cpds., **24**; accent in, **31, 3**; vowel-  
 change in, **42**; assimilation of prep in,  
**50, 51**; redupl. perf. of cpds., **173, D, a**.  
**Composition or material**, gen. of, **349**.  
**Compound sentence**, **223, 2**.  
**Compounds of verb and prep.**, w. dat., **376,**  
**377**; w. dat. and acc., **376, a**; w. acc.,  
**391, 2**; w. dat. or acc., **ib., a**.  
**con-, com-,** form in cpds., **51, 6**; cpds. of,  
 w. dat., **376**.  
 "Conative action," tenses of, **484**.  
**Concern**, dat. of, **366**.  
**Concession of indifference**, expr. by imper.,  
**497, 2**; by subj., **532, 1**; by subj. cl. w.  
**quamvis** etc., **532, 2**.  
**Concessive**, see **Concession**, and **Adversative**.  
**Conclusions**, see **Conditions**.  
**Concrete nouns**, **240, 4**.  
**Concrete object for wh.**, dat. of, **361**.  
**"Condemning,"** gen. w., **342, 343**.  
**Condensed comparison**, **631, 3**.  
**Conditional sentence or cl.**, **228, 2, 577**;  
 see also **Conditions**.  
**Conditions and conclusions**, generalizing  
 and individual distinguished, **576**; three  
 types, **575-581**; in ind. dis., **534, 1, b, 536**.  
**cōnfidō**, w. dat., **362, II**; w. abl., **437**.  
**coniciō**, quantity of first syll., **30, 1**.  
**Conjugation of verbs**, **54, 145-201**; of  
 sum, **153-154**; conj. distinguished,  
**148**; first conj., **156**; second, **156**;  
 third, **157**; fourth, **159**; of depon., **160**;  
 periphr., **162**; peculiarities in, **163-165**;  
 variation between conj., **165**; of  
 irreg. verbs, **190-197**; of defect. verbs,  
**198-200**; of impers. verbs, **201**.  
**Conjunctions**, origin, **125**; defined, **304**;  
 coördinating, **305** and **I**; copulative,  
**307**; disjunctive, **308**; adverbs, **310**;  
 inferential, **311**; subordinating, **312**.  
**Connection**, gen. of, **339**.  
**cōnsciū**, gen. w., **354**; dat. w., **363, 1, b**).  
**Consecutive clauses** defined, **519, 3, a, 521,**  
**1, c**; of ideal certainty, **519, 2, 3**; of actuality,  
**521, 1-3**.  
**Consent**, expr. by imper., **496**; by subj.,  
**531, 1, 2**; by indic., **571, 572**.  
**cōnsistō**, constrs. w., **438, 3**.  
**Consonants**, **2**; classif., **6-8, 12**; pronunc.,  
**11**; changes of, **47-49**; stems in, **74, A,**  
**75-86**.  
**cōnstituō**, w. vol. subj. or infin., **586** and **c.**  
**cōnstō**, constrs. w., **438, 1, 3, a, b**.  
**Construction**, defined, **314, 3**.  
**cōnsuēvī** etc., force of tenses, **487**.  
**cōnsulō**, w. dat. or acc., **367**.  
 "Contention," w. cum and abl., **419, 4**; w.  
 dat., **363, 2, c**; w. acc., **397, 2**.  
**contentus**, w. abl., **438, 4**.  
**contrā**, w. acc., **380**; w. atque (ac), **307, 2, a**.  
**Contraction of vowels**, **45**; quantity result-  
 ing from, **19**; of vowels, in poetry, **658**.  
**Contrast**, **ut**-cl. of, *while . . . (yet)*, **563**.  
**Coördinate clauses**, **225**.  
**Coördinate sentences**, **223, 2**.  
**Coördinating conjunctions**, **305-311**.  
**Copula**, **230, a**.  
**Copulative compounds**, **216, 1**.  
**Copulative conjunctions**, **307, 309**.  
**cōram**, abl. w., **407, 1**.  
**Corrective aut**, *sive*, vel, **308, 3, a**; *quam-*  
*quam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, **310, 7**.  
**Correlatives**, **144**.  
**Countries**, gend. of names of, **58, 2**.  
**crēdō**, w. dat., **362, II**; w. acc., **364, 3**.  
**cui**, pronunc., **10, a, 140, a**.  
**cuius**, pronunc., **29, 2, a, 140, a**.  
**cum**, prep., in cpds., **51, 6**; w. soc. abl., **418**;  
*mēcum*, etc., *ib., a*; ideas expr. by, **419**.  
**cum-clauses**: descr. cl. of ideal certainty,  
**519, 2**; of actuality, **521, 1**; descr. cl.  
 of situation, **524**; of situation, w. caus.  
 or adverb. idea, **525**; purely caus. or ad-  
 vers. cl., **526**; of repeated action, **540**;  
 determining a time, **550** and **a**; of the  
 time included in the reckoning, **550** and  
 ftn. **2**; of equivalent action, **551**; subst.,  
**553**; aor. narr. cl. (*cum primum*), **557, a**;  
*cum . . . tum . . .*, **564**; *cum* in forward-  
 moving cl., **566**; "*cum inversum*," *ib., a*;  
 parenthetical cl. and "*asides*," **567**; loose-  
 ly attached descr. cl., **568**; free descr. cl.,  
**569**; *tacit caus. or advers. cl.*, *ib., a*.

- general conditions, 577, ftn. 3; see also examples, 579, 581.
- cupiō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. gen., 352, 3; w. subj., 511, 2; w. infin., 586, 587.
- cūr*, w. subj. of obligation, 513, 1, 2; of natural likelihood, 516, 1, 2.
- cūrō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. gerundive, 612, III.
- Customary action, tenses of, 484.
- Dactyl, 637; dactylic hexameter, 639; dactylic pentameter, 642.
- Dates, how expr., 664-669.
- Dative, *Form*: sing., decl. IV, in -ū, 97, 2; decl. V, in -ēi or -ei, 100, 1; in -ē, *ib.*, 2; pl., decl. I, in -abus, 66, 4; decl. IV, in -ubus, 97, 1. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 353.
- dē*, in cpds., 24, 2.
- dē*, w. abl., 405, 406, 3, 4; for gen. of whole, 346, e; w. verbs of separation, 408.
- dēbeō*, moods and tenses of, 582, 3; w. infin., 586.
- deceit, w. acc., 390, a; w. subj., 513, 5; w. infin., 585.
- Declarative sentence or clause, 228, 1.
- Declension, 54, 55; the five decls. of nouns, 63; endings, 64; I, 65-68; II, 69-73; III, 74-95; IV, 96-98; V, 99-101; nouns variable in, 107; of adjs., 110-118; of comparatives, 116; of participles, 117; of numerals, 131; of prons., 134-142.
- Defective nouns, 102-104, 106; defect. compar., 123; verbs, 198-201.
- "Defining" genitive, 341.
- Degree, acc. of, 387.
- Degree, cl. determining the, 550, and ftn. 2.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 424.
- Degrees of comparison, 119.
- Deliberation, expr. by subj., 503; by pres. indic., 571; by fut. indic., 572.
- Demand, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a).
- "Demonstrative," see Determinative.
- Denominative verbs, p. 98, ftn. 1, 211; of conj. I, 211, 1, 212, n, 166, 1, 2; of conj. II, 211, 3, 167, 1, c; of conj. III, 211, 4, 168, *H*, 1; of conj. IV, 211, 2, 169, 1.
- Dentals, 7, 2, 12; changes of, 49, 4, 5, 8, 10.
- Dependent clause, 224, 1 and a.
- Dependent compounds, 216, 3.
- Deponent verbs, defined, 145, 160; originally reflexive, 288, 3, b; voice meanings of, 291, a-a; perf. pass. partic. of, w. act. meaning, 602, 1, a.
- Deprecated act, w. *antequam*, etc., and subj., 507, 4, d); w. indic., 571.
- "Depriving," abl. w., 408.
- Derivation of nouns and adjectives, 203-210; derivatives, primary and secondary, 203; vowel-quantity in, 23, 2.
- Descent*, words denoting, 207, 3.
- Descriptive compounds, 216, 2.
- Descriptive genitive, 355; abl., 443; tenses, 466, 1, a; descr. cl. defined, p. 260, ftn. 2; clauses: see synopses, 499, 543.
- Desideratives, 212, 3.
- Desire, see Wish, 511, 1.
- dēspērō*, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. acc., 391, 1.
- dēterior, comparison, 123.
- Determinative cl., p. 260, ftn. 1; see synopses, 499, 543.
- Determinative-descriptive pronouns, decl., 137, 138; distinctive meanings of *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, *is*, and of *tālis*, *tantus*, *tot*, 271.
- deus*, decl., 71, 5.
- Diaeresis, bucolic, 641, c, n. 2.
- Diastole, 654, ftn. 3.
- dīc*, imper., 164, 1.
- dīcō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. infin., 589; in subj. in cl. of reason, 535, 2, a, n. 3.
- Dīdō*, decl., 95, b.
- dīcē*, decl., 99; gen. 101.
- "Difference" or "aversion," abl. w., 412; poetic dat. w., 363, 2, c).
- difficilis*, comparison, 120, 2, a.
- dignus*, w. abl., 442; w. subj. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in -ū, 619, 2; w. infin., 598, 2, c).
- Diminutive adjectives, 207, 1.
- Diphthongs, 5; pronunc. in Latin, 10.
- Direct discourse, explained, 533.
- Direct object, acc. of, 390, 391.
- Direct reflexive, 262, 1.
- Direction or relation expr. by dat., 362, I-III; w. ad, in, etc., 384, 2; poetic dat. of direction in space, 375.
- dis*-, 24, 1, 51, 7, 218, 1, b.
- Disjunctive conjunctions, 308, 309.
- "Distance," see Extent of space, acc., 387, 1, and degree of difference, abl., 424.
- Distich, elegiac, 642, a, ftn. 6.
- Distributive numerals, 133; used for cardinals, 247.
- Distributive pronouns, 142, 278.
- diū*, comparison, 129.
- doceō*, constr. w., 393 and b, 1).
- domus*, decl., 97, 5; *domi*, loc. form, 71, 6; gen., 98, a; of place where, whither, whence, 449-451; w. modifiers, 454.
- dōnec*, see *dum*.
- Double consonants, 11.
- "Double questions," 234.
- "Doubt," w. *quā*, 519, 4, b); 521, 3, b).
- "Dubitative subjunctive," see Deliberation.
- dubitō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, b); w. antic. subj., 506, 2, b); of ideal certainty, 519, 4, b); of actuality, 521, 3, b); w. infin., 586.
- dūc*, imper., 164, 1.
- duim*, *duis*, *duit*, etc., 197, a.
- dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*, w. antic. subj., 507, 5; w. fut. perf. or fut. indic., *ib.*, a; w. pres. indic., 571; determining time up to wh., 550 and b; narr. cl. w., 560; determining time during wh., 550 and b; *dum*-cl. of

- situation, 559; replacing pres. pass. partic., 602, 2; subj. dum cl. of proviso, 529.  
*dummodo*, in cl. of proviso, 529.  
*duo*, decl., 131, 2.  
 Duration of time, expr. by acc., 387, II; by per and acc., *ib.*, *a*; by abl., 440.
- ē*, prep., see *ex*.  
*ecquis*? decl., 141, *b*; use, 275, 6.  
*edō*, conj., 196; *edim*, *edīs*, etc., 196, *a*.  
*efficiō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. cl. of fact, 521, 3, *a*.  
 "Effort," w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*.  
*egeō*, w. gen., 347; w. abl., 425, *a*.  
*ego*, decl., 134; *egomet*, *ib.*, *d*.  
*eius*, pronunc. and quantity, 29, 2, *a*; 137, *a*; *eius modi*, descr. gen., 355.  
*Elegiac stanza*, 642, *a*.  
 Elision, see *Slurring*.  
*Ellipsis*, 631, 1.  
 Emphasis, obtained by order, 625-628.  
 Emphatic future-perfect, 490 and *a*.  
 Emphatic perfect, 490.  
*Enallage*, 631, *q*.  
*Enclitics* defined, 33, 1; quantity of, 28, 2, *d*; question of accent before, 32, *n*.  
 "End of motion," expr. by prep. w. acc., 385; by poetic dat., 375.  
*Endeavor*, expr. by vol. subj., 500.  
*Endings*, inflectional, origin, 203, ftn. 2; of nouns, 64; of verbs, 151.  
 Energetic or emphatic per., 490.  
*enim*, meaning and position, 311, 6.  
*Entreaty*, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 530.  
*eō*, conj., 194.  
*eō . . . quō*, of degree of difference, 424.  
*Epistolary tenses*, 493.  
*equidem*, use of, 257, *a*.  
 Equivalent action, cl. of, 551.  
*ergā*, w. acc., 380, 364, 7.  
*ergō*, 311, 1; w. gen., 339, *d*.  
*-escō*, verbs in, 168, *F*, *a*, 212, 2.  
*esse*, often omitted, 584, *e*.  
 Essential part, see *Attraction*.  
*est* and noun, dat. of reference w., 366, *a*; est. w. potential descr. cl., 517, 2; w. descr. cl. of ideal certainty, 519, 2; of actuality, 521, 1; w. subst. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*; w. infin., 598, 3.  
*et*, 307, 1, *a*, *c*; = *etiam*, 302, 2 and *b*; *et . . . et*, *et . . . neque*, *neque . . . et*, 309.  
*etenim*, 311, 6, *a*.  
 Ethical dative, 372.  
*etiam*, in answers, 232, 1; meaning and position, 302, 2; often added to *sed* or *verum*, 310, 4, *b*.  
*etiāmsi* and *etsi*, = *although*, 582, 8.  
*etsi*, "corrective," 310, 7.  
*Euphemism*, 632, 12.  
*ex* or *ē*, in cpds., 51, 8; choice of forms, 405, *b*; w. abl., 405, 406; of point of view, 406, 2; w. verbs of separation, 408.
- "Exchanging," w. abl., 431.  
 Exclamation, acc. of, 399; nom. of, *ib.*, *a*; infin. of, 596.  
 Exclamatory sentence, 228, 3; questions, 503.  
 Exhortation, expr. by vol. subj., 501, 2; by fut. indic., 572.  
 Explanatory genitive, 341.  
 Explicative quod-cl., p. 296, ftn.  
 Explicit causal or adversative *qui-* or *cum*-cl., 523, *a*, 526.  
*expectō*, w. antic. subj., 507, 2; w. infin., 593, *a*.  
 Extent of space, acc. of, 387; abl. of, 426, *c*.  
*exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus*, 123.  
*extrā*, w. acc., 380.
- fac*, imper., 164, 1.  
*facilis*, comparison, 120, 2; w. supine in -u, 619, 1; w. ad and gerundive, *ib.*, *a*.  
*faciō*, accent of cpds. of, 31, 3; non-prep. forms, 218, 3; w. vol. subj., 502, 3, *a*; w. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587, ftn. 1, 605, 1, *n*.  
 Fact, indic. of, 462, 544; subj. of, in consec. cls., 520, 521, 3, *a*, *b*.  
 "Factitive object," see *Result produced*.  
*falsus*, comparison, 123, *a*.  
*famēs*, abl., *famē*, 88, 5.  
*familiās*, 66, 1.  
*fārī*, conj., 198, 3.  
*fās*, indecl., 106, 2; *fās est*, w. infin., 585; *fās* w. supine, 619, 1.  
*faxō*, *faxim*, 163, 5.  
 Fear, subj. cl. of, 502, 4.  
 Feminine caesura, 641, *a*.  
 Feminines, see *Gender*.  
*fer*, imper., 164, 1.  
*ferē*, *fermē*, position of, 624, 13, *a*.  
*ferō*, conj., 193; dat. w., 365; w. infin., 594.  
 -*ficus*, comparison of cpds. in, 120, 3.  
*fiō*, 161; w. dat., 362, II; w. abl., 437.  
*fidus*, comparison, 123, *a*.  
 Field in which, expr. by in w. abl., 434, 2.  
 Fifth declension, 99-101.  
 Figurative use of cases, moods, etc., 315, 1.  
 Figures of syntax, 631; of rhetoric, 632.  
*filia*, decl., 66, 4.  
*filius*, gen. and voc., *filii*, 71, 3.  
 "Final clauses," p. 260, ftn. 3.  
 Final consonants, changes in, 49, 13.  
 "Fine," abl. of, 428.  
*finis*, decl., 87, 88, 2, *d*; sing. and pl., 105.  
 Finite forms of verb, defined, 146.  
*fiō* etc., quantity of *i* in, 21, 1; conj., 195; defect. cpds. w., 195, *a*; abl. w., 423, *b*.  
 First conjugation, 148, 155; pres. stem, 166; denom., 211, 1.  
 First declension of nouns, 65-68.  
 First and second declension of adjectives, 110-112.  
 "Fitness," *adjs.* of, w. dat., 382, w. ad, 384, 2, *a*.

- flagitō*, cases w., 393 and *b*, 2).  
 Foot, defined, 636.  
*forās*, adv., 126, 7, n.  
*fore*, *forem*, etc., 154, 1, 2.  
*fore* or *futūrum* ut . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
 Forestalled act, in subj. w. *antequam* or *priusquam*, 507, 4, *b*.  
 "Forgetting," "remembering," and "recalling," constrs. w., 350.  
*forīs*, out of doors, 449, *a*.  
 Formal ut, p. 261, ftn. 2.  
 Formation of verb-stems, 166-184; of words, 202-218.  
*forsitan*, w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
 Forward-moving clauses, 566.  
 Fourth conjugation, 159; pres. stem, 169.  
 Fourth declension, 96-98.  
 Free clause, defined, p. 302, ftn.; free descriptive clause, 569.  
 Freer neuter accusative modifiers, 397.  
 Frequentatives, 166, 2, 212.  
*Fricatives*, 6, 3, 12.  
*frūgi*, compar., 122; as adj., p. 190, ftn. 2.  
*fruo*, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
*fuī*, etc., for sum, etc., as auxiliaries, 164, 8.  
 Fullness, adjs. of, 209, 2; see *Plenty*.  
*fungor*, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, n.  
 Fusion, explained, 315, 3.  
 Future conditions, more vivid, 579, *a*; less vivid, 580; past-fut., 508, 509, 580, *b*, *c*.  
 Future, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 172; in *-ibō*, 164, 5; meanings of tense, 468, 3 and *a*, 484, 485, 486, 2; special uses, 572; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, 470, 1, 4 and *a*, 508; INFINITIVE: meaning of tense, 472 and *a*, *b*; active, *form*, 178, 3; passive, *form*, *ib.*; PARTICIPLE: active, verbal adj., 146; in periphr. conj., 162; *form*, 182; meaning of tense, 600, 2; passive, verbal adj., 146; in periphr. conj., 162; in conj. III and IV, 164, 2; *form*, 184; meaning of tense, 600, 3 and *b*.  
 Future perfect, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 163, 5, 164, 6, 174, 2; meaning, 468, 6; as emphatic fut., 490; SUBJUNCTIVE: how replaced in Latin, p. 244, ftn. 1.  
 Futures, periphr., see *Periphrastic*.  
*futūrum esse* ut . . . = fut. infin., 472, *c*.  
*futūrus*, as adj., 248.  
*gaudeō*, 161; w. acc., 397, 2; w. abl., 444, *a*; w. infin., 594; w. quod-cl., 555.  
 Gender, 56-59; decl. I, 67; decl. II, 72; decl. III, 94 (summary), 78, 81, 84, 86, 89, 91, 2; decl. IV, 98; decl. V, 101; nouns variable in, 108.  
 General "truths" or "customs," expr. by *pres.*, 468, 1, *b*.  
 Generalizing clause, 576; indic., 579 and ftn.; subj. in 2d sing. indef., 504, 2.  
 Generalizing pronouns, 282; the same used w. merely indef. meaning, 283.  
 Genitive, *Form*: sing., decl. I, in *-ās*, 66, 1; in *-āi*, *ib.*, 2; decl. II, in *-ī* of nouns in *-ius*, *-ium*, 71, 2, 3; in *-ī* of adjs. in *-ius*, 110, *a*; of pronom. adjs., 112; decl. IV, *-ī*, 97, 4, 5; decl. V, in *-eī*, *-eī*, and *-ī*, 100, 1, 2, 3; pl., decl. I, in *-um*, 66, 3; decl. II, in *-um*, 71, 4; of ducenti, etc., in *-um*, 131, 4; decl. III, in *-um* and *-ium*, 75; in adjs., 118, 1; decl. IV, in *-um*, 97, 3. *Syntax*: see synopsis, 338.  
 Gerund, *Form*, 184.  
 Gerundive and gerund, nature of, 609-611; common uses, 612, 613; gen. of gerundive, w. *mei nostri*, etc., 614; rarer uses, 615, 616.  
 "Gnomic perfect," 488.  
 Grammatical gender, 56, *b*.  
*grātiā*, w. gen., 339, *d*; of gerundive, 612, 1.  
 "Greek accusative," see Acc. of respect.  
 Greek nouns, decl. I, 68; decl. II, 73; decl. III, 96.  
 Growth of meanings in constructions, 315.  
 Gutturals, 7, 3, 12; changes of, 49, 2, 3; stems in, 76, 77, 1.  
*habēō*, w. potential cl., 517, 2; w. infin., 597, 2; w. perf. pass. partic., 605, 5.  
*habētō*, tense, how used, 496, *c*.  
 Habitual action, tenses of, 484.  
*haereō*, constr. w., p. 193, ftn.  
 Harmony, ut-cl. of, 563.  
*haud*, use of, 297 and *a*.  
*havē*, see *avē*.  
 Hendiadys, 631, 5.  
 "Hesitating," w. *nē*, *quān*, or *quōminus*, 502, 3, *b*; w. infin., 586.  
 Heteroclitics, 107.  
 Heterogeneous nouns, 108.  
 Hexameter, dactylic, 639.  
 Hiatus, 647.  
*hic*, quantity, 30; decl., 138, 1; hoc, quantity, 30; *huius*, *huic*, pronunc., 10, *d*, 138, *b*; meaning and uses of *hic*, 271-273; *hic* . . . *ille*, "the former" . . . "the latter," 274, 2; as indefinites, *ib.*, *b*.  
*hic*, adv., quantity, 25, 1; *form*, 127, 7.  
 Hidden quantity, 16, n. 2; list, 679.  
*hiem(p)s*, 49, 7; decl., 83, 4.  
 Highly improbable future conclusion, 581, *c*.  
*hinc* . . . *illinc*, 406, 2, first example.  
 Hindrance, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*.  
 Historical infinitive, 595.  
 "Historical perfect," 468, 4, *a*, ftn. 3.  
 Historical present, 491, 1.  
 "Historical" tenses, p. 247, ftn. 2.  
*hoc*, see *hic*.  
 "Hoping," constr. w., 593 and *a*.  
 "Hortatory" subjunctive, see 501, 2.  
*hortor*, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 597.

- humī, loc., 71, 6, 449, *a*.  
 humilis, comparison, 120, 2.  
 Hypallage, 631, 10.  
 Hypératon, 631, 13.  
 Hypérbole, 632, 2.  
 Hypermetric verse, 641, *c*, n. 4.  
 Hýsteron próteron, 631, 12.
- I, letter, 1, *a*, n.; consonantal i, 11.  
 i, consonantal, sometimes becomes vowel in poetry, 656, 1; vocalic, sometimes becomes consonantal in poetry, 656, 2.  
 i-stems, 87-89.  
 -ia, suffix, 207, 2.  
 iaciō, cpds. of, spelling, and quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
 iam, compared w. nunc, 302, 4, 5.  
 iam diū, iam pridem, etc., w. tenses of action in progress, 485.  
 Iambic shortening, 28, n., 649.  
 Iambus, 637, *b*.  
 -ībam, imperf. indic. of conj. IV, 164, 4.  
 -ībō, fut. of conj. IV, 164, 5.  
 Ictus, 634; relation to accent, 644, 645.  
 id quod, 325, *a*, n. 2.  
 Ideal certainty, subj. of, 518, 519.  
 idem, decl., 137; use, 270; w. quī or atque, *ib.*, *b*.; w. dat., 363, 2, *c*.  
 Identifying pronoun, see idem.  
 Ides, Idūs, 664; use in dating, 665-671.  
 idoneus, comparison, 121; w. dat., 362; w. ad and acc., 364, 6; w. quī or ut, 513, 3.  
 Idūs, gen., 98, *a*. See also Ides.  
 iēns, pres. act. partic. of eō, 183.  
 -ier, infin. in, 164, 3, 178, 2.  
 igitur, position of, 311, 2.  
 "Illative" conjunctions, 311.  
 ille, decl., 138, 1; meaning and uses, 271-274, 1; hic . . . ille . . ., 274, 2; ille w. descr. qui-cl., 521, 1; w. ut-cl., 521, 2, *b*; position of ille, 624, 2.  
 illic, decl., 138, 2, *c*.  
 illic, adv., quantity of final syllable, 25, 1; accent, 32, 1.  
 Imaginative comparison, cl. of, 504, 3.  
 immō, 233.  
 immūnis, w. gen., 354; w. abl., p. 224, ftn. 1.  
 Imperative, endings of, 151, *b*.  
 Imperative, synopsis of uses, 495; tenses of, 496; imper. of command, advice, etc., *ib.*; w. quīn, *ib.*, *b*; in prohibitions, *ib.*, *a*; replaced by vol. subj. in ind. disc., 538.  
 Imperfect, meanings common to all forms: of progressive action, 466, 1 and ftn., 470, 1; of habitual action, 484; of attempted action, *ib.*; w. iam diū, etc., 485; INDICATIVE: *form*, 171; in -ībam, 164, 4, 171, n.; meaning, 468, 2; of discovery, 486, 1; epistolary, 493; SUBJUNCTIVE: *form*, 175, *a*; original meanings: progressive, 470, 1; aor., 477, *b*; in cls. of result, *ib.* and 521, 2, examples; in wishes, 510, *a*; in conditions and conclusions, 581; imperf. contrary to fact retained in any combination of tenses, *ib.*, n.  
 imperō, w. dat., 362; w. dat. and acc., 364, 4; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587, *b*.  
 Impersonal verbs, 201, 287; verbs in pass. w. dat., 364, 2; impers. constr., generally preferred w. certain pass. infins., 580, 1, *a*.  
 impetrō, w. subj. cl., 530, 2.  
 imus, lowest part of, 244.  
 in, form in cpds., 51, 9; w. acc., 380, 381, 385; w. abl., 433, 434; use w. abl. of time, 439, *a*; w. abl. of respect, 441, *a-c*; often or reg. omitted w. abl. of certain words, 436; freely omitted by poets, 433, *a*; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.  
 in-, negative prefix, 214, 2.  
 Inchoatives ("Inceptives"), 212, 2; perī of, 188, *F*, ftn.  
 Incomplete action, tenses of, 466, 1, ftn.  
 Indeclinable nouns, 106, 2; gen. of, 58, 3.  
 "Indefinite antecedents," 521, 1, *a*.  
 Indefinite idea distinguished from generalizing, 283.  
 Indefinite pronouns, list of, 142, 276.  
 Indefinite second person in conditions, 504, 2, 576, *a*; in general statement of fact, 542; w. potential subj., 517, 1.  
 Indefinite subject, 286.  
 Indefinite value, 356.  
 Indicative, general force of, 462, 544; tenses of, 468; tenses w. verbs and phrases of possibility, obligation, etc., 582, 3, *a*; general uses, see synopsis, 543; pres. pres. perf., and future, in special uses, 571, 572.  
 Indifference, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 531; concession of, expr. by imper., 497, 2; by subj., 532, 1; w. quamvis, *ib.*, 2; w. licet, *ib.*, *a*; w. ut, *ib.*, *b*.  
 indigeō, w. gen., 347, *a*; w. abl., 425, *a*.  
 Indignation, expr. by subj., 503; by fut. indic., 572; by infin., 596.  
 indignus, w. abl., 442; rarely w. gen., 354, *c*, example; w. subj. rel. cl., 513, 3; w. supine in -ū, 619, 2.  
 Indirect discourse, defined, 533, 589, 591; prons. and persons in, 533, *a*; INFINITIVE in ind. disc.: tenses, 593; list of verbs and phrases governing, p. 318, ftn.; principal statements in infin., 534, 1, 591; constrs. of, may be used w. verbs not suggesting ind. disc., 534, 1, *a*, 535, 1, *a*, 536, *a*; subord. cls. in, 534, 2, 535-538.  
 Indirect object, dat. of, 365 and *a*.  
 Indirect questions, of fact, 537 and ftn.; fut., how expr. in, 470, 4, *a*; indic. in, 537, *g*; antic. subj. in, 507, 3.  
 "Indirect reflexive," 262, 2.  
 Individual condition, see Condition.  
 Indo-European speech, 46, ftn. 1; forces of cases in, 334; of moods, 459.  
 indulgeō, w. dat., 362; w. acc., 364, 4.

- Inferential conjunctions, 311.  
 inferior, comparison, 123.  
 infirmus, *lowest part of*, 244.  
 Infinitives, *Form*, 178. *Syntax*: synopsis of uses, 583; gender, case relations, etc., 584; tenses, 472; in ind. disc., 534, 1, 591; tenses w. verbs of swearing, etc., 593, a; w. verbs of remembering, *ib.*, b; w. verbs of obligation, propriety, etc., p. 311, ftn. 2; energetic or emphatic perfs., 490; list of verbs taking ind. disc., p. 318, ftn.; ordinary uses: dependent, 585-594, 597, independent, historical, 595, exclamatory, 596; poetical and later prose uses, 598; special points: complementary infin., 586, a; omission of subject in ind. disc., 592; w. *parātus*, *suētus*, etc., 586, f; w. verbs of seeing, hearing, or representing, 605, 1, n.; in rel. cls., 535, 1, b; after *quam*, *ib.*, c.  
 Inflection, defined, 54.  
 Informal indirect discourse, subj. of, 535, 1, a, 536, a.  
*infrā*, w. acc., 380.  
*innixus*, abl. w., 438, 2, a; dat. w., *ib.*, b.  
*inops*, w. gen., 347, a; w. abl., 425, a.  
*inquam*, conj., 198, 2; position of, 624, 16.  
 "Inquiring," two acc. w., 393; indirect question w., 537, b.  
 Inquiry for instructions, in subj., 503; in indic., 571, 572.  
 "Inseparable prepositions," see 218, 1.  
*insidiae*, pl. only, 104, 4; dat. w., 363, 1, a).  
*instar*, gen. w., 339, d.  
 Instrument, abl. of, 423.  
 Instrument or means, ends denoting, 206, 6.  
 "Instrumental ablative," 61, b, 423.  
 "Integral part," see Subj. by attraction.  
 Intensive pronoun, see *ipse*.  
 Intensives (meditatives), 212, 4.  
 Intention, expr. by vol. subj., 500, 502, 3, a), b), and ftns.; by fut. act. partic., 607.  
*intentus*, cases w., 438, 5.  
*inter*, form in cpds., 371, 10; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 56; *inter se*, etc., 266.  
*interclūdō*, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 2.  
*interdicō*, w. dat., 366, c; w. abl., 408, 3.  
 "Interest," dat. of, see Reference, dat. of, 366-369.  
*interest*, cases w., 345; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, c); w. infin., 585.  
 interior, comparison, 123.  
 Interjections, 221, 313.  
 Interrogative pronouns, 141, 275.  
 Interrogative sentence, see Questions.  
*intrā*, w. acc., 380.  
 Intransitive, see Voice and Verbs.  
 Intransitive verbs, passive of, 201, c, 290, a.  
 -*id*, verbs in, of conj. III, 158, 168, 1.  
*ipse*, decl., 139; use, 267-269; agreement of, 268; as reflex., 263, 264; *meus ipsius*, etc., 339, b.  
*iri*, in fut. infin. pass., 178, 3.  
 Irony, 632, 4.  
 Irregular nouns of decl. III, 92.  
 Irregular verbs, 170; conj. of, 190-197.  
*is*, decl., 137; meaning and uses, 271-274; sometimes instead of *se*, 262, 2, a; w. *qui*-cl., det. 560; descr., 521, 1; w. ut-cl., 521, 2, b.  
 -*is*, acc. pl. in, 75, a, 88, 3, 118, 4.  
 -*iscō*, inchoatives in, 212, 2, 168, F, a.  
 Islands, *gend.*, 58, 2; constrs. of place w., 449-451.  
*iste*, decl., 138, 2; meaning, 271, 274, 4.  
*ita*, in answers, 232, 1; *ita ut* or *nē*, w. vol. subj., 502, 2, a; *ita ut*, ut *nōn*, etc., 521, 2, d; *ita ut*, of way by *wh.*, *ib.*; *ita sī*, 578, 5.  
*itaque*, accent, 32, 2, n.; use, 311, 3.  
*iter*, decl., 80, 6.  
 "Iterative" subj., see Repeated action.  
 Iterative verbs, see Frequentatives, 212, 1.  
 -*itō*, frequentatives in, 212, 1.  
*iubeō*, w. acc., 397, 1; w. infin., 587; w. subj., *ib.*, b; *iubeor*, w. infin., 588.  
*iūgerum*, decl., 107, 2; as measure, 676, b.  
 -*ium*, gen. pl. in, 64, 88, 4, 91, 1, 118, 1.  
*iungō*, constr. w., 431, c.  
*Iuppiter*, decl., 92.  
*iūrātus*, *having sworn*, 161, 290, a, 4).  
*iūs*, decl., 86, 1; *iūs est*, w. cl. of obligation, 513, 5; *iūs est bellī*, w. vol. cl., cf. 502, 3, c), and ftn.  
 -*ius*, pronom. gen., quantity of i in, 21, 2, 112, n.; -*ius* in gen. in poetry, 653.  
 -*ius*, suffix, 210, 1, 215, 2; gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 71, 2, 3; of adjs. in, 110, a.  
*iussū*, abl. only, 106, 1; case, 414, a.  
*iuvenis*, decl., 88, 4; compar., 122, 123, b.  
*iūxtā*, w. acc., 380.  
 -*ivī*, perf. contracted, 173, A; short forms of, 163, 1, 3.  
 J, letter, 1, n.  
 Judging, person, in dat., 370.  
 "Jussive," see Votive subjunctive.  
 Juxtaposition, in cpds., 214, 3, 218, 2.  
 K, letter, 1, a.  
 Kindred meaning, acc. of, 396.  
 "Knowing," w. infin., 589.  
 Labials, 7, 1, 12; changes of, 49, 8, 10; stems in, 76, 77, 1, 90.  
*laetor*, w. neut. acc. pron., 397, 2; w. abl., 444, a; w. infin., 594.  
*laetus*, w. force of adv., 245; w. abl., 444, a.  
 Leading idea not in principal noun, 333.  
 Leap year, calendar for, 669, 671.  
*lēge*, *by law*, 414, a; *under the condition*, 436, b.  
 Length, measures of, 676.  
 Lengthening in poetry, 654; see also 652.

Less vivid future condition and conclusion, 580.  
 liber, decl., 111; constr. w., 411, *a*, *b*.  
 liberī, pl. only, 104, 4; gen. pl. of, 71, 4, *b*.  
 liberō, *acquit*, w. gen., 342; w. abl., 408, 3 and exc. 1.  
 licet, conj., 201; w. dat., 362; w. subj., 531, 2; = *although*, 532, 2, *a*; w. infin., 585; w. pred. dat., *id.*, *c*.  
 "Likeness," adjs. of, w. dat., 362, III; w. gen., 339, *c*.  
 linguā, as loc. abl., 436, *b*.  
 "Linguals," see Dentals.  
 Liquids, 6, 1; stems in, 79-81.  
 litore, w. and without in, 436.  
 Litotes, 632, 1.  
 Local point of view, dat. of, 370, *a*.  
 Locative, *Form*, 61, *b*; decl. I, 66, 5; decl. II, 71, 6; decl. III, 93; in pron. advs., 127, 7; domi, humi, etc., 449, *a*; locative of names of towns, etc., 449; appositive to, in abl. w. prep., 452.  
 Locative ablative, 334, 2.  
 locō, w. gerundive, 612, III.  
 locus, pl. of, 108, 2; locō, locis, in abl. w. or without prep., 436.  
 longius, w. abl., or without effect on case, 416, *d*; w. abl. of noun of time, 417, *a*.  
 longum est, etc., mood, 582, 3, *b*.  
 Loosely attached descr. cl. w. quī, etc., 568.  
 m, final, in slurring, 34, 646.  
 magis, use in compar., 121.  
 magnopere, magis, maximē, compar., 129.  
 magnus, compar., 122; magnī, -ō, of value or price, 356, 1, 427, 2, *a*.  
 Main (or principal) sentence or cl., 224, 1.  
 maior, w. nātū, 441; w. quam quī or ut, 521, 2, *c*.  
 maius, pronunc., 29, 2, *a*.  
 male, quantity of *e*, 28, 2, *c*; compar., 129.  
 mālō, conj., 192; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 586, 587; mālīm, māllem, w. subj., = *a wish*, 519, 1, *c*.  
 malus, compar., 122.  
 manēō, *abide by*, constr. w., 438, 2, *c*.  
 Manner, expr. by abl., 445; by *ad*, in, or per w. acc., *id.*, 3, *a*; by abl. absolute, 421, 8; by partic., 604, 5.  
 Masculine caesura, 641, *a*.  
 Material, gen. of, 349; may be expr. by *ex* (poetic *dē*) w. abl., 408, 4; prep. may be omitted in poetry, *id.*, *a*.  
 Material, suffix denoting, 209, 1.  
 mātūrus, comparison, 120, 1.  
 maximē, use in comparison, 121.  
 maximī, gen. of value or price, 356, 1.  
 "May," "might," expr. by potential subj., 516, 517; by *possum* w. infin., 586.  
 Means, expr. by abl., 423; by abl. absolute, 421, 7; persons as means, 423, *a*.  
 "Measure of difference," see 424.

Measures of money, weight, etc., 672-677.  
 mēcum, 418, *a*.  
 Meditatives, 212, 4.  
 medius, *the middle of*, 244; w. abl. noun, 436 and *a*.  
 mei, gen. of ego, reg. objective, 254, *a*.  
 melior, decl., 116.  
 meminī, conj., 199; case-constrs. w., 350 and *a*; w. infin., 589; force of tenses, 199, 1, 487; mementis, 496, *c*.  
 memor, 117, *b*, 118, 1, *a*, 2; w. gen., 354.  
 -men, -mentum, suffixes, 206, 3.  
 Mental action, obj. of, in gen., 350, 351.  
 -met, particle, 134, *d*.  
 Metaphor, 632, 13.  
 Metonymy, 632, *o*.  
 Metre, defined, 638.  
 metuō, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. subj. cl. w. nē or ut, 502, 4; w. infin., 586.  
 meus, decl., 136, *a*; voc. mī, *id.*  
 mī, dat. of ego, 134.  
 Middle voice, p. 158, ftn.; w. acc., 390, *b*.  
 mihi, quantity of final *i*, 28, n., 134, *a*;  
 mihi, in poetry, *id.*, 652, 1.  
 miles, final syll., 30, 3, 49, 4; decl., 76.  
 militiae, *in war, in the field*, 449, *a*.  
 mille, 131, 3; use, 131, 3, 4.  
 minimē, compar., 129; in answers, 232, 2.  
 minimī, -ō, of value, 356, 1; 427, 2, *a*.  
 minor nātū, 441; minōria, of value, 356, 1.  
 minus, comparison, 129; w. abl., or without effect on case, 416, *d*; w. abl. of nouns of time, 417, *a*.  
 mīror, conj., 160; rare gen. w., 352, 3.  
 misceō, constrs. w., 431 and *a*, *b*.  
 misereor, miserescō, w. gen., 352, 2.  
 miseret, acc. and gen. w., 352, 1, 390, *a*.  
 Mixed conditions and conclusions, 582, 1.  
 Mixed stems, 74, *C*, 90, 91.  
 "Modest (softened) statements," 519, 1, *b*.  
 modo, short -o, 28, 4; in cl. of proviso, 529.  
 monēō, conj., 156; w. neut. acc., 387, 1; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587.  
 Money, Roman, 672-675.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 25-28.  
 Moods, 145; mood-sign of subj., 175; mood defined, 460; table of forces, 462; general sketch of historical relations, 469.  
 Months, names of, 662; gend., 58, 1 and *a*.  
 mora, p. 344, ftn. 2.  
 mōre, of accordance, 414, *a*; of manner, 445, 1.  
 More vivid future condition and conclusion, 579, *a*.  
 mōs est, w. vol. subj., 502, 3, *c*; w. subj. cl. of actuality, 521, 3, *a*; w. infin., 585.  
 Motion toward, see Place whither, 385.  
 multi sunt quī, subj. or indic. w., 521, 1, *b*.  
 Multiplicatives, 133.  
 multum, *much*, 126, 6, n., 387, III; comparison, 129.

- multus**, comparison, 122; denoting a part, 244.  
**Mute** and **liquid**, pronounced in same syll., 14, 2, n.; separated in poetry, 655.  
**Mutes** or **stops**, 6, 4, 12; mute stems, 76.
- nam**, use, 311, 6.  
**-nam**, interrogative enclitic, 231, 2, n.  
**Names**, Roman, 678; in adoption, *ib.*, 4.  
**namque**, 311, 6, a.  
**Narrative** clause, subj., w. *cum*, 524; indic., w. *ubi*, etc., 557; of situation, w. *same*, 556; w. *dum*, *dōnec*, etc., 660; w. *antequam* or *priusquam*, 561; narr. partic., 604, 2, n.  
**Nasalized** vowels, 4, 3; before *na*, 11, 18; before *-m*, 34, 2.  
**Nasals**, 6, 2, 12; changes, 49, 9; stems in, 82-84; pres. w. inserted *n*, 168, C.  
*nātū*, abl. only, 106, 1; w. *maior*, etc., 441.  
**Natural** gender, 56, a.  
**Natural** likelihood, subj. of, 514, 515.  
**nct**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**ne-**, prefix, 24, 3.  
**-ne**, encl., interrog., 33; added to forms in *-ce*, 138, 2, d; shortened to *n*, 28, n., 231, n. 3; use and position, 231, 1, b; *-ne* . . . *an*, 234; *-ne* . . . *-ne*, *ib.*, b; w. exclamatory infin., 696.  
**nē**, *surely*, 302, 8.  
**nē**, *not, lest*, general statement of use, 464, 1; fitting changed meaning, *ib.*, 2; details: w. *imper.*, 496; w. subj., see especially prohibitions, 501, 3; cl. of purpose, 532, 2; in vol. subst. cl., *ib.*, 3; in cl. of fear, *ib.*, 4; in wishes, 511, 1; in opt. subst. cl., *ib.*, 2; sometimes in statements of obligation or propriety, 512, a.  
**nē nōn**, in cl. of fear, 502, 4.  
**nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, w. all moods, 464, 1, a; simply adds emphasis, 238, 2, a.  
**"Nearness"**, see dat. of relation, 362.  
**nec**, see *neque*.  
**nec enim**, 311, 6, b.  
**necessee est**, w. vol. subj. cl., 502, 3, c; w. infin., 535.  
**necne**, alternative in questions, 234, a.  
**nēdum**, *still less*, w. subj., 505.  
**Negative** particles, see *nē* and *nōn*; two negatives, 298, 2.  
**nēmō**, 106, 3; for *nūllus*, 276, 9, c, d.  
**nēquam**, compar., 122.  
**neque**, *nec*, and *not*, 464, 1; choice of forms, 307, 3, c; correl., 309.  
**nesciō**, w. infin., 586, 589; *nesciō an*, 537, f; *nesciō quis*, *quō pactō*, etc., 276, 4; same not affecting mood, 537, c.  
**neuter**, pronounc., 10, b; decl., 112, a; use, 273, 9; meaning in pl., *ib.*, a.  
**Neuter** acc. as adv., 126, 6, n., p. 209, ftn. 2.  
**Neuter** adj. as pred. w. nouns of any gen., 325, c; neut. pl. w. gen., 357.  
**Neuters**, see *Gender*.
- nēve**, *neu*, 301, 3; use w. moods, see *nē*.  
**nf**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**nī**, use, 578, 4.  
**nihil** (or *nīl*, quantity, 25, 1, 45), indecl., 106, 2; as acc. of degree, 387, III; constr. of adjs. w., 346, a; *nihil reliqui* *faciō*, etc., 340, a; *nihil abest* *quā*, 502, 3, b; *nihil est* *quod*, *quārē*, etc., 513, 2.  
**nihili**, descr. gen., 355, a; *nihili*, -ō, of value or price, 356, 2, 427, 2, b).  
**nisi**, *nisi si*, *forte*, etc., 577, 578; *nisi* w. abl. absolute, 421, 6, a; meaning *except* or *but*, 578, 3, b.  
**nitor**, w. abl., 438, 1.  
**nōlī** in prohibitions, 501, 3, a, 2).  
**nōlō**, conj., 192; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, a; w. infin., 586, 587.  
**Nominative**, *Form*: decl. III, p. 36, ftn., 75, 77, 1, 80, 83, 86, n., 87, 92, n.; decl. IV, 96; decl. V, 99. *Syntax*: as subject, 335; as attributive, appositive, or pred., 317-321; in exclamations, 399, a; for voc., 401.  
**nōn**, general statement of uses, 464, 1.  
**nōn modo . . . sed nē . . . quidem**, 299.  
**nōn nēmō** and **nōn nūllus**, 276, 6 and a.  
**nōn quia**, etc., w. subj., 535, 2, b.  
**Nones**, *Nōnae*, 664; use in dating, 665-671.  
**nōnne**, interrog. particle, 231, 1, c).  
**nōs** = *ego*, *noster* = *meus*, 259.  
**nostrī**, objective, *nostrum*, gen. of the whole, 134, b, 254, a.  
**Nouns**, gender, 56-59; number, 60; cases, 61-62; decl., 63-108; used only in sing., 103; only in pl., 104; w. different meaning in sing. and pl., 105; defect in case-forms, 106; variable in decl., 107; variable in gen., 108; deriv. of, 203-207; classification of cpds., 214; verbal nouns, 146; noun defined, 221; kinds of, 240; as adjs., *ib.*, 2, b; appos., 319, 1; pred., *ib.*, II.  
**nōvī**, etc., force of tenses, 487.  
**ns**, length of vowel before, 18.  
**nūlla causa est** *cūr*, *quārē*, *quā*, etc., cf. 513, 2.  
**nūllus**, decl., 112, a; use, 276, 9 and b.  
**num**, interrog. particle, 231, 1, d; in indirect questions, 537, d, 2).  
**Number**, in nouns, 60; in verbs, 145; nouns used only in sing., 103; only in pl., 104; with difference in meaning, 105; in agreement, 318-332.  
**Numerals**, 130-133; uses, *ib.* and 247.  
**numquis**, decl., 141, b, n.; use, 276, 1.  
**nunc**, compared w. *iam*, 302, 4, 5.  
**nūper**, comparison, 129.  
**nx**, length of vowel before, 18.
- ō sī**, in virtual wish, 582, 5.  
**ob**, form in cpds., 51, 11; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376.



- "Obeying," w. dat., 362.  
*obiciō*, quantity of first syll., 30, 1.  
 Object, concrete obj. for wh., w. dat., 361;  
 ind. in dat., 365; direct in acc., 390,  
 391; obj. cls., see Substantive clauses.  
 Objective genitive, 354.  
 Obligation, expr. by subj., 512, 513; by  
 fut. pass. partic., 600, 3; by same used  
 impersonally, *id.*, *a*; moods and tenses in  
 verbs of, 582, 3; in ind. disc., *id.*, *a*, n. 2.  
 Obligation or propriety, subj. of, 512, 513  
 Oblique cases, 61, *a*.  
*obliviscor*, constrs. w., 350.  
 Obstructed consonants, 14, 2, *b*, 37.  
*ōciōr*, comparison, 123.  
*ōdī*, meaning of tense, 199, 1, 487.  
 Omission of verb, 222, *a*, 631, 1, *a*; of sub-  
 ject, 257, 285; of antecedent, 284, 1.  
*Onomatopœia*, 632, 20.  
 Open syllables, 14, *a*; open vowels, 3.  
*opiniōne*, after compar., 416, *e*.  
*oportet*, moods and tenses of, 582, 3; w.  
 subj. cl., 513, 5; w. infin., 585.  
*oppidum*, in appos. to names of towns, 452.  
 Opposition, see Adversative.  
 Optative, *Form*, 175, n.; opt. subj., uses,  
 510, 511.  
*optimum est*, moods w., 502, 3, *c*), 585.  
*optō*, w. opt. cl., 511, 2; w. infin., 586, 587.  
*opus est*, w. abl., 430, 1; of partic., *id.*, 2;  
 w. supine in -ū, 619, 2; w. vol. cl., 502,  
 3, *c*); w. infin., 585; *opus as pred.*, 430,  
 2, *a*, *b*.  
*ōrātiō obliqua*, see indirect discourse, 533.  
*ōrātiō recta*, see direct discourse, 533.  
 Ordinals, 130, 131; w. *quisque*, 278, 2, *c*).  
 Origin, abl. of, 413; w. *ab* or *ex*, *id.*, *a*, *b*.  
*ōrō*, w. two accs., 393; w. subj. cl. 530, 2.  
 Orthography, 52.  
*Oxymoron*, 632, 3.  
  
*paene*, position of, 624, 13, *a*.  
*paenitet*, cases w., 352, 1; mood w., 585.  
*palam*, as adv., or w. abl., 407, 1, *a*.  
*Palatals*, 7, 3.  
*pār*, quantity in, 25, 1; cases w., 339, *c*.  
*Parallel cum . . . tum*, 564.  
 Parallel order, 628.  
*Parataxis* defined, 227; paratactic uses,  
 imper., 497, 2; subj., 504, 1, 511, 1, *b*,  
 530, 1, 532, 1; indic., 545, *b*.  
*parātus*, constrs. w., 384, 2, *a*, *b*, 586, *f*.  
 "Pardoning," w. dat., 362.  
 Parentage or origin, constr., 413.  
 Parenthetical cl., 567; partic. = 604, 7, *c*).  
*pars*, 91, 1, *a*; *parte*, in loc. abl., 436; *par-*  
*tem*, acc. of respect, 388.  
 Part, idea of, denoted by adjs., 244.  
 Participles, *Form*, pres. act., 183; decl.,  
 117, 118; fut. act., 182; perf. pass.,  
 179; fut. pass., 184. *Syntax*: nature,  
 599; used as adjs., 248; w. adv. force,  
 245; as subst., 249, 250; used imper-  
 sonally in abl. absolute, 421, 8, *a*; perf.  
 pass. modified by adv. or adj., 250, 2, n.;  
 perf. pass. w. act. meaning, 290, 2, *a*);  
 w. pres. force, 601; agreement, 320;  
 carrying leading idea, 333, 608; tenses,  
 meanings of, 600, 601; of attempted  
 action, 484; w. *iam diū*, etc., 485; voice-  
 meanings, 146; of deponents and semi-  
 deponents, 291; lacking perf. act. and  
 pres. pass. partics., how supplied, 602;  
 fut. pass. w. occasional pres. pass. force,  
 600, 3, *b*; common uses, 604; special  
 idioms, 605; new uses in later Latin,  
 606, 607.  
 Particles, defined, 221, *d*.  
 "Particular conditions," see 576 and ftn.  
*partior*, conj., 160.  
 Partitive apposition, 319, 1, *a*.  
 "Partitive genitive," p. 183, ftn.  
 Parts of speech, 53; defined, 221.  
*parum*, comparison, 129.  
*parvus*, comparison, 122; *parvi* or -*ō*, of  
 value or price, 356, 1, 427, 2, *a*).  
 Passive, see Voice.  
 Past aorist, indic., 468, 4, *a*; subj., 470, 2.  
 Past-future expressions, periphr. indic. and  
 antic. subj., 508 and ftn.; dep. past-fut.  
 cls. necessarily in antic. subj., *id.*; past-  
 fut. condition and conclusion, in subj.,  
 580, *b*; in periphr. fut. indic., *id.*, *c*.  
 Past perfect, INDICATIVE: *Form*, 174, 1;  
 meaning, 468, 5; of rapid succession of  
 events, 492; epistolary, 493; instead of  
 subj. contrary to fact, 581, *e*; SUBJUNCTIVE:  
*form*, 175, *c*; meaning, 470, 1;  
 in wishes, 510, *a*; in conditions and  
 conclusions, 581.  
 Patronymics, Greek, 207, 3.  
 Penalty, gen. of, 343; abl. of, 428.  
*penes*, w. acc., 380.  
 Pentameter, dactylic, 642.  
 Penult, 31, 2.  
*per*, form of, in cpds., 51, 12; as prefix,  
 218, *a*; w. acc., 380; of persons as means,  
*id.*, *d*; of duration of time, 387, 11, *a*;  
 of route, 426, *b*; of cause, 444, *c*; of  
 manner, 445, 3, *a*.  
 -*per*, enclitic particle, 127, 9.  
 Peremptory command, expr. by imper., 496.  
 Perfect, INDICATIVE: *Form*, perf. system  
 of, 147, *B*; ends, 151, *a*; short forms  
 of, 163; types of, 173; pass., 164, 8;  
 meanings, 468, 4 and *a*; tenses of dep.  
 verb w., 476, 479, 481; perf. of experi-  
 ence ("gnomic"), 488; of act or state  
 no longer existing, 489; energetic perf.,  
 490; picturesque, 491, 1; of rapid suc-  
 cession of events, 492; *nōvī*, *memini*,  
*ōdī*, *coepl.*, etc., 199, 487; SUBJUNCTIVE:  
*form*, 175, *b*; confusion w. fut. perf.  
 indic. forms, 164, 6; in -*sim*, 165, 5;

- meanings of tense, 469, 470; in result-cl., 476, 521, 2, examples; INFINITIVE: *form*, 178, 1-3; w. *esse* omitted, 164, 7; meaning of tenses, 472; in ind. disc., 534, 589, 591; PARTICIPLE: *form*, 179, 180; meaning of tenses, 473, 600, 601; perf. w. verbs of wishing, 605, 3. Perfect definite, see Perfect indicative. Period, definition of, 630. Periphrastic conjugation, 162; peculiarities in, 163-165; periphr. fut. tenses, of indic., 468, 7; of subj., 470, 4; when used in general, *ib.*, *a*; periphr. fut., in ind. questions, 537, *d*, 1; in conclusions, indic., subj., or infin., 580, *c*, 581, *a*, *b*. Permanent truths, tenses of, in combination w. other tenses, 492. *permittō*, w. subj., 531, 2; w. infin., 587. Perplexity, question of, in subj., 503; in pres. indic., 571; in fut. indic., 572. Person, 147; order of mention of the three persons, 624, 15; person judging, dat. of, 370; persons as agents, 406, 1; as means through wh., w. *per*, 380, *d*; as means by wh., w. *abl.*, 423, *a*. Personal construction in passive voice, *prohibeor*, *putor*, etc., 590, 1. Personal endings of verbs, 151, 152. Personal pronouns, decl., 134; use, 254; of third pers., how replaced, 255; when expr., when omitted, 257; pl. of dignity, 259; as reflex., 260, *a*. Personification, 632, 18. *persuadeō*, w. dat., 362; w. dat. and acc., 364, 4; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*. *pertaesum est*, constr. w., see *taedet*, 352, 1. *petō*, cases w., 393, *c*; w. subj., 530, 2. Phonetic changes, 41-51. Phrase, defined, 224, 2, *b*. Picturesque tenses, 491. *piget*, w. acc. and gen., 352, 1; w. infin., 585. Place, adjs. denoting, 210, 3. Place where, whither, or whence, reg. expr. by preps., 433, 385, 408, 1 and *a*, 2 and *a*; poets may omit, 433, *a*, 385, *c*, 410, 2; repeated relations all expr. (ad *Chrysogonum ad castra*, etc.), 540, *c*; constr. of names of towns, *domus, rūs*, etc., 449-453. "Placing," w. in and *abl.*, 433, *c*. Plan, how expr., 502, 2. Plants, gen. of names of, 58, 2. "Pleasing," w. dat., 362. Plenty and want, gen. of, 347; *abl.* of, 425. Pléonasm, 631, 4. Pluperfect, see Past perfect. Plural, wanting, 103; pl. only, 104; of dif. meaning from sing., 105. *plūs*, comparison, 122; *plūs*, w. *abl.* or without effect on case, 416, *d*; *plūris* and *plūrimī*, gen. of value or price, 356, 1. Point of reference for tenses, 467, 1, *a*. Point of view, expr. by *ab* or *ex*, 406, 2. *pōne*, w. acc., 380. *por-*, prefix, 51, 13; 218, 1, *b*. "Position, length by," see 29, 3. Positive degree, 119; wanting, 123. Possession, dat. of, 374 and *a*. Possessive compounds, 216, 4. Possessive genitive, 339; in pred., 346. Possessive pronouns, *Form*, 136; use, 254; of 3d pers., how replaced, 256; when expr., when omitted, 258; in pl. of dignity, 259; as reflexive, 260, *a*; poss. pron. preferred to gen. of personal, 339, *a*. Possibility, expr. by potential subj., 516, 517; by *possum* w. infin., 586; moods and tenses in verbs of, 582, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., *ib.*, n. 2. *possum*, conj., 191; moods and tenses of, in conclusions, 582, 3, *a*; in ind. disc., *ib.*, n. 2; *possum* w. infin., 586; *posse* w. pres. infin. = fut. infin., 472, *d*. *post*, w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. dat., 376; as adv., 303, *c*; see also *ante*. *posteaquam*, w. indic., 557, 558. *posterior*, defect. comparison, 123. *postquam*, w. indic. det. cl., 550; replaced by a noun w. *quam* or the *abl.* of *quī*, *ib.*, *c*; w. narr. cl., 557, 558. *postrēmus*, the last to, 243. *postridiē*, w. gen. or acc., 380, *c*. *postulō*, cases w., 393, *b*, 2; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*. Potential subjunctive, 516, 517. *potestās*, w. infin., 598, 2, *d*. *potior*, w. *abl.*, 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; w. gen., *ib.*, *c*; in gerundive constr., 613, n. *potior*, defect. adj., comparison, 123. *potissimum*, 302, 6; position, 624, 13, *a*. *potius*, comparison, 129; meaning, 302, 6; position, 624, 13, *a*; *potius quam*, w. subj., 507, 4, *d*. *prae*, sometimes shortened, p. 9, ftn.; w. *abl.*, 407, 1; cpds. of, w. dat., 376. *praecepta*, decl., 117, *b*; w. adv. force, 245. *praesertim*, w. *quī* or *cum*, 523, *b*, 526, *a*. *praestōlor*, w. dat. or acc., 364, 5. *praesum*, conj., 190, 191; w. dat., 376. *praeter*, w. acc., 380; w. infin., 598, 3; cpd. of, w. acc., 386, *a*. *praetervohor*, w. acc., 386, *a*. Prayer, expr. by imper., 496. Predicate, defined, 229, 230, 317, 3; pred. verb, 317, 3, *a*; omission of, 222, *a*; pred. acc., 392, *a*; poss. gen. in, 340; agreement of pred., 318-332, agreeing w. subject of main verb, 590, 2, 592, *a*; pred. attracted by dat., 326, 3, 585, *c*. Prefixes, adv., spelling, 51; lists, 218. Prepositions, *Form*, 126; assimilation in cpds., 51. *Syntax*: definition, 221, 303; origin and early use, *ib.*, *a*; cpds. of, taking dat., 376; taking acc., 391, 2; taking dat. or acc., *ib.*, *a*; taking two

- accs., 386; preps. w. acc., 380-383; preps. w. separative abl., 405-412; w. sociative abl., 418-420; w. locative abl., 433-436; w. names of towns, small islands, etc., 453; summary of uses of cases w. preps., 455-458.
- Present: present system, 147, *A*; *Form* of present stem, 166-170; meanings common to all forms: of permanent truths or customs, 468, 1, *b*; of habitual or attempted action, 484; w. iam diū, etc., 485; INDICATIVE: *form*, 152, 1, 2, 166, 170; progressive, 468, 1; aor., *ib.*, *a*; historical pres., 491, 1; special uses, 571; SUBJUNCTIVE: *form*, 175; pres. and fut. forces, 469, 470, 1; w. progressive force, *ib.*; w. aor. force, *ib.*, 2; referring to fut. in conditions and conclusions, 580; INFINITIVE: *form*, 178, in -ier, 164, 3; meaning, 472 and *b*; PARTICIPLE: *form*, 183; decl., 117, 118; meaning, 473.
- "Preventing," w. subj. cl., 502, 3, *b*.
- Price or value, gen. of, 356; abl. of, 427.
- pridiē, w. gen. or acc., 380, *c*.
- Primary derivatives, 203; nouns, 206; adjs., 208.
- "Primary" tenses, 476 and ftn. 2.
- Primary verbs, p. 98, ftn. 1; of conj. I, 166, 3, 4; of conj. II, 167, 1, *a*, 2; of conj. III, 168; of conj. IV, 169, 2.
- primō distinguished from primum, 302, 3.
- primus, *the first to*, 243.
- princeps, decl., 76, 77, 1, 4; 118, 1, *a*, 2; *the first to*, 243.
- Principal and auxiliary tenses, 477, *c*.
- Principal parts of verbs, 150.
- Principal sentence or clause, 224, 1.
- prior, comparison, 123; *the first to*, 243.
- prius, comparison, 129.
- priusquam, see *antequam*.
- prō, 51, 13; quantity in cpds., 24, 2; w. abl., 407, 1.
- procul, as prep. w. abl., 405, *c*.
- Progressive action, tenses of, 466 and ftn.
- prohibeō, w. abl., 408, 2; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*; w. infin., 587; prohibeor w. infin., 588.
- Prohibition, how expr., 496, *d*, 501, 3; in ind. disc. always subj., 538.
- Prolēpsis, 631, 11.
- "Promising," constr. w., 593, *a*.
- Pronominal adjectives, 112; use, 279.
- Pronominal adverbs, 126, 3, 4, 6, 7, 127.
- Pronouns, declension: pers., 134; reflex., 135; poss., 136; det.-descr., 137, 138; intens., 139; rel., 140; interrog., 141; indef. and distrib., 142; pronom. adj., 143; correl., 144. *Syntax*: prons. defined, 221; classification, 253; pers., 254-259; reflex., 260-264; recipr., 265; intens., 267-269; identifying, 270; det.-descr., 271-274; interrog., 275; indef., 276; collective, 277; distrib., 278; pronom. adjs., 279; rel. prons. and adjs., 281-284; agreement, 321-325; referring to general substance of sentence, 325, *a*; prons. in ind. disc., 533, *a*.
- Pronunciation, general explanations, 2-8; of Latin, 9-11, 13-34; suggestions and cautions, 35-40.
- prope, comparison, 129; w. acc., 380; position of, 624, 13, *a*; prope ā, 406, 2.
- Proper nouns, 240, 1.
- propior, comparison, 123; w. dat., 362, III; w. acc., 380, *b*.
- propius, w. acc., 380, *b*.
- Proposal, expr. by imper., 496; by vol. subj., 501, 2.
- "Propriety," expr. by subj., 512, 513; tenses of verbs meaning, 582, 3, *a*.
- proprius, w. gen. or dat., 339, *c*.
- propter, w. acc., 380.
- Prosody, see *Quantity and Versification*.
- prōsper, decl., 111, *a*.
- prōspiciō, w. dat. or acc., 367.
- prōsum, conj., 190, 191; w. dat., 362.
- Protasis, see *Conditions*, 573-582.
- prōvideō, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. subj., 502, 3, *a*.
- Proviso, cl. of, w. modo, dum, etc., 529.
- proximē, w. acc., 380, *b*.
- proximus, w. dat., 362, III; w. acc., 380, *b*.
- pudet, w. acc. and gen., 352, 1, 390, *a*; w. infin., 585.
- Purpose, expr. by dat., 360; by acc. w. ad or in, 384, 3; by subj. cl., 502, 2; by acc. of gerund or gerundive w. ad, 612, III; by gerund or gerundive w. causā or grātiā, 612, I; by supine in -um, 618; by partics., 605, 2, 606, 607; by poetic infin., 598, 1.
- quae res for quod or id quod, 325, *a*, n. 1.
- quaeō, cases w., 393, *c*.
- quaeō, defective, 200, 4.
- quālis, pronom. adj., 143; interrog., 275, 5; rel., 144; w. det. cl., 550 and ftn.
- quālicumque, 282, 283.
- quam-cl. determining the degree, 550 and ftn.; quam diū cl. determining the time how long, *ib.*; quam, quam possum, w. superls., 241, 4.
- quam, than, w. alius or aliter, 307, 2, *b*; after compar., 416, 417; quam qui or ut after compar., 521, 2, *c*; quam after infin. and followed by acc., 535, 1, *c*.
- quamobrem, see *quārē*.
- quamquam, advers. cl. w., 556; "corrective," 310, 7; w. subj. 541.
- quamvis, w. subj., 532, 2; w. later indic., 541.
- quandō, in cl. of cause or reason, 555; same in ind. disc., 535, 2 and *a*.
- quanti or -ō, of value or price, 356, 1, 427, 2, *a*).

- Quantity of vowels, 16, 17; in syll. not final, 18-24; in final syll., 25-28; in Greek words, 21, 5, p. 10, ftn. 1; in cpds., 24; quantity of sylls., 29, 30; marks of quantity, 16; evidences of, 16, n. 2; list of "hidden quantities," 679.
- quantus, pronom. adj., 143; interrog., 275, 5; rel., 144; uses, 282, 1; w. det. cl., 550 and ftn. 2.
- quāre, *why, wherefore*, w. subj. of obligation or propriety, 513; w. subj. of natural likelihood, 515.
- quasi, w. quidam, 276, 5, *a*; w. abl. absolute, 421, 6, *a*; w. subj., 504, 3.
- que, encl. particle, 32, n., 33, 1, 307, 1 and *b*; -que . . . -que, 309, *a*.
- queō, conj., 194, *c*.
- Questions, classification by form, 231; alternative, 234; rhetorical, 235; absurd, 236; for subj. questions see synopsis, 499; for indic. questions see synopsis, 543, and 571, 572.
- qui, indef., decl., 142 and 1, n.
- quī, interrog. adv., 140, *b*; in imprecations, 511, 1, *a*; w. subj. of natural likelihood, 515, 1.
- quī, interrog. pron., see quis.
- quī, rel. pron., decl., 140; stem, 141, n.; meaning, 282; quī-cls., in subj., see synopsis, 499; in indic., 543; in conditional cls., 577.
- quia-clauses: indic., of cause or reason, 555; same in ind. disc., subj., 535, 2 and *a*; of rejected reason, *ib.*, *b*.
- quibuscum, *with whom, with which*, 418, *a*.
- quicum, *with whom, with which*, 140, *b*.
- quicumque, decl., 140, *d*; meaning, 282, II; as indef., 276, 10, 283.
- quid, *to what extent?* 387, III; *in what respect?* 388; *why?* *ib.*, n.: quid, quidnī, *why? why not?* in questions of obligation or propriety, 513, 1; of natural likelihood, 515, 1.
- quid quod, *what (of the fact) that?* 552, 1, *a*.
- quidam, 142, 3; use, 276, 5; w. quasi, *ib.*, *a*; w. ex, 348, *e*; quidam sunt quī, mood after, 521, 1, *b*.
- quidem, 302, 1; w. tū, 257, *a*; w. is, 274, 3.
- quilibet, 142, 9; use, 276, 8.
- quīn, w. indic., 545, *a*; w. imper. 496, *b*; w. subj. in vol. subst. cl., 502, 3, *b*; in cl. of obligation or propriety, 513, 2; in cl. of ideal certainty, 519, 2, 4, *b*; in cl. of actuality, 521, 1, 2, 3, *b*.
- quippe, w. quī-cl., 523, *b*; w. cum-cl., 526, *a*.
- quis, indef., decl., 142, 1; use, 276, 1.
- quis, interrog. pron., and quī, interrog. adj., decl., 141; distinction not always observed, *ib.*, *a*, 275, 4, *a*; stem, 141, *b*, n.; cpds., 141, *b*, 142; meaning, 275, 1, 4.
- quis, for quibus, 140, *c*.
- quisnam, quīnam, 141, *b*.
- quispiam, 142, 4; use, 276, 3.
- quisquam, 142, 5; use, 276, 7.
- quisque, 142, 6; use, 278, 2; in partitive apposition, 319, 1, *a*; w. pl. verb, 331, 2; in agreement, or w. gen. of the whole, 346, *b*.
- quisquis, decl., 140, *d*; use, 282, II.
- quīvis, 142, 8; use, 276, 8.
- quō, in cl. of purpose, 502, 2 and *b*.
- quoad, see dum.
- quod, rel., = id quod, 325, *a*, n. 2; quod sciam, etc., 521, 1, *f*.
- quod-clauses, indic., of time included in the reckoning, 550 and ftn.; of equivalent action, 551; subst. cl., 552, 1 and ftn. 1; quid quod . . . ? *ib.*, *a*; quod-cl. of respect (*as to the fact that*), 552, 2; of cause or reason, 555; subj., of cause or reason in ind. disc., 535, 2, *a*; of rejected reason, *ib.*, *b*; of obligation or propriety, 513, 2.
- quom, earlier form of cum, 44, 1.
- quōminus, in subst. vol. cl., 502, 3, *b*.
- quoniam, see quia-clauses.
- quoque, 302, 2; added to sed or vērūm, 310, 4, *b*.
- quot, correl., 144; meaning, 282, I.
- quot and quotus, interrog., 275, 3.
- quotcumque, meaning, 282, II.
- Quoted expressions, gender of, 58, 3.
- Quoted reason, subj. cl. of, 535, 2, *a*.
- quotquot, meaning, 282, II.
- quotus quisque, 278, 2, *c*.
- re-, red-, prefix, 24, 2, 51, 15, 218, 1, *b*.
- Reason, see Cause.
- Reciprocal pronouns, 265; equivalent phrases, 266.
- Recomposition, 41, n. 2, 50.
- recūsō, w. subj., 502, 3, *b*; w. infin., 586, *d*.
- Reduplication, in present, 168, *B*; in perf., 173, *D*; in cpds., *ib.*, *a*.
- Reference, dat. of, 366-369; gen. of, see Application, 354.
- rēfert, cases w., 345.
- Reflexive, passive used as, 288, 3.
- Reflexive pronouns, 135, 260, *a*, *b*; use of sē and suus, 262, 284; ipse as reflex., 263, 264, 4; inter sē, etc., as reflex., 266.
- reiciō, quantity of first syll., 30, 1.
- Rejected reason, subj. cl. of, 535, 2, *b*.
- Relation, words of, w. dat., 362-364.
- Relative adverb, see Adverb.
- Relative clause, is either declarative or conditional, 228, 3, *b*; = noun, partic., appos., etc., 284, 3; position, 624, 10, 284, 5; w. infin., in ind. disc., 535, 1, *b*; moods in, see quī-cls.
- Relative pronoun, decl., 140; defined, 281; meanings, 282, 283; peculiarities in use, 284; agreement of, 322-326.
- Relative tenses, of indic., 467, 1, 477, *b*; of subj., 470, 3, 477, *b*.

- relinquitur, w. vol. ut-cl., 502, 3, c; w. ut-cl. of fact, 521, 3, a).
- reliqui, meaning, 279, 1, b.
- "Remembering," cases w., 350; w. infin., 589; w. pres. infin. of past act, 593, b.
- "Reminding," cases w., 351.
- reminiscor, cases w., 350.
- Repeated action, subj. of, 540; see also habitual action, 484, and generalizing condition, 576, a.
- "Repraesentatio," see Picturesque tenses.
- "Representing," verbs of, w. pres. partic., 605, 1; w. infin., *ib.*, n.
- Request, expr. by imper., 496; by subj., 530.
- requies, decl., 107, 2.
- rēs, decl., 99, 100, 1; see also ea rēs.
- "Resisting," w. dat., 362.
- Resolve, expr. by subj., 501, 1; by pres. indic., 571; by fut. indic., 572.
- Respect, expr. by acc., 388, 389; by abl., 441; by supine in -ū, 619, 1, 2.
- Restrictive clauses, 522.
- Result, abl. expressing, 422, II.
- Result, cls. of: obligatory or proper, 513, 4; possible, 517, 3; ideally certain, 519, 3; actual, 521, 2.
- Result produced, acc. of, 394.
- reus, w. gen., 342, a; vōti reus, 343.
- Rhetoric, figures of, 632.
- Rhetorical det. cl., 550, a, n. 3.
- Rhetorical questions, 235; question of fact, in infin. in ind. disc., 591, a.
- Rhotacism, 47, 86, n.
- Rhythm, 633.
- Rivers, gen. of names of, 58, 1.
- rogō, w. two accs., 393; w. subj. cl., 530, 2.
- Root, 147, n. 2, 203, ftn. 1.
- Route, abl. of, 426.
- rūs, decl., 86, 1; place relations w., 93, 449, a, 450, b, 451, a.
- s-stems, 85, 86, 116, a.
- sacer, comparison, 123, a.
- saepe, comparison, 129.
- salvē, defective, 200, 1.
- sānē, in answers, 232, 1.
- satīn, 236, 2, d.
- satis, comparison, 129; w. dat., 362, I.
- "Saying," infin. w. verbs of, 589; w. pass. of (dicor, etc.), 590, 1; subj. w., 502, 3, a).
- Scanning, 643.
- sciēs, w. force of adv., 245.
- scitō, force of tense, 496, c.
- scō, verbs in, 168, F, 212, 2; length of vowel before, 18.
- sē, sēsē, see suī.
- sē-, sēd-, prefix, 218, 1, b).
- Second conjugation, 148, 156, 167.
- Second declension, 69-73.
- Second object, in acc., 392, 393; in abl. w. ūtor, etc., 429, a.
- Second person sing. indef., in generalizing conditions, 504, 2; in potential subj., 517, 1; in generalizing statements of fact, 542.
- Secondary derivatives, 203; nouns, 207; adj., 209, 210; verbs, 211, 212.
- "Secondary" tenses, p. 247, ftn. 2.
- secum, 416, a.
- secundum, w. acc., 380.
- sed, 310, 4 and b; sed enim, 311, 6, b.
- "Seeing," verbs of, w. pres. partic., 605, 1; w. infin., *ib.*, n.
- Semi-deponents, 161; voice-meanings, 291.
- Semihiat, 648.
- Semivowels, 2.
- senex, decl., 88, 4; compar., 122, 123, b.
- Sentence, defined, 220; how made up, 221; simple, 223, 1; compound, *ib.*, 2; coordinate, *ib.*; complex, *ib.*, 3; four functions, 228.
- Separation, abl. of, 405-411; gen. w. verbs of, 348.
- "Sequence of tenses," reg., 476; exceptions to, 478-480.
- "Service," dat. of, see Tendency, 360.
- "Serving," dat. w., 362, II.
- sēstertius, sēstertium, 675.
- seu, see sive.
- Shortening of vowels, 20, 1, 2, 26.
- "Should," see Obligation and Natural likelihood.
- sī, meaning, 578, 1; in ordinary conditions, 579-581; in loosely attached condition, 582, 2; in virtual wish, *ib.*, 5; in ind. question of fact, 582, 2, b; adversative or concessive, 582, 7.
- sī minus, 578, 3; sī modo, 582, 6.
- sī nōn, 578, 2, 3.
- sī quidem, = "for" or "since," 582, 9.
- Sibilants, 6, 3, 12.
- sic, in answers, 232, 1; sic ut, 521, 2, a, and ftn.
- Sīmile, 632, 15.
- similis, compar., 120, 2; cases w., 339, c, n.
- Simple sentence, 223, 1.
- simul, poetic w. abl., 418, b.
- simul, simul atque (ac), w. aor. indic., 557.
- sīn, use, 578, 2, 3; see also sī.
- sine, w. abl., 405.
- Singular, nouns used only in, 103; wanting, 104; of different meaning in pl., 105.
- sīnō, w. subj., 531, 2; w. infin., 587.
- Situation, descr. cum-cl. of, in subj., 524; w. caus. or adv. idea, 525; w. ubi, etc., in indic., 558; dum-cl. of, 559; expr. by partic., 604, 2; by historical infin., 595.
- Situation, tenses of, 466, 1, a.
- sive or seu, 308, 3 and a; correlative, 309.
- Slurring, 34, 1, 38, 646.
- sō, frequentatives in, 212, 1.
- Softened statements, etc., in subj., 518, 1, b.
- solō, semi-deponent, 161.

- sólus**, decl., 112, *a*; gen. of, w. poss. pron., 339, *b*; **sólus qui**, w. subj., 521, 1, *a* and ftn.
- Sonant**, or voiced, consonants, 8, 1, 12.
- Sounds**, general statement, 2-8; classification of the Latin sounds, 12.
- Space over which**, 426, *c*; see also **Extent**.
- "Sparing," dat. w.**, 362, II.
- "Specification," gen. of**, see **Application**; abl. and acc. of, see **Respect**.
- Speech**, parts of, 221; figures of, 631, 632.
- Spelling**, variations in, 52.
- Spirants**, 6, 3.
- Spondaic verse**, 639, *b*.
- Spondee**, 637.
- sponte**, defect., 106, 1; of manner, 445, 1.
- Stage**, tenses of the, 466, 1.
- Standard**, abl. of, 415; *w. ex*, *ib.*, *a*.
- statuō**, w. subj., 502, 3, *a*; infin., 586, 589.
- Stem**, of nouns, 62, 1, *n*, 63, 232-235; of verbs, 202; the three stems, 147; pres. stem of the four conjs., 148; union of stem and ends., 152; form of tense-stem, mood-stem, etc., 166-184.
- stō**, *abide by*, w. abl., 438, 1.
- Stress**, 31, 33, 1, 2.
- studeō**, w. dat., 332, II; w. infin., 586, 587.
- su-**, pronunc. in *suavis*, *suadeō*, *suāscō*, 11.
- suadeō**, w. dat., 362, II; w. acc., 364, 4; w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; w. infin., 587.
- sub** (subs), form in cpds., 51, 14; w. acc., 381 and *b*; w. abl., 433.
- Subject**, defined, 229; omitted, 285; indef., 286; of finite verb, in nom., 335; likewise of historical infin., 535; verb agrees w., 328; two or more w. one verb, 329; subj. of infin. in acc., 398; sometimes omitted, 592; cl. as subject, 238.
- Subjective genitive**, 344.
- Subjunctive**, origin and mood-signs, 175; tables of general forces, 462; for details, see synopsis, 499.
- Subordinate clause**, defined, 224, 1, 2, *a*.
- Subsequent action**, defined, 470, 3 and ftn. 2.
- Substantive cls.**, defined, 238; used as subject, obj., etc., *ib.*, 319, 2, *c*, 597, 1, *a*, *b*); subj.: vol., 502, 3; antic., 507, 2; opt., 511, 2; of obligation or propriety, 513, 5; of natural likelihood, 515, 3; potential, 517, 3; of ideal certainty, 519, 4; of actuality, 521, 3; of request, 530, 2; of consent or indifference, 531, 2; ind. questions of fact, 537, *c*; indic.: w. *quod*, 552, 1; w. *cum*, 553; infin., 585-594.
- Substantives**, defined, 221, *a*; adjs. and partics. used as, 249, 250.
- subter**, w. acc., 382; w. abl., *ib.*, *a*.
- Suffixes**, primary and secondary, 203-210.
- Suggestion**, in imper., 496; in subj., 501, 2.
- sui**, decl., 135; use, 260-264; w. gen. of *gerundive*, 614; gen. of, reg. objective, 264, *a*.
- sum**, conj., 153, 154; as copula, 230, *a*; w. dat. of possession, 374; est ut w. subj., 521, 3, *a*); est w. infin., 598, 3.
- summus**, the top of, 244.
- sunt qui**, moods after, 521, 1, *b*.
- super**, form in cpds., 218, 1, *a*); w. acc., 383; w. abl., 435 and *a*, *b*; as adv., 303, *c*.
- superior**, comparison, 123.
- Superlative degree**, 119; in -errimus, -illimus, 120, 1, 2; in -mus, -timus, etc., 120, 4, 122, 123; expr. by *maximē*, 121; wanting, 123, *b*; of advs., 128, 129; force of degree, 241, 300; w. *quisque*, 278, 2, *b*); w. *vel* or *ūnus*, 241, 3, *a*; w. *quam* or *quam possum*, *ib.*, 4.
- Supine**, formation, 181; in -um, use, 618; in -ū, uses, 619.
- suprā**, w. acc., 380.
- Surd**, or voiceless, consonants, 8, 2, 12.
- Surprise**, expr. by subj., 503; by fut. indic., 572; by infin., 596.
- Suspense**, in Latin sentence, 625, III.
- suus**, 136; uses of, 260-264; special meanings, 264, 3; *suus quisque*, *ib.*, 2, *a*.
- Syllables**, 13; division of, 14, 15; open and closed, 14, *a*, *b*; quantity of, 29, 30.
- Synæresis**, p. 352, ftn. 3.
- Synaloëpha**, p. 350, ftn. 1.
- Synapheia**, 641, *n*, 4.
- Syncope** of vowels, 43; used in poetry, 650.
- Synécdoche**, 632, 8.
- Sýnesis**, 631, 6.
- Synézisís**, p. 352, ftn. 3.
- Syntax**, defined, 219.
- Syntax**, figures of, 631.
- Sýstole**, 652, 3, ftn. 4.
- Tacit caus. advs. cl.**, 569, *a*; explicit, 523, *a*.
- taedet**, w. gen., 352, 1; w. acc., 390, *a*.
- "Taking away," dat. w. verbs of**, 371.
- tālis**, 143, 144; meaning, 271; w. *qui* and subj., 521, 1, *b*.
- tam w. qui** or *quin*, 521, 1, *a*; **tam w. ut** or *quin*, 521, 2, *a*.
- tamen**, 310, 6; position, *ib*.
- tametsi**, corrective, 310, 7; = *alithough*, 582, 8.
- tamquam**, w. abl. absolute, 421, 6, *a*; w. subj., 504, 3.
- tandem**, *pray*, in questions, 231, 2, *n*.
- tanti**, gen. of value, 356, 1; **tanti ut**, 513, 4.
- tantum abest ut**, 521, 3, *a*).
- tantus**, pronom. adj., 143, 144; meaning, 271; w. subj. *qui*-or *ut*-cl., 521, 1, *a*; w. *quantus* and indic., 550.
- te**, encl. particle, 134, *d*.
- "Teaching," two accs. w.**, 393.
- tegō**, conj., 157.
- "Temporal" cum-cl.**, 524, 525; **ubi-cl.**, etc., 557, 558.
- tempus est**, w. subj., 502, 3, *c*); w. infin., 585.
- Tendency or purpose**, dat. of, 360.

- teneō**, w. perf. pass. partic., 605, 5.  
**Tenses**, 145; stems of, 147, n. 1, 166-175; tense defined, 465; tenses of the stage, 466, 1; aor. tenses, *ib.*, 2; rel. tenses, 467, 1; absolute tenses, *ib.*, 2; tenses of indicative, 468; of imperative, 471, 496; of infinitive, 472, 503; of subjunctive, 469, 470; of the participles, 473, 600, 601; special points: combinations ("sequence") of tenses, 476, 477; less usual combinations ("exceptions to the sequence"), 478, 479; mechanical harmony of subj. tenses, 480; tenses depending on pres. perf., 481; permanent truths depending on past tenses, 482; tenses of habitual ("repeated" or "customary") action and attempted ("conative") action, 484; w. *iam dū*, etc., 485; of discovery, expr. by imperf., 486, 1; by fut., *ib.*, 2; perf. of experience ("gnomic"), 488; perf. of state of affairs no longer existing, 489; energetic or emphatic perf., 490; historical pres. and perf., 491, 1; tenses of rapid succession of events, 492; epistolary tenses, 493; accuracy of use of Latin tenses, 494, 577, *a.*  
**tenus**, w. gen. or abl., 458, 4; position, *ib.*  
**terrā**, by *land*, 426, *a.*; on *land*, 449, *a.*  
**Thematic** vowel in verbs, p. 76, ftn.; changes in, 152, 1.  
**Thesis**, 654 and ftn. 5.  
**Things personified**, as agents, 406, 1, *b.*  
**"Thinking,"** w. infin., 589.  
**Third conj.**, 148, 157-158, 168.  
**Third decl.**, nouns, 74-95; adj., 113-118.  
**Time**, adjs. denoting, 209, 5; time at or within wh., expr. by abl., 439; by abl. absolute, 421, 1; duration of time, by acc., 387, II; by abl., 440; absolute and rel. time, 467, 1, 2.  
**Time in Roman reckoning**, 660-671.  
**timeō**, w. dat. or acc., 367; w. subj., 502, 4; w. infin., 586.  
**Tmesis**, 659.  
**-tō(-āre)**, frequentatives in, 212, 1.  
**tot**, meaning and uses, 271, 2, *a.*  
**tōtus**, 112; w. abl. noun, 436 and *a.*  
**Towns** where, whither, or whence, 449-451; appositives w., 452; preps. w., 453.  
**trāns**, form in cpds., 51, 16; w. acc., 380; cpds. of, w. acc., 386.  
**Transitive**, see Voice and Verb.  
**Trees**, gen. of names of, 58, 2.  
**trēs**, decl., 131, 2.  
**Trochee**, 637, *b.*  
**"Trusting,"** w. dat., 362, II.  
**tū**, decl., 134; *tūte*, 134, *d.*  
**tui**, gen. of *tū*, reg. objective, 254, *a.*  
**tum . . . cum**, see *cum*.  
**-tum**, -*tū*, supine endings, 181, 49, 4, 5.  
**-tus**, perf. pass. partic. in, 179, 4; adj. in, 209, 3; adv. in, 126, 8.  
**Two comparatives**, adjs., 242; advs., 301.  
**"Two datives,"** 360, *b.*  
**Two negatives**, 298, 2.  
**Two objects** in acc., 392, 393; one retained w. pass., 393, *a.*; two objs. in abl., 429, *a.*  
**u**, consonantal may become vowel in poetry, 656, 1; vocalic may become consonantal in poetry, *ib.*, 2.  
**ubi, when**: for ordinary uses, see *postquam*; in cl. of equivalent action, 561.  
**ubi, where**, same constrs. as *qui*; see *qui*.  
**-ubus**, dat.-abl. pl., decl. IV, 97, 1.  
**-ui**, perfects in, 173, *B.*  
**ūlus**, decl., 112, *a.*, 143; use, 276, 7.  
**ulterior**, comparison, 123.  
**ultimus**, the last to, 243.  
**ultrā** (*uls*), w. acc., 380.  
**-um**, gen. plur. in decl. I, 66, 3; decl. II, 71, 4; decl. III, in *i*-stems, 88, 4; decl. IV, 97, 3; in adjs., 118, 1; of *ducenti*, etc., 131, 4.  
**unde, whence**, same constrs. as *qui*; see *qui*.  
**Unthematic** verbs, p. 76, ftn., 170.  
**ūnus**, decl., 112, *a.*; gen. of, w. poss. pron., 339, *b.*; *ūnus dē* or *ex*, 346, *e.*; *ūnus qui*, w. subj., 521, 1, *a.*; *unī*, use, 247, 1, *b.*  
**ūnusquisque**, 142, 7.  
**urbs**, decl., 90; in apposition to names of towns, 452.  
**ūsus est**, constrs. w., 430, 1, 2, and *c.*  
**ut (utī)**, often merely formal, p. 261, ftn. 2; w. subj., see especially in cl. of purpose, 502, 2; in vol. subst. cl., *ib.*, 3; in cl. of fear, *ib.*, 4; in question or exclamation of surprise, etc., 503; in antic. subst. cl. 507, 2; in opt. subst. cl., 511, 2; in cl. of actual result, 521, 2; in subst. cl. of actuality, *ib.*, 3; in ind. questions or exclamations, 537, *d.* 3) and ftn.; w. indic., see synopsis, 543.  
**ut nē**, p. 261, ftn. 2.  
**ut primum, ut semel**, 557, *a.*  
**ut si, as if**, w. subj., 504, 3.  
**uter**, rel., 140, *d.*; interrog., 141, *b.*; use, 275, 1; decl., 112; cpds. of, 142, *a.*  
**utercumque**, decl., 140, *d.*  
**uterlibet**, meaning, 142, *a.*, 276, 8.  
**uterque**, 142, *a.*; use, 278; meaning in pl., *ib.*, *a.*, *b.*; as recipr. pron., 265; in agreement or w. gen. 346, *b.*  
**utervis**, meaning, 142, *a.*, 276, 8.  
**utī**, see *ut*.  
**utinam**, in wishes, 511, 1, and ftn. 1.  
**ūtor**, w. abl., 429; w. 2d abl., *ib.*, *a.*; w. acc., *ib.*, *b.*; in gerundive constr., 613, 2, *n.*  
**utpote**, w. *qui*-cl., 523, *b.*; w. *cum*-cl., 526, *a.*  
**utrum . . . an, etc.**, 234, I and *b.*; *utrum* suppressed, *ib.*, III.  
**v**, may become *u* in poetry, 656, 1.  
**Value**, expr. by gen., 356; by abl., 427.

Variable nouns, 107, 108.

-*ve*, encl. particle, 32, n., 33; see also *vel*.  
*vē-*, inseparable prefix, 214, 2.

*vel* or -*ve*, disjunctive, 308, 2; correction,  
*ib.*, 3, *a*; *vel* w. superlative, 241, 3, *a*.

*velim* or *vellem*, in softened statements,  
 519, 1, *b*; in virtual wishes, *ib.*, *c*.

*velut* or *veluti* (*sī*), w. subj., 504, 3.

*ventūrus*, as adj., 248.

Verbal nouns, 146.

Verbs, *Form*: voices, moods, etc., 145;  
 three stems, 147; the conj., 148; principal  
 parts, 150; ends, 151; union of  
 end. with stem, 152; examples of inflection  
 of the four reg. conj., 155-159; de-  
 pons., 160; semi-depons., 161; periphr.  
 conj., 162; peculiarities in conj., 163-  
 165; formation of the stems, 166-184;  
 illustrations of the various types (principal  
 parts), 185-189; conj. of the irreg.  
 verbs, 190-197; defect. verbs, 198-200;  
 impers. verbs, 201; derivation of verbs,  
 211-212; composition of verbs, 218; list  
 of, p. 361. *Syntax*: verb defined, 221;  
 sometimes omitted, 222, *a*; impers. verbs,  
 287; trans. verbs, 289; intrans. verbs,  
 290.

*vereor*, 160; w. subj., 502, 4; w. infin., 586.  
*vērō*, 310, 5, *a*, *b*; in answers, 232, 1.

Verse, defined, 636.

Versification, 633-659.

*versus*, w. acc., 380; position of, *ib.*, *a*.

*vērūm*, 310, 4; following *nōn*, *ib.*, *b*; w.  
*etiam* or *quoque* added, *ib.*

*vēscor*, w. abl., 429; w. acc., *ib.*, *b*; in  
 gerundive constr., 613, 2, *n*.

*vestri*, objective gen., 134, *b*, 254, *a*; *ves-*  
*trum*, gen. of the whole, *ib.*

*vetō*, moods w., 587, *b*; *vetor* w. infin.,  
 588.

*vetus*, decl., 117, 118, 1, *a*, 2; stem of,  
 117, *b*; comparison, 120, 1.

-*vi*, perfects in, 173, *A*; short forms, 163.

*vicis*, defect., 106, 4; *vicem*, 388.

*videō*, w. vol. cl., 502, 3, *a*; *vidē nē* in pro-  
 hibitions, 501, 3, *a*, 2; *videō* and *videor*  
 w. infin., 589, 590, 1; *videō* w. pres.  
 partic. or infin., 605, 1, *n*; *videor* w.  
 dat., 370.

*vir*, decl., 70; poetic gen. *virum*, 71, 4, *c*.  
 Virtual wishes, expr. by *velim*, etc., w. subj.,  
 519, 1, *c*; by condition w. *sī* or *ō sī*, w.  
 subj., 582, 5.

*vis*, decl., 92.

Vocative, *Forms*, exceptional: in -*i*, of  
 nouns in -*ius*, 71, 2; in -*ie*, of adjs. in  
 -*ius*, 110, *a*. *Syntax*, 400; position of,  
 624, 6; nom. for, 401.

Voice, 145; act., 288, 1; pass., *ib.*, 2; pass.  
 used reflexively ("middle voice"), *ib.*, 3;  
 w. acc., 390, *b*; intrans. verbs, pass. of,  
 used impers., 290, *a*, 1; voice-meanings  
 of depons. and semi-depons., 291.

Voiced consonants, 8, 1, 12; change of  
 voiced mutes, 49, 1.

Voiceless consonants, 8, 2, 12.

Volitive subjunctive, 500-505.

*volō* and its cpds., 192; w. vol. cl., 502, 3,  
*a*; w. infin., 586, 587; w. perf. partic.,  
 605, 3.

Vowels, 2; classification, 3; pronunc., 9;  
 quantity, 16-28, 36; weakening in inter-  
 ior syll., 41, 42; syncope, 43; changes  
 in final syll., 44; contraction, 45; vowel-  
 gradation, 46; thematic vowel, p. 76,  
 ftn., 152, 1; final, slurred, 34, 1, 646.

"Want," w. gen., 347; w. abl., 425.

Watches of the night, 670, 2.

Way or manner, expr. by abl., 445; by ad,  
 in, or per, w. acc., *ib.*, 3, *a*; by dum-cl.,  
 559, *a*; by partic., 604, 5.

Weights and Measures, 672-677.

Whole, idea of, expr. by gen., 346; by *dē*  
 or *ex*, w. abl., *ib.*, *e*.

Will, expr. by vol. subj., 500.

Winds, gen. of names of, 58, 1.

Wish, expr. by opt. subj., 511, 1; by *velim*,  
 etc., w. subj., 519, 1, *c*; by *sī* or *ō sī* w.  
 subj., 582, 5.

"Wishing" w. opt. subj., 511, 2; w. infin.,  
 586 and *d*; see also *volō*.

Women, names of, 678, 5.

Word-accent, in verse, 645.

Word-formation, 202-218.

Word-order: normal, 623, 624; rhetorical,  
 625-630; parallel order, 628; cross  
 order, *ib.*

*y*, in borrowed words only, 1, *a*.

Year, how indicated, 661.

"Yes," how expressed, 232, 1.

*z*, in borrowed words only, 1, *a*; pronunc.,  
 11; in poetry, 29, 3, *b*.

*Zeûgma*, 631, 7.





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6-40

JAN 24 1951

SEP 18 2003

OXFORD UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

3 6105 008 010 725

Tx  
475.2  
#168  
cap.1

WILLIAMSON, W.C. and JACK, C.D.  
X Latin America

[illegible]

DATE  
JAN 24 1951  
V6 2 8 1951

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STATE

H=B